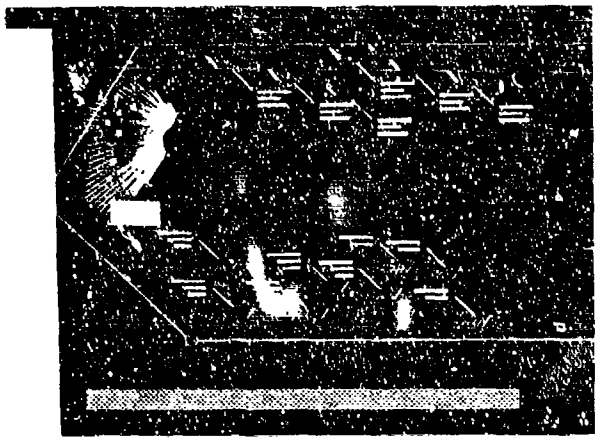
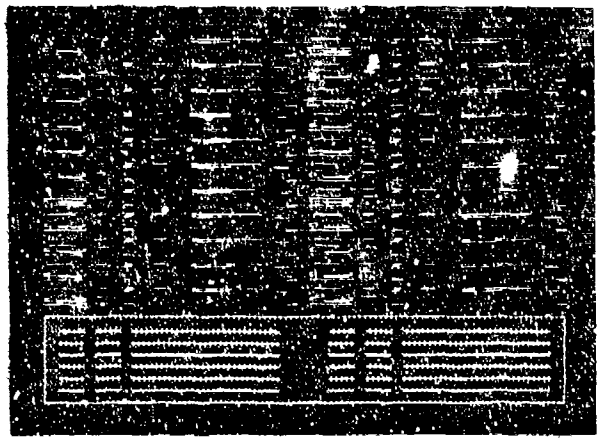
DTIC FILE COPY

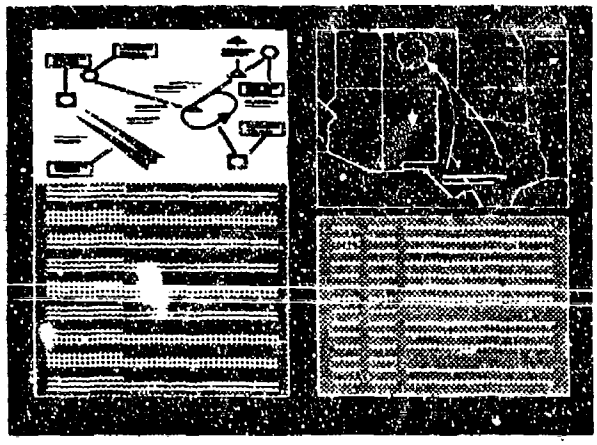
AD-A210 455



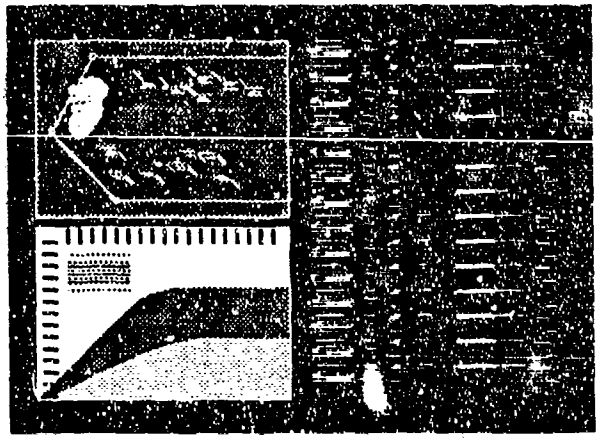


FAA AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL OPERATIONS CONCEPTS

Volume VII: ATCT Tower Controllers

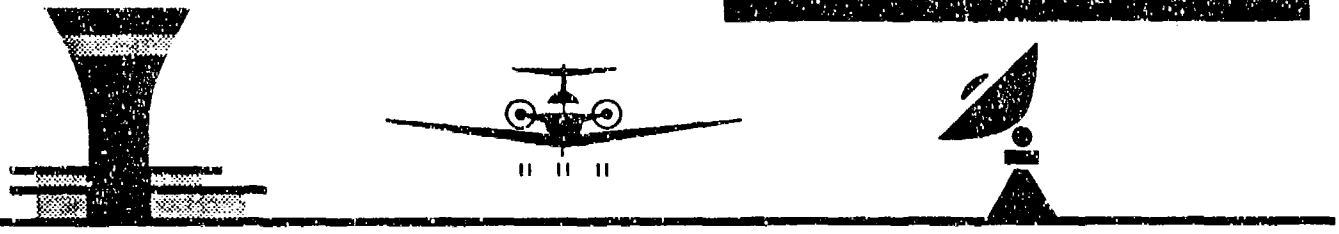


S ELECTE JUL 21 1989 D
B



21 April 1989

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A
Approved for public release;
Distribution Unlimited



DOT/FAA/AP-87-01

U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

89 7 21 003

FAA AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL OPERATIONS CONCEPTS

VOLUME VII: ATCT TOWER CONTROLLERS

CDRL B112, VOL. VII

CONTRACT DTF-A01-85-Y-01034

Prepared For:

FAA/AAM - 500
FAA Civil Aeromedical Institute (CAMI)
Mike Monroney Aeronautical Center
PO Box 25082
Oklahoma City, OK 73125

In Conjunction With:

FAA/AAP - 100
Federal Aviation Administration
DOT, 800 Independence Avenue, S.W.
Washington, DC 20591

21 April 1989

Prepared By:

CTA INCORPORATED
7150 Campus Drive, Suite 100
Colorado Springs, CO 80920
(719) 590-5100

FAA AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL OPERATIONS CONCEPTS

VOLUME VII: ATCT TOWER CONTROLLERS

CDRL B112, VOL. VII

CONTRACT DTF-A01-85-Y-01034

21 April 1989

Prepared By:

J. R. Alexander
V. L. Alley
H. L. Ammerman
W. S. Fairhurst
C. M. Hostetler
G. W. Jones
C. L. Rainey

Accession For
NTIS GRA&I ☑
DTIC TAB ☐
Unannounced ☐
Justification
By per Form 50
Distribution/
Availability Codes
Dist | Avail and/or Special
A-1

DOT/FAA/AP-87-01 (VOL#7)
21 April 1989

LIST OF EFFECTIVE PAGES

This page detaiis the current status of Volume VII by page. Original pages are designated by "O". Change pages can be designated by a sequential change (CHG) number.

Page No.	Change No.	
i thru x	O	(Pages ii & viii Blank)
1-1 thru 1-4	O	
2-1 thru 2-2	O	
A-1 thru A-251	O	
B-1 thru B-47	O	
C-1 thru C-68	O	
D-1 thru D-72	O	
E-1 thru E-117	O	
F-1 thru F-207	O	
G-1	O	
H-1	O	

Technical Report Documentation Page

1. Report No.	2. Government Accession No.	3. Recipient's Catalog No.
DOT/ FAA/ AP-87-01		

4. Title and Subtitle	5. Report Date
FAA Air Traffic Control Operations Concepts Volume VII: ATCT Tower Controllers	21 April 1989
	6. Performing Organization Code
7. Author(s) J.R. Alexander, V.L. Alley, H.L. Ammerman, W.S. Fairhurst, C.M. Hostetler, G.W. Jones and C.L. Rainey	8. Performing Organization Report No. CDRL B112, Volume VII
9. Performing Organization Name and Address CTA INCORPORATED 7150 Campus Drive, Suite 100 Colorado Springs, CO 80920	10. Work Unit No. (TRAIS)
	11. Contract or Grant No. DTF-A01-85-Y-010304
12. Sponsoring Agency Name and Address FAA/ AAP - 100 Federal Aviation Administration DOT, 800 Independence Avenue, S.W. Washinton, DC 20591	13. Type of Report and Period Covered Final
	14. Sponsoring Agency Code AAP - 100

15. Supplementary Notes
FAA/ AAM - 500
FAA Civil Aeromedical Institute
CAMI, Mike Monroney Aeronautical Center
P.O. Box 25082
Oklahoma City, OK 73125

16. Abstract

This volume is one of a series of operations concepts for the Air Traffic Controllers. It describes how Tower controllers in Airport Traffic Control Towers may perform their operational jobs in the manual, ARTS, TPX-42 environment. Separate analyses are presented for the three basic control positions: Local Control, Ground Control, and Clearance Delivery/ Flight Data.

Included here are: Composition Graphs, showing the logical flow of operational tasks performed in response to or anticipation of external Air Traffic Events; a series of analyses of these tasks, including Information Requirements, Cognitive/ Sensory Attributes, and Performance criteria; a User Interface Language aggregating system input and output messages in a hierarchical organization; decomposition of tasks to their constituent procedural elements; and traceability between tasks and ATC procedures documents.

Data presented here are generated and maintained using the Computer-Human Operational Requirements Analysis System (CHORAS). CHORAS includes an automated task data base, specialized graphing capabilities, and display and hard copy output features tailored to the needs of operations concept analysis.

Formerly: Federal Aviation Administration (FAA)

17. Key Words	18. Distribution Statement
Operations Concept, Air Traffic Control, Task Analysis, ~~ATC Tower Operations~~, Composition Graphs, Man/Machine Interface, Airport Traffic Control Tower. (CDU)	

19. Security Classif. (of this report)	20. Security Classif. (of this page)	21. No. of Pages	22. Price
Unclassified	Unclassified		

Form DOT F 1700.7 Reproduction of completed page authorized

FOREWORD

This document constitutes Volume VII of a series of volumes which collectively define Air Traffic Control (ATC) Operations Concepts for the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). This series was developed specifically to support the Advanced Automation System (AAS) and considers operations in today's facilities and the automated capabilities planned for the AAS in order to reach an understanding of how controller and other operational jobs will be performed as AAS evolves.

The AAS will provide enhanced capabilities to support operational ATC personnel in the en route, terminal, and tower environments; include automated capabilities to process and display surveillance data (targets, tracks, and weather), flight data, and environmental and status data, to assist the controller in maintaining a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic; provide supervisory and maintenance data and controls; and include message entry, information processing, and display outputs adaptable to the requirements and individual preferences of each controller. Ultimately, the AAS advanced automation features are expected to improve productivity by providing controllers with various strategic planning capabilities, while relieving controllers of certain routine control actions.

Evolution from the current system to the full AAS environment will progress through several major stages. The first five volumes in this series provide ATC personnel the operations concepts and task analyses for selected operational positions in these different stages of AAS evolution. These volumes consist of:

- Volume I, ATC Background and Analysis Methodology - includes material common to all Operations Concept analyses in subsequent volumes, and defines analysis concepts used in those volumes.

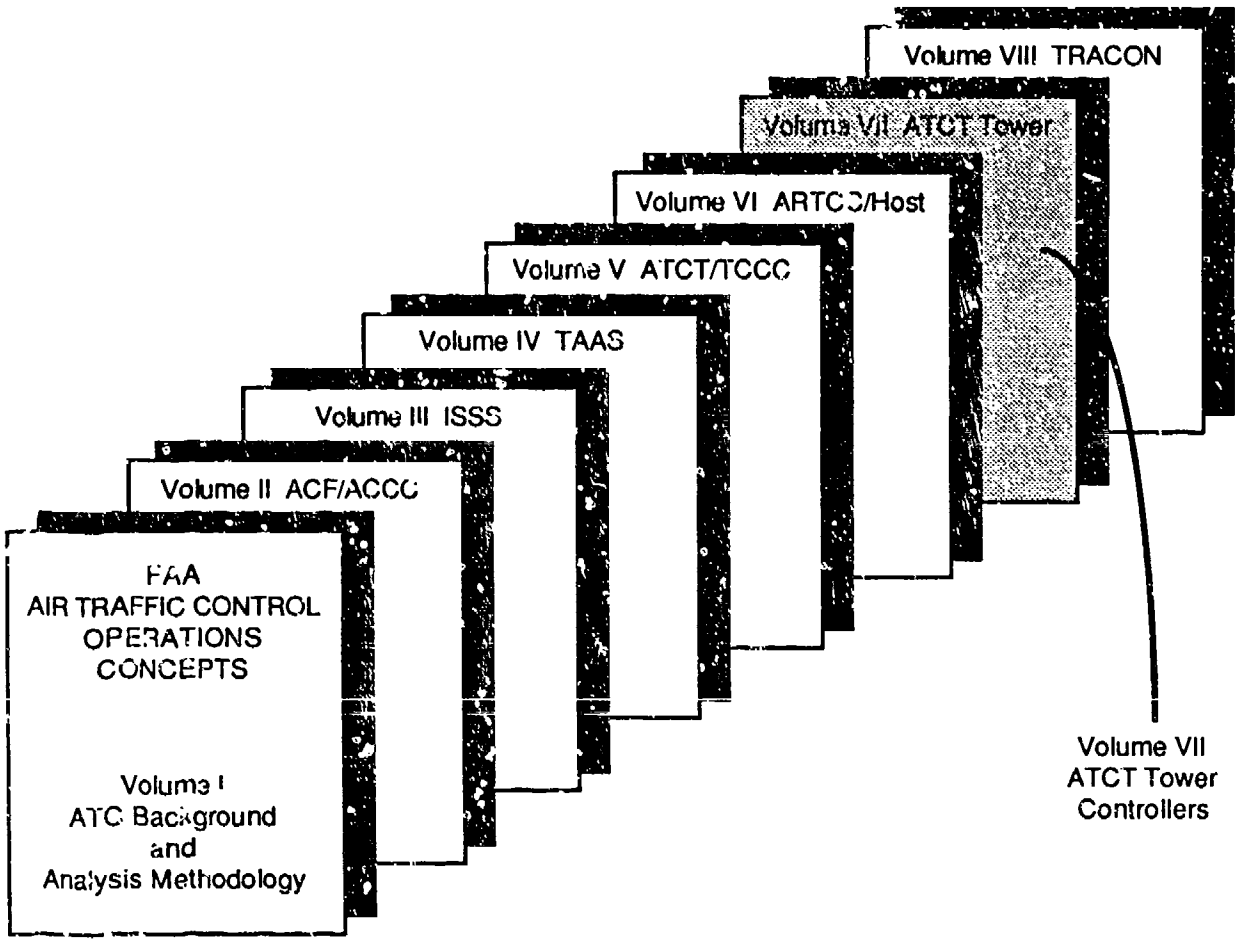
- Volume II, ACF/ACCC Terminal & En Route Controllers - addresses the domestic en route and terminal controller in the full AAS with Automated En Route Air Traffic Control (AERA) I capabilities.

- Volume III, ISSS En Route Controllers - addresses the domestic en route controller in the Initial Sector Suite System (ISSS) environment.

- Volume IV, TAAS Terminal Controllers - addresses the terminal controller in the Terminal Advanced Automation System (TAAS) environment.

- Volume V, ATCT/TCCC Tower Controllers - addresses Tower controllers (Local, Ground, Flight Data / Clearance Delivery) in the Tower Control Computer Complex (TCCC) environment.

Subsequently, three additional volumes were identified to baseline operations in the current NAS system. The format for these three volumes uses the same methodology defined in Volume I and is consistent with that developed for the AAS segments. These volumes consist of:



FAA Air Traffic Control Operations Concepts Volumes

- Volume VI, ARTCC/Host En Route Controllers - addresses the domestic en route controller in the Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC)/ Host environment.

- Volume VII, ATCT Tower Controllers - addresses controllers (Local, Ground, Flight Data / Clearance Delivery) in the manual, ARTS, TPX-42 domestic tower environment.

- Volume VIII, TRACON Controllers - addresses controllers in the domestic Terminal Radar Approach Control (TRACON) environment. (To be published in Fall 1989)

Each of these data volumes (VI through VIII) focuses on one or more operational positions in a particular type of current ATC facility.

The complete operations concepts and task analyses for ATCT Tower Controllers consists of Volume I and Volume VII. Volume I includes an overview of the current ATC environment and planned enhancements, as well as descriptions of the analysis methodology used to produce Volume VII. Volume VII focuses on controller operations in today's Tower environment. It considers these operations in a format consistent with that developed for Tower Control Computer Complex (TCCC) Operations Concepts (Volume V). This permits comparisons between the current Tower and TCCC to reach an understanding of how Tower controller jobs will change with the introduction of the TCCC operation.

Configuration control procedures developed to maintain Volumes I through V for currency and completeness can also be applied to Volume VII if deemed appropriate. This can be accomplished via change pages whenever possible rather than republishing a new or updated volume. Substantive changes to the original volume are indicated by a black line (side bar) as shown in the margin of this paragraph. The "List of Effective Pages" (page iv) provides the current status of each page in this volume and can be updated with each subsequent change.

The value of these analyses results rests heavily upon contributions of those active in and familiar with the present system. Special credit is due to several persons currently serving at the FAA Academy who not only contributed much valuable insight into Tower operations, but also provided detailed review and validation of the contents of this volume:

NAME	FORMER FACILITY
Donna R. Genest	Daytona Beach Tower
Lee La Brie	Quonset TRACON and Providence Tower
Carmel L. Leese	Anchorage Tower
Pete Loveridge	Spokane and Moses Lake Towers

Supporting the development of this volume were David Settle (AAC-934C) of the Terminal Revision and Development Unit, FAA Academy, and Dr. Jennifer G. Myers (AAM-552) of the Human Resources Research Division, Civil Aeromedical Institute (CAMI).

The volumes currently identified are represented in the illustration (page vi).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME VII

Page

List of Effective Pages iv

Foreword v

SECTION 1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 PURPOSE 1-1
1.2 ANALYSIS METHODOLOGY 1-1
1.3 APPENDICES 1-1
1.4 ASSUMPTIONS 1-2
1.5 DOCUMENT INTERFACE 1-2
1.6 AIR TRAFFIC EVENTS 1-2
1.7 REFERENCES 1-3
1.8 ACRONYMS 1-4

SECTION 2 METHODOLOGY

2.1 GENERAL PROCESS 2-1
2.2 SPECIAL METHODOLOGY FEATURES 2-1

APPENDICES:

A. COMPOSITION GRAPHS A-1

B. TASK STATEMENTS B-1

C. USER INTERFACE LANGUAGE (UIL) C-1

D. TASK CHARACTERIZATION ANALYSES D-1

Task Information Requirements D-1
Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes D-47
Critical Task Performance Requirements D-60

E. TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS E-1

F. TRACEABILITY TABLES F-1

G. SITE VISIT INFORMATION G-1

H. EXPANDED OPERATIONAL SCENARIOS H-1

LIST OF FIGURES AND TABLES

FIGURES

Figure A-1 Composition Graph Symbology A-3

TABLES

Table C-1 Physical Display Contents C-4
Table C-2 Input Messages C-30

Section 1

Introduction

SECTION 1

INTRODUCTION

1.1 PURPOSE

This volume portrays the operational actions of three separate controller positions in today's environment from the controller's viewpoint. It includes an introduction (Section 1), brief supplementary information to Volume I pertaining to the analysis methodology used for ATCT controllers (Section 2), and a series of appendices presenting the data developed by this analysis.

The three ATCT controller positions addressed in these operations concepts are Local Controller, Ground Controller, and Clearance Delivery/ Flight Data. Though there is considerable variation between Towers in the size and composition of staffing, there is always a Local Control function, a Ground Control function, a Clearance Delivery function, and a Flight Data function. Frequently, Clearance Delivery and Flight Data are combined and for the present analyses it is appropriate to simplify the crew structure into Local, Ground, and Clearance Delivery / Flight Data positions. This is a common crew composition at moderate-sized towers. Other controller positions sometimes found at larger towers, such as assistant local controller, helicopter control, gate hold, or second local or ground control, are considered as performing tasks within the scope of Local, Ground, and Clearance Delivery / Flight Data.

1.2 ANALYSIS METHODOLOGY

Section 2 of this volume discusses special features of the analysis methodology that are applicable to the operations concept and task analyses for Tower Cab Controllers. A detailed discussion of the analysis methodology is found in Volume I, Section 3.

The focus of the methodology is on the interaction between the controller and Tower equipment. The analysis excludes non-operational tasks such as administrative tasks and tasks related to training. Non-FAA controllers are not addressed.

Each Tower facility exhibits unique features. The amount and composition of the workload varies significantly from one facility to the next, and varies within a particular facility over time. Tasks that are performed frequently in one facility may be rare in another. Therefore, this analysis addresses a "generic" tower, where the operations are broad enough to capture all significant controller tasks performed. Tasks performed very infrequently by a typical controller are omitted, unless they are of overriding criticality when they occur.

1.3 APPENDICES

Data developed through the present analysis are contained in the following series of appendices to this volume and parallel the methodology discussion of Volume I, Section 3:

- Appendix A: Composition Graphs
- Appendix B: Task Statements
- Appendix C: User Interface Language

- Appendix D: Task Characterization Analyses
  - Task Information Requirements
  - Cognitive/Sensory Attributes
  - Performance Requirements
- Appendix E: Task Element Statements
- Appendix F: Traceability Tables
- Appendix G: Site Visit Information
- Appendix H: Expanded Operational Scenarios

1.4 ASSUMPTIONS

The assumptions for this analysis are as described in Volume I, Section 1.5. No new assumptions are identified.

1.5 DOCUMENT INTERFACE

The operations concepts and task analyses contained in this volume were developed from the methodology defined in Volume I. Thus, Volume I is necessary for full understanding of the analysis methods used to develop the data in this volume, and the following Volume I appendices should be referred to for topical material relevant to the present analysis:

- Appendix A: Air Traffic Events (See subsection 1.6 below)
- Appendix C: Verb Glossary (Task, Element)
- Appendix D: Glossary of Terms
- Appendix F: ATC Task Element Modules
- Appendix G: References (See subsection 1.7 below)
- Appendix H: Acronyms (See subsection 1.8 below)

1.6 AIR TRAFFIC EVENTS

Two ATC "Event Definitions" have been altered during this analysis. These two events are defined here until the changes can be incorporated in Volume I, Appendix A.

ACCC (ISSS, TAAS, HOST, ARTS RADAR DATA PROCESSING) FAILURE: Although redundant units are built into the system, it may be possible to experience a complete loss of the computer system or of some critical component. In this event, in AAS, it may be necessary for an adjacent facility to assume some control jurisdiction, or for TCCCs to function in Stand-Alone Mode. A TCCC also will function in Stand-Alone Mode if the interface between the ACCC / ISSS / TAAS and the TCCC is lost.

AIRCRAFT - AIRCRAFT CONFLICT: This is the most critical event in air traffic control. The controller may detect the potential conflict or may receive a system-generated message alert that two aircraft are in conflict. This event generally implies airborne aircraft, but may also occur between two aircraft on an airfield surface.

Four new ATC events were added to the "Event Definitions" list during this analysis. These events are defined here until they can be incorporated in Volume I, Appendix A.

ABORTED TAKEOFF: Termination of a preplanned aircraft takeoff.

AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF: The occasion when an aircraft becomes airborne, comparable to its departure time.

AIRFIELD TRAFFIC: The ground equivalent of airborne traffic to denote the presence and movement of aircraft and vehicles on an airfield surface.

AIRSPACE / MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION: Notice to restrict activity in airspace or movement area. A section of airspace normally available for use may be closed temporarily due to some incident such as a dangerous fire or potential explosion underlying it. Similarly, a movement area or portion of it may be closed to accommodate some temporary obstruction or ground activity such as construction.

GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION: Tower controllers may observe and become aware of a deviation by an aircraft or ground vehicle from its approved course throughout the movement area.

1.7 REFERENCES

An additional document was utilized for these operations concepts and task analyses that is not listed in the Volume I, Appendix G, References. This document is listed here until it can be incorporated in Volume I. Reference citations in this volume are by number and between brackets [ ]. To distinguish between references in this volume and Volume I , an asterisk (*) is used with the reference number in this volume.

*1. Federal Aviation Administration (1987). *Operational position standards* (Order 7220.2). Washington, DC: Author.

1.8 ACRONYMS

Several terms have been encountered in the development of this volume that are not covered by Appendix H (Acronyms) of Volume I. These terms are listed here until they can be incorporated in Volume I.

ACID	Aircraft Identification
AIM	Airman's Information Manual
ALS	Approach Lighting System
ALT	Altitude
APGU	Azimuth Pulse Generator Unit
ARR	Arrival
ASI	Altimeter Setting Indicator
ATCS	Air Traffic Control Specialist
AWF	Aviation Weather Forecast
AZ	Azimuth
CAMI	Civil Aeromedical Institute
CRT	Cathode Ray Tube
DASI	Digital Altimeter Setting Indicator
DEP	Departure
ENR	En Route
EOVM	Emergency Obstruction Video Map
E-W	East - West (right - left)
FFM	Far Field Monitor
FFR	Far Field Remote
GSI	General Systems Information
ICSS	Integrated Communications Switching System
IDS	Information Display System
ILS	Instrument Landing System
INS	Inspect
IR	Interrogator - Receiver
LA	Low Altitude
MTI	Moving Target Indicator
MWL	Message Waiting Light
NDB	Nondirectional Radio Beacon
N-S	North - South (up - down)
PDT	Proposed Departure Time
PEM	Position Entry Module
PPI	Plan Position Indicator
PTD	Proposed Time of Departure
REIL	Runway End Identifier Lights
RVV	Runway Visibility Value
SAIDS	Systems Atlanta Information Display System
SOP	Standard Operating Procedures (Practice)
SYS	System
TCDD	Tower Cab Digital Display
UTC	Universal Coordinated Time
VDT	Video Display Terminal

Section 2

Methodology

SECTION 2

METHODOLOGY

2.1 GENERAL PROCESS

The analyses of ATCT Local, Ground, and Clearance Delivery/Flight Data positions follow the order of methodology described in Volume I, Section 3. The TCCC operations concepts and task analyses reported in Volume V were used as a baseline and compared with National Airspace System documents (including FAA Academy materials, FAA Orders), site visits, and controller recommendations.

TCCC tasks were reviewed, revised, and deleted as necessary. Additional tasks appropriate to current Tower operations were then added. The resulting tasks are represented in the respective positional sub-activity Composition Graphs in Appendix A. Each Composition Graph includes a trace associating each sub-activity to specific ATC events. All graphs were subjected to thorough review for completeness and logic. A tabular listing of all tasks is presented in Appendix B.

Controller input messages and display output messages are derived from the current Tower equipment documents, and current practice. These messages are incorporated in the User Interface Language (UIL) of Appendix C. This listing includes physical output message displays, whether or not driven by system output. Thus, printed and written material, radar console display (BRITE/BANS) outputs, Flight Data Input/Output (FDIO) outputs, and other equipment outputs are cited as message sources. This retains the parallelism to the automated displays of the TCCC.

Characterizations of each task are accomplished in terms of task type, information requirements, frequency and criticality ratings, cognitive/sensory attributes, and performance criteria. These are reported in the three task characterizations of Appendix D. Information requirements are updated to the current User Interface Language of Appendix C.

Each task is decomposed to its constituent procedural steps and actions. These actions, called "elements," represent the lowest level description of controller-machine interaction with respect to current system procedures. The Task Element tables are contained in Appendix E.

Traceability is maintained between operational tasks and specific procedures documented in FAA Orders 7110.65 [18] and 7210.3 [19]. The results of this trace, along with a report of "orphan" tasks not traced to the system procedures, are contained in Appendix F.

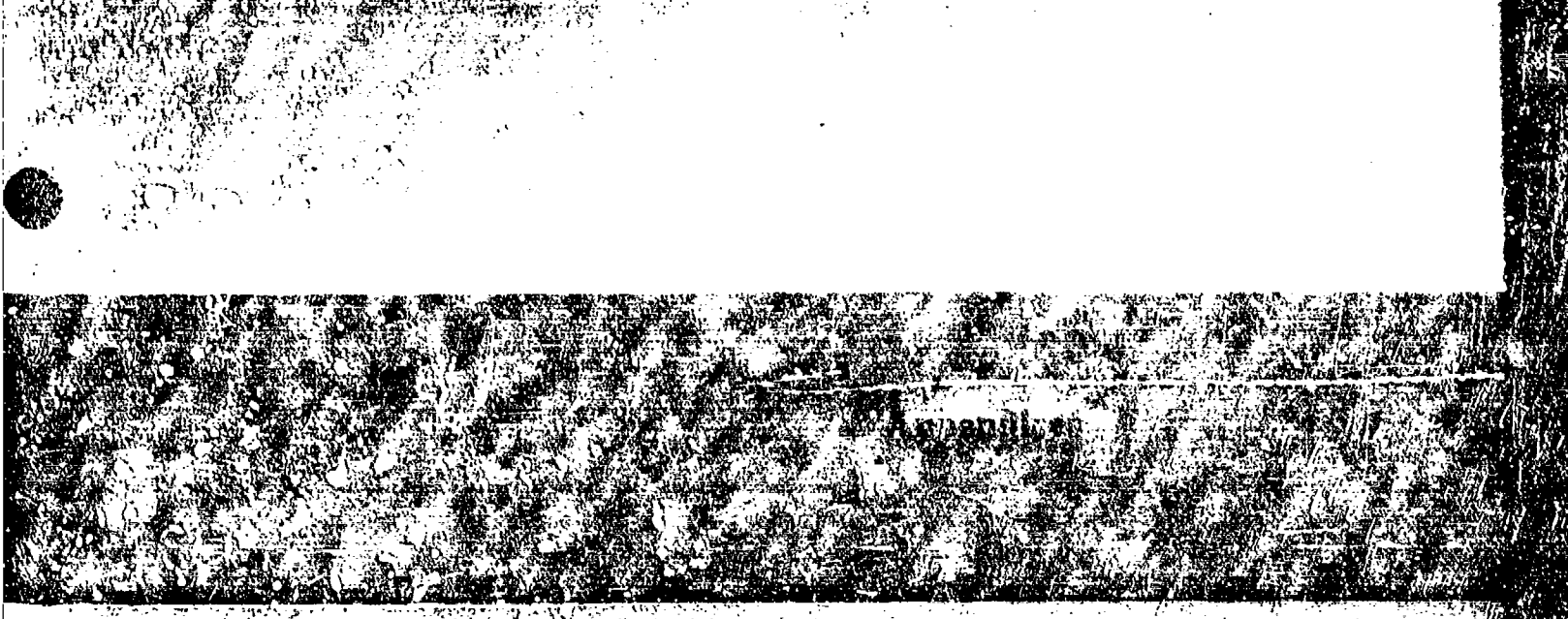
The composition graphs, task data, input / output messages, and task characterizations were subjected to review and validation by system users at the FAA Academy.

2.2 SPECIAL METHODOLOGY FEATURES

For these operations concepts and task analyses there were visits to 17 facilities. Controller operations were observed and controller interviews conducted at each location. Local procedural / training materials were acquired at most locations. In addition, information gathered from 14 sites previously visited during development of earlier operations concepts and task analyses was also considered. The procedural emphasis for the present volume was based on information reported during these site visits and information contained in existing documentation for today's tower

system. Appendix G reports the new site information.

This comprehensive task information, characterizations, elements, and requirements trace data base is managed by a software tool called the Computer-Human Operational Requirements Analysis System (CHORAS) [16]. This system enhances the consistency and completeness of the Operations Concept data when changes and updates are necessary.



Appendix A

Composition Graphs

APPENDIX A

COMPOSITION GRAPHS

This appendix contains the Composition Graphs for each of the 44 sub-activities of the Local Controller, for each of the 31 sub-activities of the Ground Controller, and for each of the 22 sub-activities of the Clearance Delivery/Flight Data Controller. These are grouped by six to seven higher-level activities for each position, with the first two digits indicating the pertinent Tower position.

Local:	T1.1	Perform Local Situation Monitoring
	T1.2	Resolve Conflict Situations
	T1.3	Manage Air Traffic Sequences
	T1.4	Route or Plan Flights
	T1.5	Assess Weather Impact
	T1.6	Manage Local Controller Position Resources
	T1.7	Respond to System / Equipment Degradation
Ground:	T2.1	Perform Ground Situation Monitoring
	T2.2	Control Aircraft / Vehicle Ground Movement
	T2.3	Route or Plan Flights
	T2.4	Assess Weather Impact
	T2.5	Manage Ground Controller Position Resources
	T2.6	Respond to System / Equipment Degradation
Clearance Delivery / Flight Data:	T3.1	Perform Clearance Delivery / Flight Data Situation Monitoring
	T3.2	Route or Plan Flights
	T3.3	Manage Air Traffic Sequences
	T3.4	Respond to Flow Constraints
	T3.5	Assess Weather Impact
	T3.6	Manage Clearance Delivery / Flight Data Controller Position Resources
	T3.7	Respond to System / Equipment Degradation

Each level of decomposition is represented graphically. The top-level graph of the position, showing all seven activities of the Local Controller position, immediately follows the Composition Graph Symbology figure. Activity Composition Graphs precede the set of sub-activity graphs making up that activity. There are 340 distinct Local Controller tasks incorporated within the 44 sub-activity Composition Graphs. The Composition Graphs for the other two controller positions follow a parallel sequence. Ground Controller tasks number 214, and tasks for the Clearance Delivery/Flight Data position number 136.

Sub-activities are linked (in most instances) to one or more ATC events which influence the accomplishment of the sub-activity. This linkage is identified in Appendix A at the beginning of each sub-activity.

Figure 3.2-1 of Volume I, Section 3 presents a simplified, one page example of a composition graph with its various features. As the graphs in this appendix show, the decomposition of sub-activities usually extends the graphs over several pages. This is caused by horizontal printed page limitations and the lengthy decomposition process. Thus, to depict multiple parallel branches / tasks, the CHORAS [16] software spreads the decomposition either horizontally or vertically as necessary to accurately depict the decomposition in a logical sequence.

The symbology used in the Composition Graphs is portrayed in Figure A-1. In addition to logical flow and path conditionals, the sub-activity Composition Graphs show the coordination which forms a large part of the controller's job. For each task involving coordination and communication with others, the top row of the task statement boxes is annotated with the coordination points that may apply. These may be other positions or other agencies or facilities. The task box also depicts, at the bottom row, the media by which that coordination may be accomplished. Figure A-1 also identifies the abbreviations employed for each coordination point and for each communication medium. The use of the Voice Communications (V) medium implies any voice means, either by Tower Communications Equipment (TCE) or use of direct person-to-person talking when the recipient is within hearing distance. Because a task may appear as part of more than one sub-activity, the coordination data encompass all cases; not all coordination points or media may apply in a particular sub-activity occurrence of a task, nor in all situations in which that sub-activity is performed on the job.

In some cases, a particular set of tasks may be relevant to many sub-activities. To save space and graphing complexity, these sets are designated as "macros" and a special graph symbol of an oval is used to depict that entire set of tasks. This shorthand feature is used for one such macro in this analysis. This is the macro of:

T1.0.0.0, Generate Clearance Macro (comprised of selected tasks from Sub-Activity T1.4.1, Planning Clearances, and Sub-Activity T1.4.9, Issuing Clearances).

The graphing layout of this macro appears following the top-level graph of position T1 activities, and preceding the full set of activity and sub-activity Composition Graphs for the Local Controller.

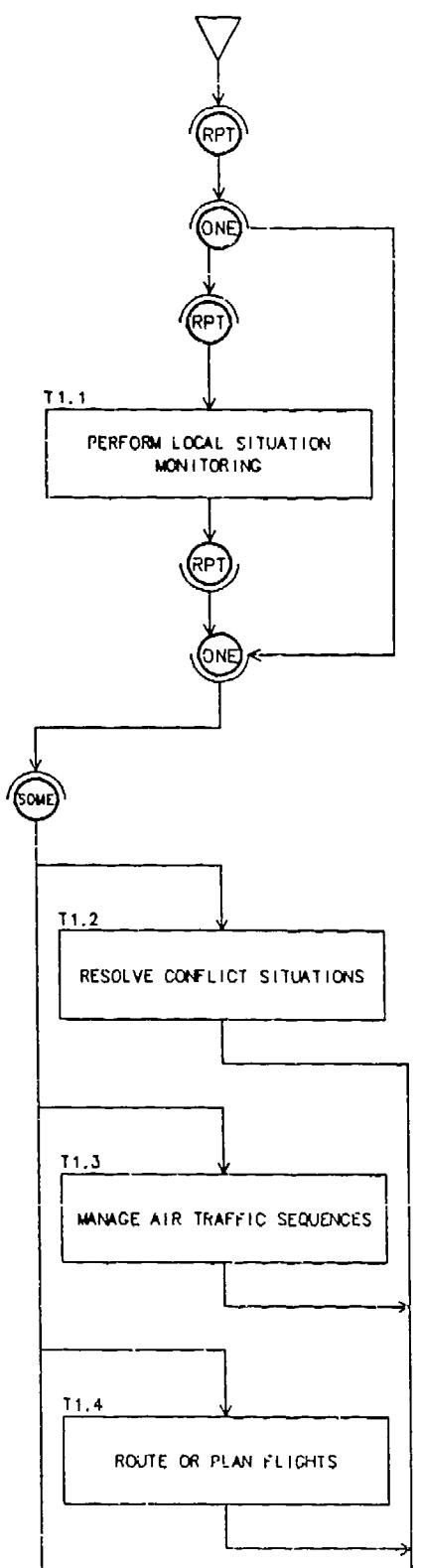
#	Controller tasks, with and without coordination positions/media. Number symbol in upper right of task box indicates a task duplicated from another sub-activity.
	SOME - Perform tasks or task sequences almost concurrently as required.
	REPEAT - Perform tasks or task sequences continuously/repetitively as required
	ONE - Perform only one of the alternative tasks or task sequences
	START/END
	GENERATE CLEARANCE MACRO

COORDINATION

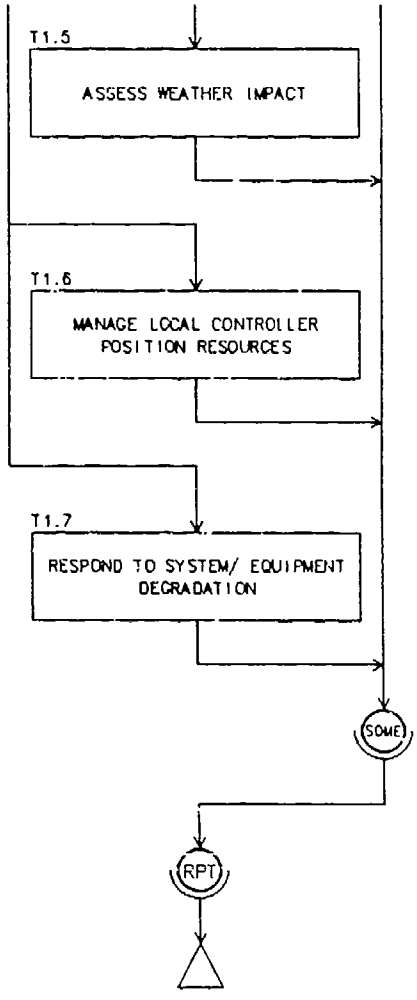
COORDINATING POSITIONS/AGENCIES	COORDINATION MEDIA
LC - Local Controller GC - Ground Controller CD - Clearance Delivery TS - Tower Supervisor CT - Center / Terminal Controller FS - Flight Service Station WS - Weather Service PI - Pilot VH - Vehicle Operator AS - Center / Terminal Area Supervisor AM - Center / Terminal Area Manager TM - Traffic Management Coordinator OC - Other Coordination MT - Meteorologist	V Voice Communication (TCE, Direct) M GI Message (text messages) F System Function Message (e.g., function key, structured text)

Figure A-1. Composition Graph Symbology

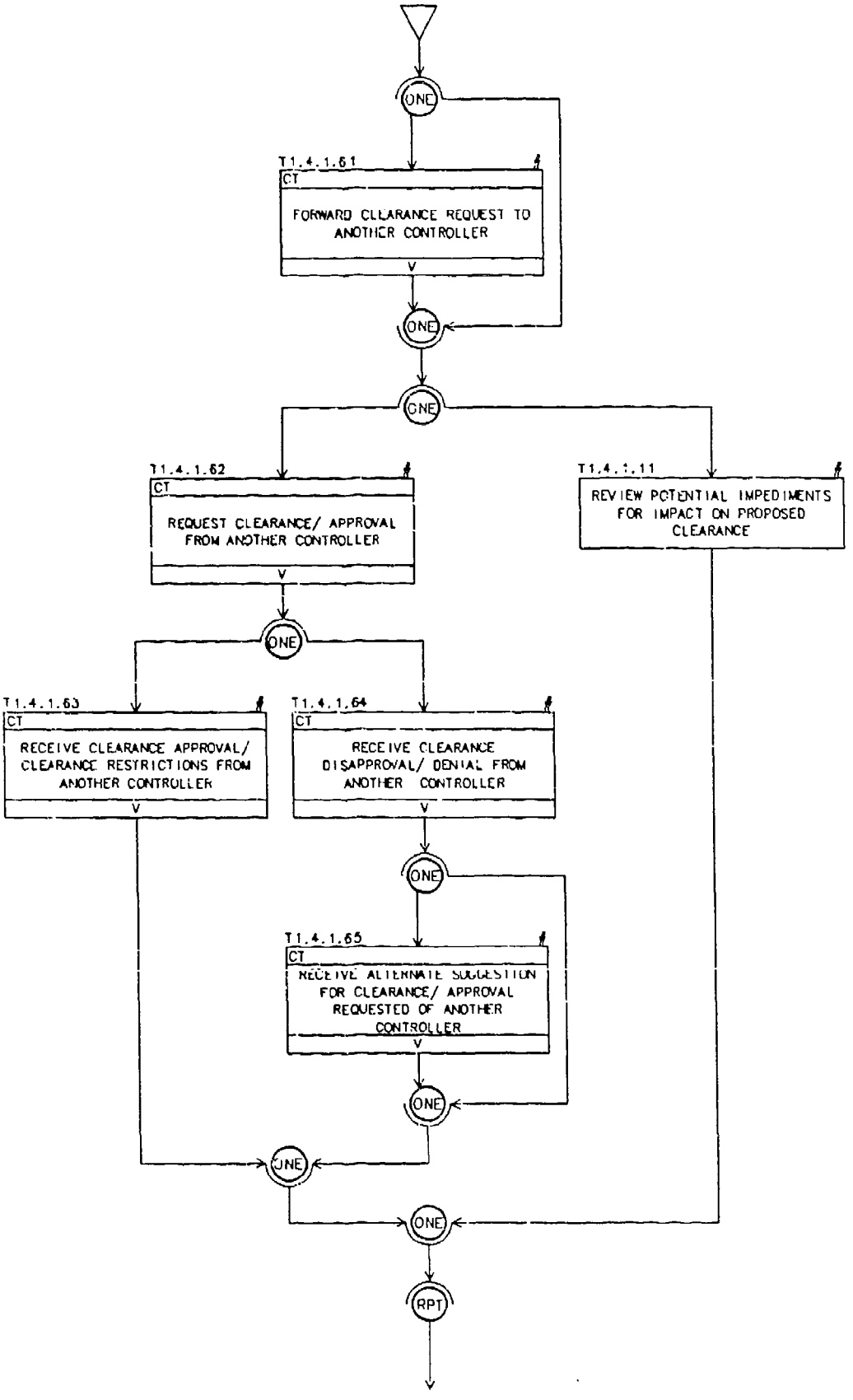
T1 LOCAL CONTROLLER

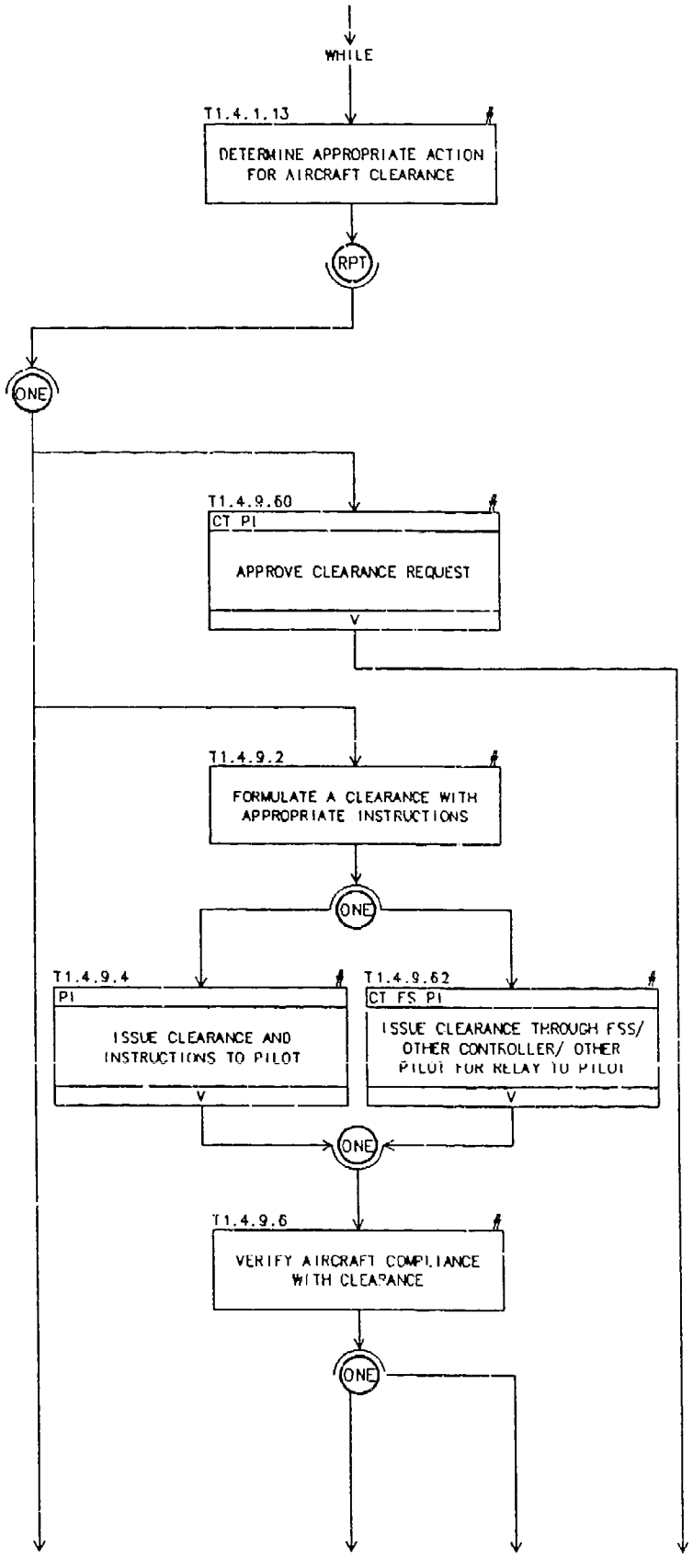


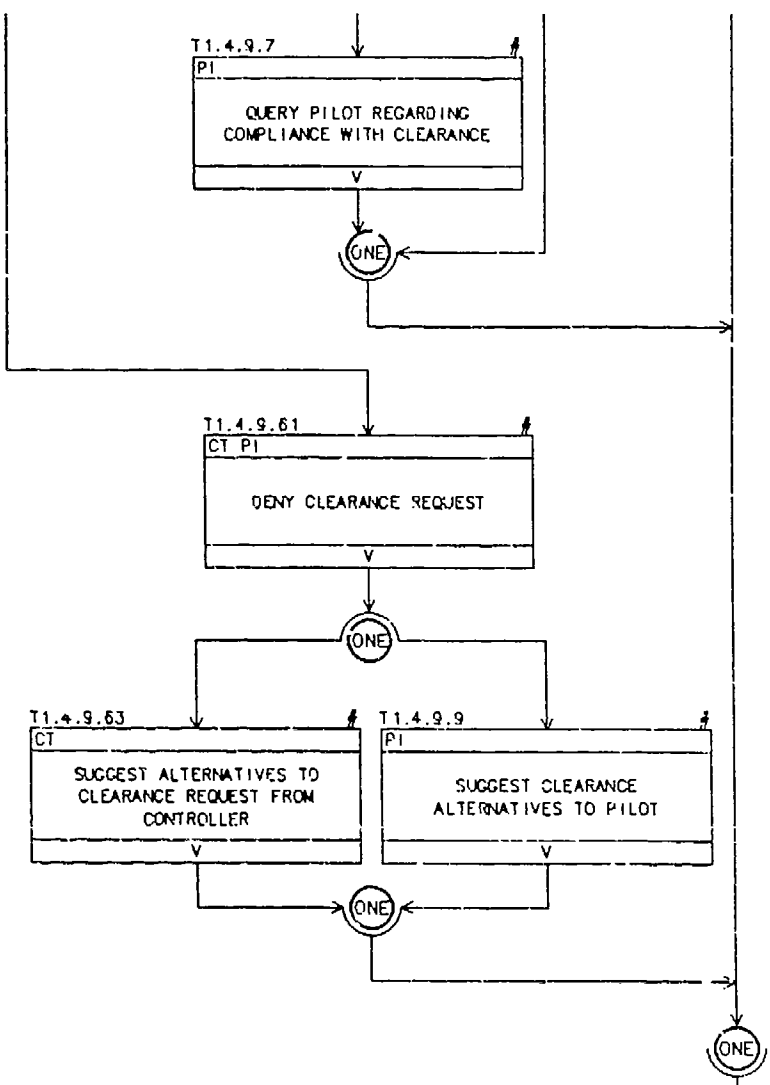
T1 LOCAL CONTROLLER (cont.)



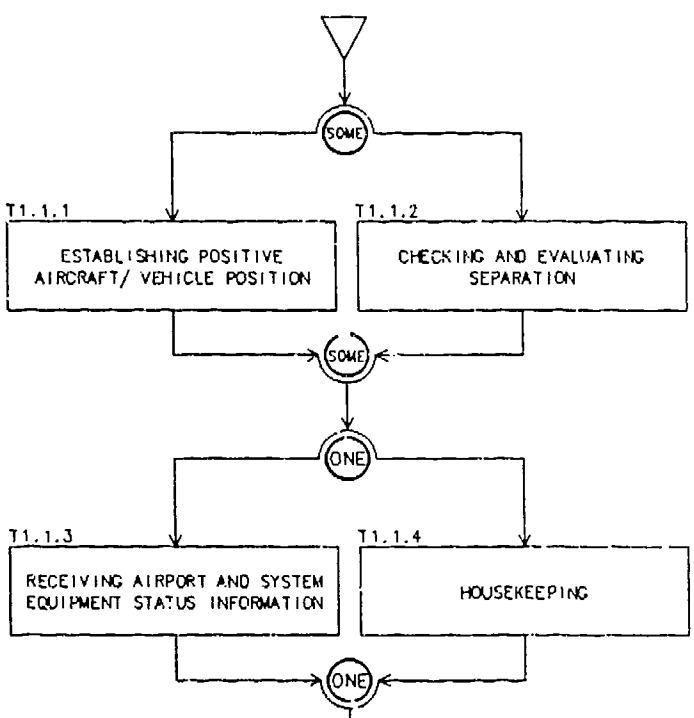
T1.0.0.0 GENERATE CLEARANCE




WHILE
T1.4.1.13
DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR AIRCRAFT CLEARANCE
RPT
ONE
T1.4.9.60
CT PI
APPROVE CLEARANCE REQUEST
T1.4.9.2
FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS
ONE
T1.4.9.4
PI
ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT
T1.4.9.62
CT FS PI
ISSUE CLEARANCE THROUGH FSS/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ OTHER PILOT FOR RELAY TO PILOT
ONE
T1.4.9.6
VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE
ONE

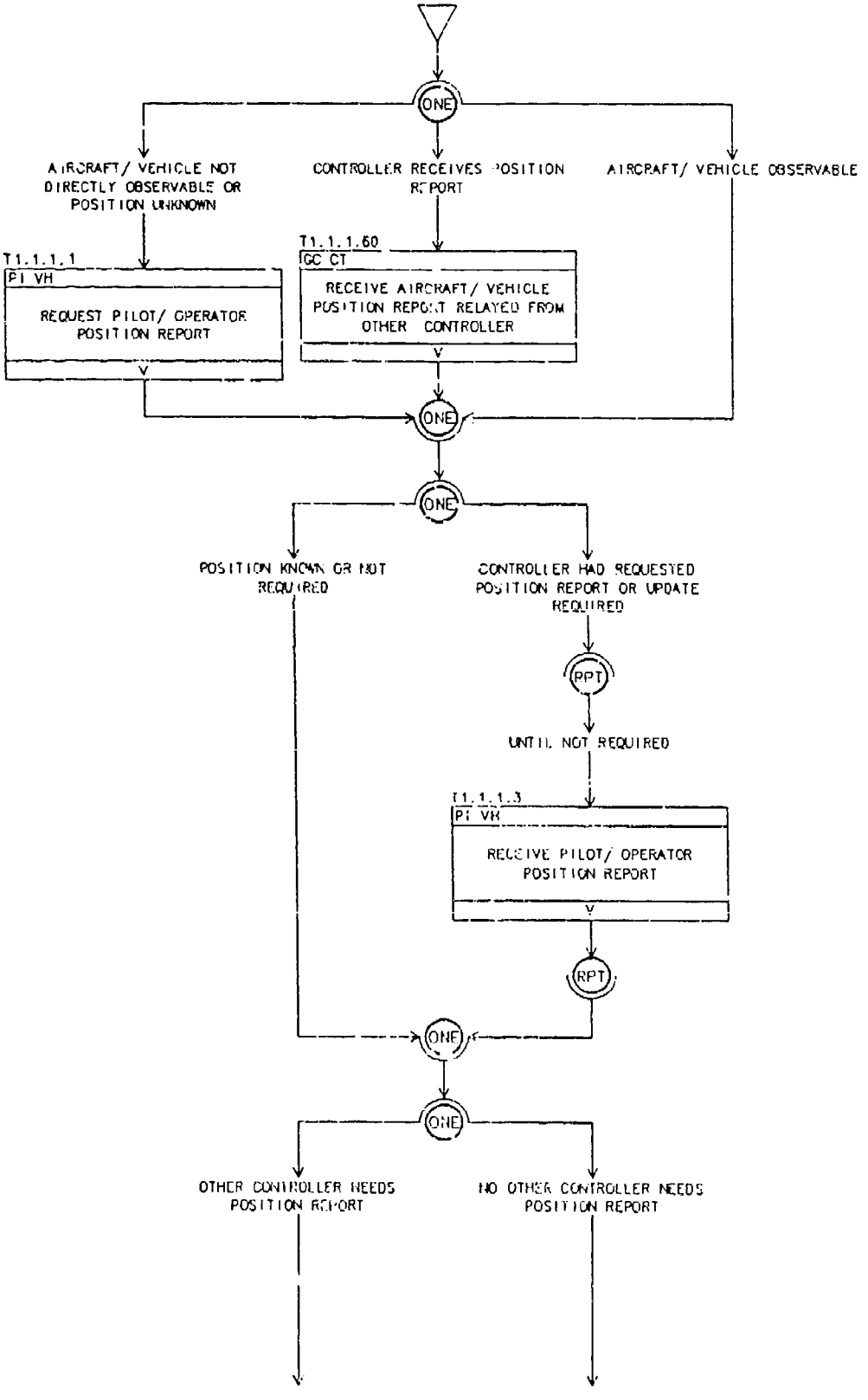

T1.4.9.7
P1
QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE
V
ONE
T1.4.9.61
CT P1
DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST
V
ONE
T1.4.9.63
CT
SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER
V
T1.4.9.9
P1
SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT
V
ONE
ONE

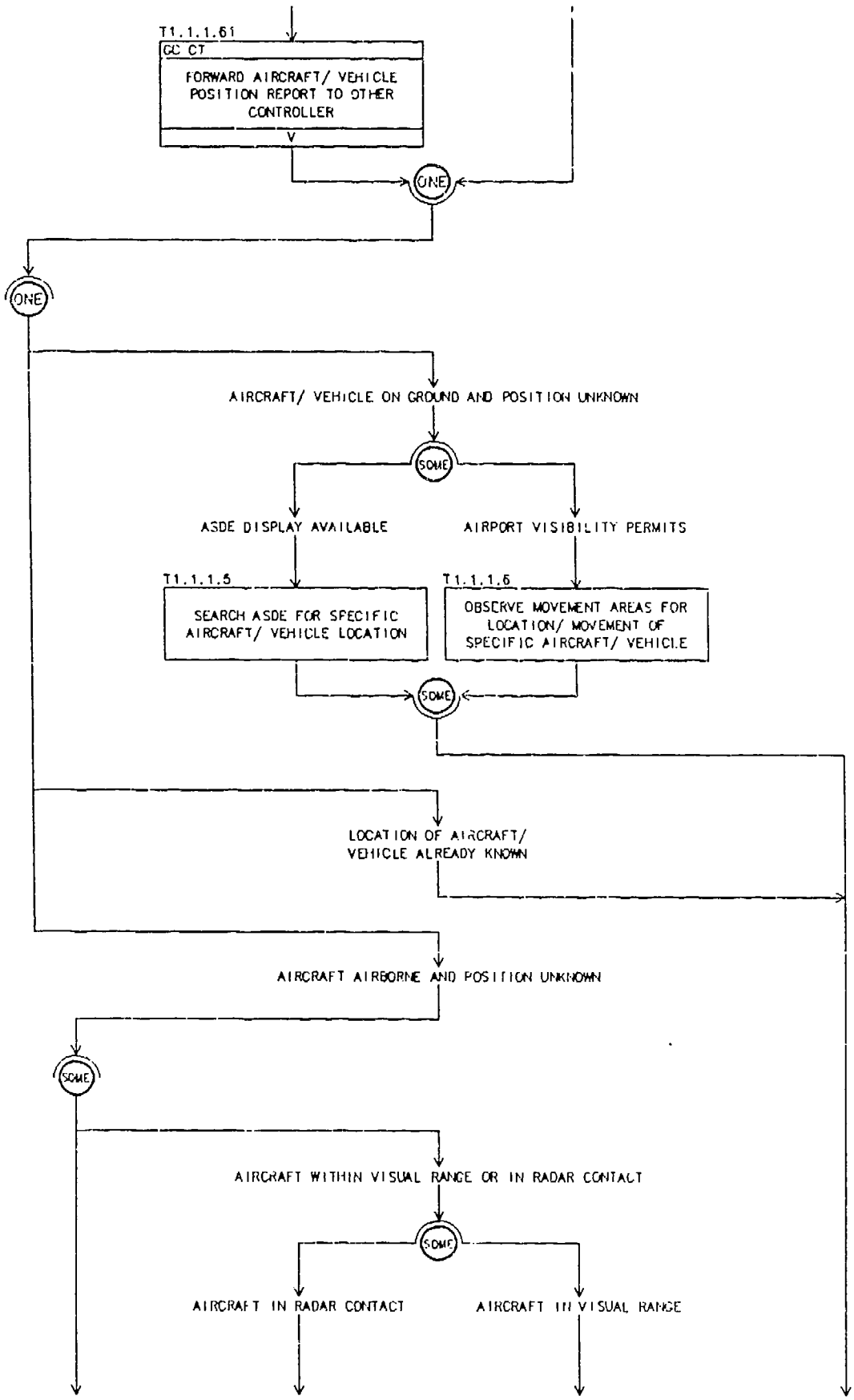
T1.1 PERFORM LOCAL SITUATION MONITORING

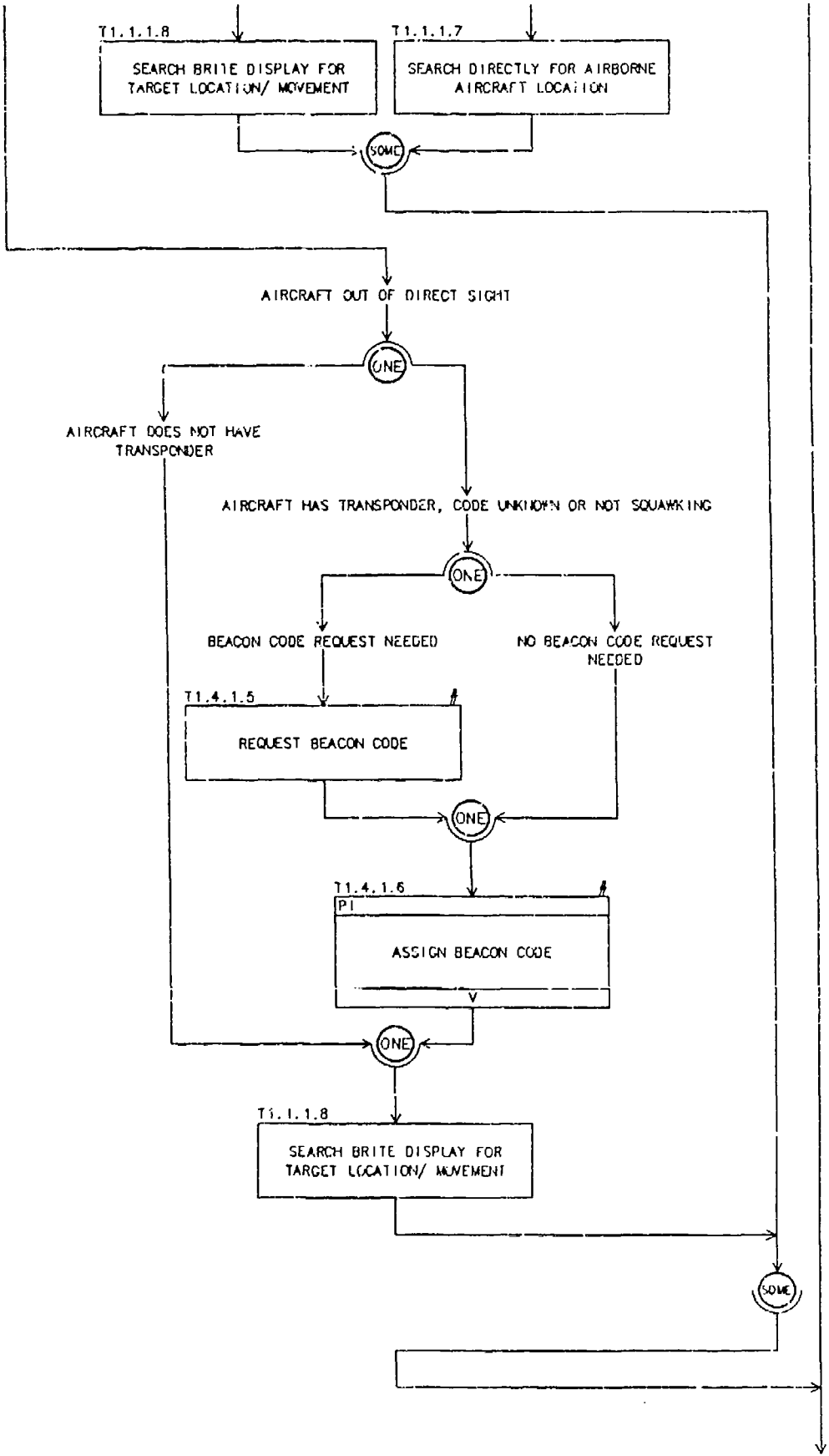


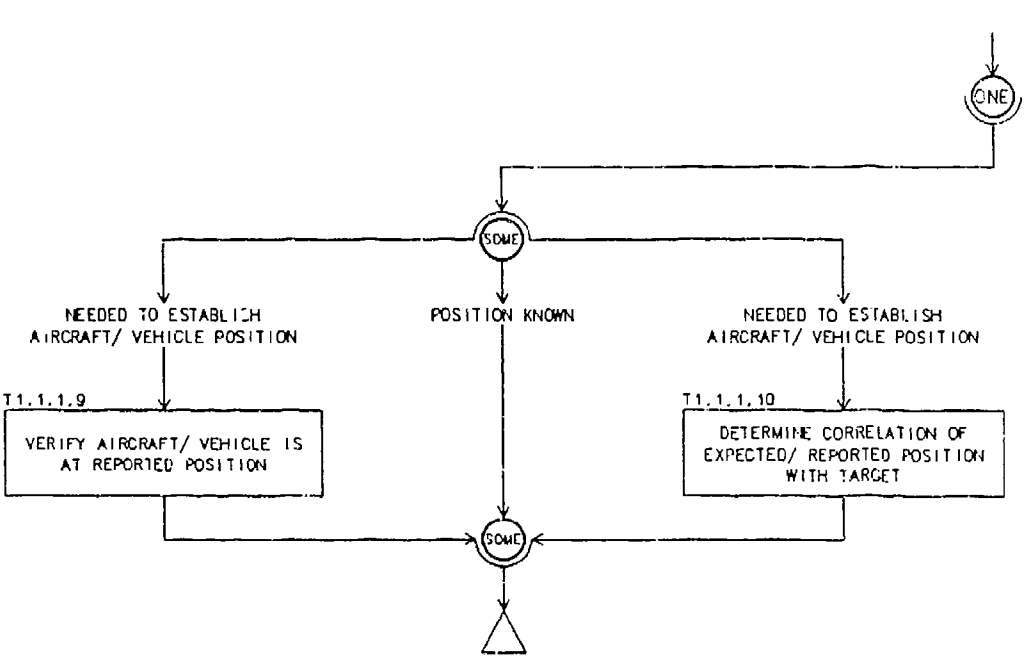
T1.1.1 ESTABLISHING POSITIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT ENTERS ATA, AIRFIELD TRAFFIC, AIRCRAFT ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY



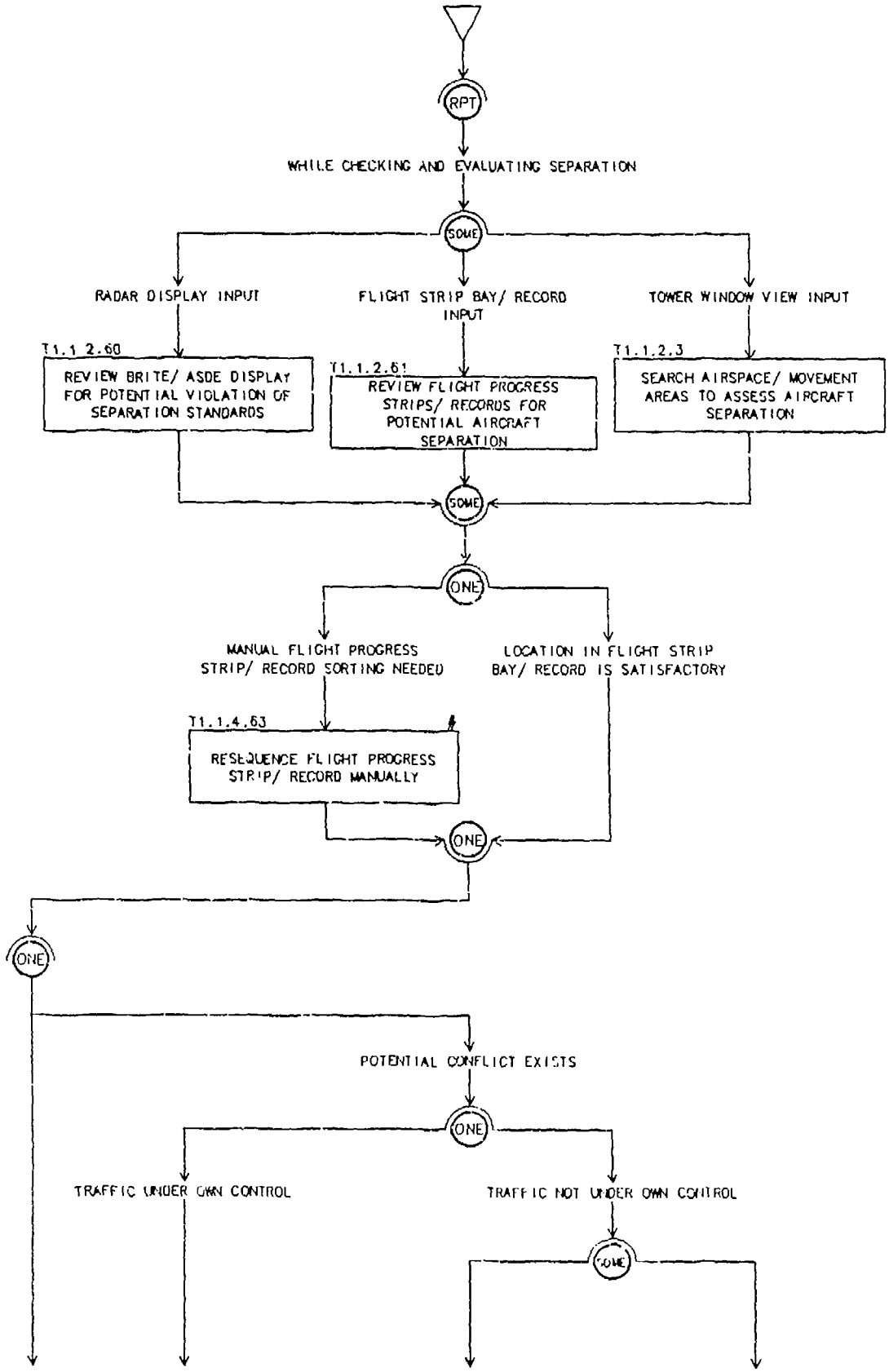

T1.1.1.61
GC CT
FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER
V
ONE
ONE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ON GROUND AND POSITION UNKNOWN
SOME
ASDE DISPLAY AVAILABLE
AIRPORT VISIBILITY PERMITS
T1.1.1.5
SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION
T1.1.1.6
OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREAS FOR LOCATION/ MOVEMENT OF SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE
SOME
LOCATION OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ALREADY KNOWN
AIRCRAFT AIRBORNE AND POSITION UNKNOWN
SOME
AIRCRAFT WITHIN VISUAL RANGE OR IN RADAR CONTACT
SOME
AIRCRAFT IN RADAR CONTACT
AIRCRAFT IN VISUAL RANGE

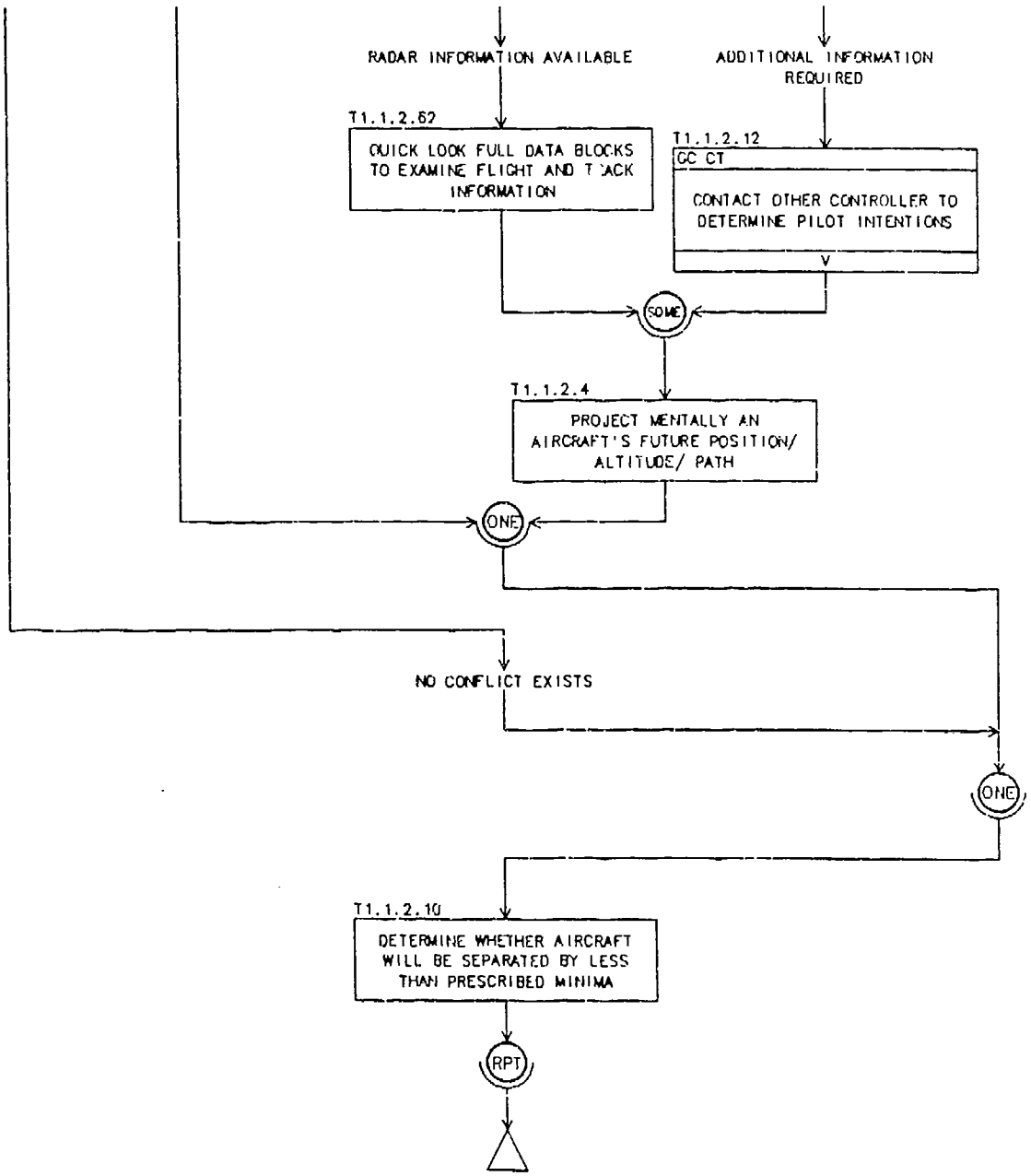

T1.1.1.8
SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT
T1.1.1.7
SEARCH DIRECTLY FOR AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT LOCATION
SOME
AIRCRAFT OUT OF DIRECT SIGHT
ONE
AIRCRAFT DOES NOT HAVE TRANSPONDER
AIRCRAFT HAS TRANSPONDER, CODE UNKNOWN OR NOT SQUAWKING
ONE
BEACON CODE REQUEST NEEDED
NO BEACON CODE REQUEST NEEDED
T1.4.1.5
REQUEST BEACON CODE
ONE
T1.4.1.6
PI
ASSIGN BEACON CODE
V
ONE
T1.1.1.8
SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT
SOME


ONE
SOME
NEEDED TO ESTABLISH AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION
POSITION KNOWN
NEEDED TO ESTABLISH AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION
T1.1.1.9
VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION
T1.1.1.10
DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET
SOME

T1.1.2 CHECKING AND EVALUATING SEPARATION

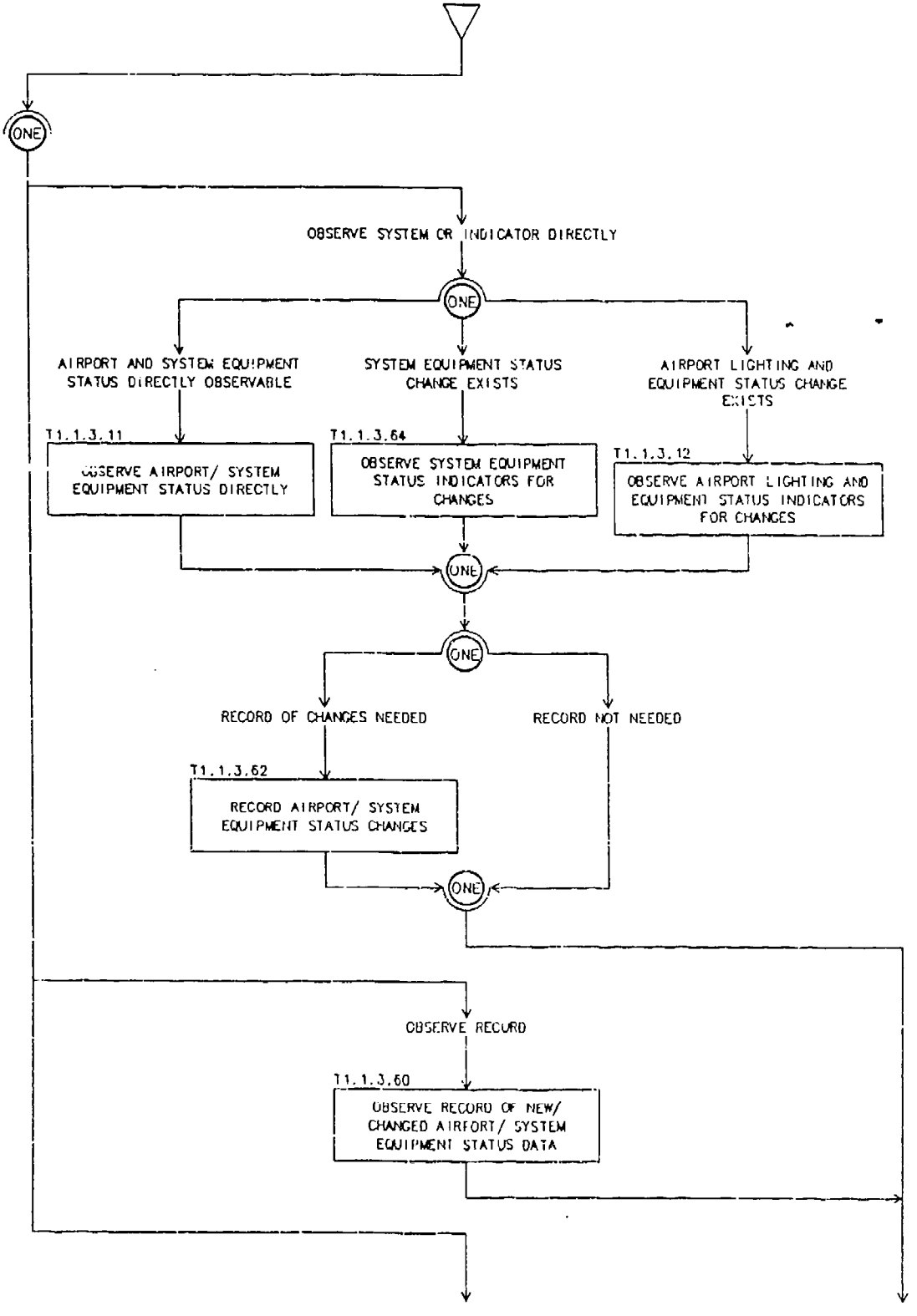
EVENTS: (MOST ALL EVENTS)

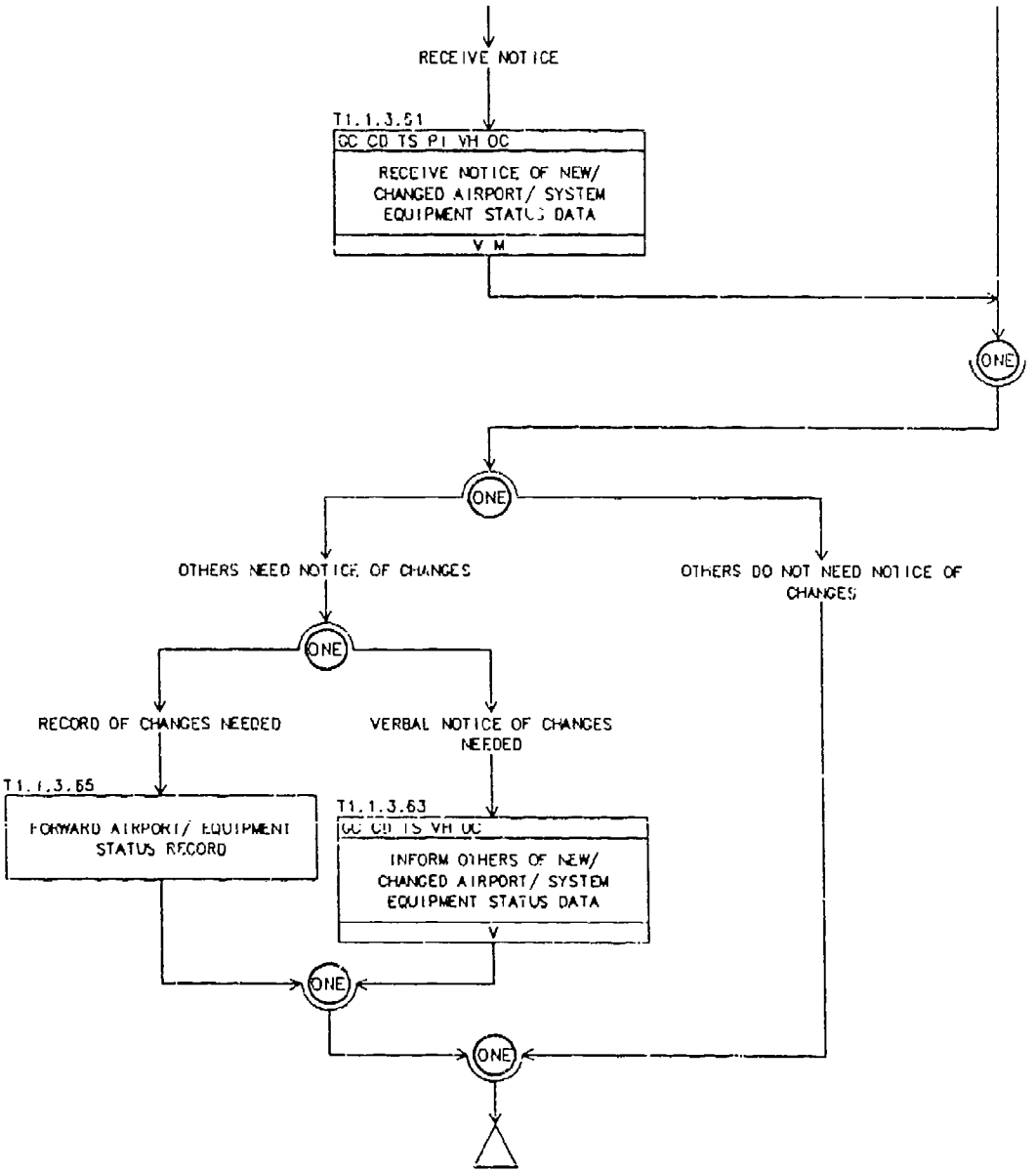



RADAR INFORMATION AVAILABLE
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION REQUIRED
T1.1.2.62
QUICK LOOK FULL DATA BLOCKS TO EXAMINE FLIGHT AND TRACK INFORMATION
T1.1.2.12
GC CT
CONTACT OTHER CONTROLLER TO DETERMINE PILOT INTENTIONS
V
SOME
T1.1.2.4
PROJECT MENTALLY AN AIRCRAFT'S FUTURE POSITION/ ALTITUDE/ PATH
ONE
NO CONFLICT EXISTS
ONE
T1.1.2.10
DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA
RPT

T1.1.3 RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION

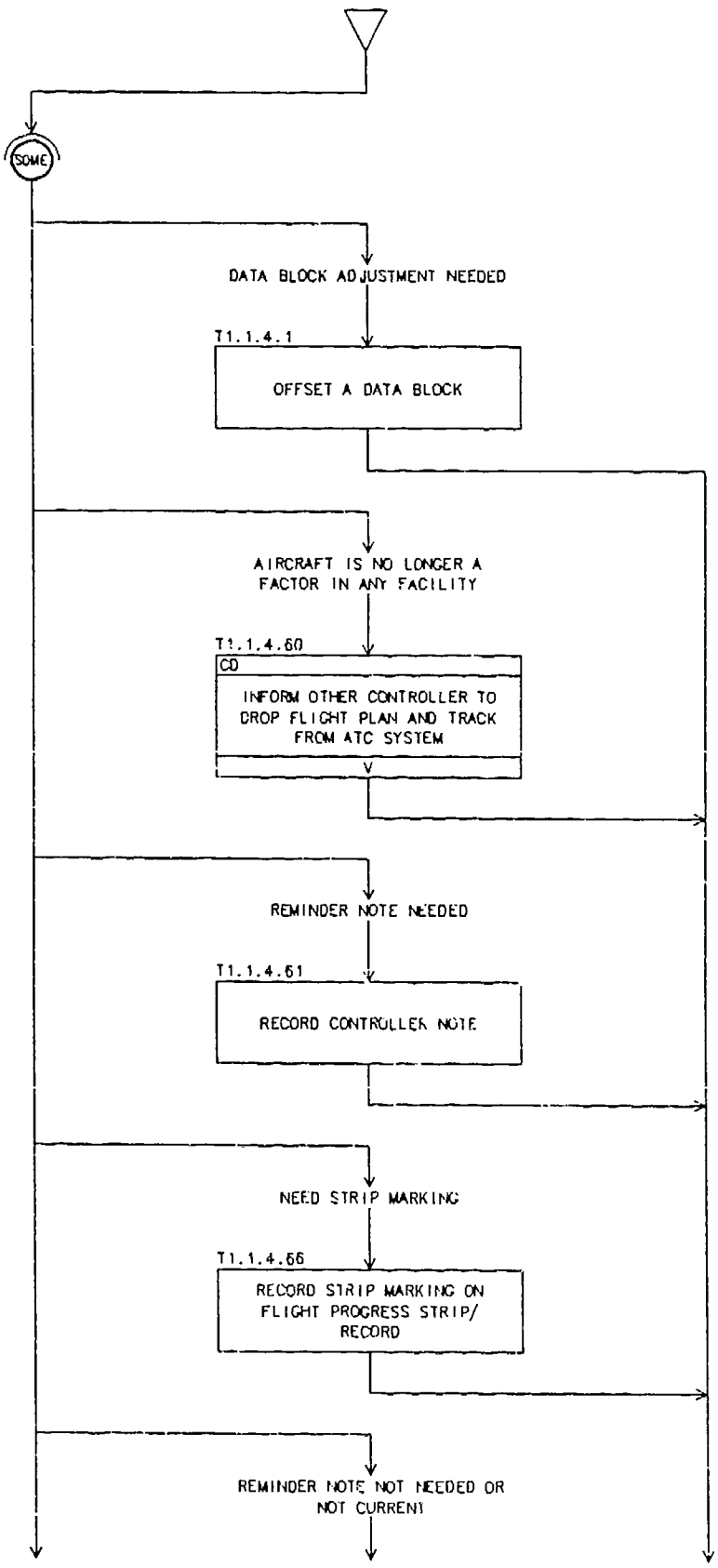
EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE, ARTS RADAR DATA PROCESSING FAILURE, COMMUNICATION FAILURE, NAVAID FAILURE, RADAR SURVEILLANCE SENSOR FAILURE, HOST COMPUTER FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE

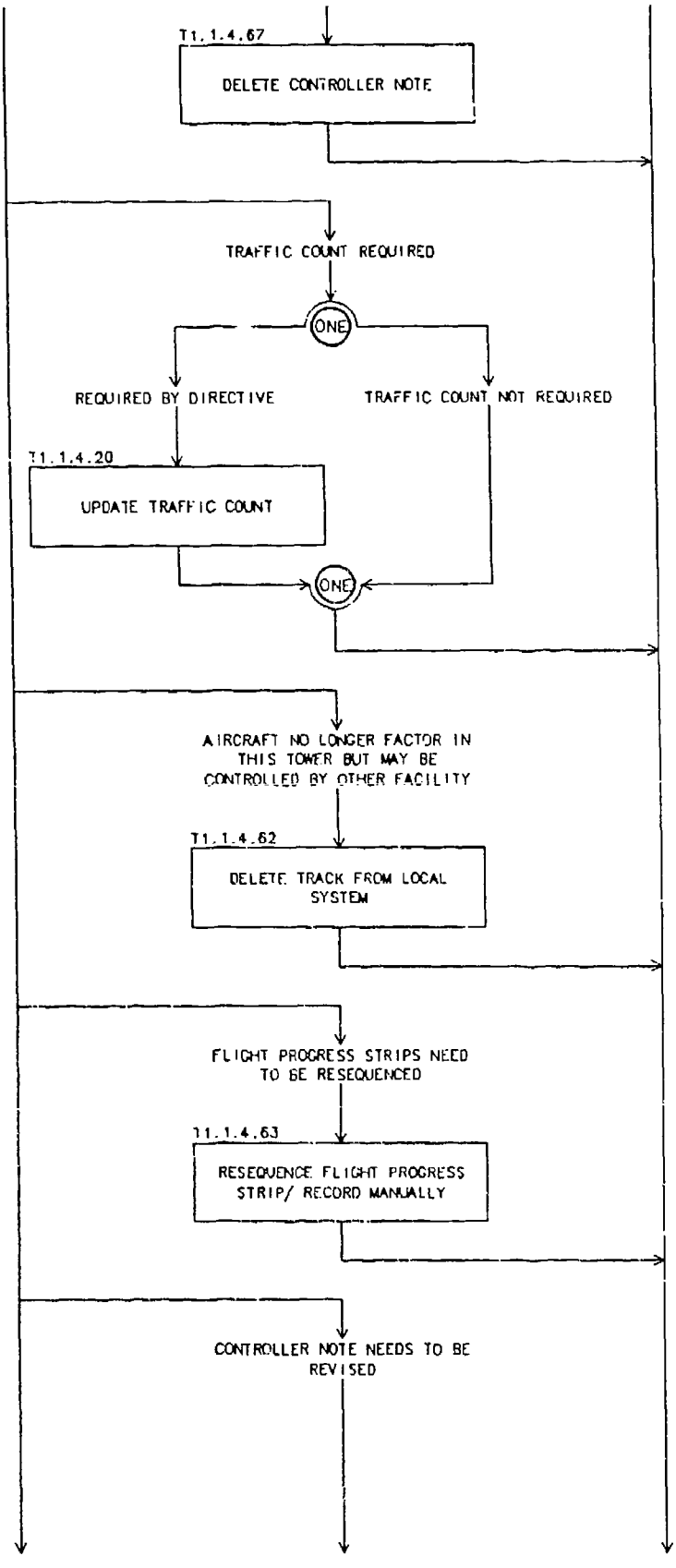


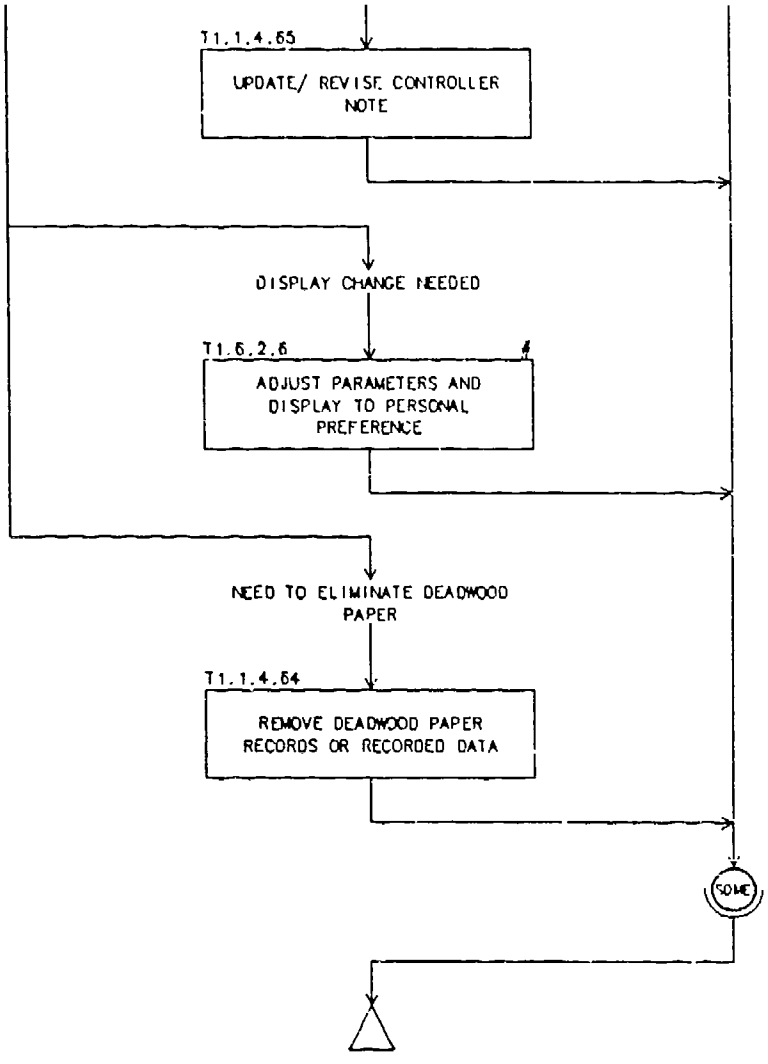

RECEIVE NOTICE
T1.1.3.51
GC CD TS PI VH OC
RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA
V M
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
ONE
RECORD OF CHANGES NEEDED
VERBAL NOTICE OF CHANGES NEEDED
T1.1.3.65
FORWARD AIRPORT/ EQUIPMENT STATUS RECORD
T1.1.3.63
GC CD TS VH OC
INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA
V
ONE
ONE

T1.1.4 HOUSEKEEPING

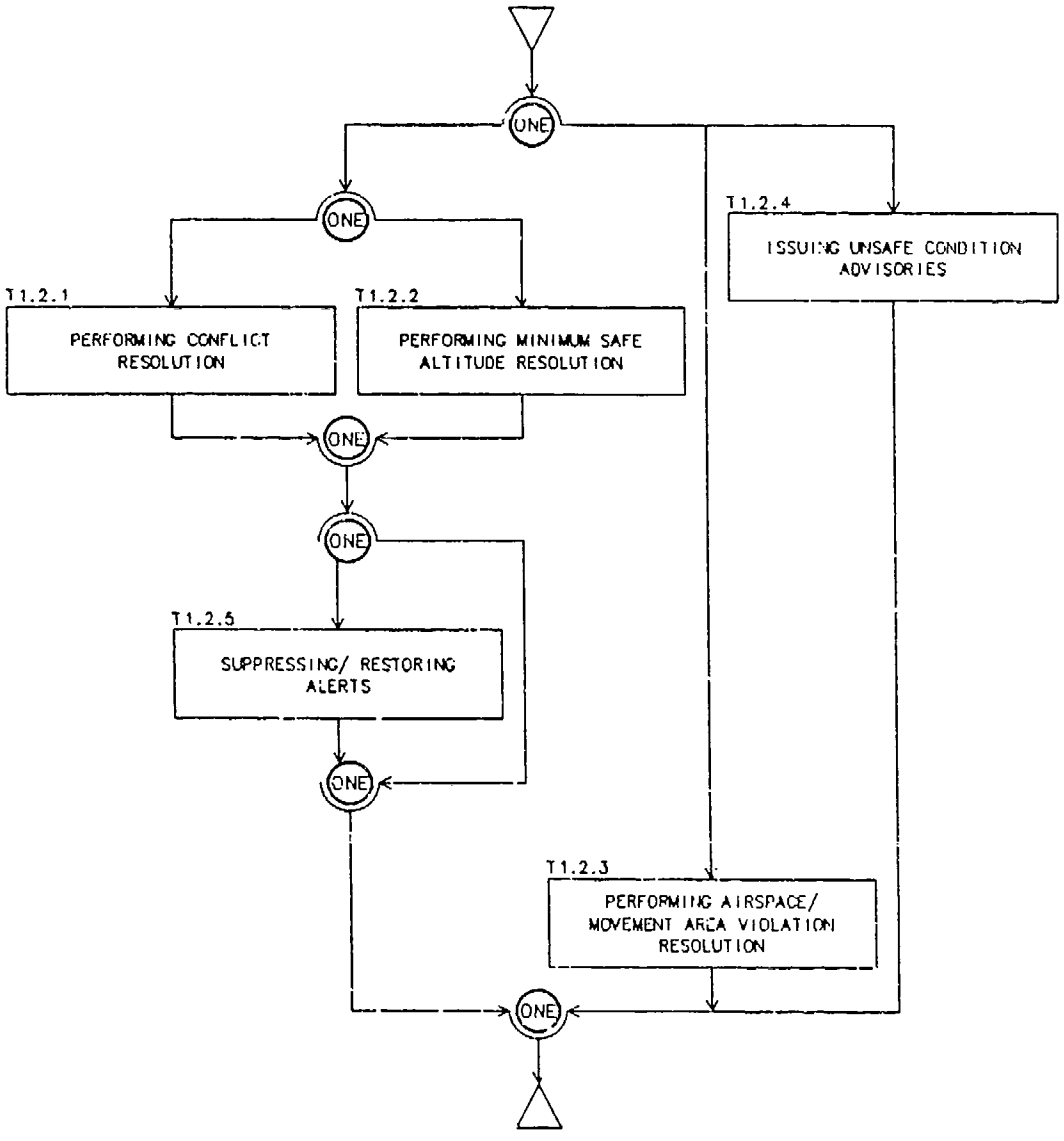
EVENTS: (NO SPECIFIC EVENT APPLICABLE)




T1.1.4.67
DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE
TRAFFIC COUNT REQUIRED
ONE
REQUIRED BY DIRECTIVE
TRAFFIC COUNT NOT REQUIRED
T1.1.4.20
UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT
ONE
AIRCRAFT NO LONGER FACTOR IN THIS TOWER BUT MAY BE CONTROLLED BY OTHER FACILITY
T1.1.4.62
DELETE TRACK FROM LOCAL SYSTEM
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS NEED TO BE RESEQUENCED
T1.1.4.63
RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY
CONTROLLER NOTE NEEDS TO BE REVISED

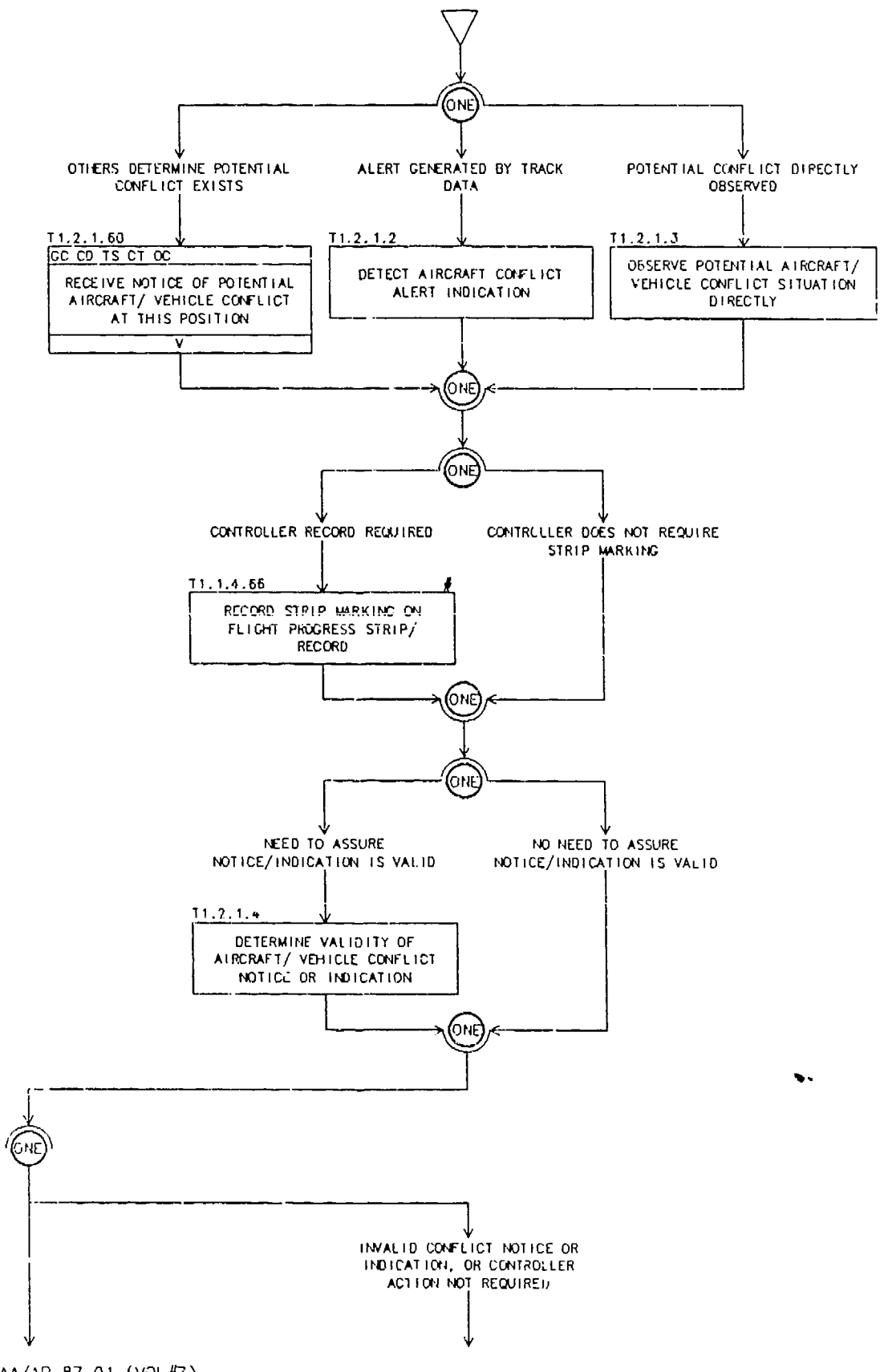

T1.1.4.65
UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE
DISPLAY CHANGE NEEDED
T1.6.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE
NEED TO ELIMINATE DEADWOOD PAPER
T1.1.4.64
REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA
SOME

T1.2 RESOLVE CONFLICT SITUATIONS

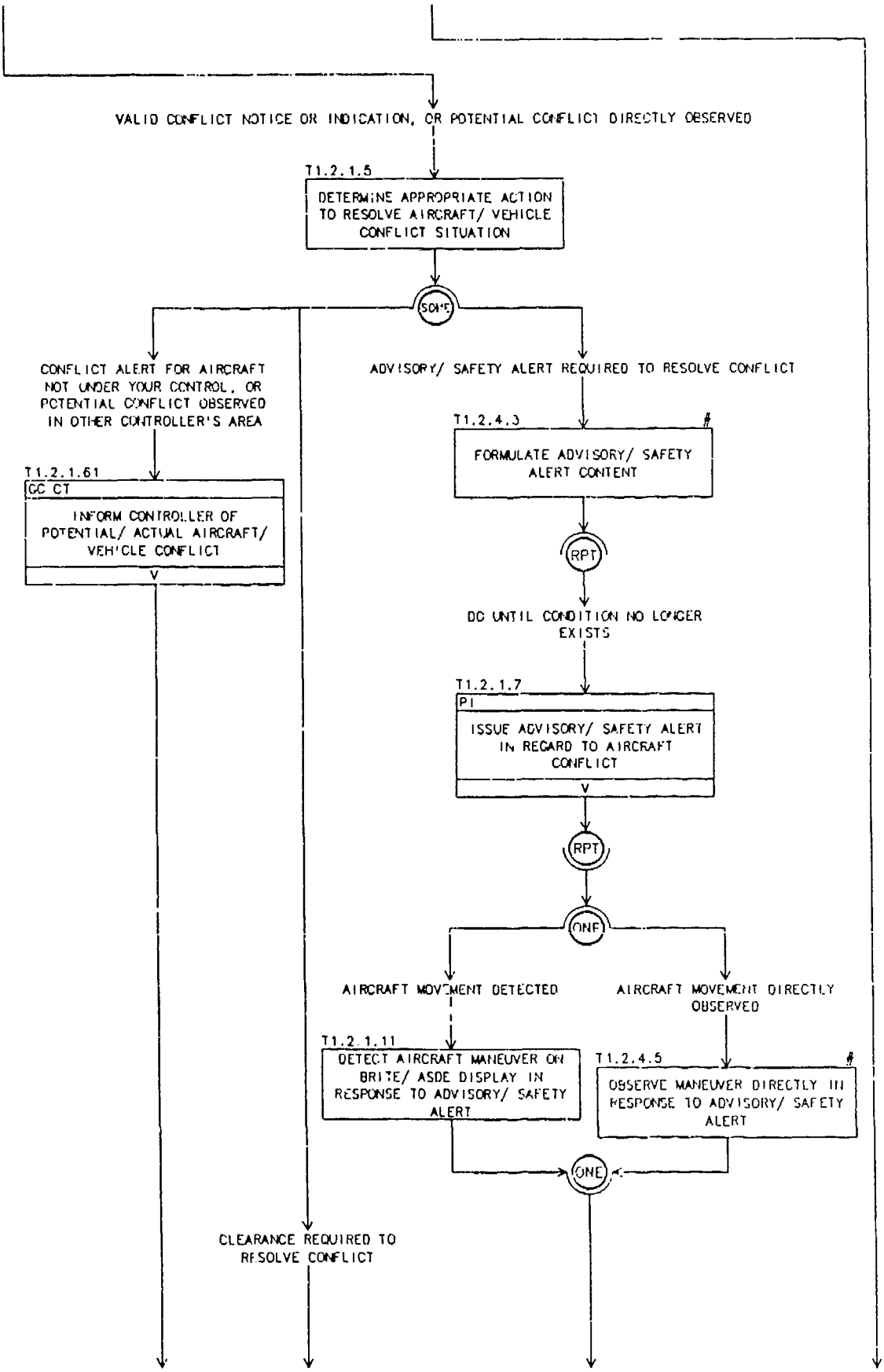


T1.2.1 PERFORMING CONFLICT RESOLUTION

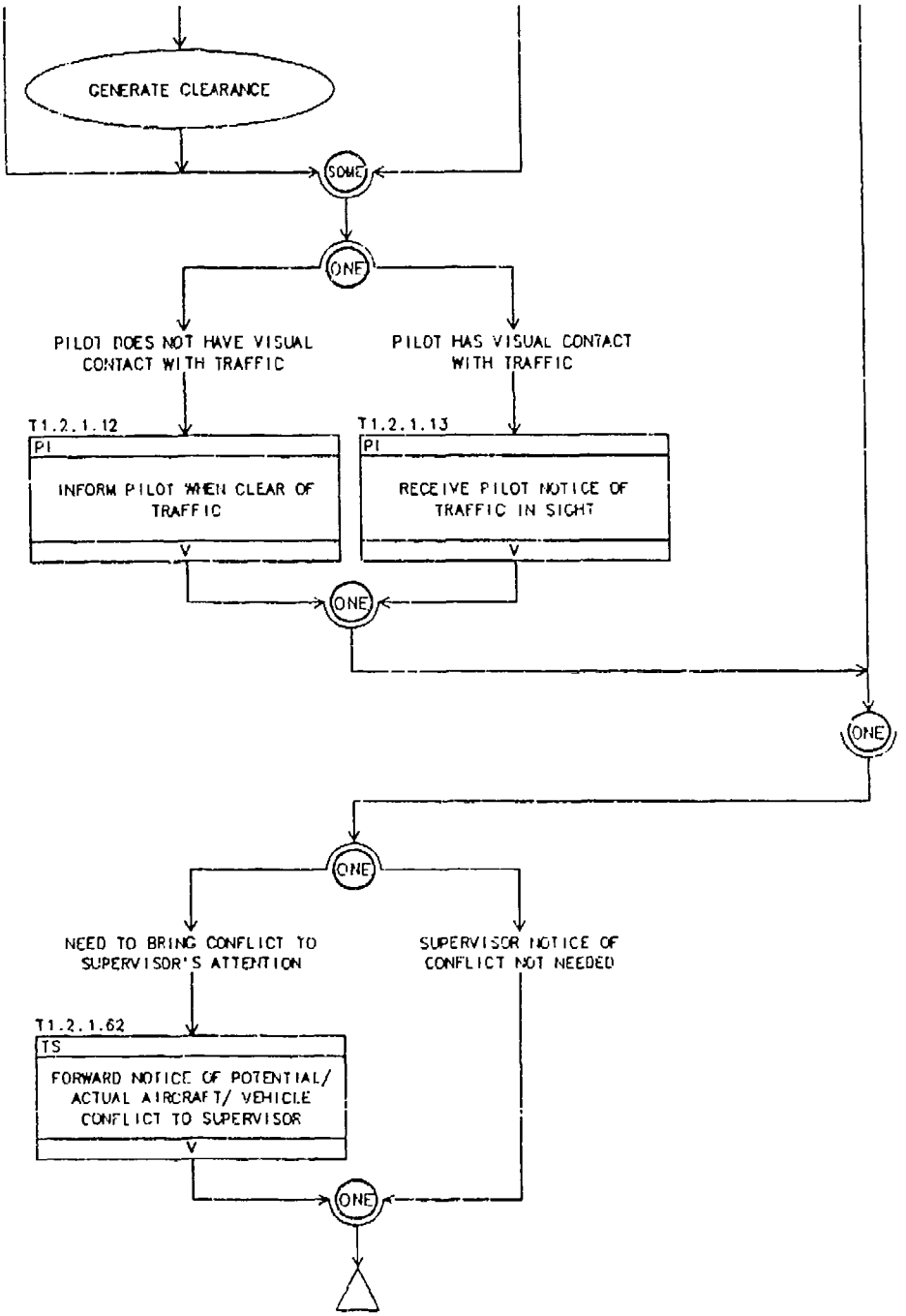
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT-AIRCRAFT CONFLICT, AIRCRAFT-VEHICLE CONFLICT



T1.2.1 PERFORMING CONFLICT RESOLUTION (cont.)

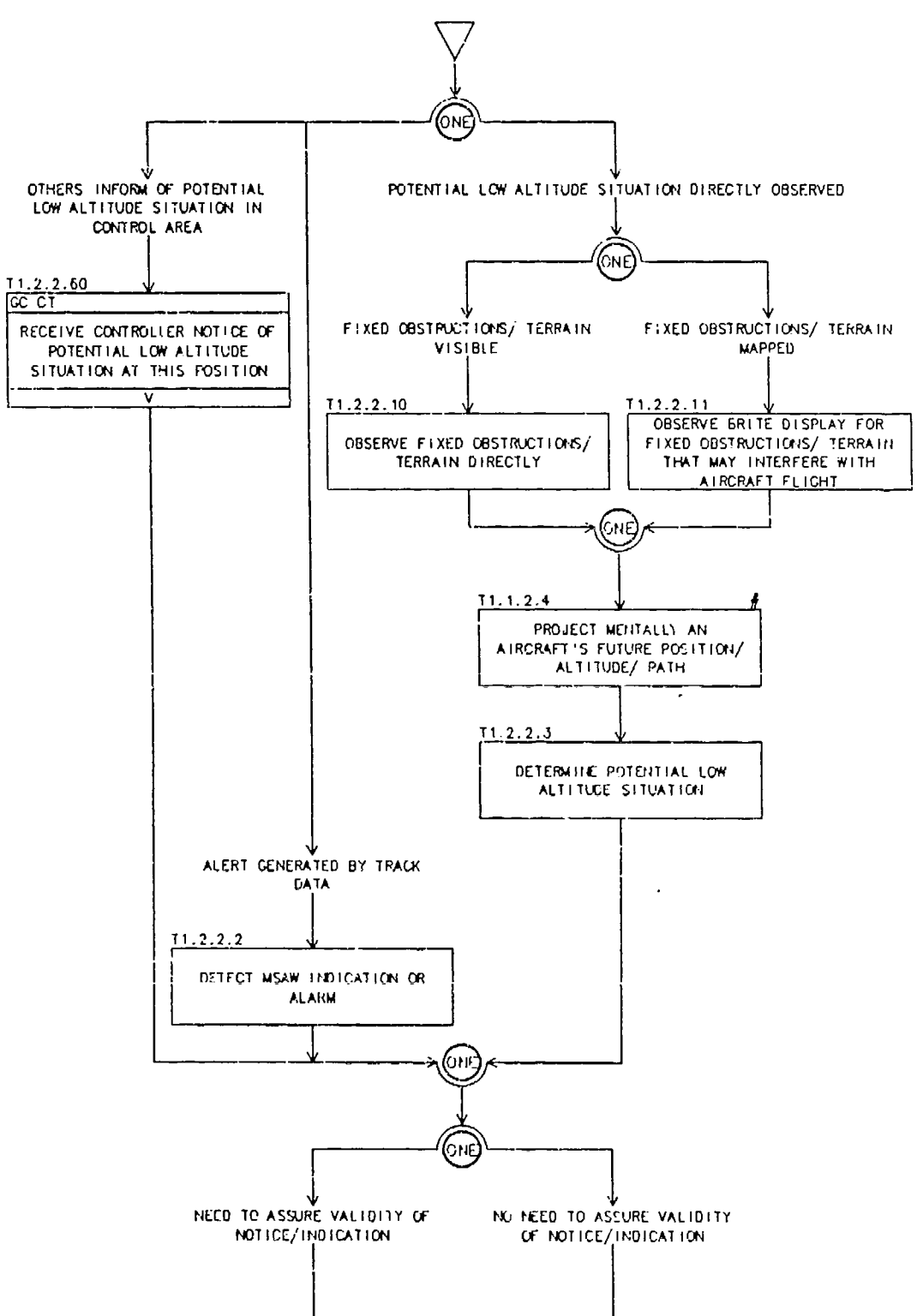


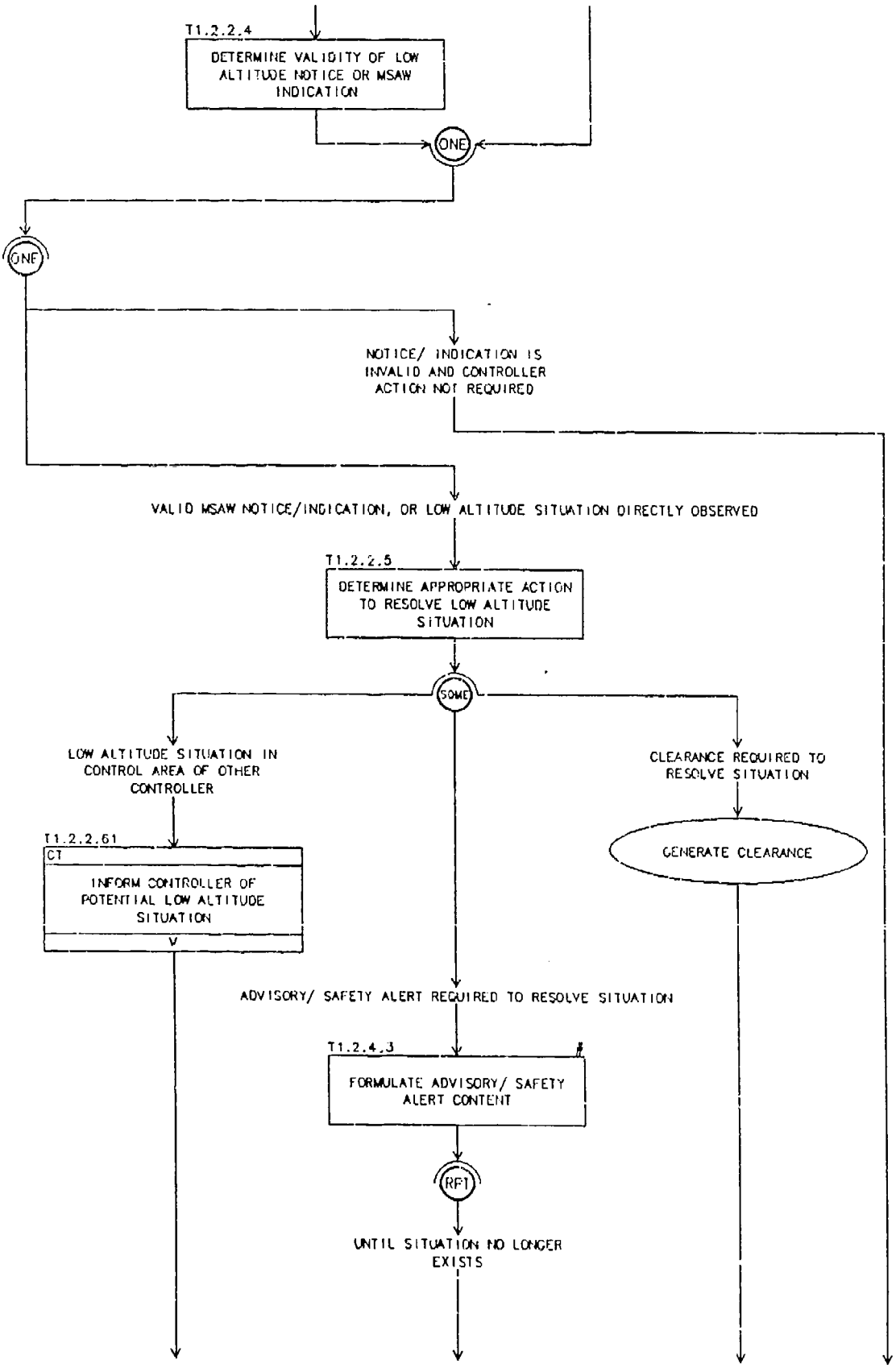
T1.2.1 PERFORMING CONFLICT RESOLUTION (cont.)

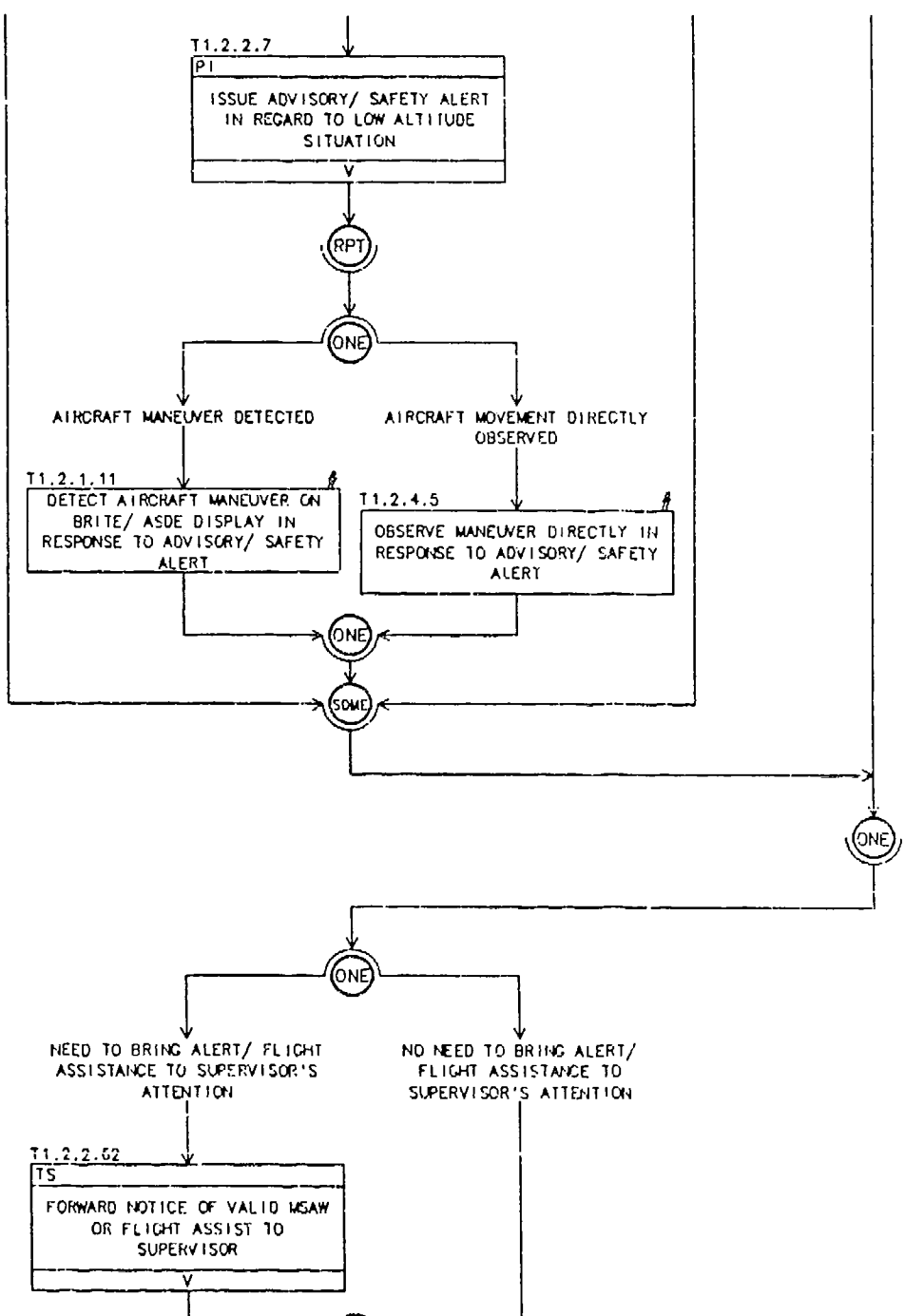


T1.2.2 PERFORMING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE RESOLUTION

EVENTS: MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE CONFLICT

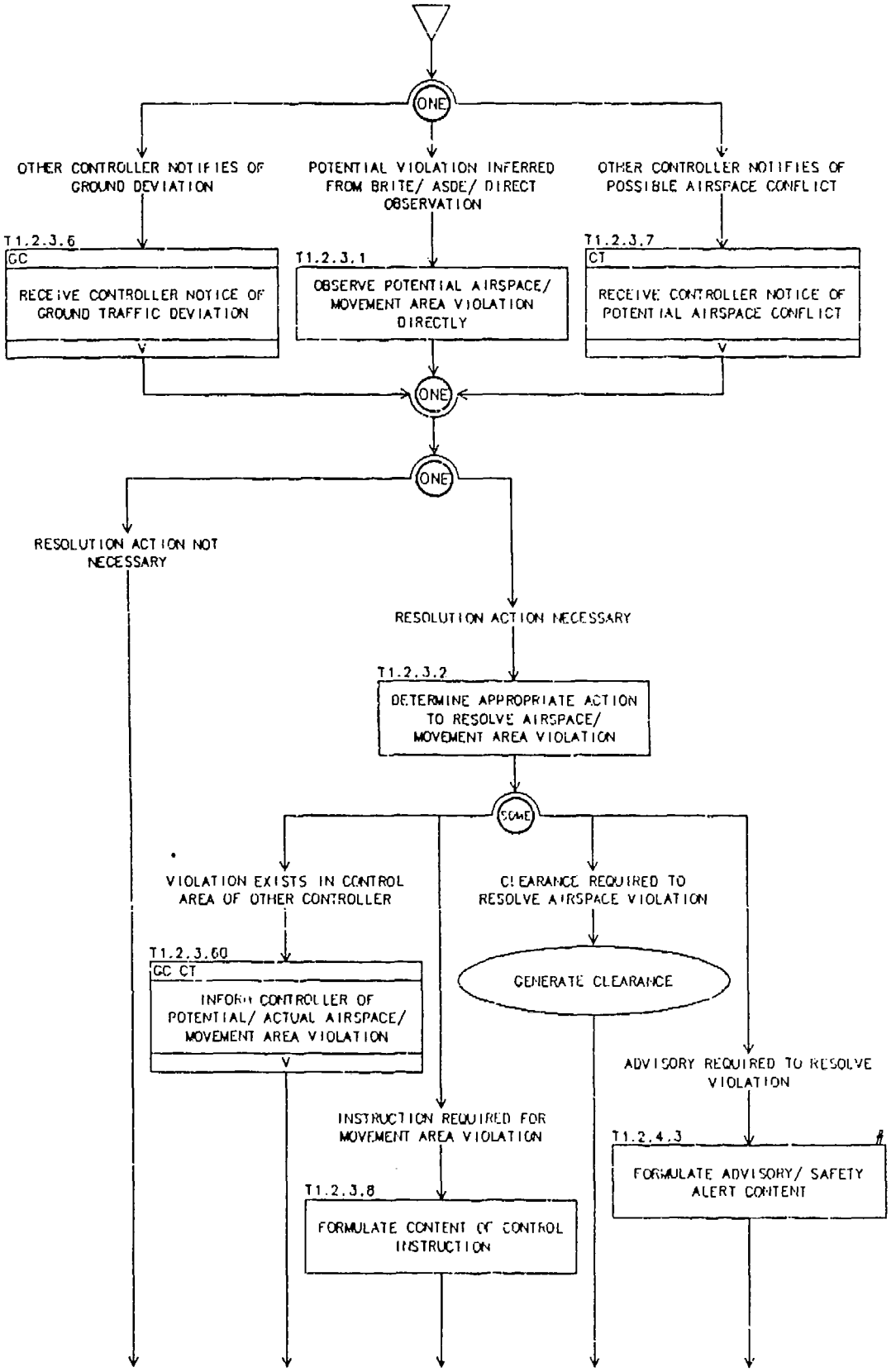


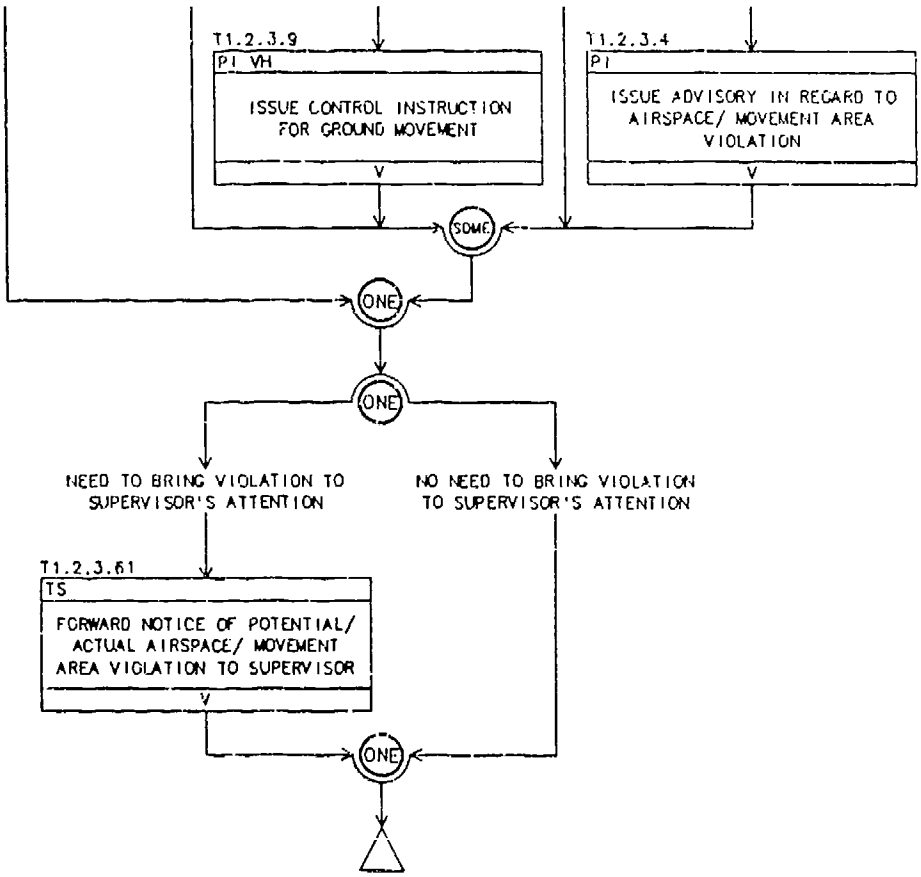

T1.2.2.4
DETERMINE VALIDITY OF LOW ALTITUDE NOTICE OR MSAW INDICATION
ONE
ONE
NOTICE/ INDICATION IS INVALID AND CONTROLLER ACTION NOT REQUIRED
VALID MSAW NOTICE/INDICATION, OR LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION DIRECTLY OBSERVED
T1.2.2.5
DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION
SOME
LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION IN CONTROL AREA OF OTHER CONTROLLER
CLEARANCE REQUIRED TO RESOLVE SITUATION
T1.2.2.61
CT
INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION
V
GENERATE CLEARANCE
ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT REQUIRED TO RESOLVE SITUATION
T1.2.4.3
FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT
RPT
UNTIL SITUATION NO LONGER EXISTS


T1.2.2.7
PI
ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION
RPT
ONE
AIRCRAFT MANEUVER DETECTED
AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT DIRECTLY OBSERVED
T1.2.1.11
DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT
T1.2.4.5
OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT
ONE
SOME
ONE
ONE
NEED TO BRING ALERT/ FLIGHT ASSISTANCE TO SUPERVISOR'S ATTENTION
NO NEED TO BRING ALERT/ FLIGHT ASSISTANCE TO SUPERVISOR'S ATTENTION
T1.2.2.62
TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF VALID MSAW OR FLIGHT ASSIST TO SUPERVISOR
ONE

T1.2.3 PERFORMING AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION RESOLUTION

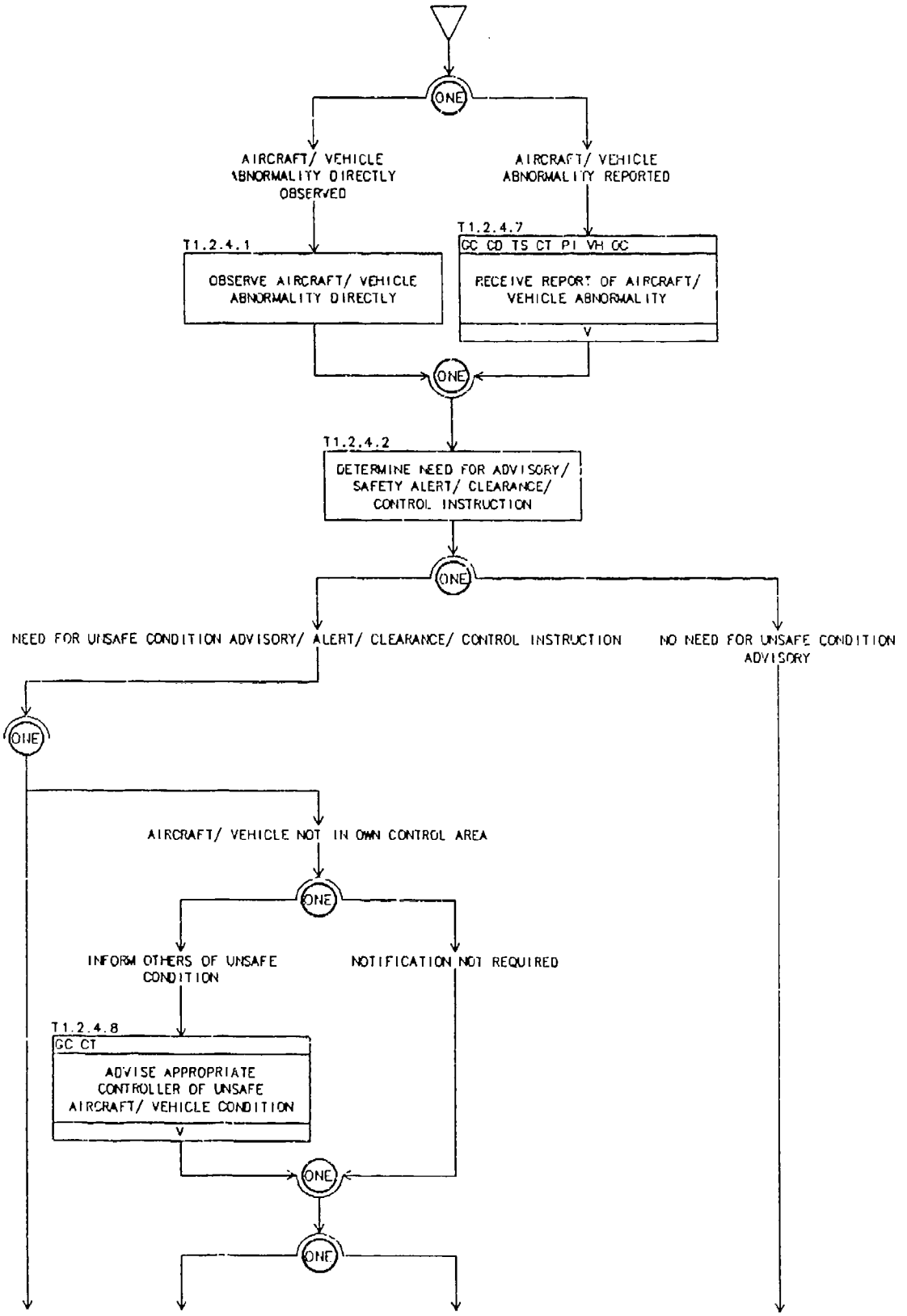
EVENTS: IMPENDING AIRSPACE CONFLICT, FLIGHT PLAN DEVIATION, GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION, AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY

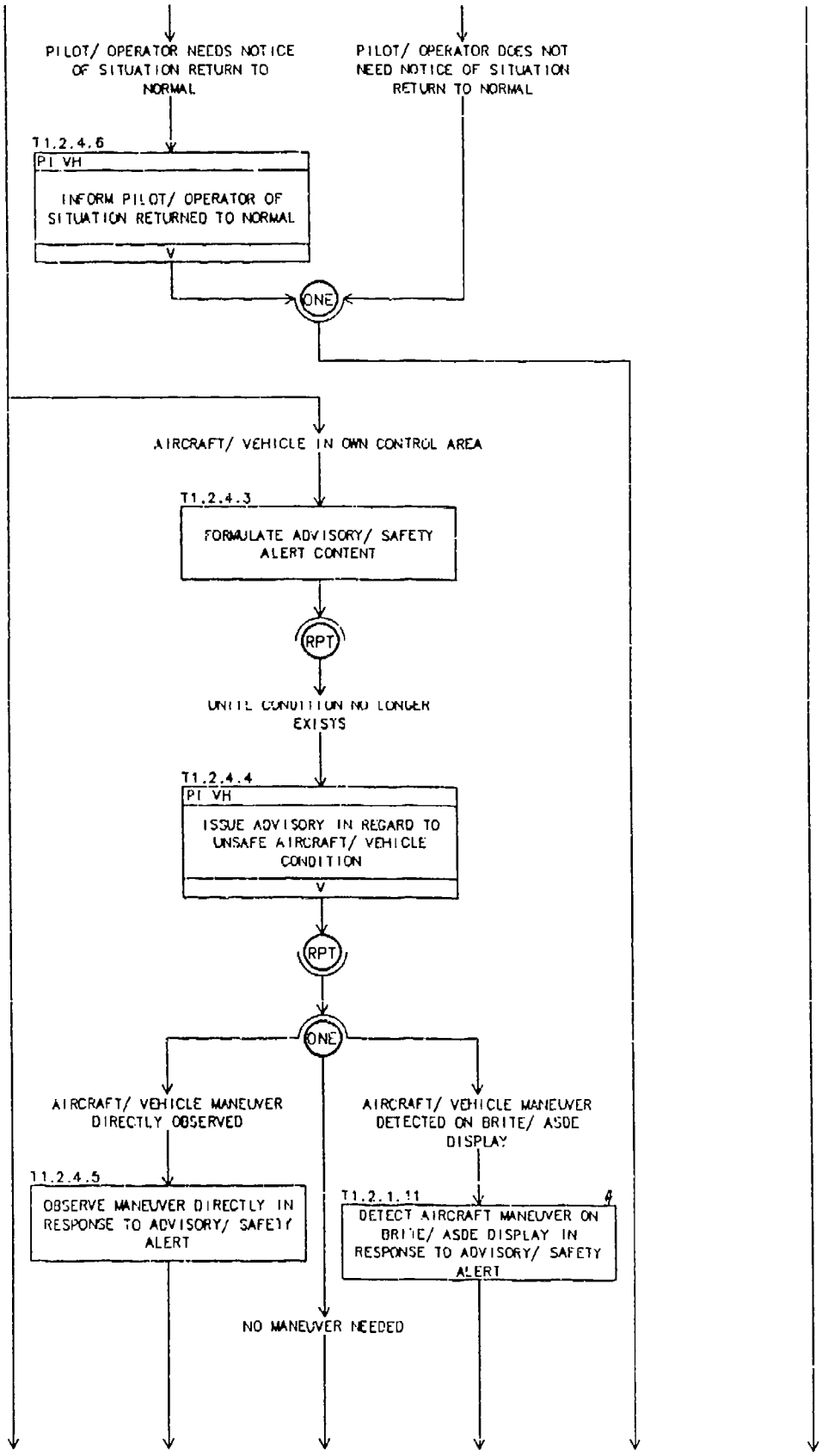



T1.2.3.9
P1 VH
ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
V
T1.2.3.4
P1
ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION
V
SOME
ONE
ONE
NEED TO BRING VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR'S ATTENTION
NO NEED TO BRING VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR'S ATTENTION
T1.2.3.61
TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR
V
ONE

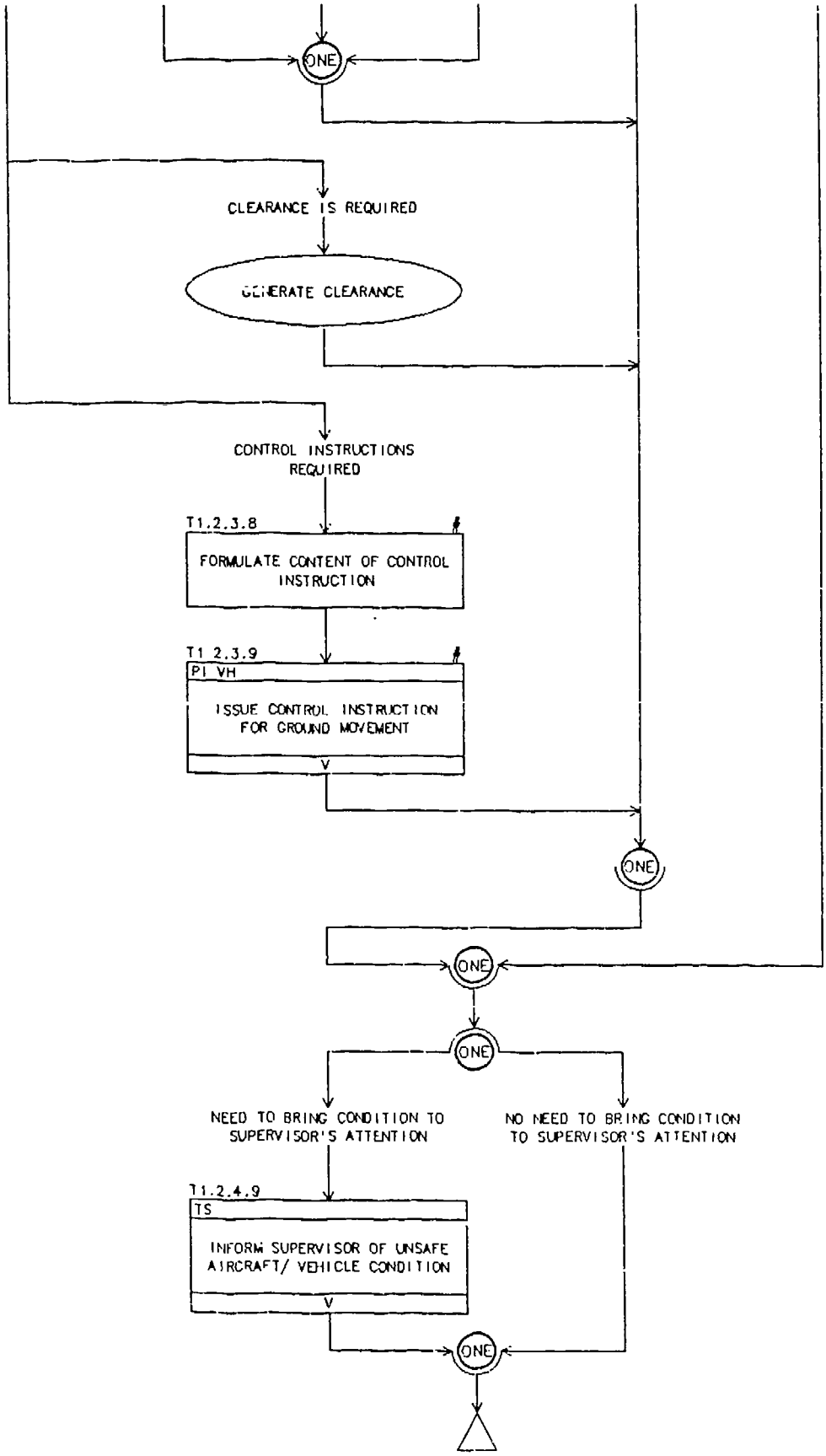
T1.2.4 ISSUING UNSAFE CONDITION ADVISORIES

EVENTS: GENERAL UNSAFE CONDITION



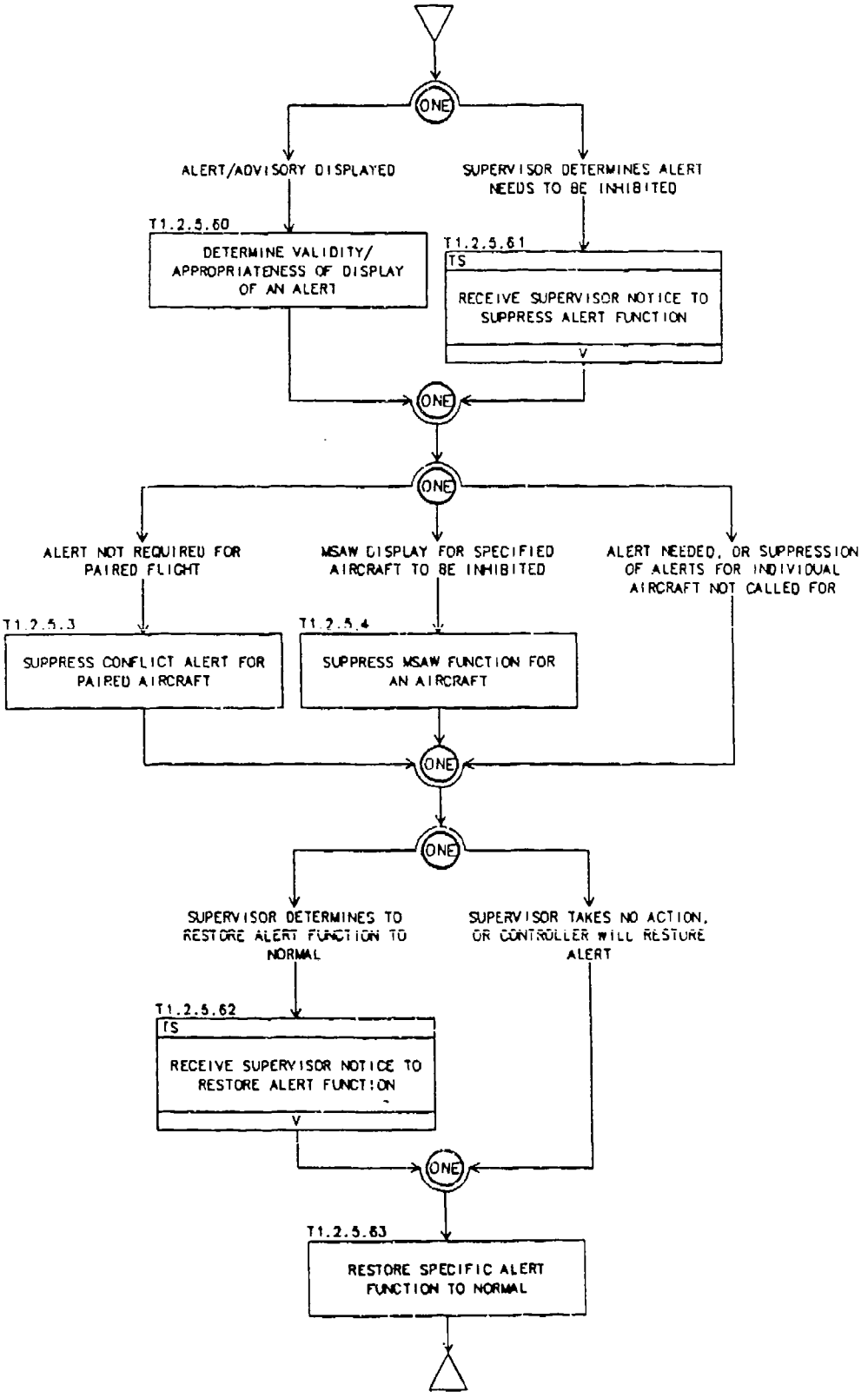

PILOT/ OPERATOR NEEDS NOTICE OF SITUATION RETURN TO NORMAL
PILOT/ OPERATOR DOES NOT NEED NOTICE OF SITUATION RETURN TO NORMAL
T1.2.4.6
PI VH
INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF SITUATION RETURNED TO NORMAL
ONE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IN OWN CONTROL AREA
T1.2.4.3
FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT
RPT
UNTIL CONDITION NO LONGER EXISTS
T1.2.4.4
PI VH
ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION
RPT
ONE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE MANEUVER DIRECTLY OBSERVED
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE MANEUVER DETECTED ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY
T1.2.4.5
OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT
T1.2.1.11 #
DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT
NO MANEUVER NEEDED

T1.2.4 ISSUING UNSAFE CONDITION ADVISORIES (cont.)

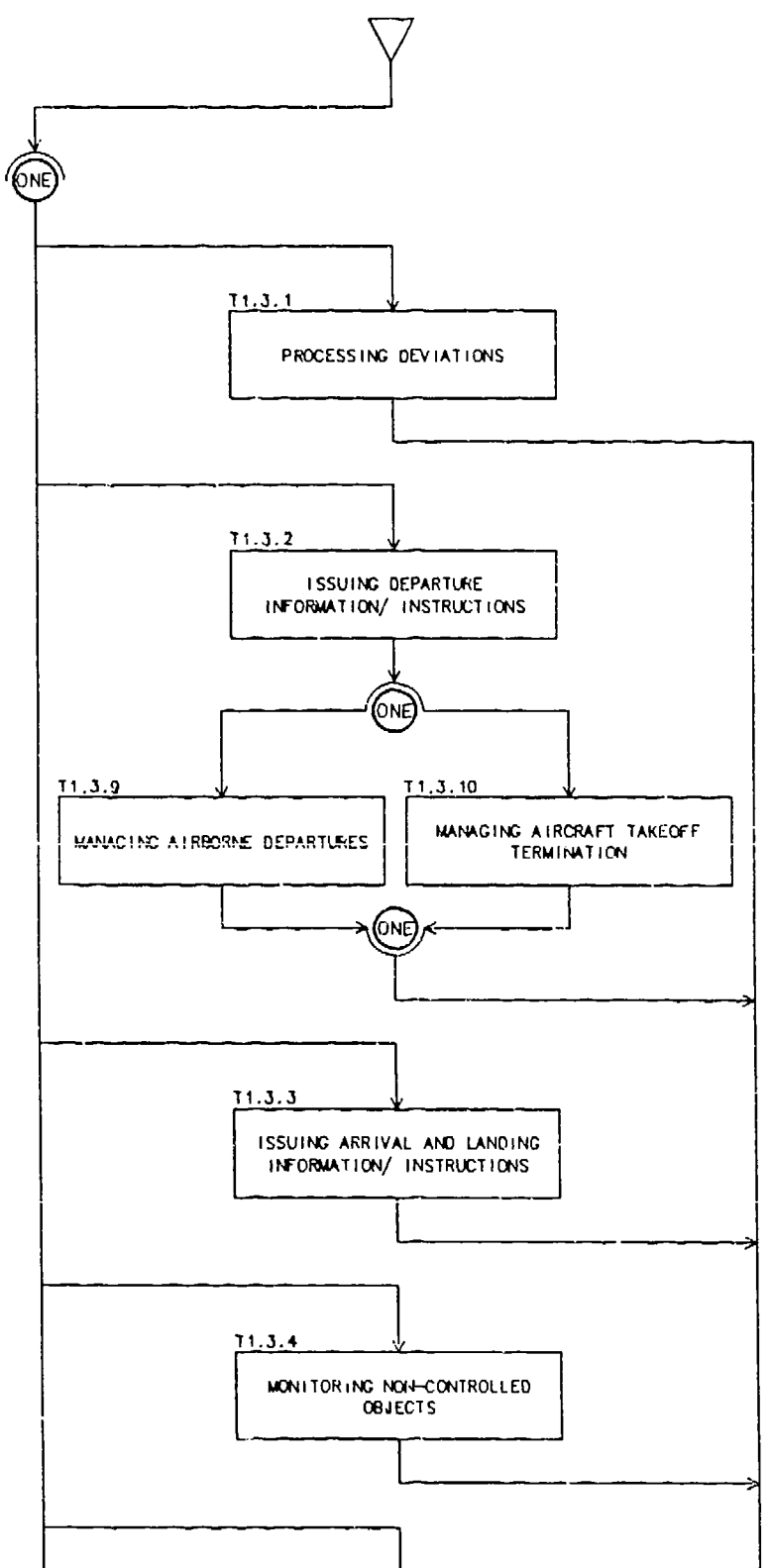


T1.2.5 SUPPRESSING/ RESTORING ALERTS

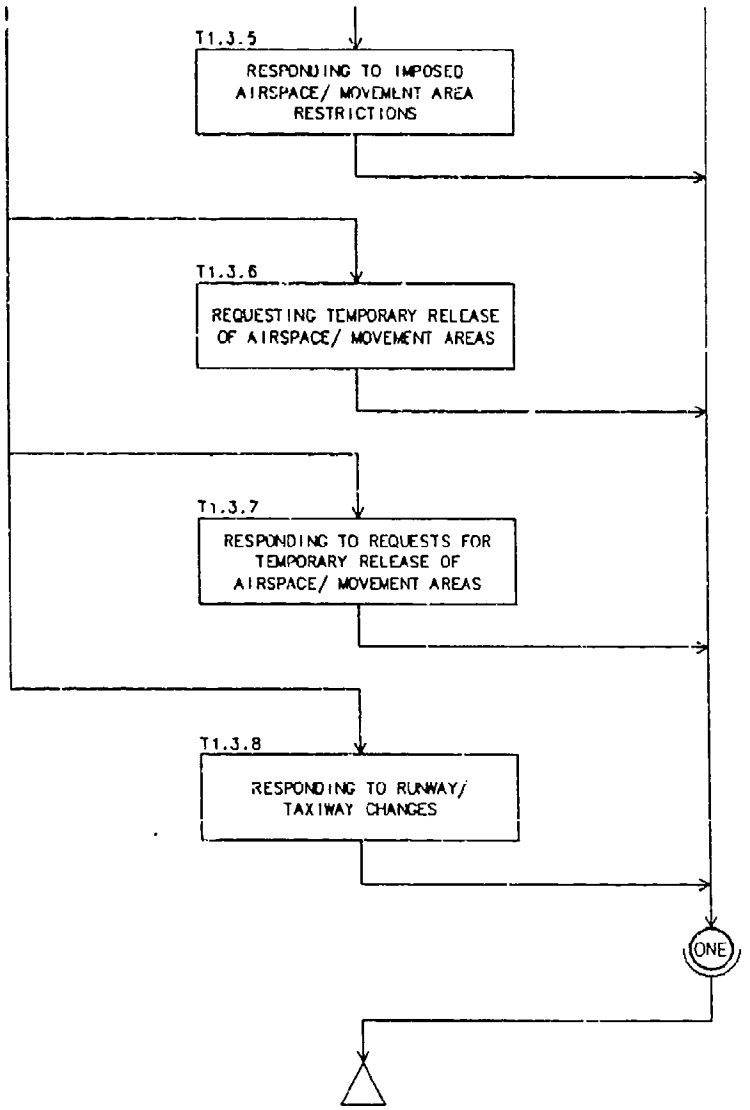
EVENTS: SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE, AIRSHOW, AIRCRAFT-AIRCRAFT CONFLICT, MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE CONFLICT



T1.3 MANAGE AIR TRAFFIC SEQUENCES

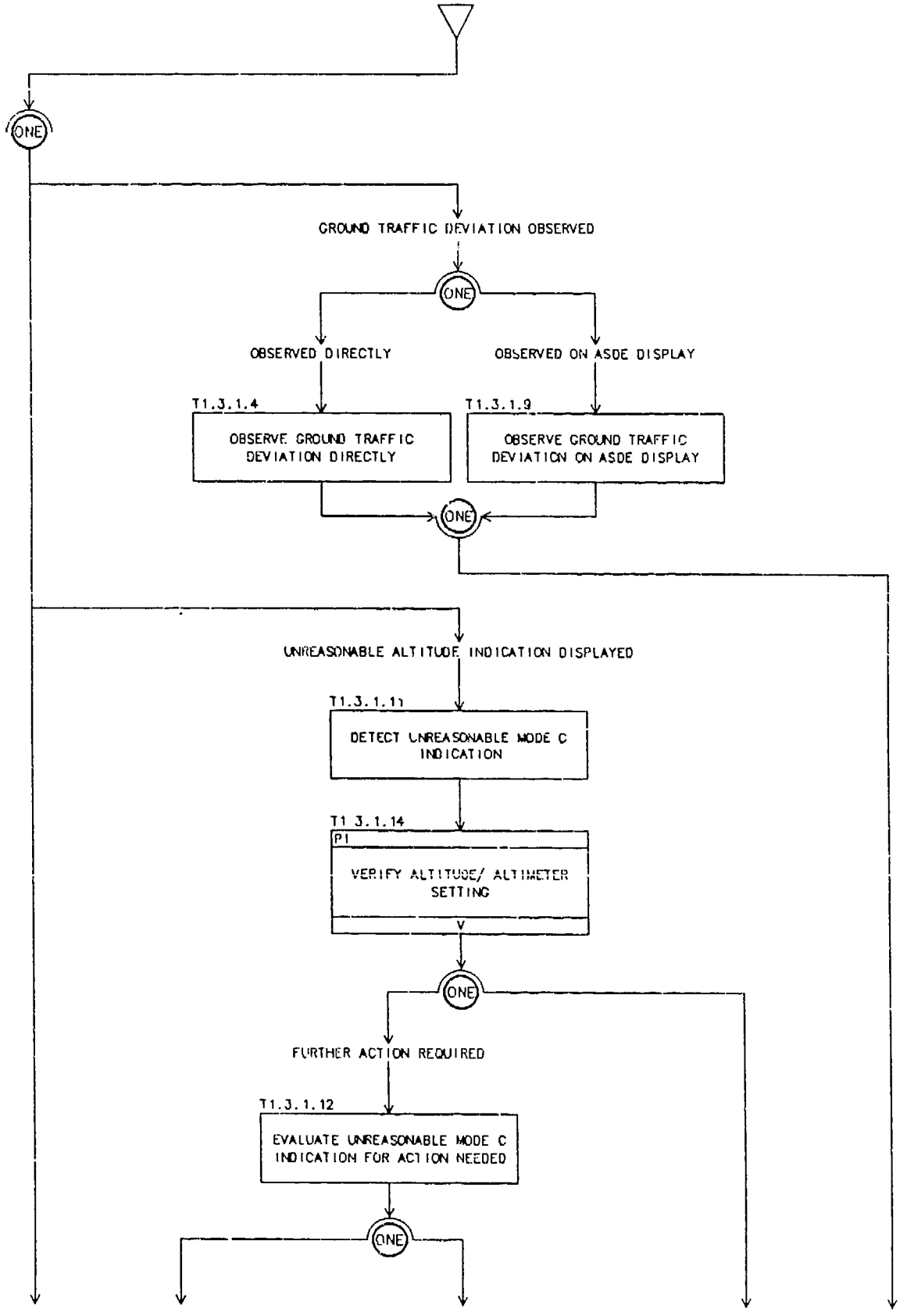


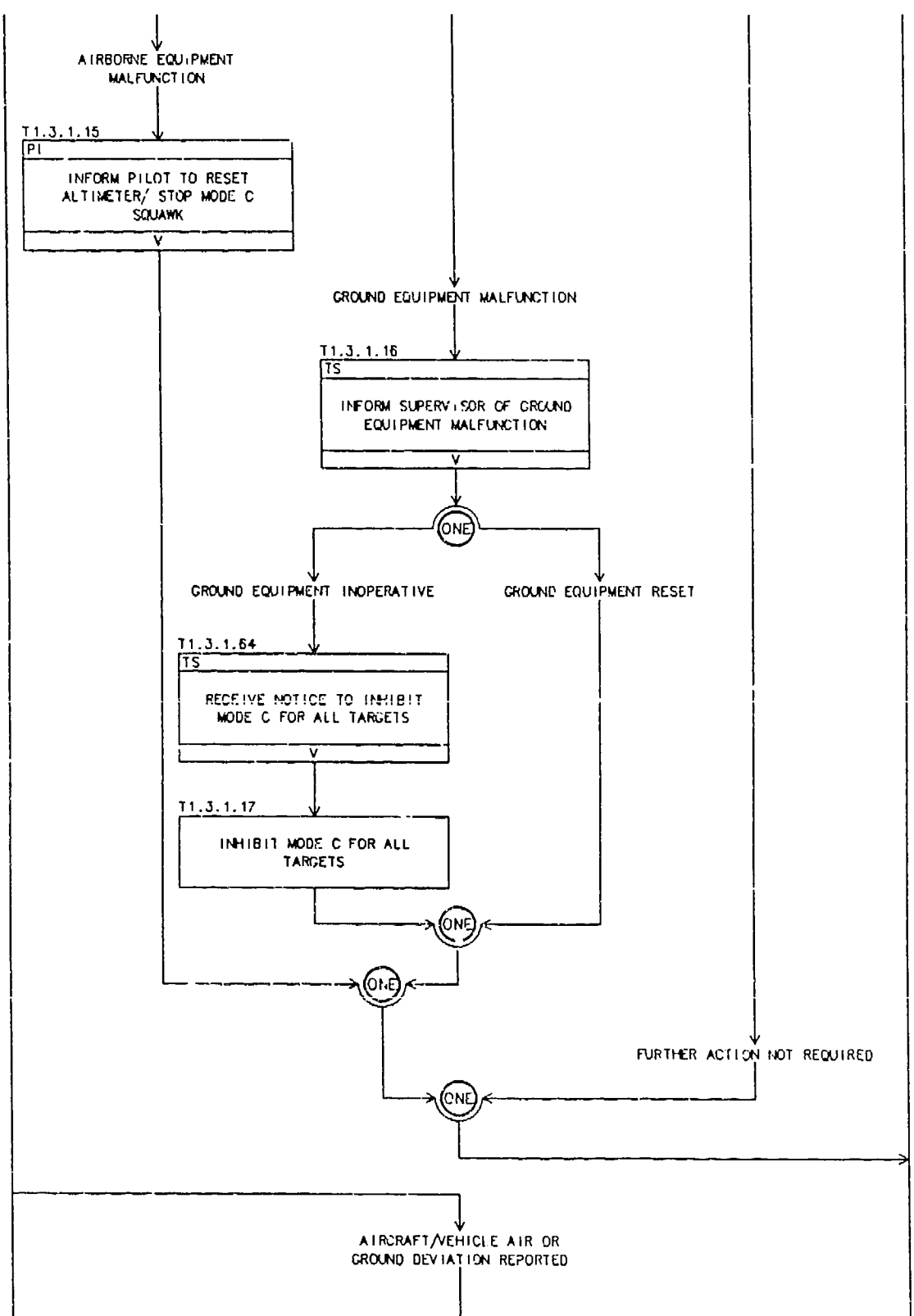
T1.3 MANAGE AIR TRAFFIC SEQUENCES (cont.)



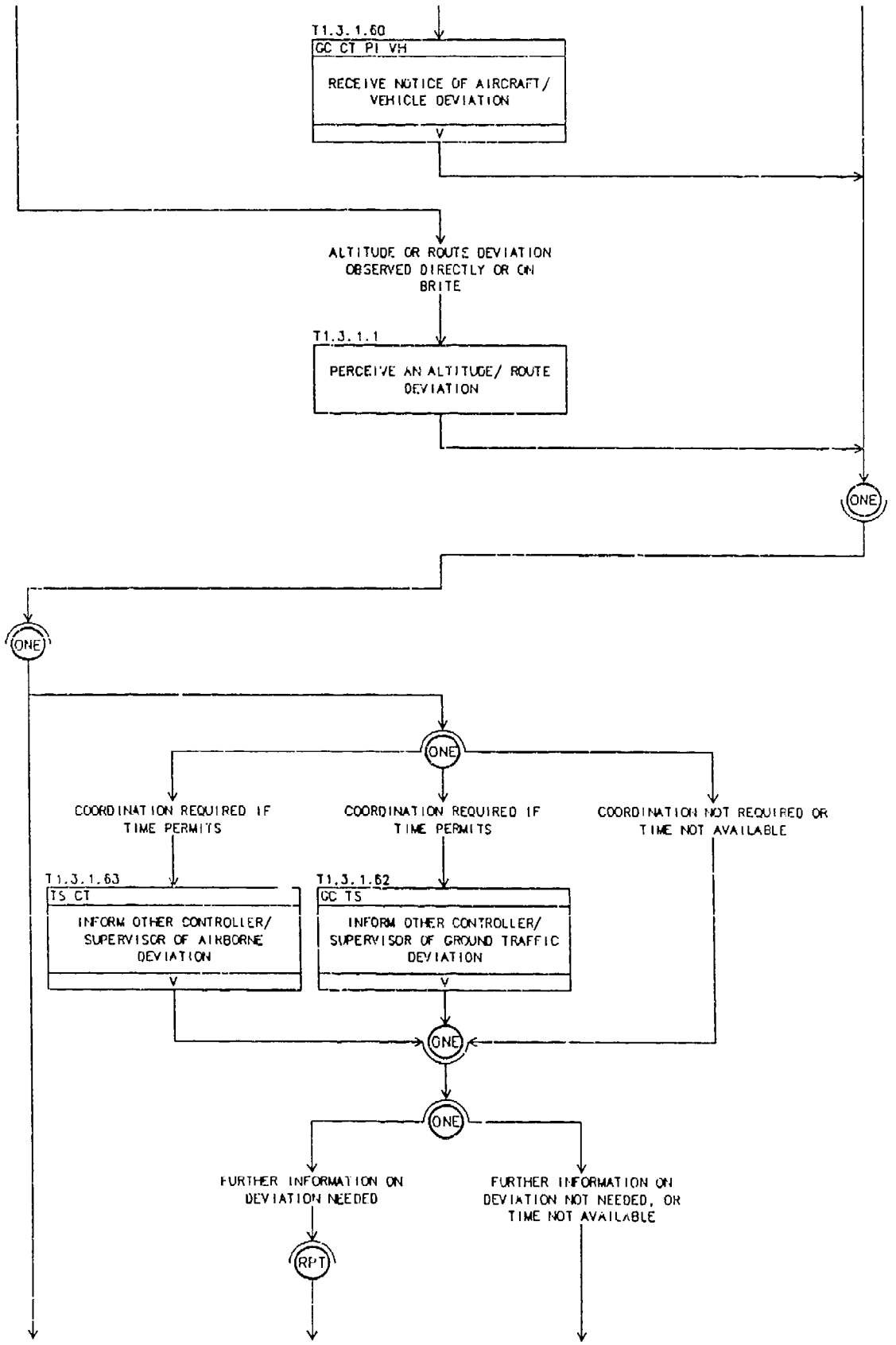
T1.3.1 PROCESSING DEVIATIONS

EVENTS: FLIGHT PLAN DEVIATION, GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION

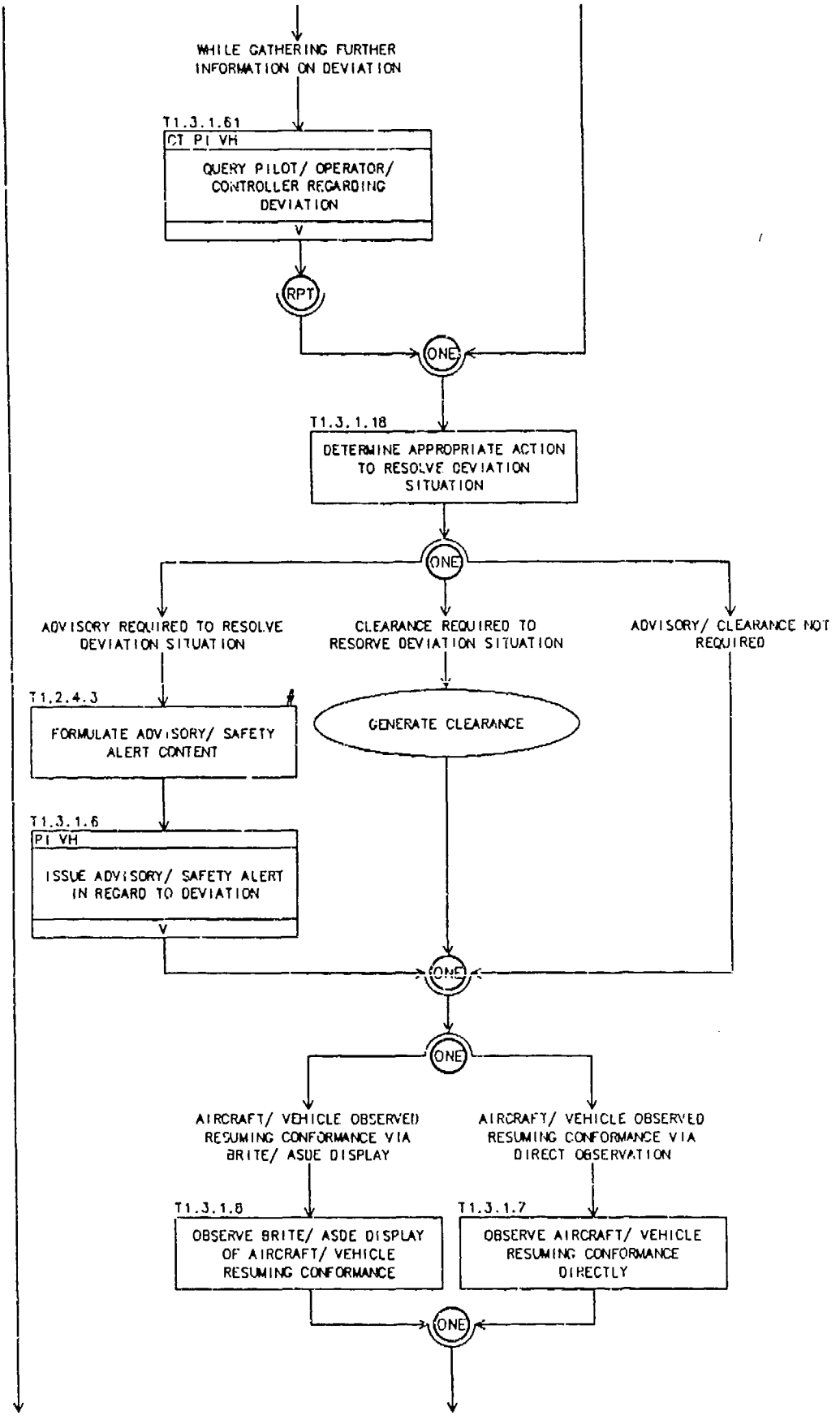


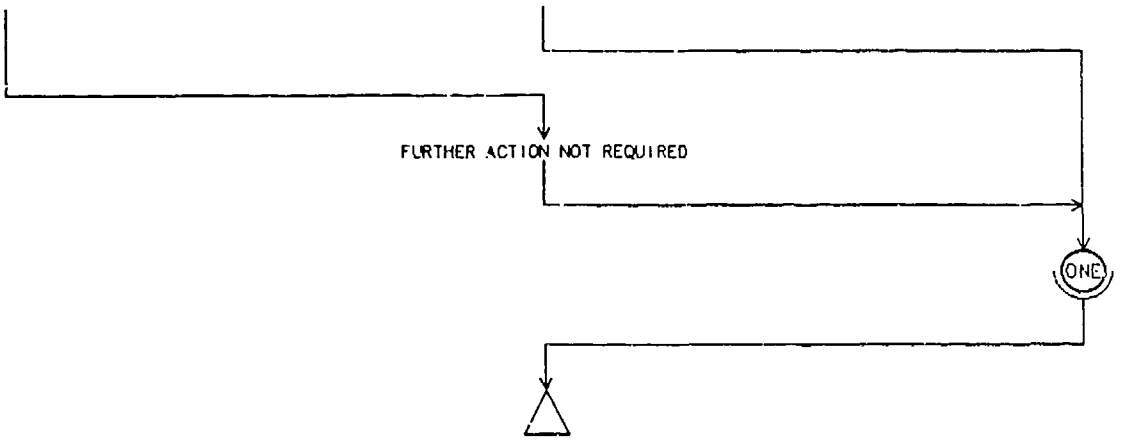

AIRBORNE EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION
T1.3.1.15
PI
INFORM PILOT TO RESET ALTIMETER/ STOP MODE C SQUAWK
GROUND EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION
T1.3.1.16
TS
INFORM SUPERVISOR OF GROUND EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION
ONE
GROUND EQUIPMENT INOPERATIVE
GROUND EQUIPMENT RESET
T1.3.1.64
TS
RECEIVE NOTICE TO INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS
T1.3.1.17
INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS
ONE
ONE
FURTHER ACTION NOT REQUIRED
ONE
AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE AIR OR GROUND DEVIATION REPORTED

T1.3.1 PROCESSING DEVIATIONS (cont.)



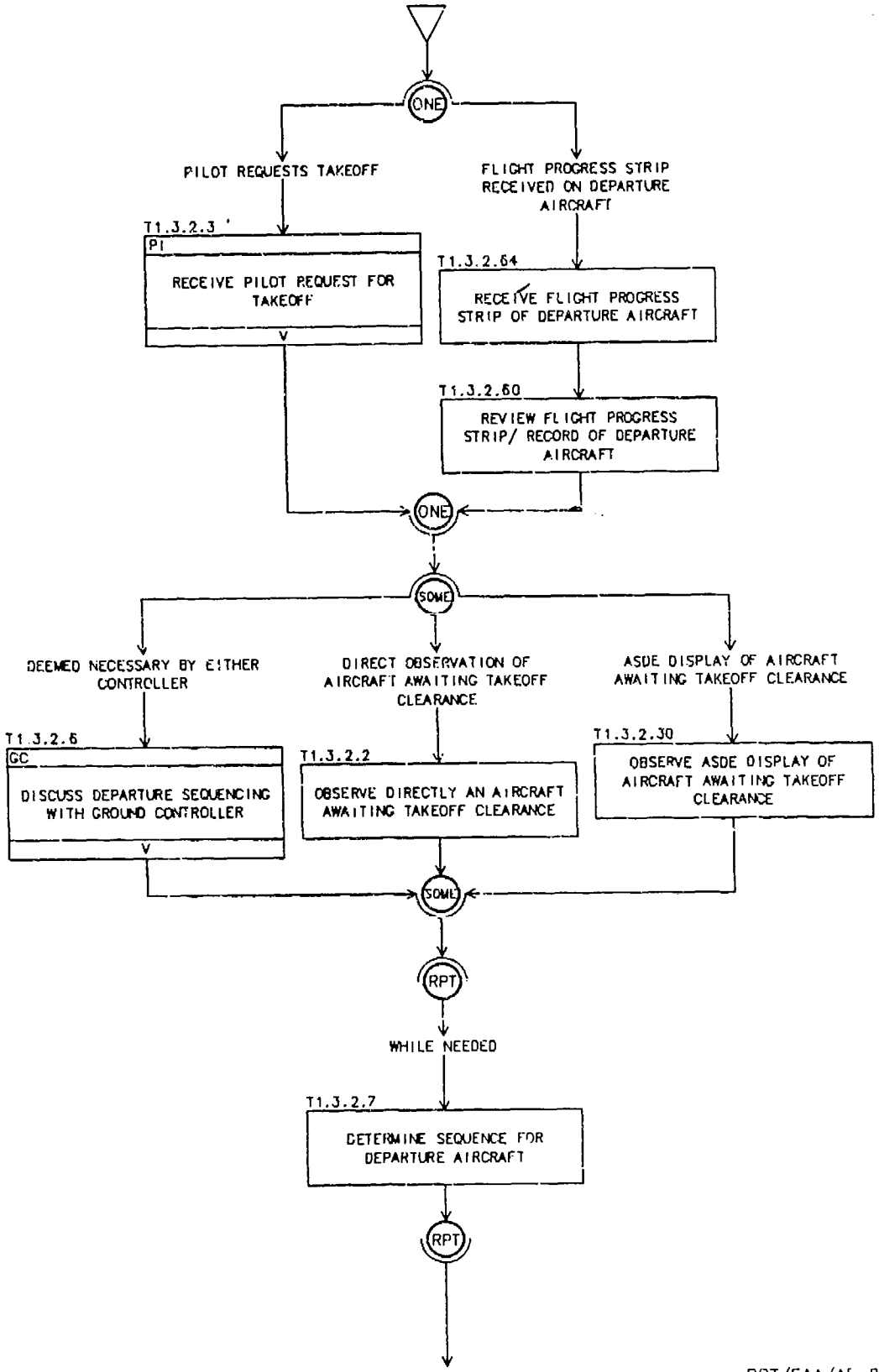
T1.3.1 PROCESSING DEVIATIONS (cont.)

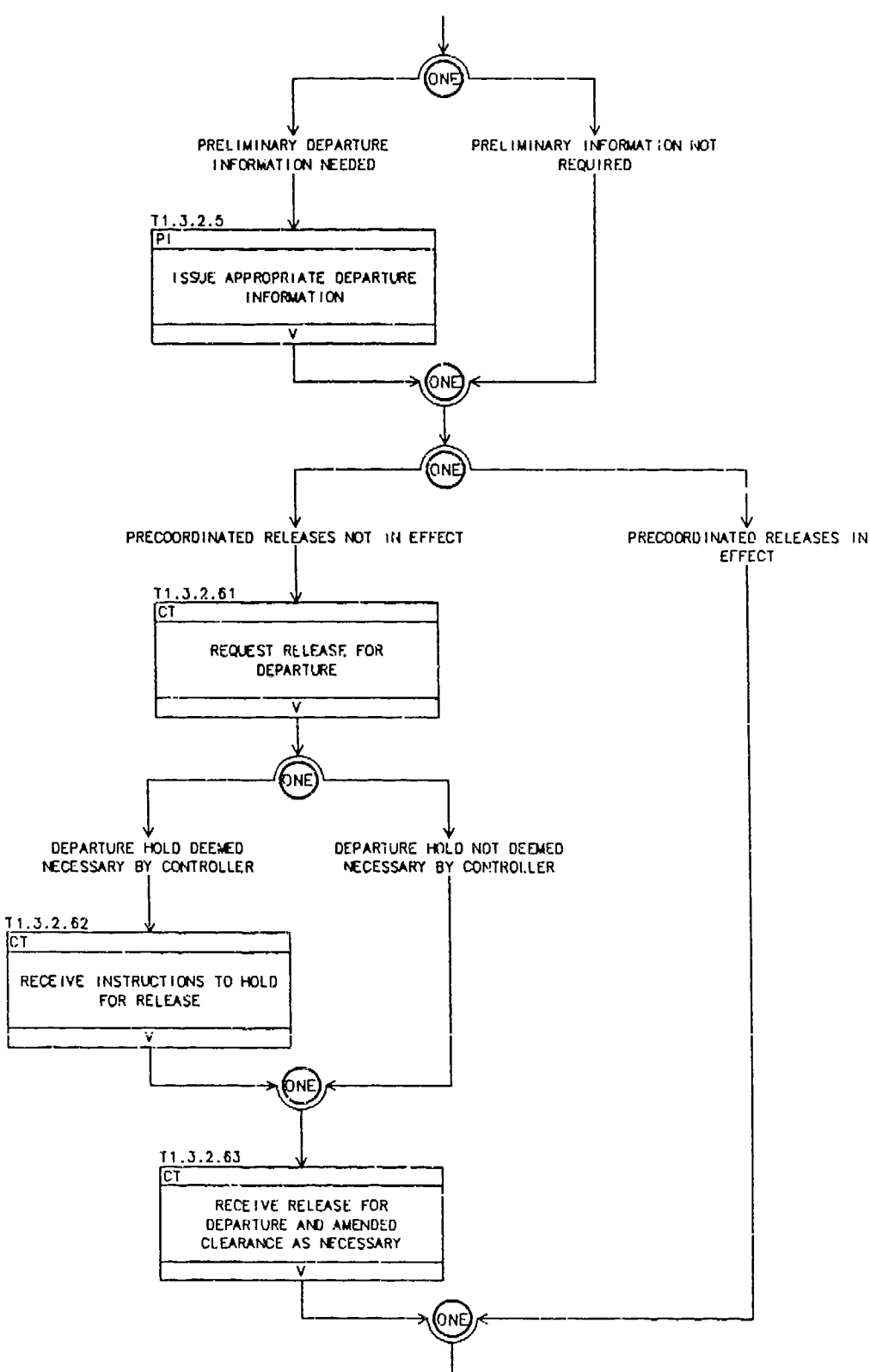


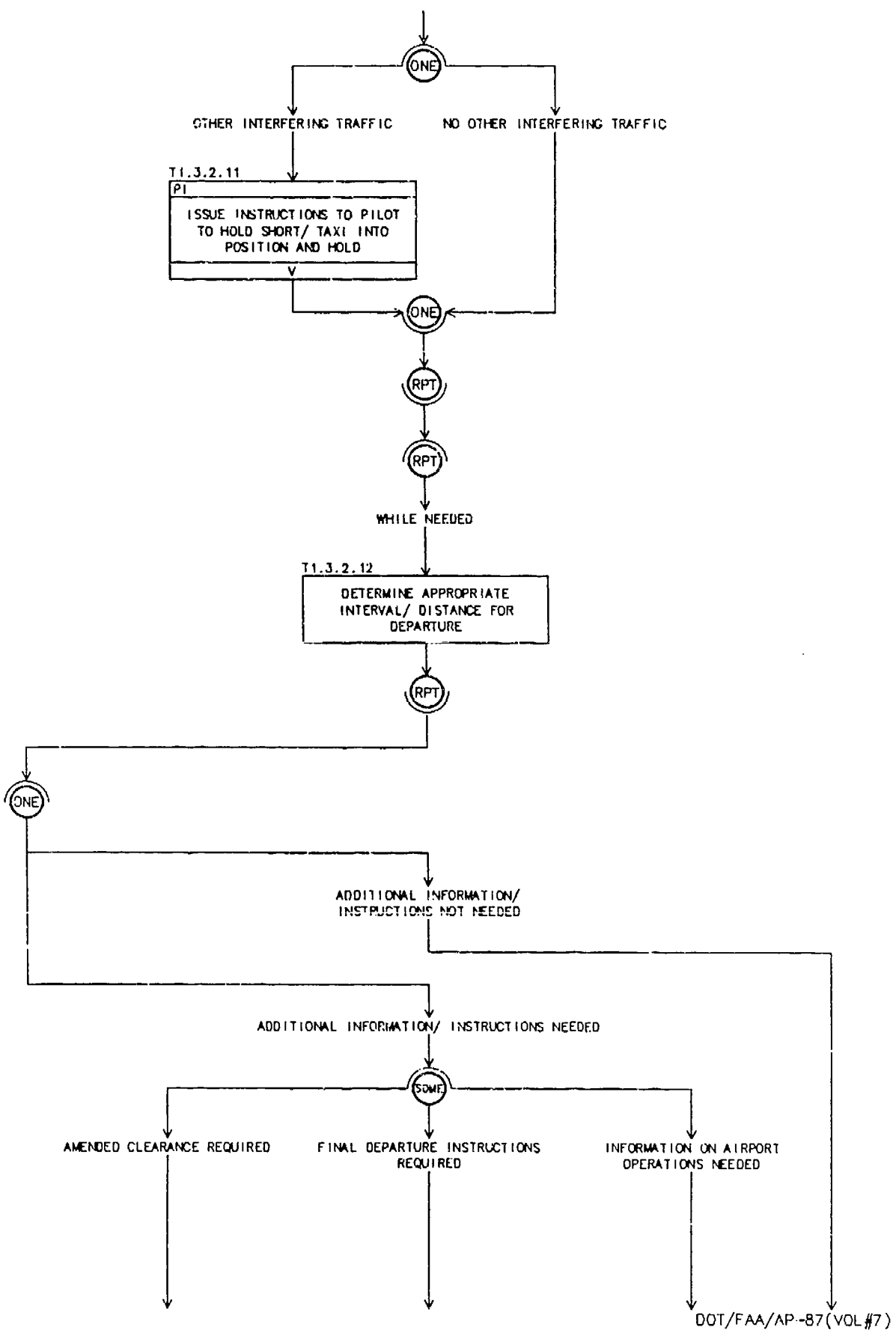

FURTHER ACTION NOT REQUIRED
ONE

T1.3.2 ISSUING DEPARTURE INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS

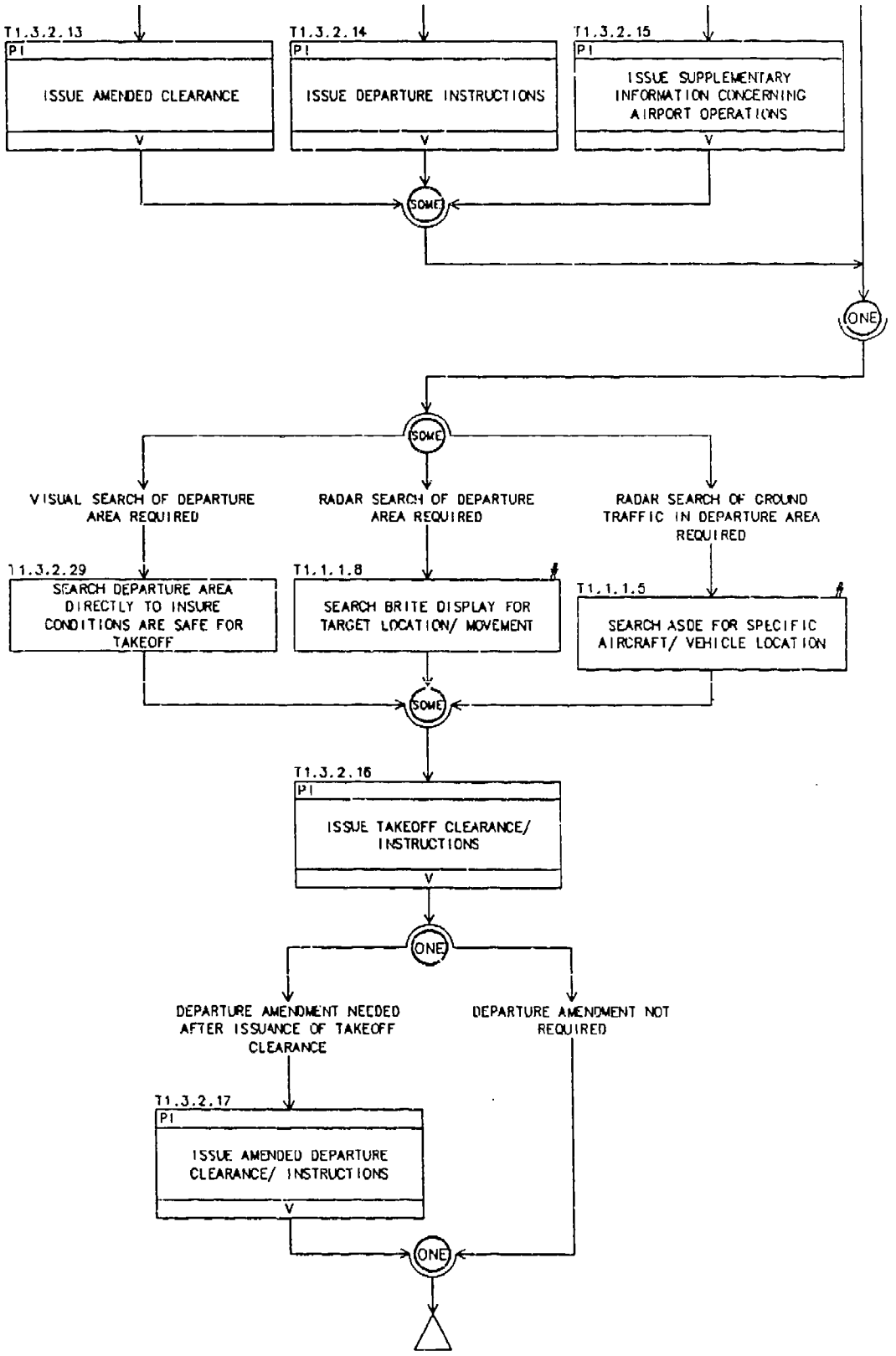
EVENTS: CHANGE FLOW PATTERN, SEQUENCING REQUIRED, VFR TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA OPERATION, NOISE ABATEMENT PROCEDURE, INITIAL CONTACT, ENTERING/ LEAVING OUTBOUND GROUND HOLD




ONE
PRELIMINARY DEPARTURE INFORMATION NEEDED
PRELIMINARY INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED
T1.3.2.5
PI
ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION
ONE
ONE
PRECOORDINATED RELEASES NOT IN EFFECT
PRECOORDINATED RELEASES IN EFFECT
T1.3.2.61
CT
REQUEST RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE
ONE
DEPARTURE HOLD DEEMED NECESSARY BY CONTROLLER
DEPARTURE HOLD NOT DEEMED NECESSARY BY CONTROLLER
T1.3.2.62
CT
RECEIVE INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD FOR RELEASE
ONE
T1.3.2.63
CT
RECEIVE RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE AND AMENDED CLEARANCE AS NECESSARY
ONE
RPT

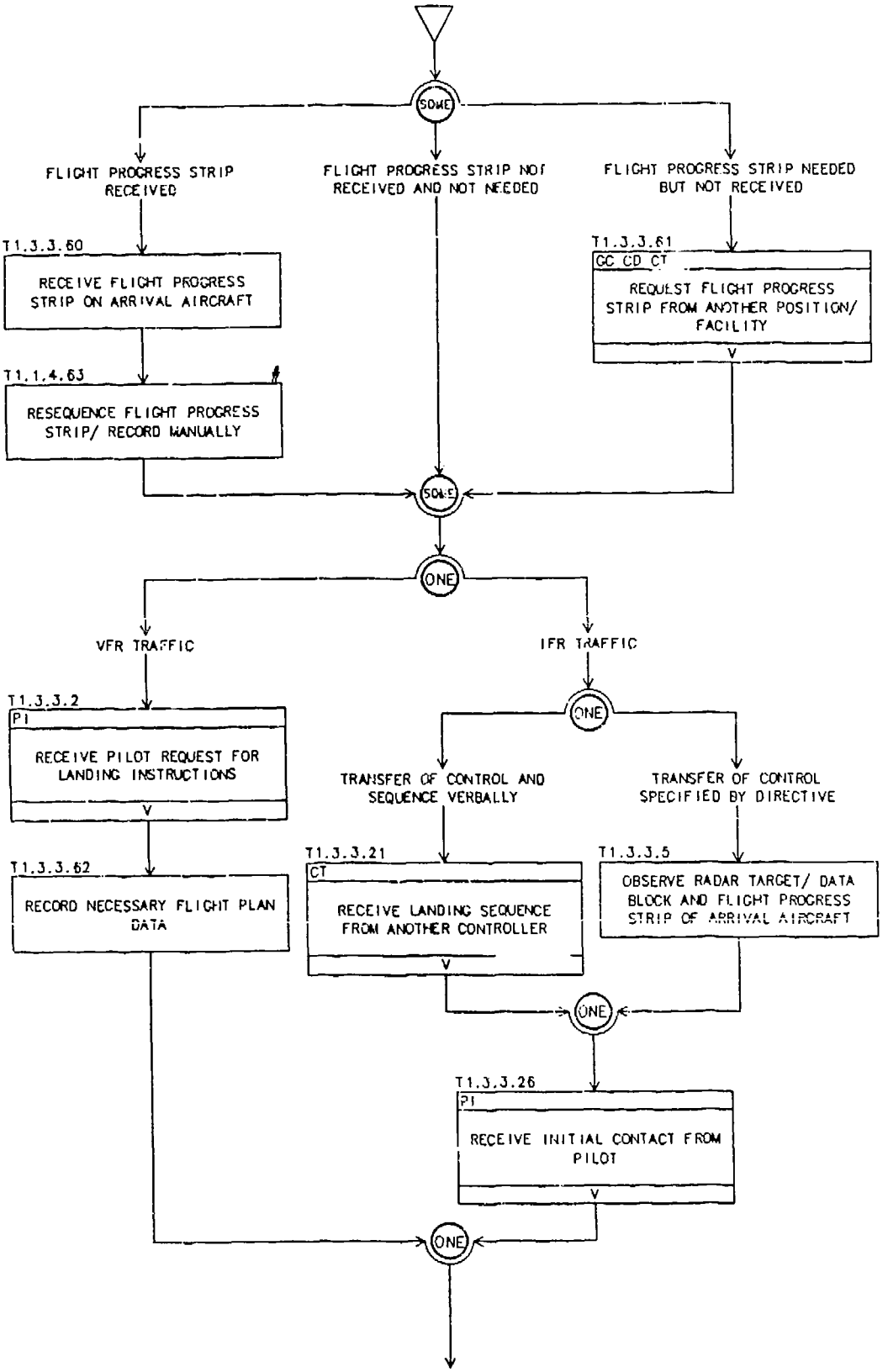

ONE
OTHER INTERFERING TRAFFIC
NO OTHER INTERFERING TRAFFIC
T1.3.2.11
PI
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT TO HOLD SHORT/ TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD
ONE
RPT
RPT
WHILE NEEDED
T1.3.2.12
DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE
RPT
ONE
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS NOT NEEDED
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS NEEDED
SOME
AMENDED CLEARANCE REQUIRED
FINAL DEPARTURE INSTRUCTIONS REQUIRED
INFORMATION ON AIRPORT OPERATIONS NEEDED

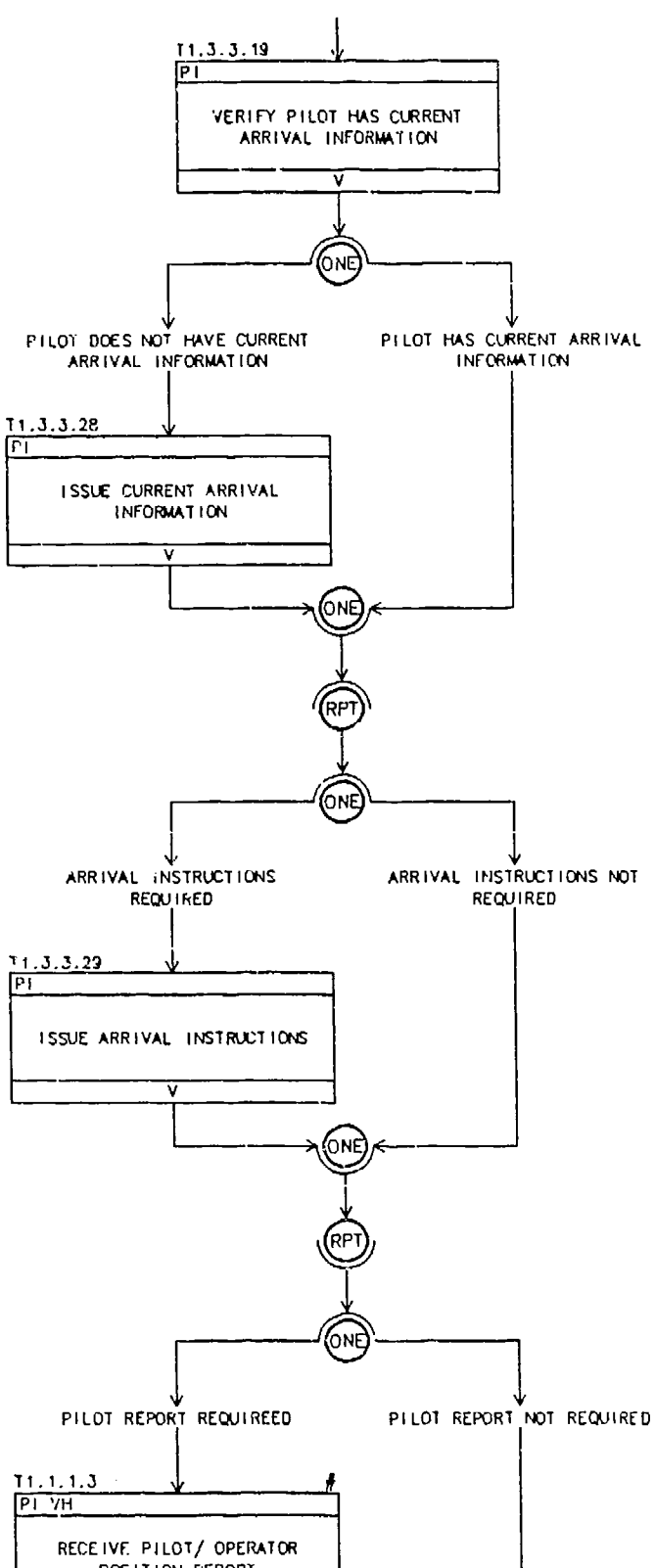
T1.3.2 ISSUING DEPARTURE INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS (cont.)

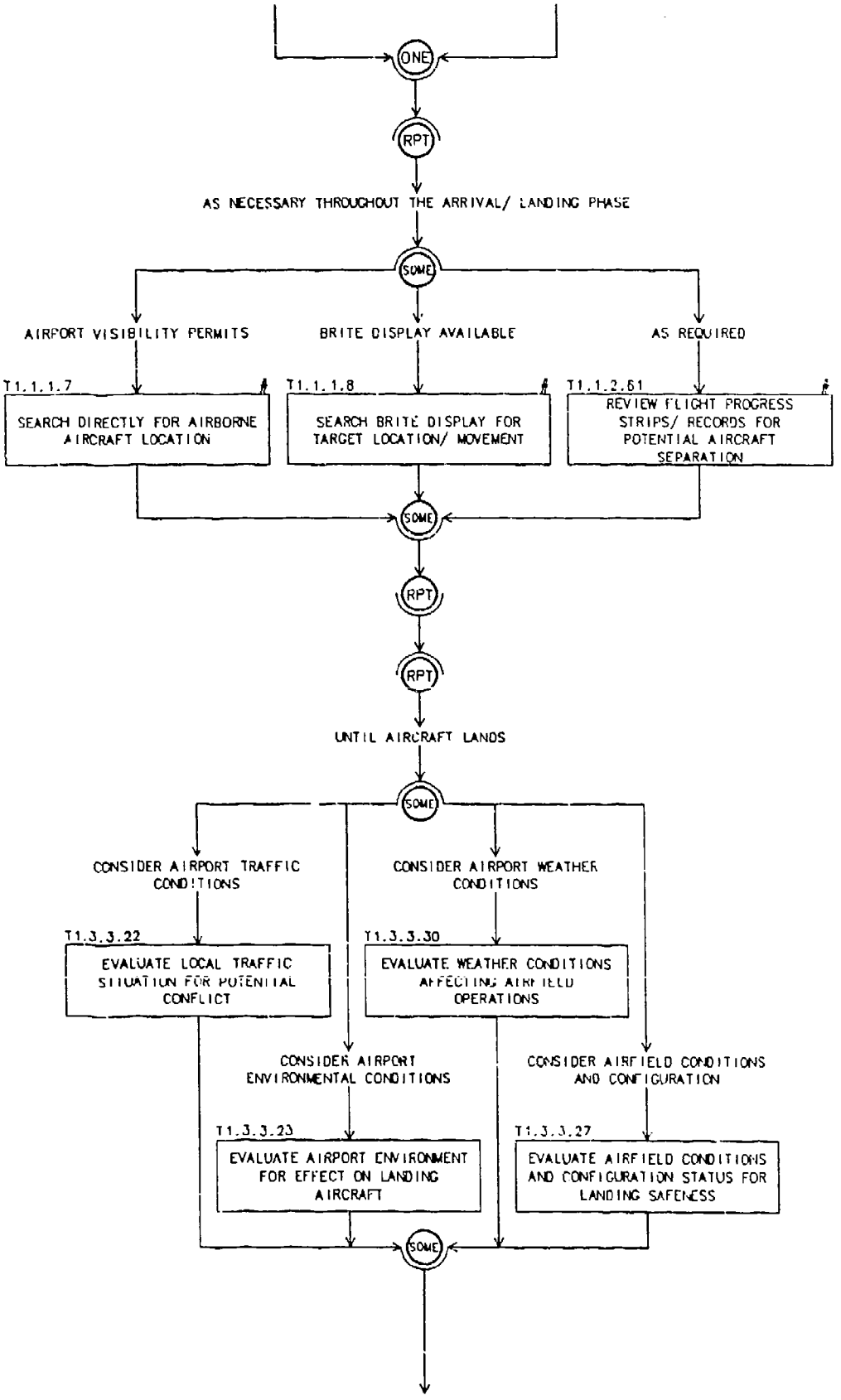


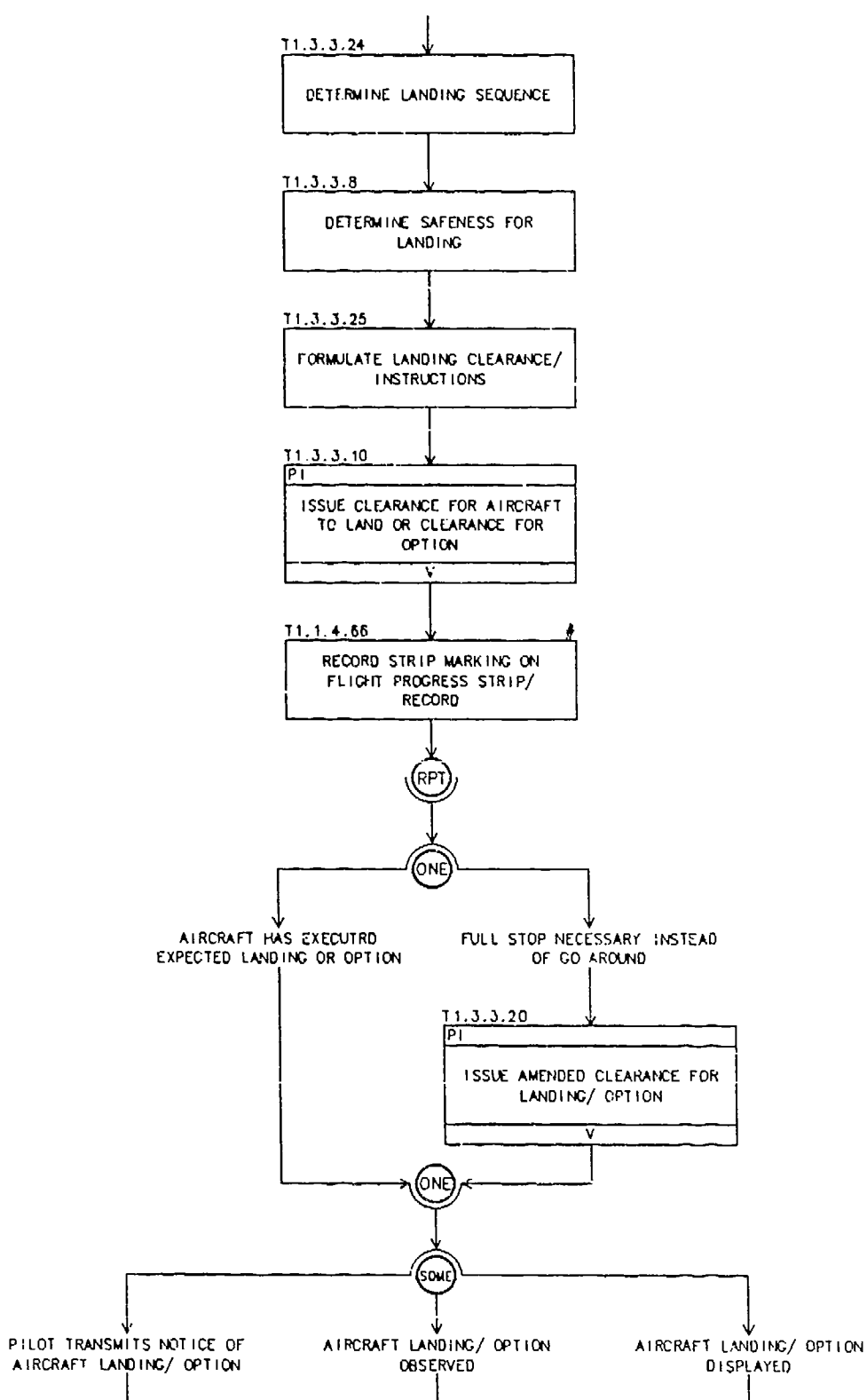
T1.3.3 ISSUING ARRIVAL AND LANDING INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS

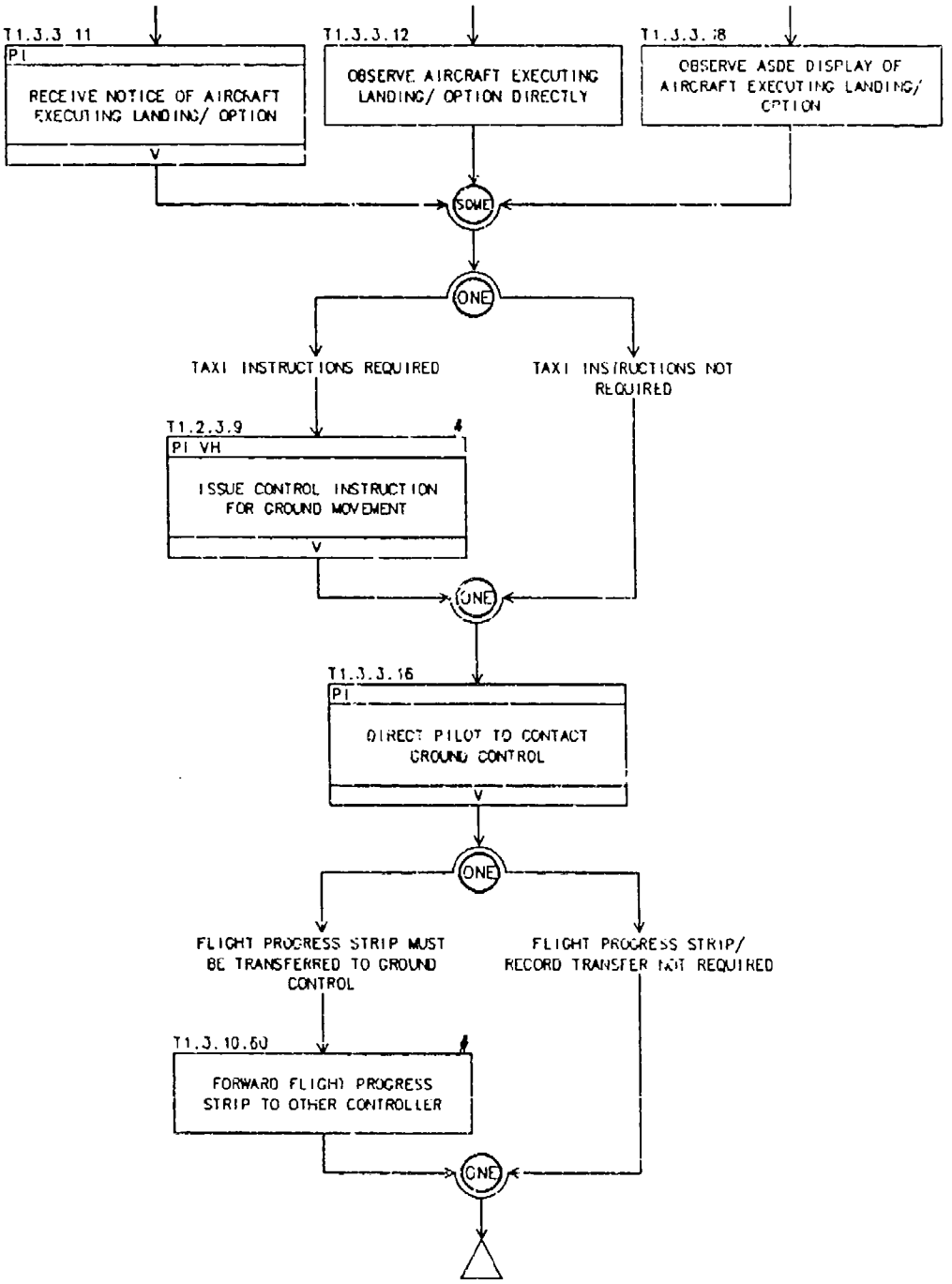
EVENTS: SEQUENCING REQUIRED, VFR TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA OPERATION, INITIAL CONTACT, LOCAL TRAFFIC, ENTERING/ LEAVING AIRBORNE HOLD, NOISE ABATEMENT PROCEDURE, AIRCRAFT ENTERS ATA




T1.3.3.19
PI
VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION
V
ONE
PILOT DOES NOT HAVE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION
PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION
T1.3.3.28
PI
ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION
V
ONE
RPT
ONE
ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS REQUIRED
ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS NOT REQUIRED
T1.3.3.29
PI
ISSUE ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS
V
ONE
RPT
ONE
PILOT REPORT REQUIREED
PILOT REPORT NOT REQUIRED
T1.1.1.3
#
PI VH
RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
V

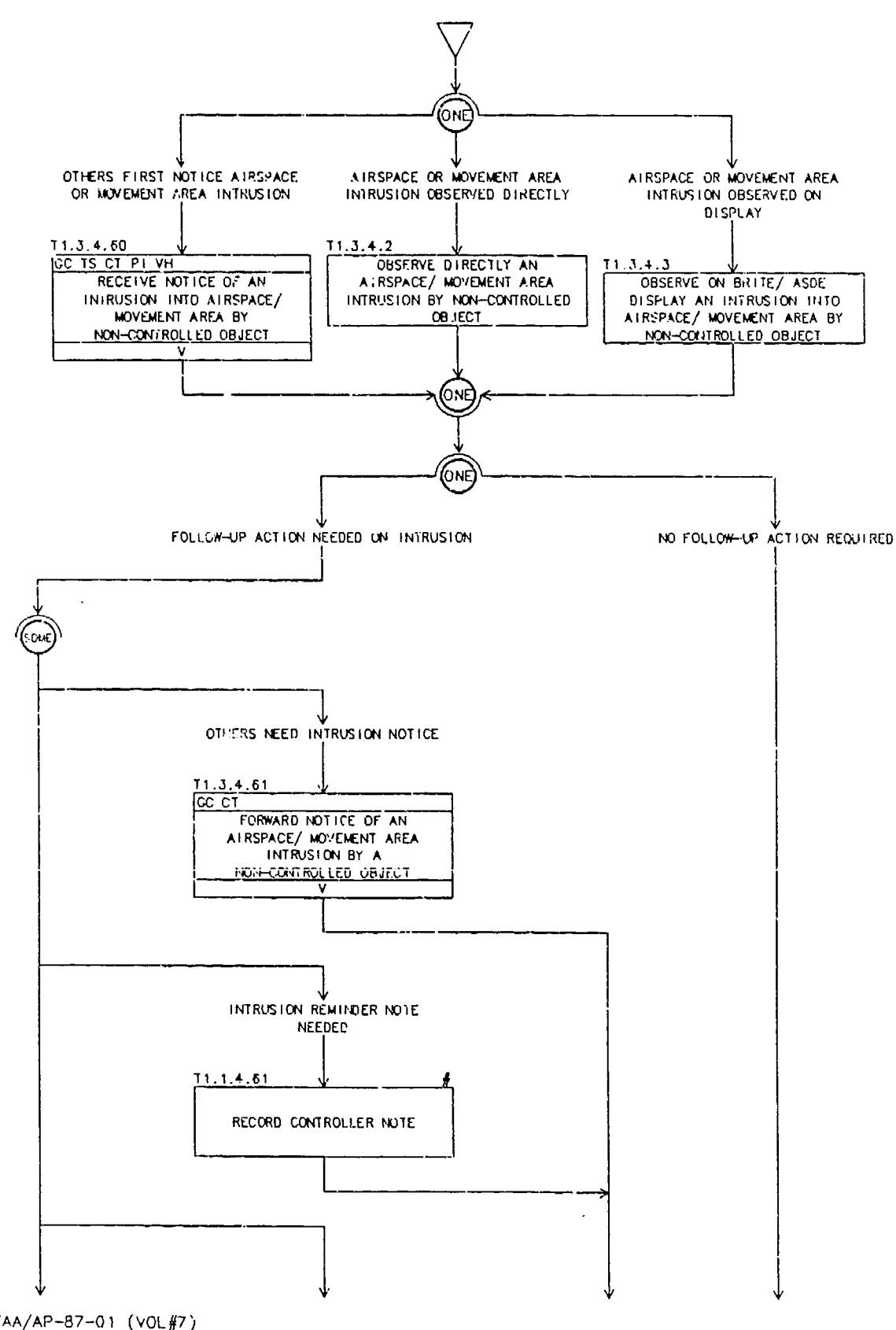

ONE
RPT
AS NECESSARY THROUGHOUT THE ARRIVAL/ LANDING PHASE
SOME
AIRPORT VISIBILITY PERMITS
BRITE DISPLAY AVAILABLE
AS REQUIRED
T1.1.1.7
SEARCH DIRECTLY FOR AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT LOCATION
T1.1.1.8
SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT
T1.1.2.61
REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS/ RECORDS FOR POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT SEPARATION
SOME
RPT
RPT
UNTIL AIRCRAFT LANDS
SOME
CONSIDER AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONDITIONS
CONSIDER AIRPORT WEATHER CONDITIONS
T1.3.3.22
EVALUATE LOCAL TRAFFIC SITUATION FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT
T1.3.3.30
EVALUATE WEATHER CONDITIONS AFFECTING AIRFIELD OPERATIONS
CONSIDER AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS
CONSIDER AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION
T1.3.3.23
EVALUATE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENT FOR EFFECT ON LANDING AIRCRAFT
T1.3.3.27
EVALUATE AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION STATUS FOR LANDING SAFENESS
SOME

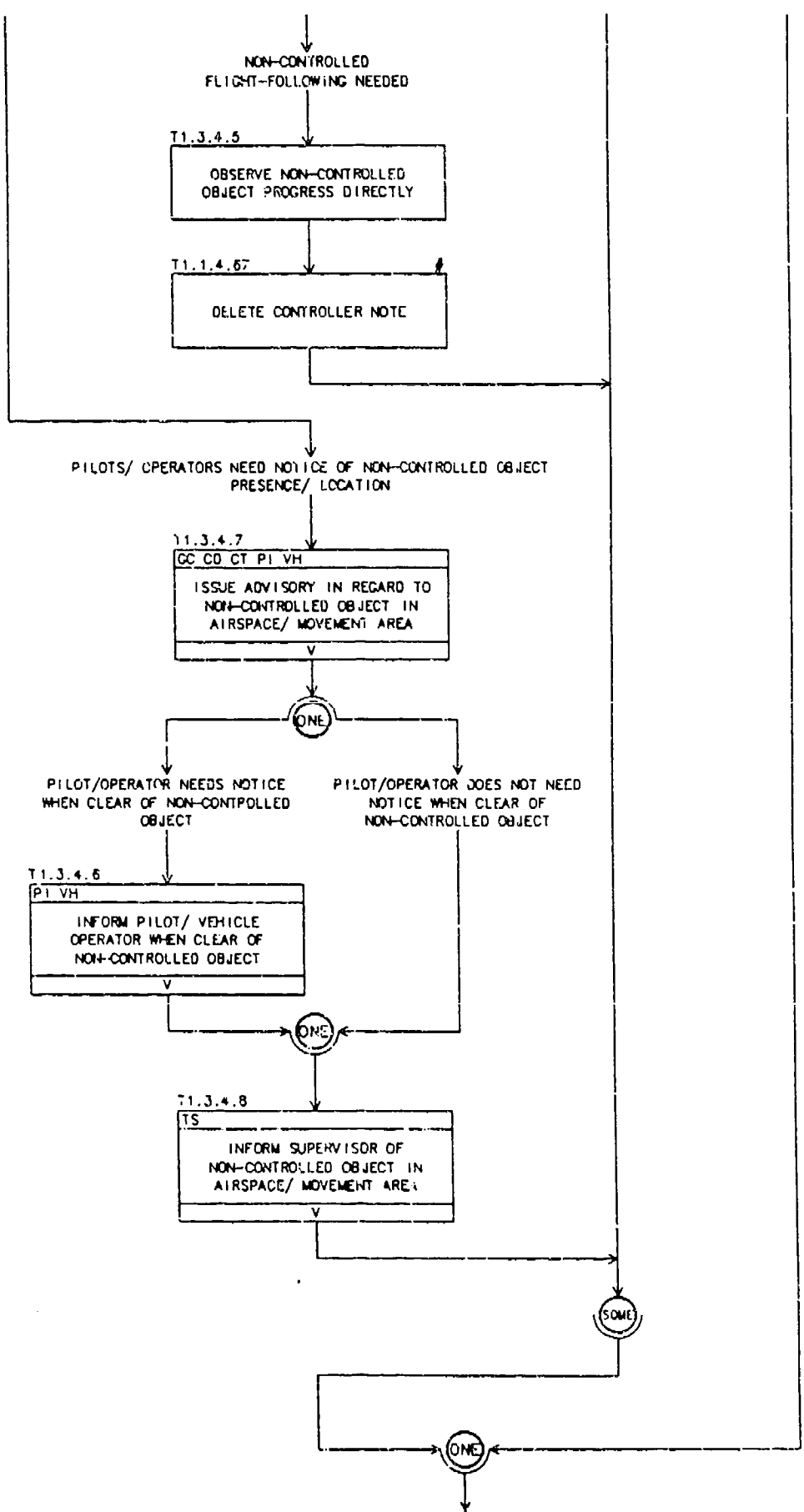

T1.3.3.24
DETERMINE LANDING SEQUENCE
T1.3.3.8
DETERMINE SAFENESS FOR LANDING
T1.3.3.25
FORMULATE LANDING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS
T1.3.3.10
PI
ISSUE CLEARANCE FOR AIRCRAFT TO LAND OR CLEARANCE FOR OPTION
T1.1.4.66
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
RPT
ONE
AIRCRAFT HAS EXECUTED EXPECTED LANDING OR OPTION
FULL STOP NECESSARY INSTEAD OF GO AROUND
T1.3.3.20
PI
ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE FOR LANDING/ OPTION
ONE
SOME
PILOT TRANSMITS NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT LANDING/ OPTION
AIRCRAFT LANDING/ OPTION OBSERVED
AIRCRAFT LANDING/ OPTION DISPLAYED


T1.3.3.11
PI
RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION
T1.3.3.12
OBSERVE AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION DIRECTLY
T1.3.3.18
OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION
SOME
ONE
TAXI INSTRUCTIONS REQUIRED
TAXI INSTRUCTIONS NOT REQUIRED
T1.2.3.9
PI VH
ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
ONE
T1.3.3.16
PI
DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT GROUND CONTROL
ONE
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MUST BE TRANSFERRED TO GROUND CONTROL
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD TRANSFER NOT REQUIRED
T1.3.10.60
FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER
ONE

T1.3.4 MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS

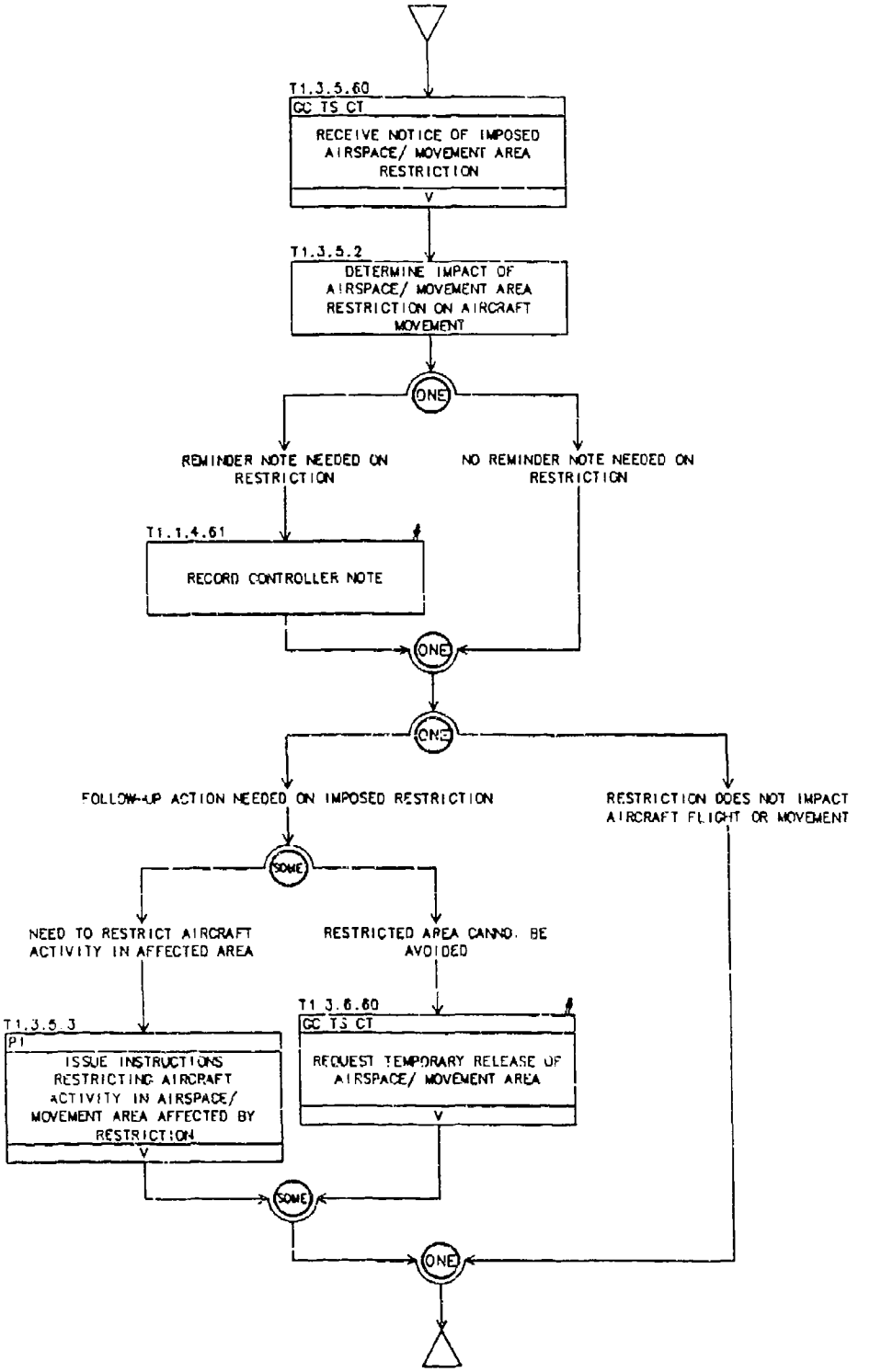
EVENTS: AIRSPACE INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT, BALLOON/ GLIDER, RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY INCURSION BY OBSTACLE/ VEHICLE/ AIRCRAFT




NON-CONTROLLED FLIGHT-FOLLOWING NEEDED
T1.3.4.5
OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS DIRECTLY
T1.1.4.67
DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE
PILOTS/ OPERATORS NEED NOTICE OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PRESENCE/ LOCATION
T1.3.4.7
GC CO CT PI VH
ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA
ONE
PILOT/OPERATOR NEEDS NOTICE WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT
PILOT/OPERATOR DOES NOT NEED NOTICE WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT
T1.3.4.6
PI VH
INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT
ONE
T1.3.4.8
TS
INFORM SUPERVISOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA
SOME
ONE

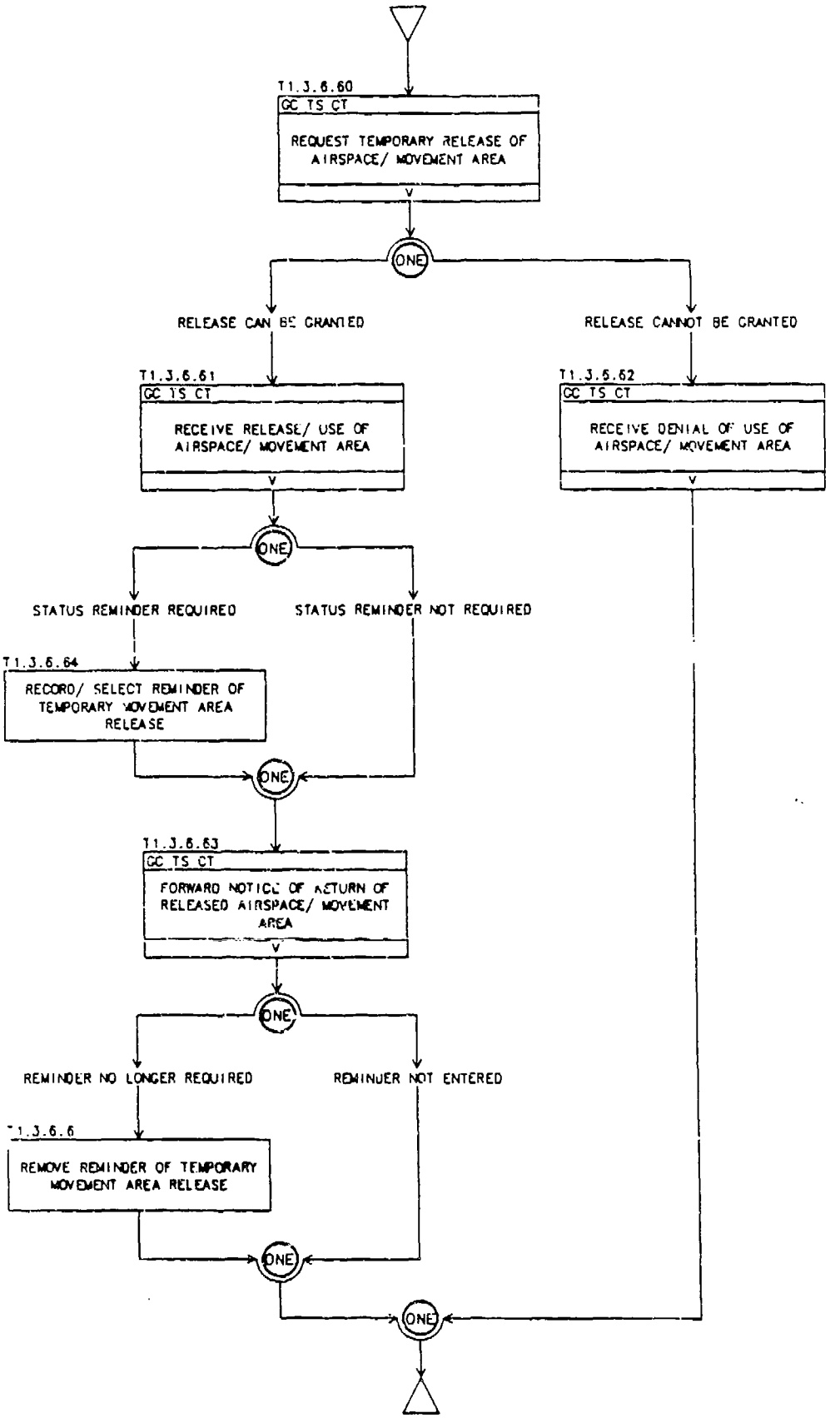
T1.3.5 RESPONDING TO IMPOSED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTIONS

EVENTS: RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY OPEN/ CLOSE, AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION, SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE, AIRSHOW, BALLOON/ GLIDER, GENERAL INTEREST FLIGHT



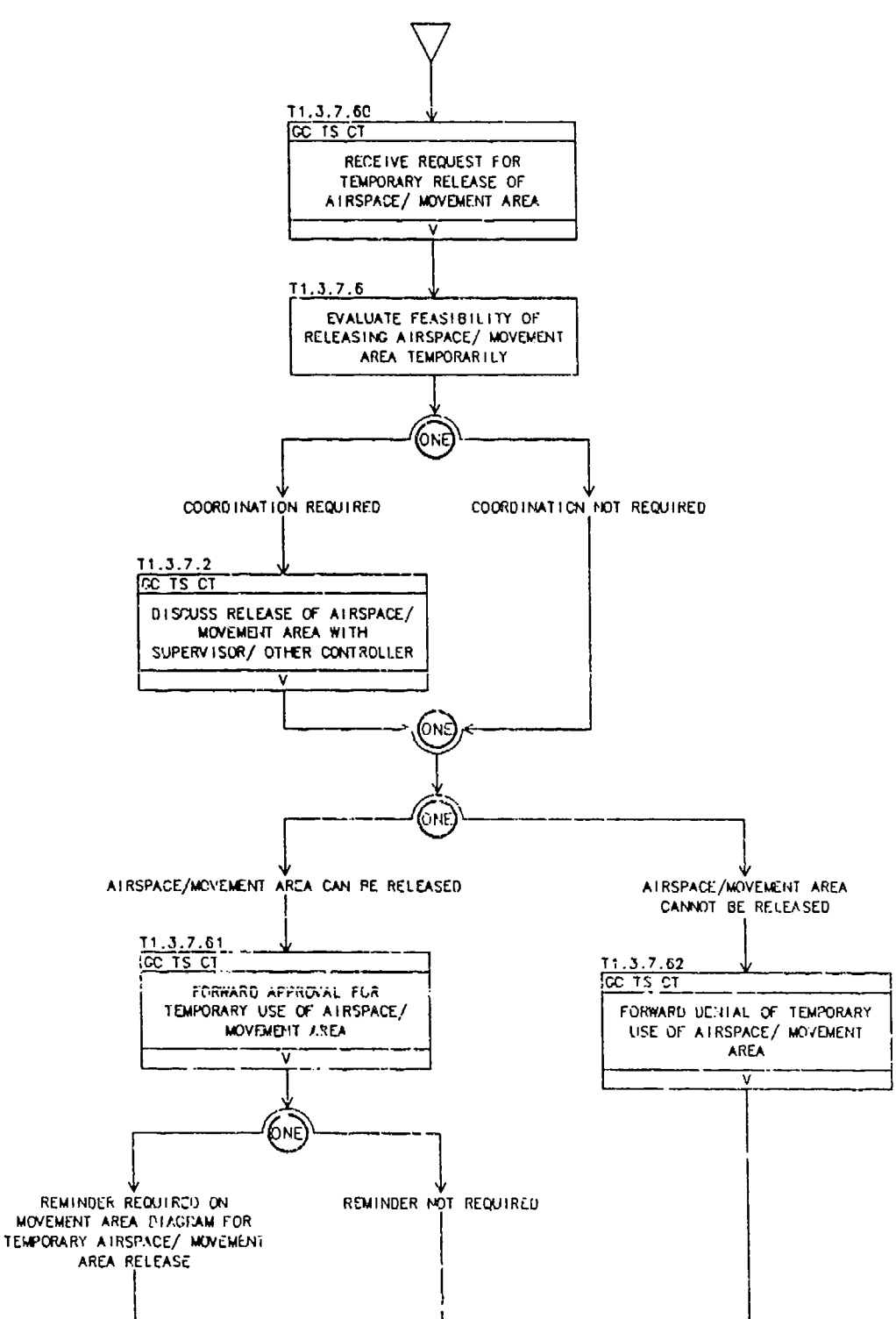
T1.3.6 REQUESTING TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS

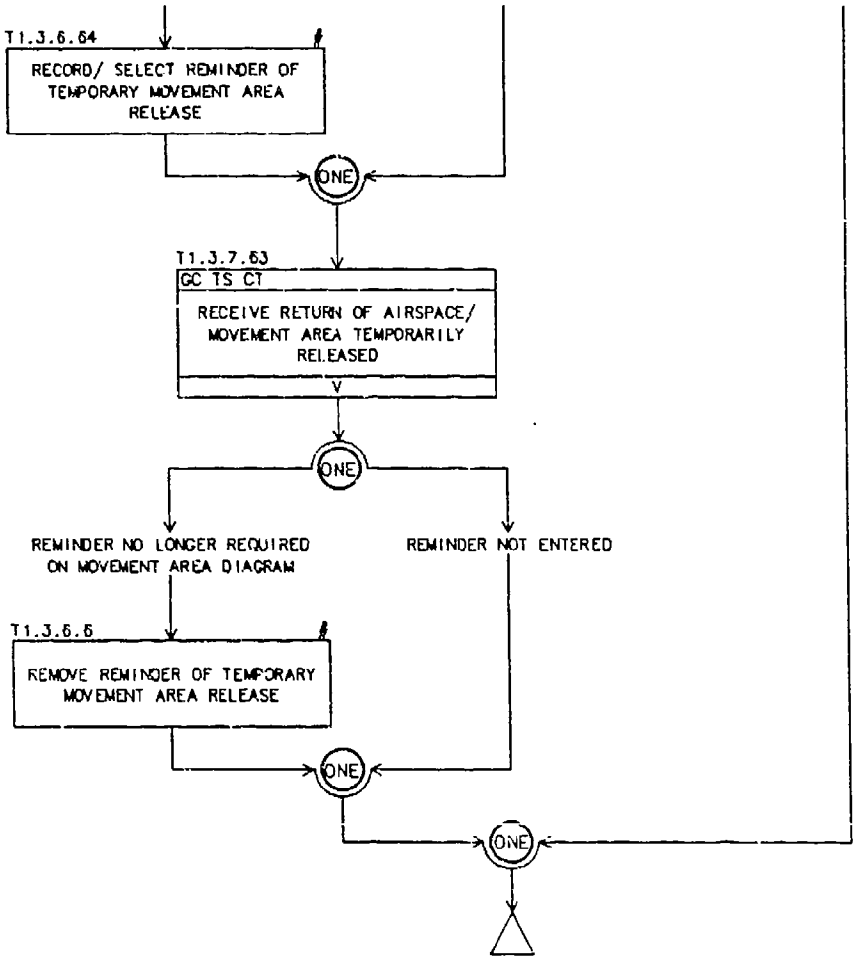
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE



T1.3.7 RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS

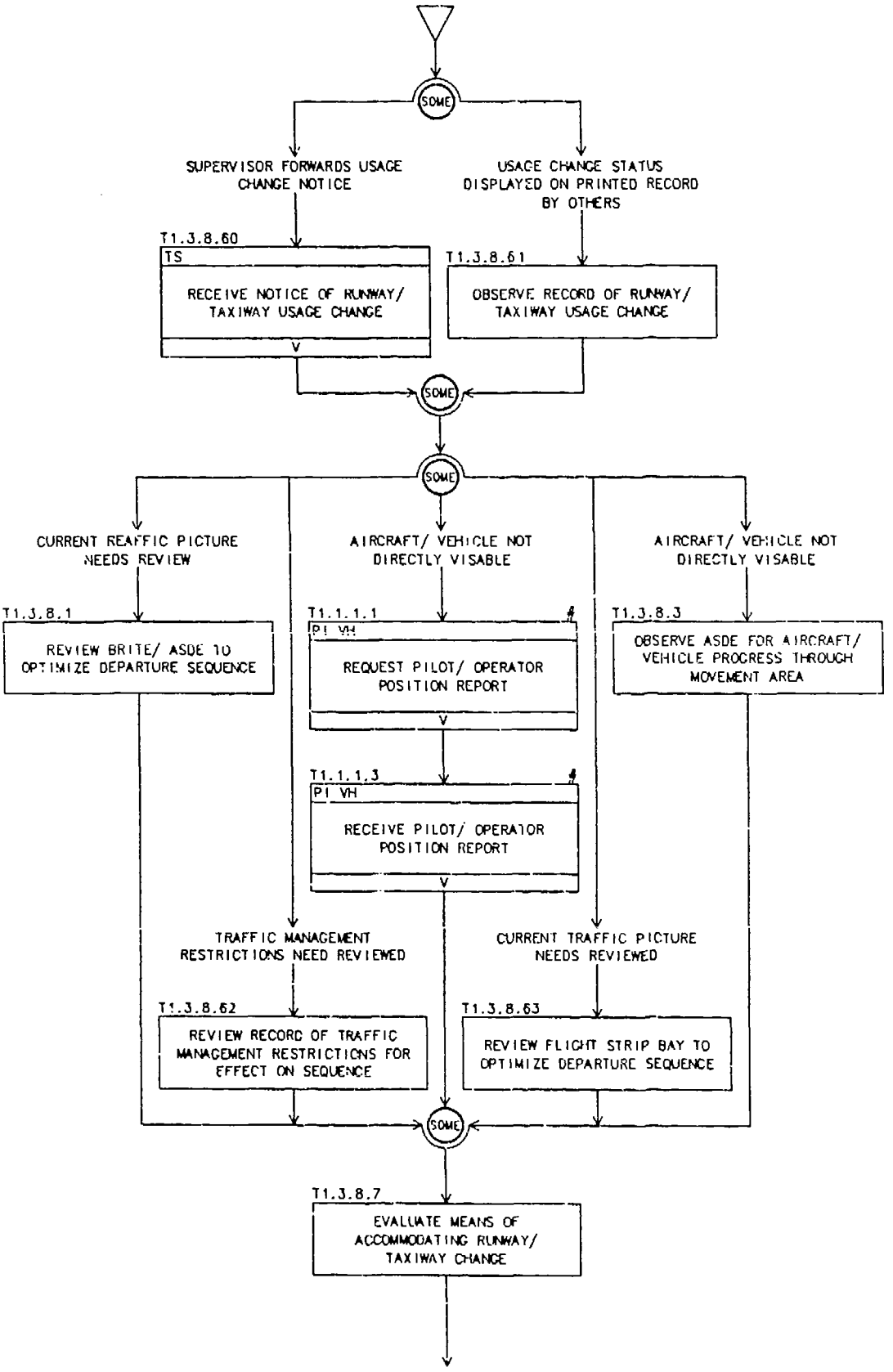
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE

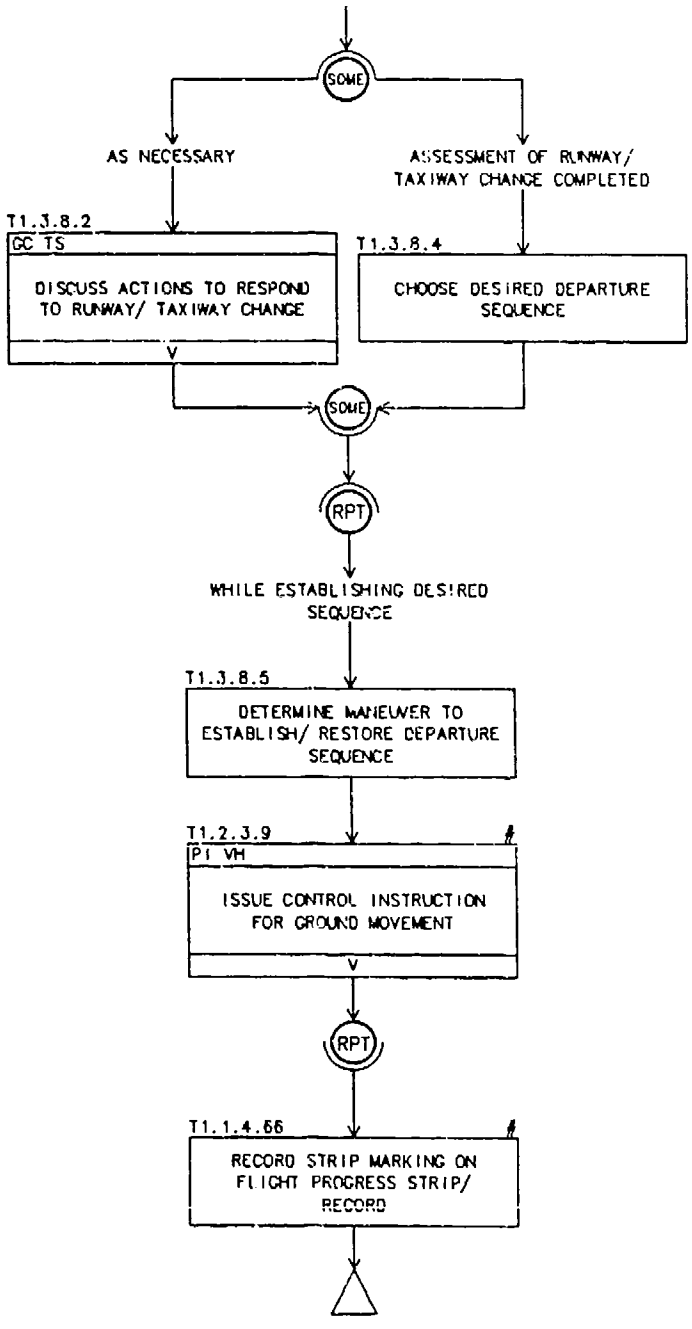



T1.3.6.64
RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
ONE
T1.3.7.63
GC TS CT
RECEIVE RETURN OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED
ONE
REMINDER NO LONGER REQUIRED ON MOVEMENT AREA DIAGRAM
REMINDER NOT ENTERED
T1.3.6.6
REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
ONE
ONE

T1.3.8 RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGES

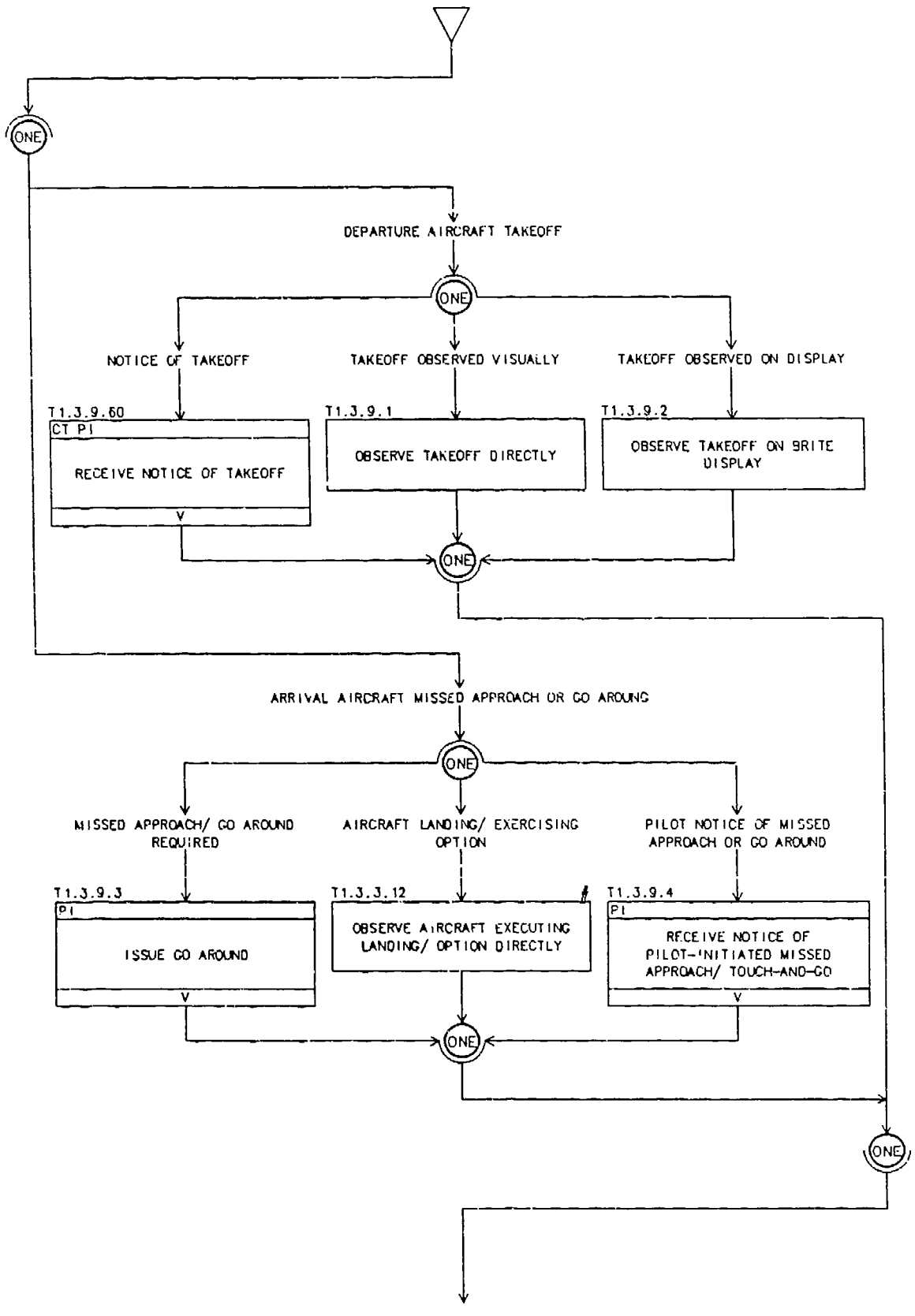
EVENTS: RUNWAY CONFIGURATION CHANGE, RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY OPEN/ CLOSE



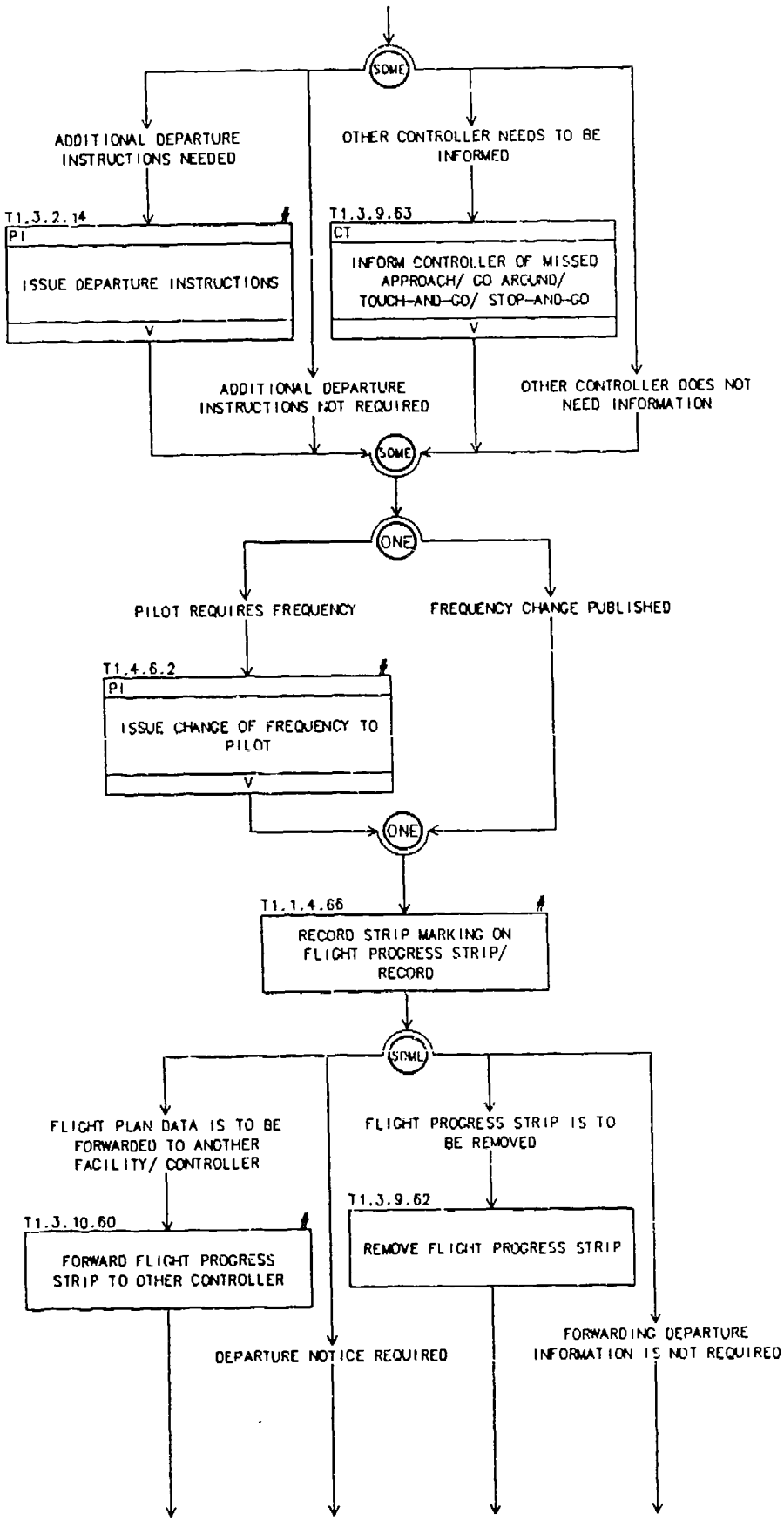

SOME
AS NECESSARY
ASSESSMENT OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE COMPLETED
T1.3.8.2
GC TS
DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE
T1.3.8.4
CHOOSE DESIRED DEPARTURE SEQUENCE
SOME
RPT
WHILE ESTABLISHING DESIRED SEQUENCE
T1.3.8.5
DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE
T1.2.3.9
PI VH
ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
RPT
T1.1.4.66
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD

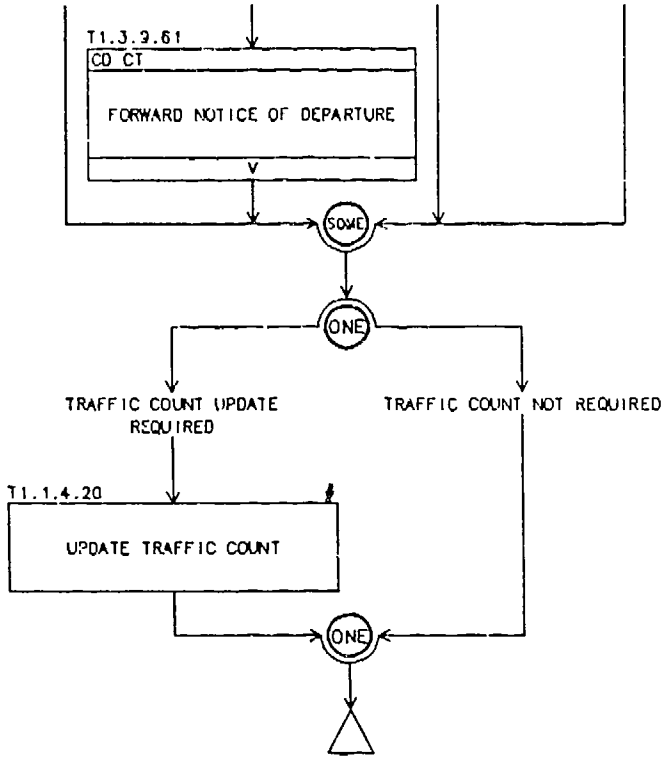
T1.3.9 MANAGING AIRBORNE DEPARTURES

EVENTS: MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ PRACTICE APPROACH, AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF, DEPARTURE TIME RECEIPT



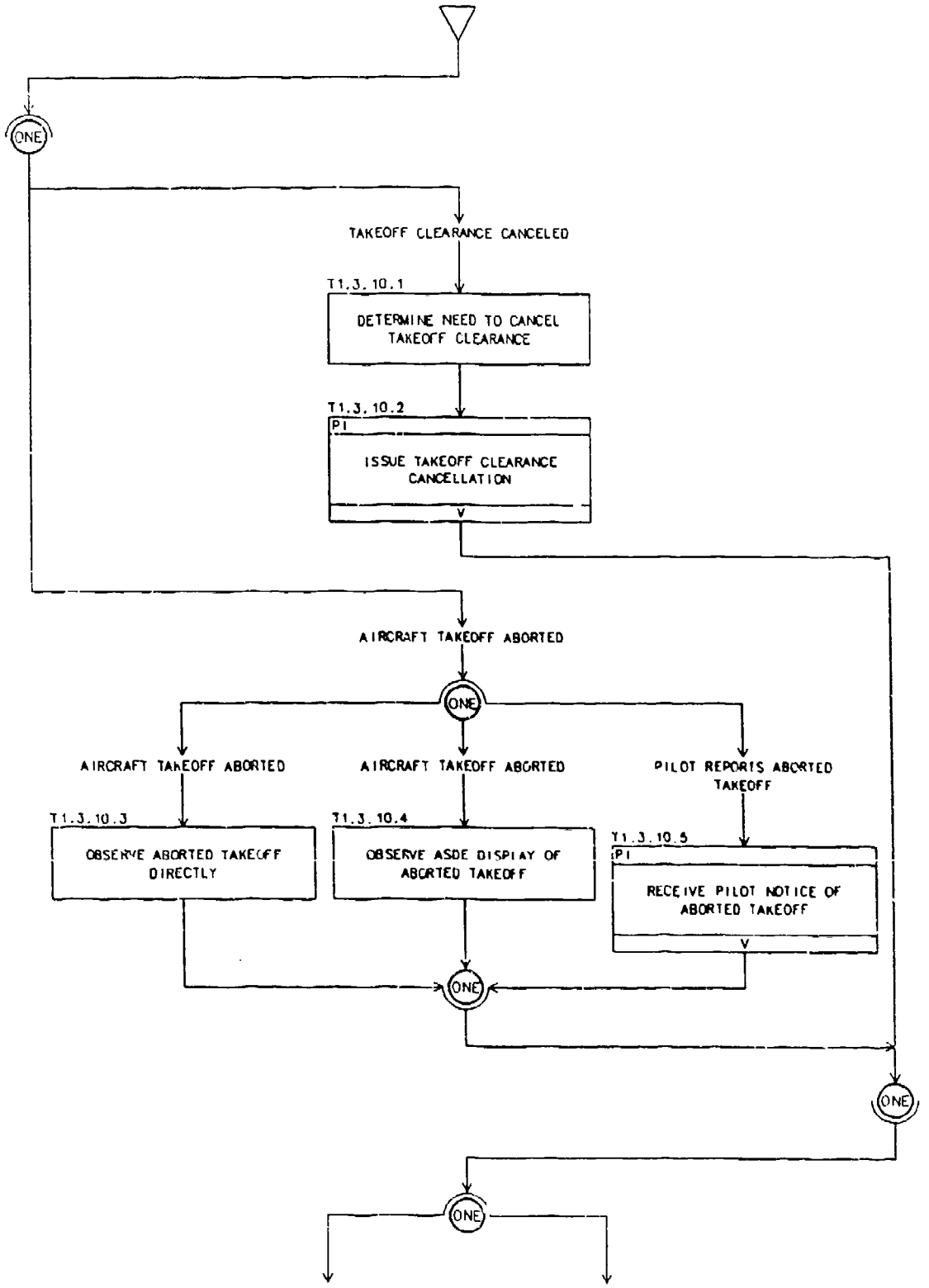
T1.3.9 MANAGING AIRBORNE DEPARTURES (cont.)

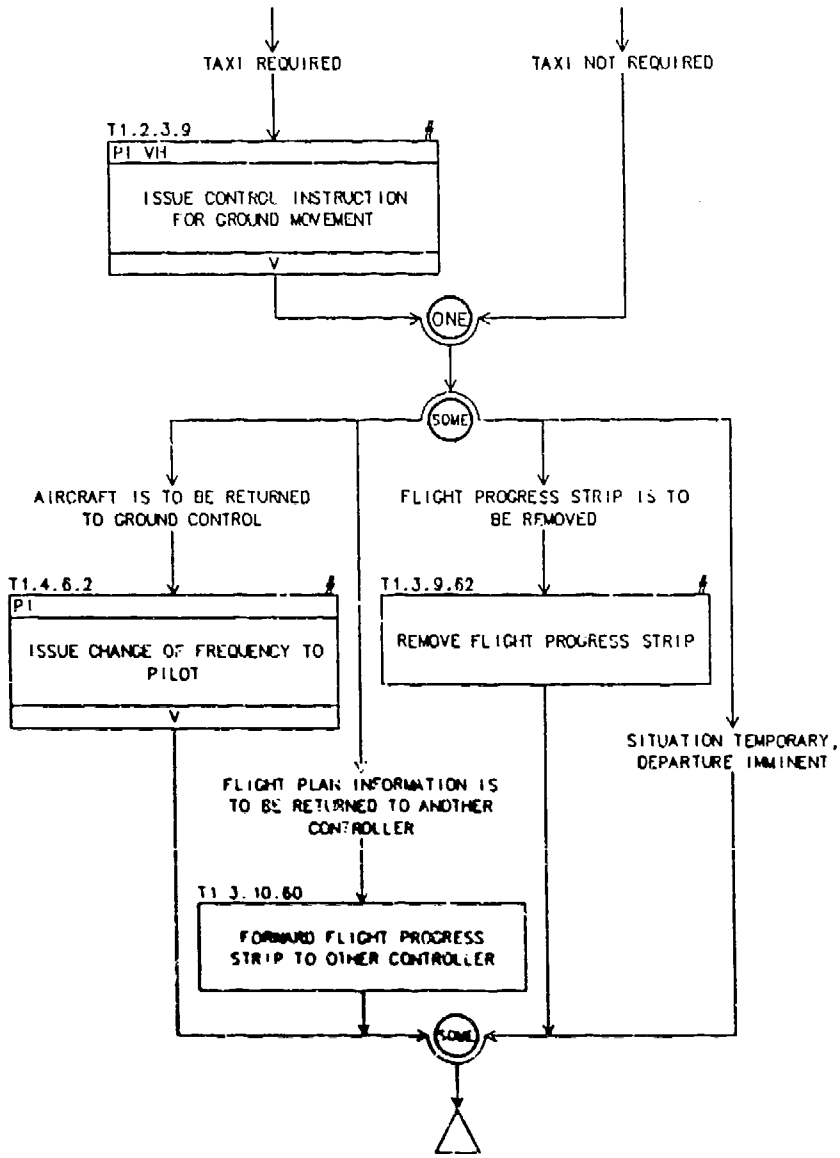



T1.3.9.61
CD CT
FORWARD NOTICE OF DEPARTURE
SOME
ONE
TRAFFIC COUNT UPDATE REQUIRED
TRAFFIC COUNT NOT REQUIRED
T1.1.4.20
UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT
ONE

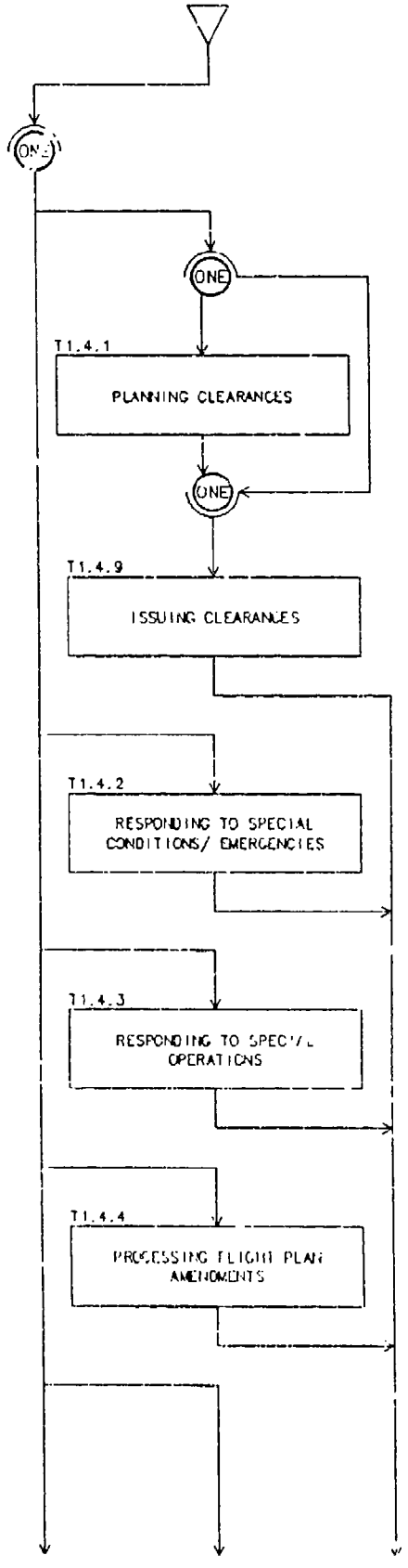
T1.3.10 MANAGING AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF TERMINATION

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, RUNWAY INCURSION BY OBSTACLE/ VEHICLE/ AIRCRAFT, ABORTED TAKEOFF, LOCAL TRAFFIC, GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION, AIRCRAFT EMERGENCY/ INCIDENT - GROUND, WIND SHEAR REPORT/ OBSERVATION

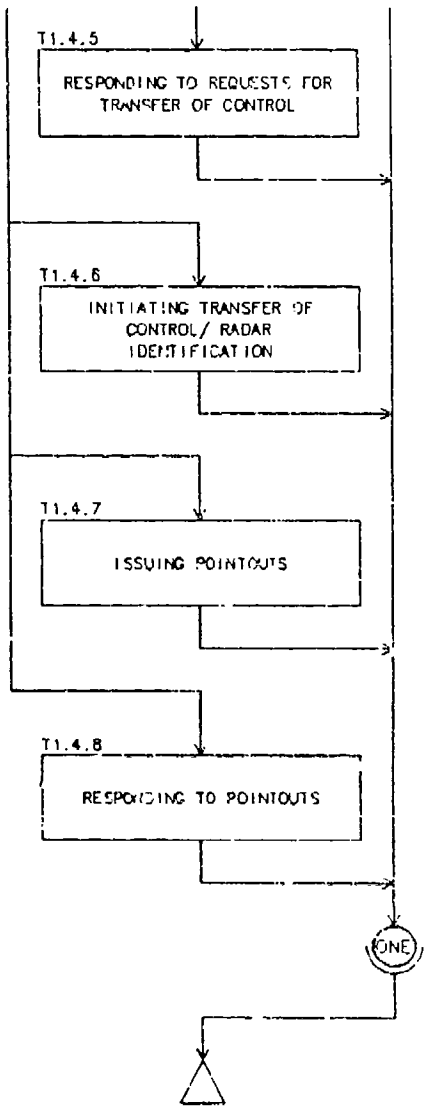



TAXI REQUIRED
TAXI NOT REQUIRED
T1.2.3.9
P1 VH
ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
ONE
SOME
AIRCRAFT IS TO BE RETURNED TO GROUND CONTROL
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP IS TO BE REMOVED
T1.4.6.2
P1
ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT
T1.3.9.62
REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP
SITUATION TEMPORARY, DEPARTURE IMMINENT
FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION IS TO BE RETURNED TO ANOTHER CONTROLLER
T1.3.10.60
FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER
SOME

T1.4 ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS

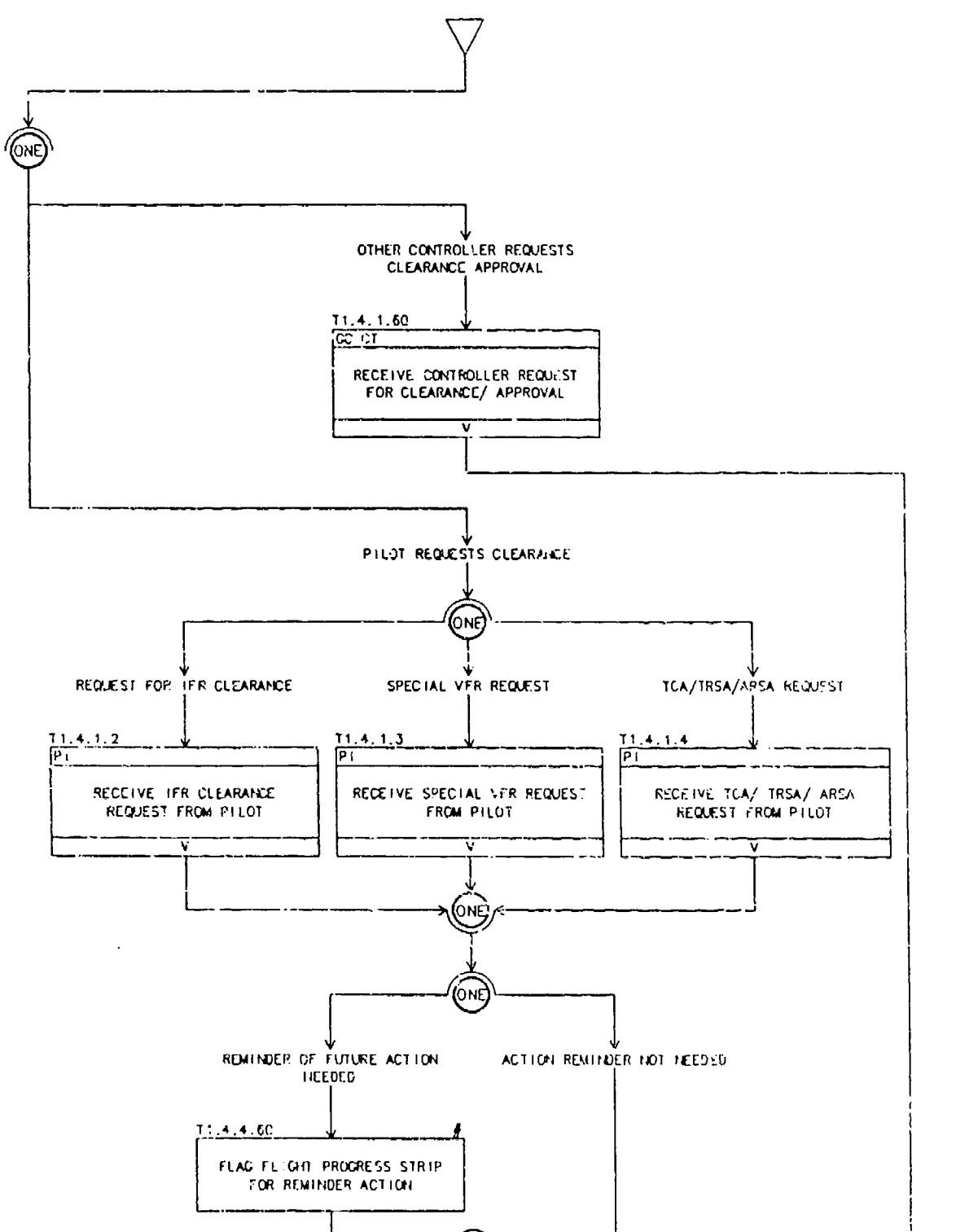


T1.4 ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS (cont.)

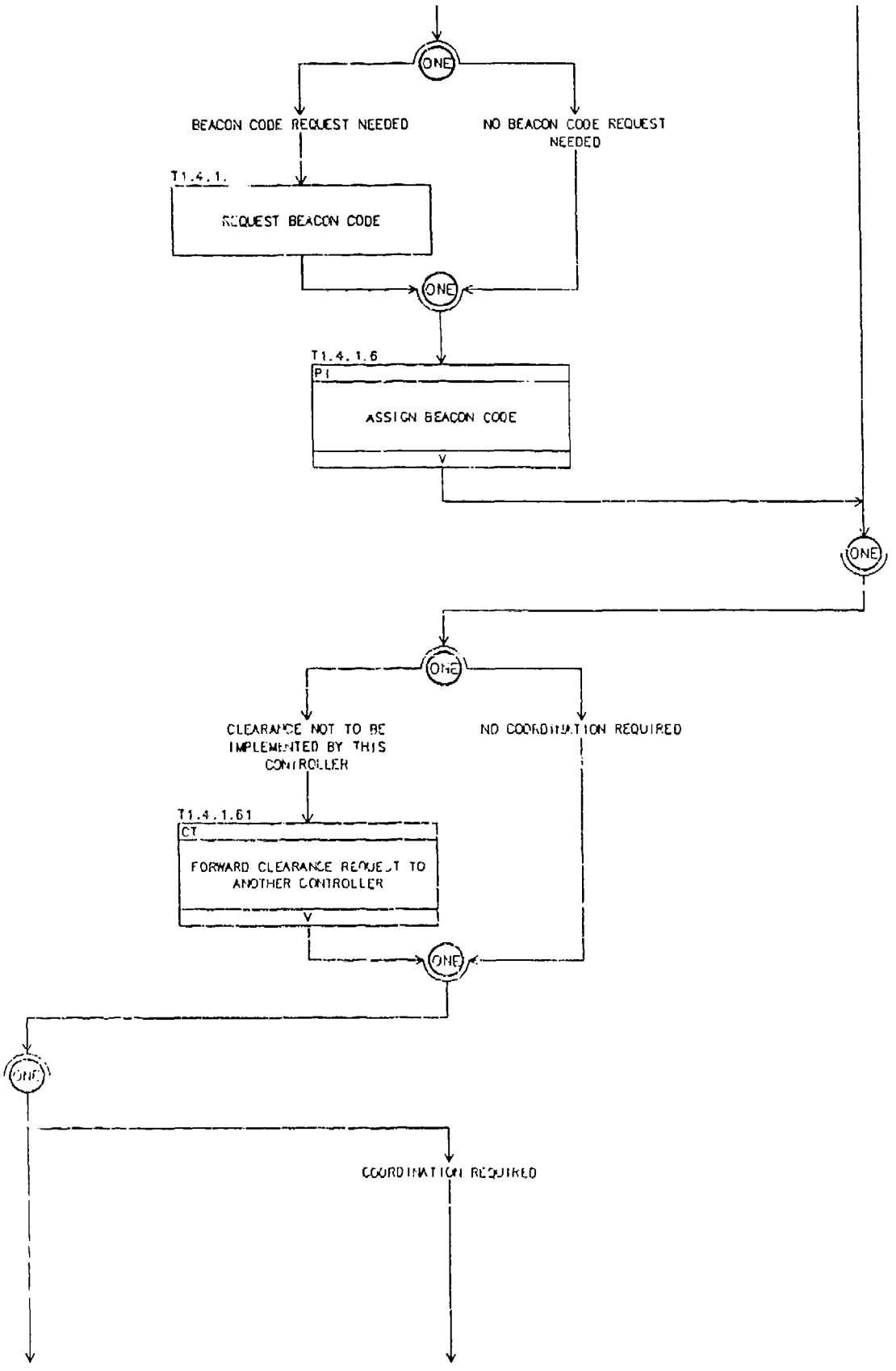


T1.4.1 PLANNING CLEARANCES

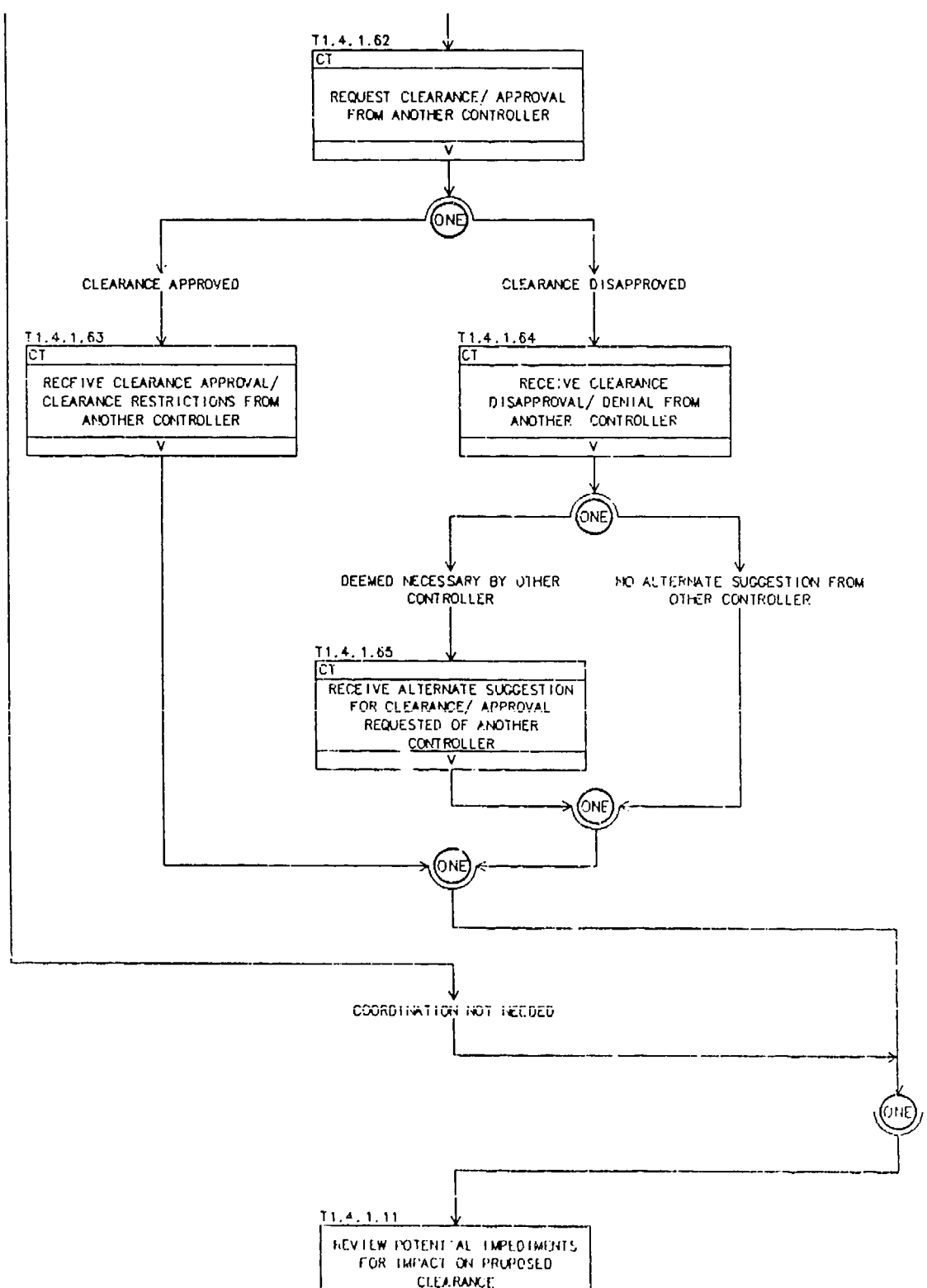
EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST, VFR TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA OPERATION



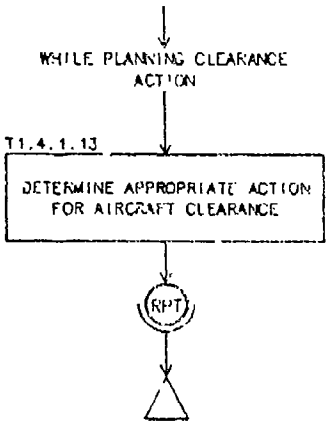
T1.4.1 PLANNING CLEARANCES (cont.)



T1.4.1 PLANNING CLEARANCES (cont.)

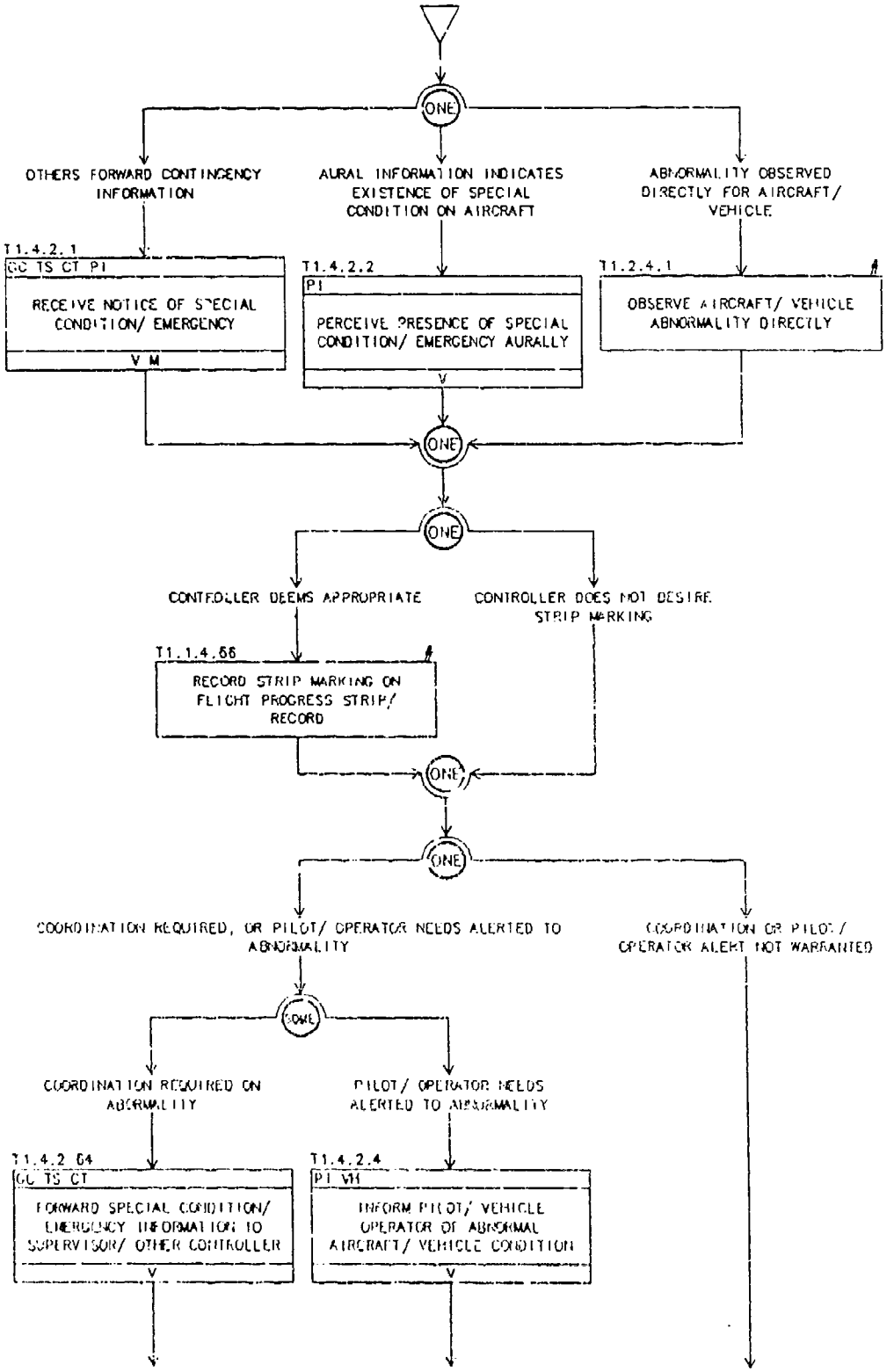


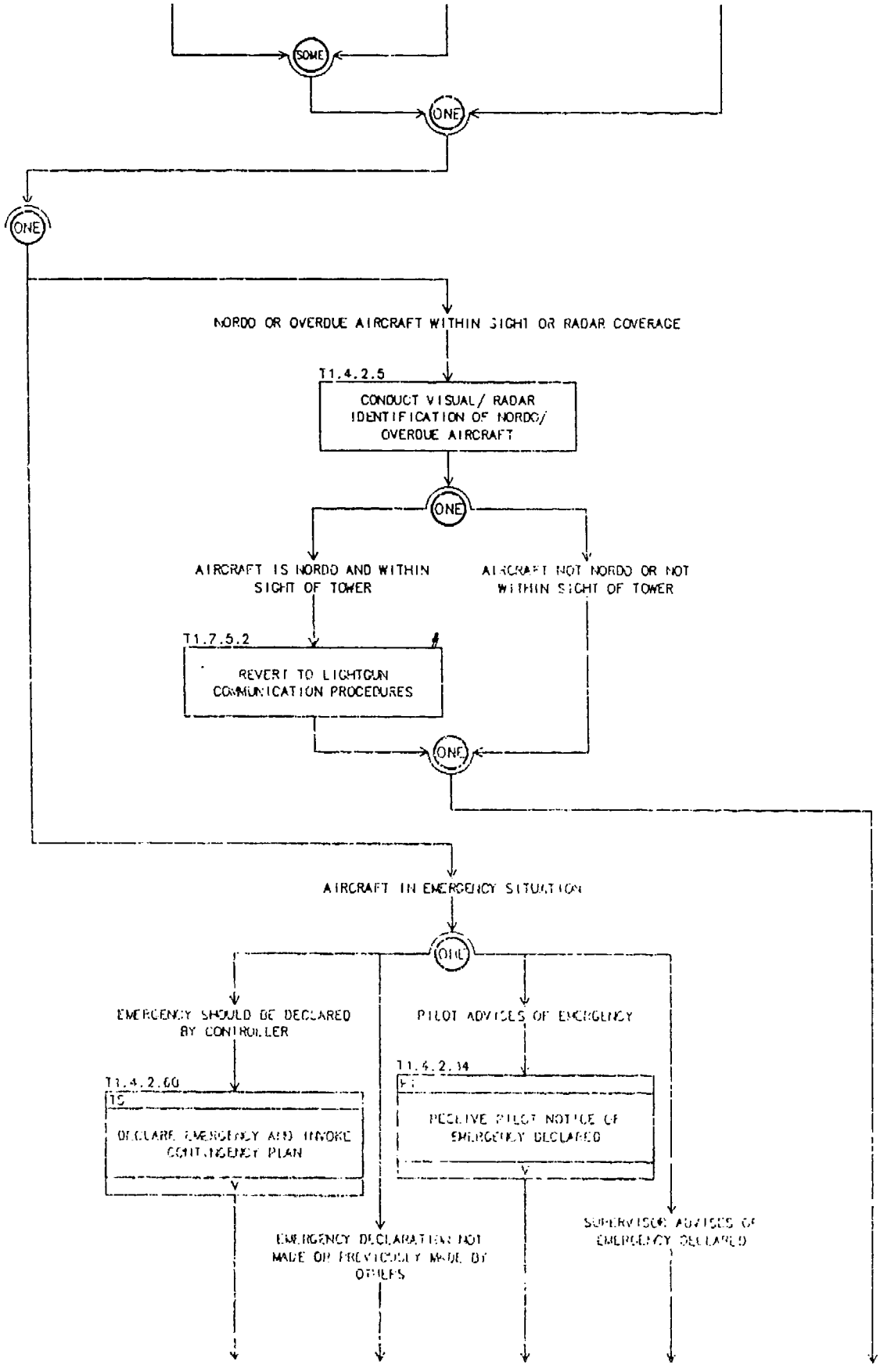
T1.4.1 PLANNING CLEARANCES (cont.)

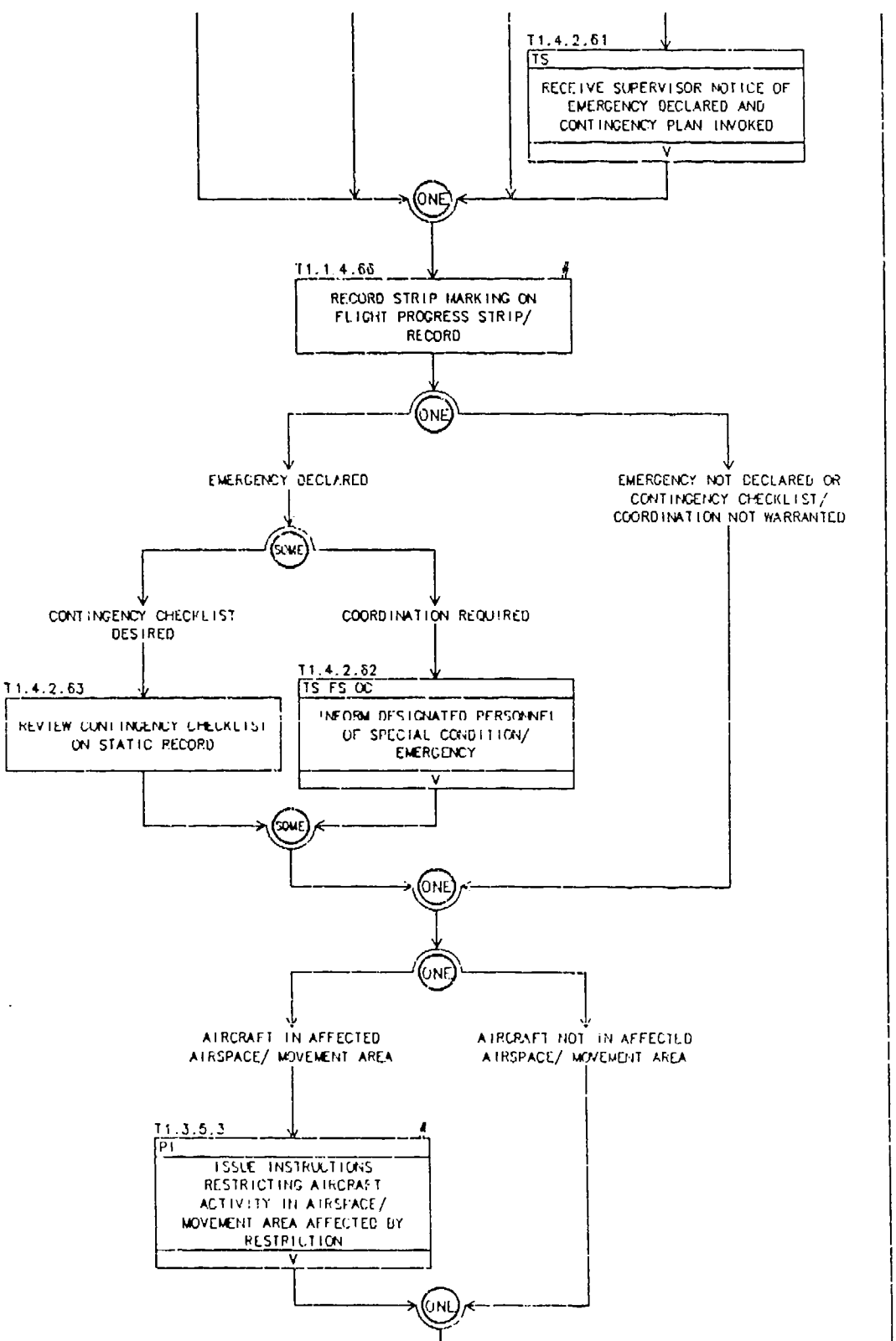


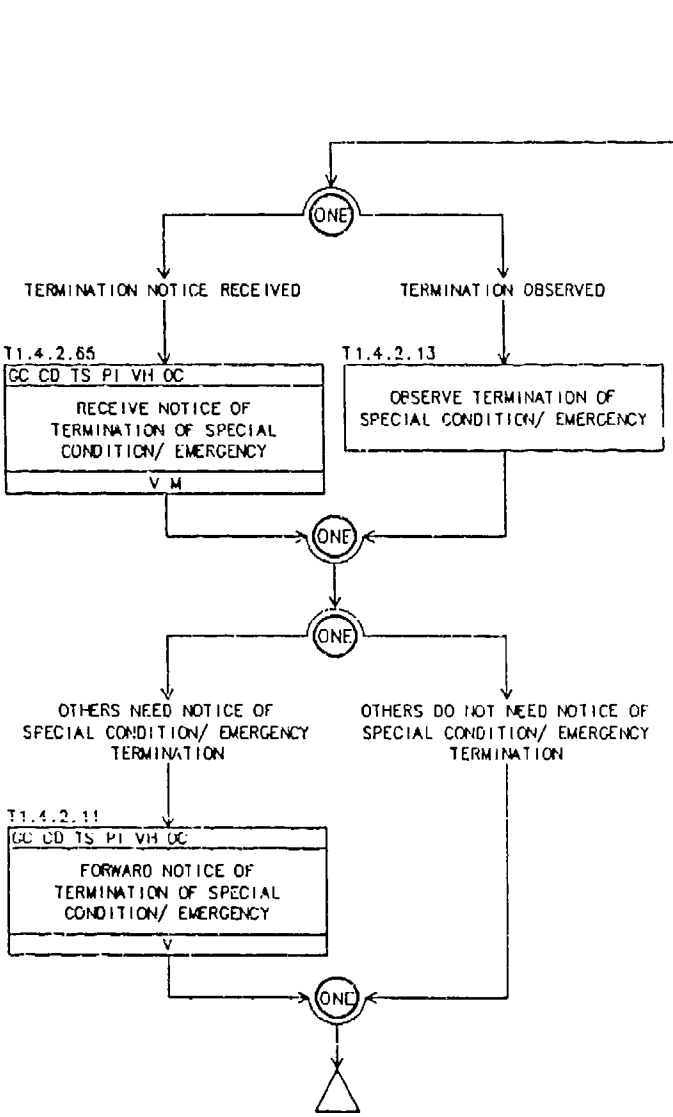
T1.4.2 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT EMERGENCY – AIRBORNE, AIRCRAFT EMERGENCY/ INCIDENT– GROUND, NO RADIO, OVERDUE AIRCRAFT, AIRCRAFT ACCIDENT, HIJACK, MEDICAL EMERGENCY, FUEL DUMPING/ JETTISON, BOMB THREAT



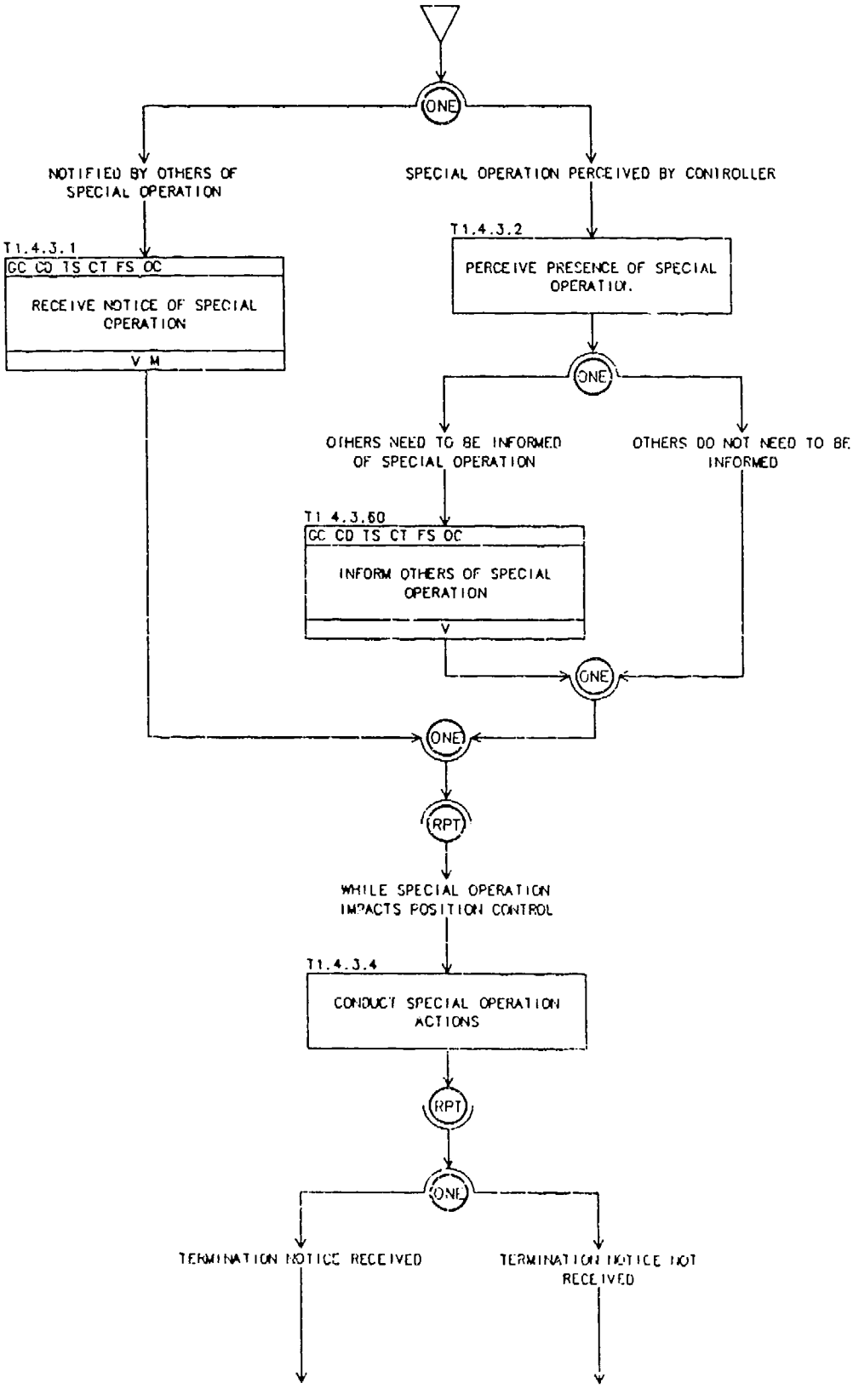

SOME
ONE
ONE
NORDO OR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT WITHIN SIGHT OR RADAR COVERAGE
T1.4.2.5
CONDUCT VISUAL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION OF NORDO/ OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
ONE
AIRCRAFT IS NORDO AND WITHIN SIGHT OF TOWER
AIRCRAFT NOT NORDO OR NOT WITHIN SIGHT OF TOWER
T1.7.5.2
REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES
ONE
AIRCRAFT IN EMERGENCY SITUATION
ONE
EMERGENCY SHOULD BE DECLARED BY CONTROLLER
PILOT ADVISES OF EMERGENCY
T1.4.2.60
TS
DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN
T1.4.2.14
PS
RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED
EMERGENCY DECLARATION NOT MADE OR PREVIOUSLY MADE BY OTHERS
SUPERVISOR ADVISES OF EMERGENCY DECLARED

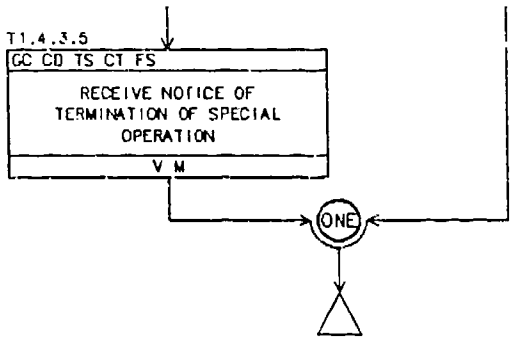

T1.4.2.61
TS
RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED
ONE
T1.1.4.66
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
ONE
EMERGENCY DECLARED
EMERGENCY NOT DECLARED OR CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST/ COORDINATION NOT WARRANTED
SOME
CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST DESIRED
COORDINATION REQUIRED
T1.4.2.63
REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD
T1.4.2.62
TS FS OC
INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
SOME
ONE
ONE
AIRCRAFT IN AFFECTED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA
AIRCRAFT NOT IN AFFECTED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA
T1.3.5.3
PI
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS RESTRICTING AIRCRAFT ACTIVITY IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA AFFECTED BY RESTRICTION
ONE


ONE
ONE
TERMINATION NOTICE RECEIVED
TERMINATION OBSERVED
T1.4.2.65
GC CD TS PI VH OC
RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
V M
T1.4.2.13
OBSERVE TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY TERMINATION
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY TERMINATION
T1.4.2.11
GC CD TS PI VH OC
FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
V
ONE

T1.4.3 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS

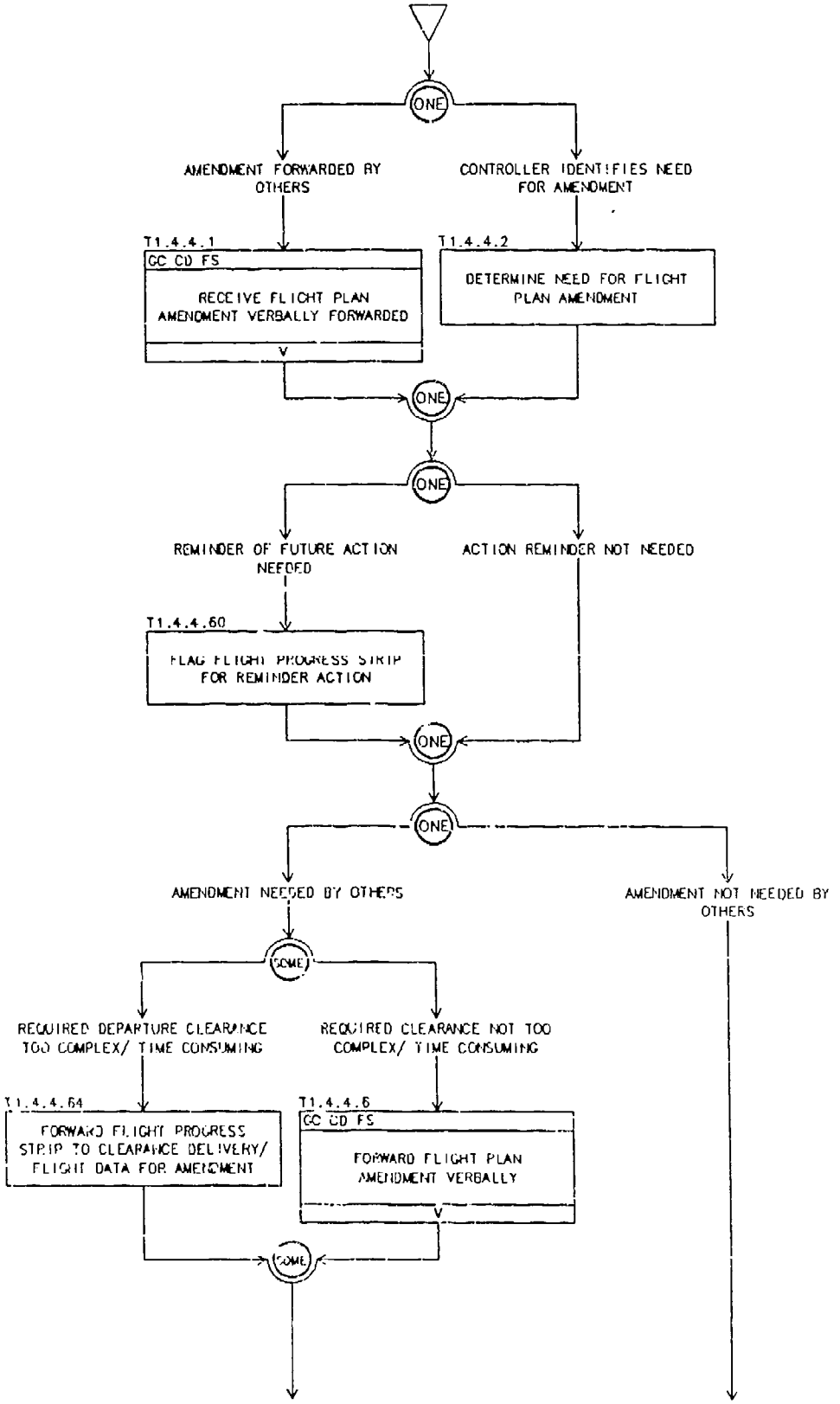
EVENTS: LIFEGUARD MISSION, HAZARDOUS CARGO, EXPERIMENTAL FLIGHT, MILITARY OPERATION, HELICOPTER OPERATION, GENERAL INTEREST FLIGHT, LAW ENFORCEMENT, SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE

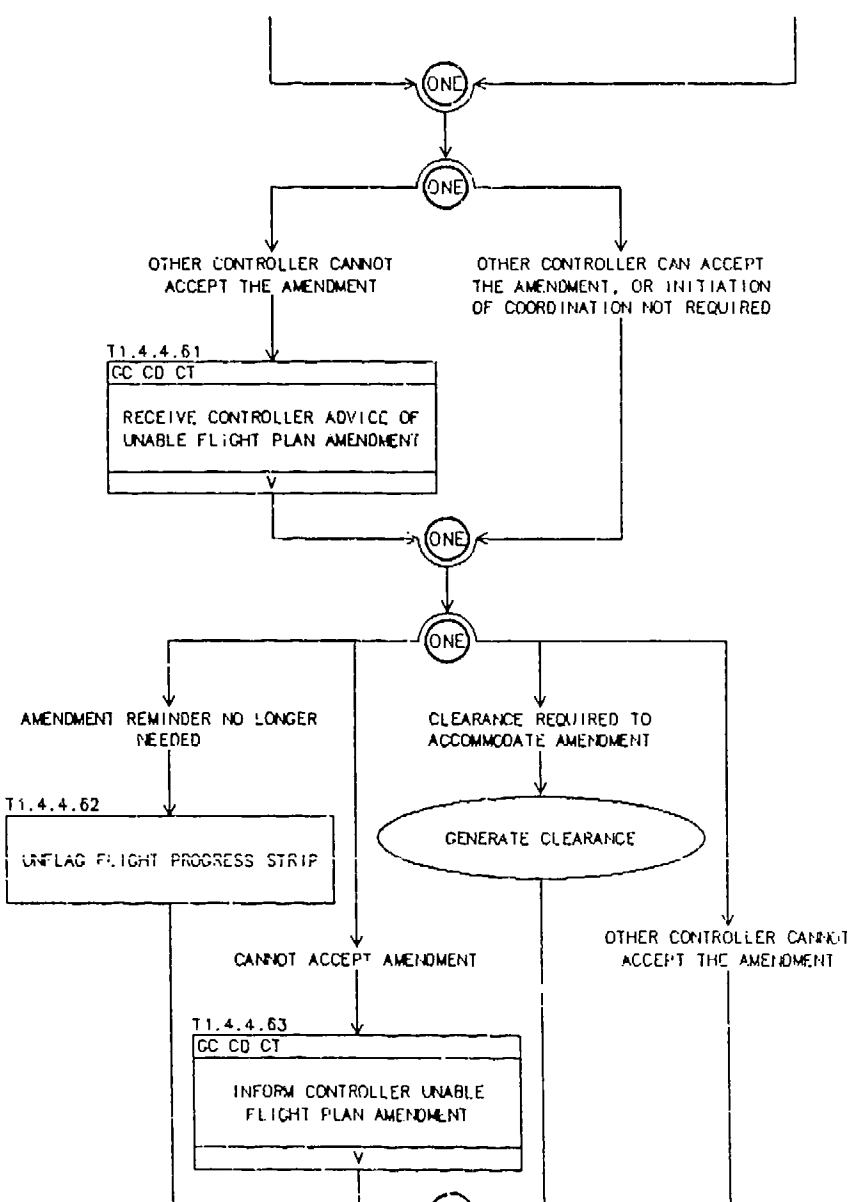



T1.4.3.5
GC CD TS CT FS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
V M
ONE

T1.4.4 PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS

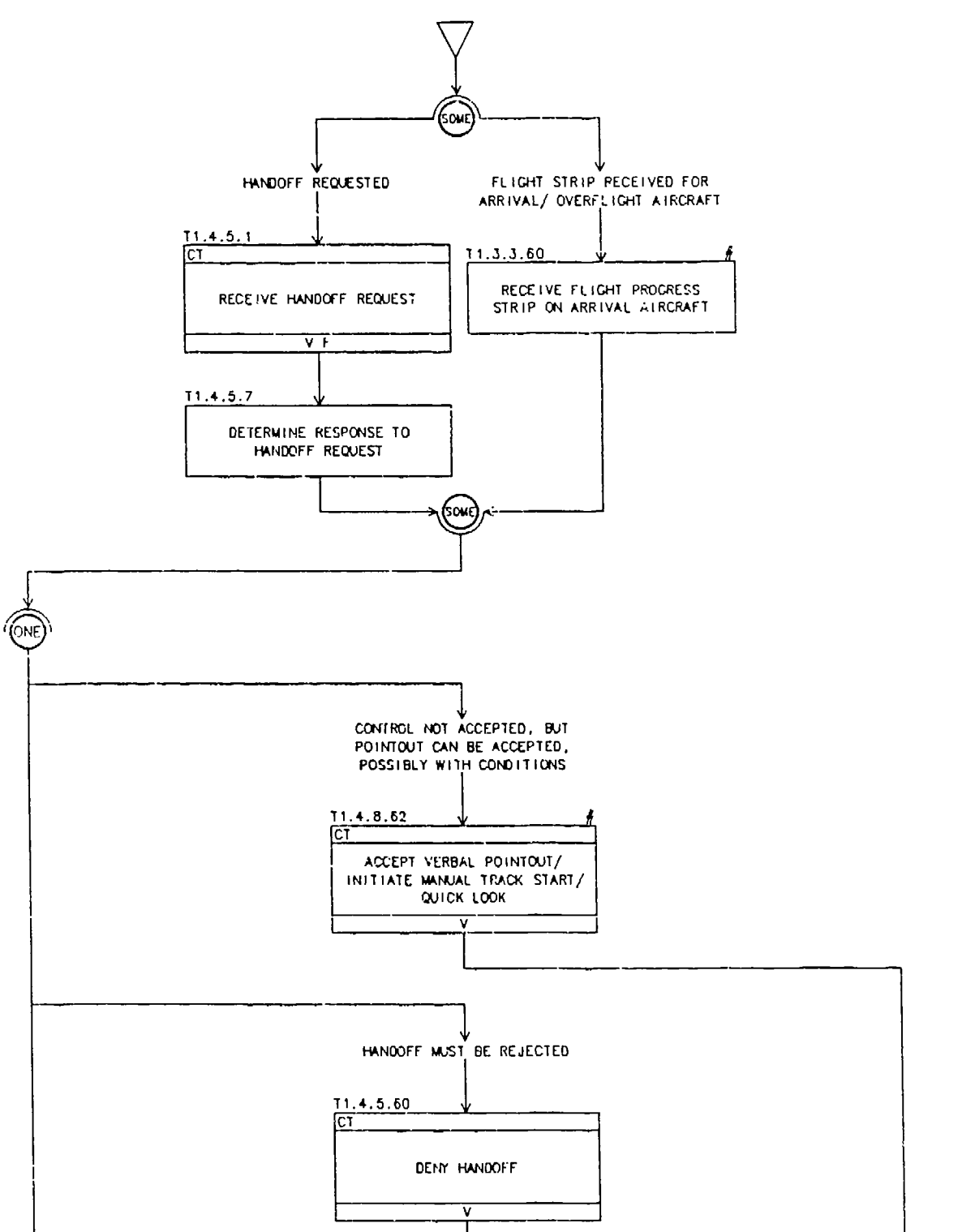
EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST, VFR TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA OPERATION

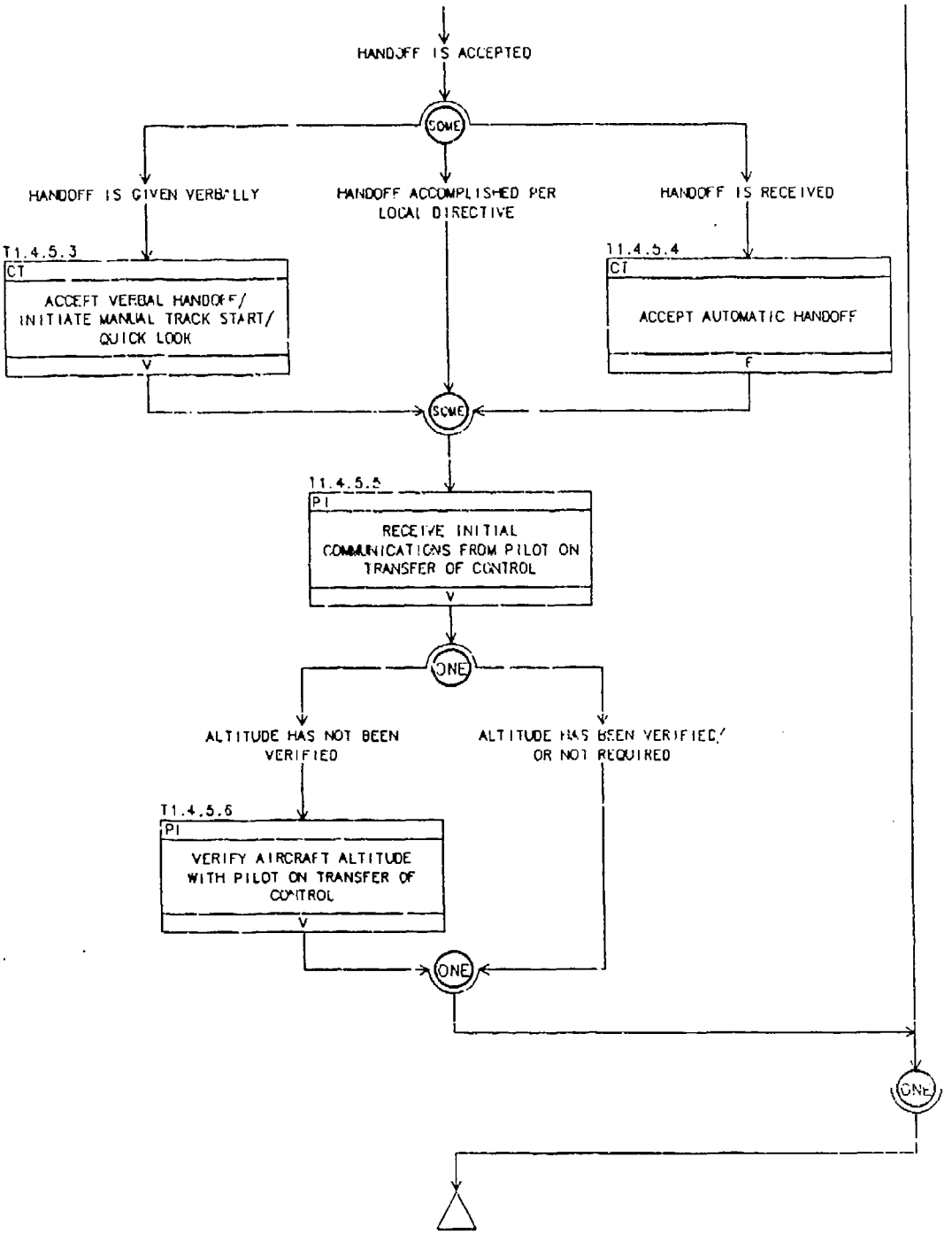



ONE
ONE
OTHER CONTROLLER CANNOT ACCEPT THE AMENDMENT
OTHER CONTROLLER CAN ACCEPT THE AMENDMENT, OR INITIATION OF COORDINATION NOT REQUIRED
T1.4.4.61
GC CD CT
RECEIVE CONTROLLER ADVICE OF UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT
ONE
ONE
AMENDMENT REMINDER NO LONGER NEEDED
CLEARANCE REQUIRED TO ACCOMMODATE AMENDMENT
T1.4.4.62
UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP
GENERATE CLEARANCE
CANNOT ACCEPT AMENDMENT
OTHER CONTROLLER CANNOT ACCEPT THE AMENDMENT
T1.4.4.63
GC CD CT
INFORM CONTROLLER UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT
ONE

T1.4.5 RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TRANSFER OF CONTROL

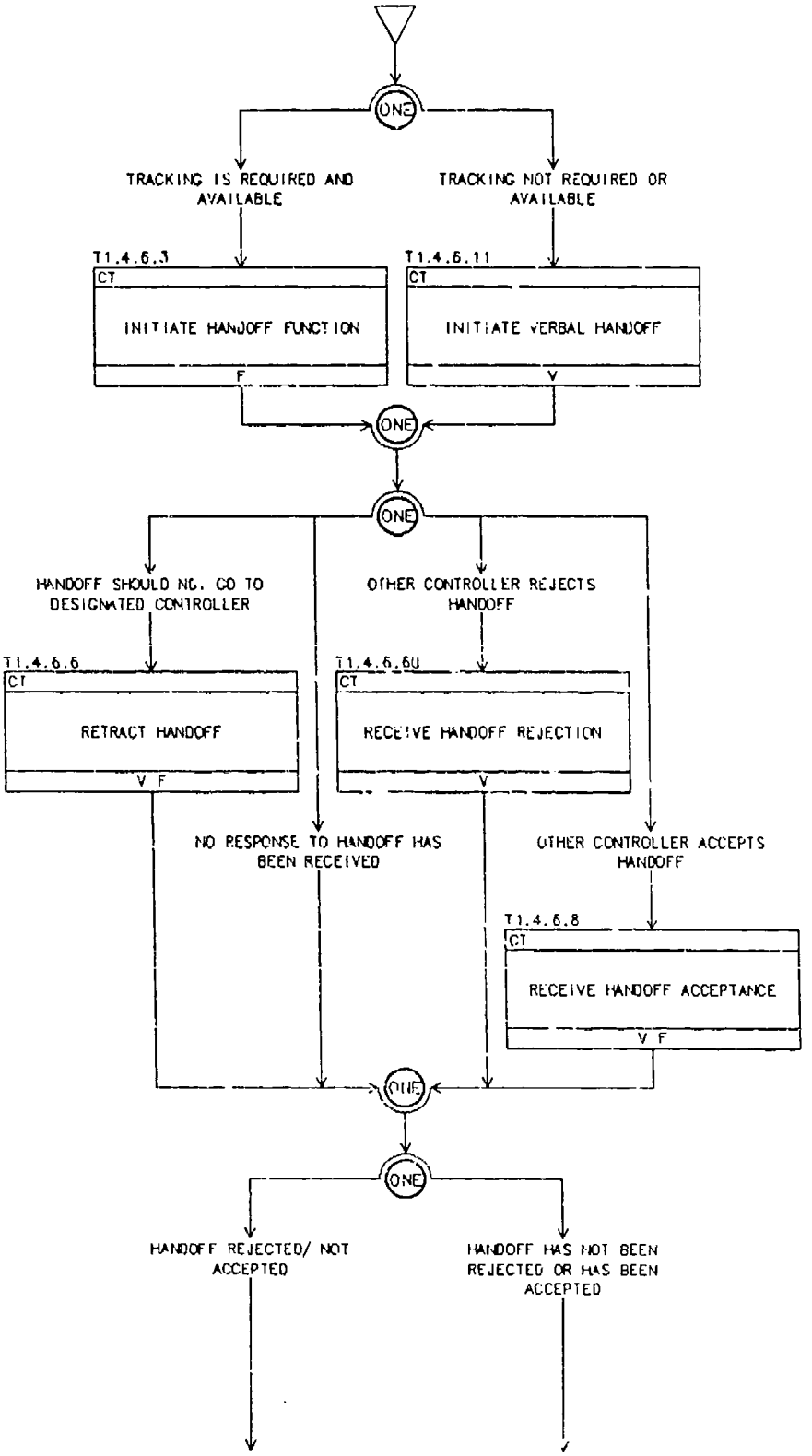
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY, HANDOFF RECEIPT

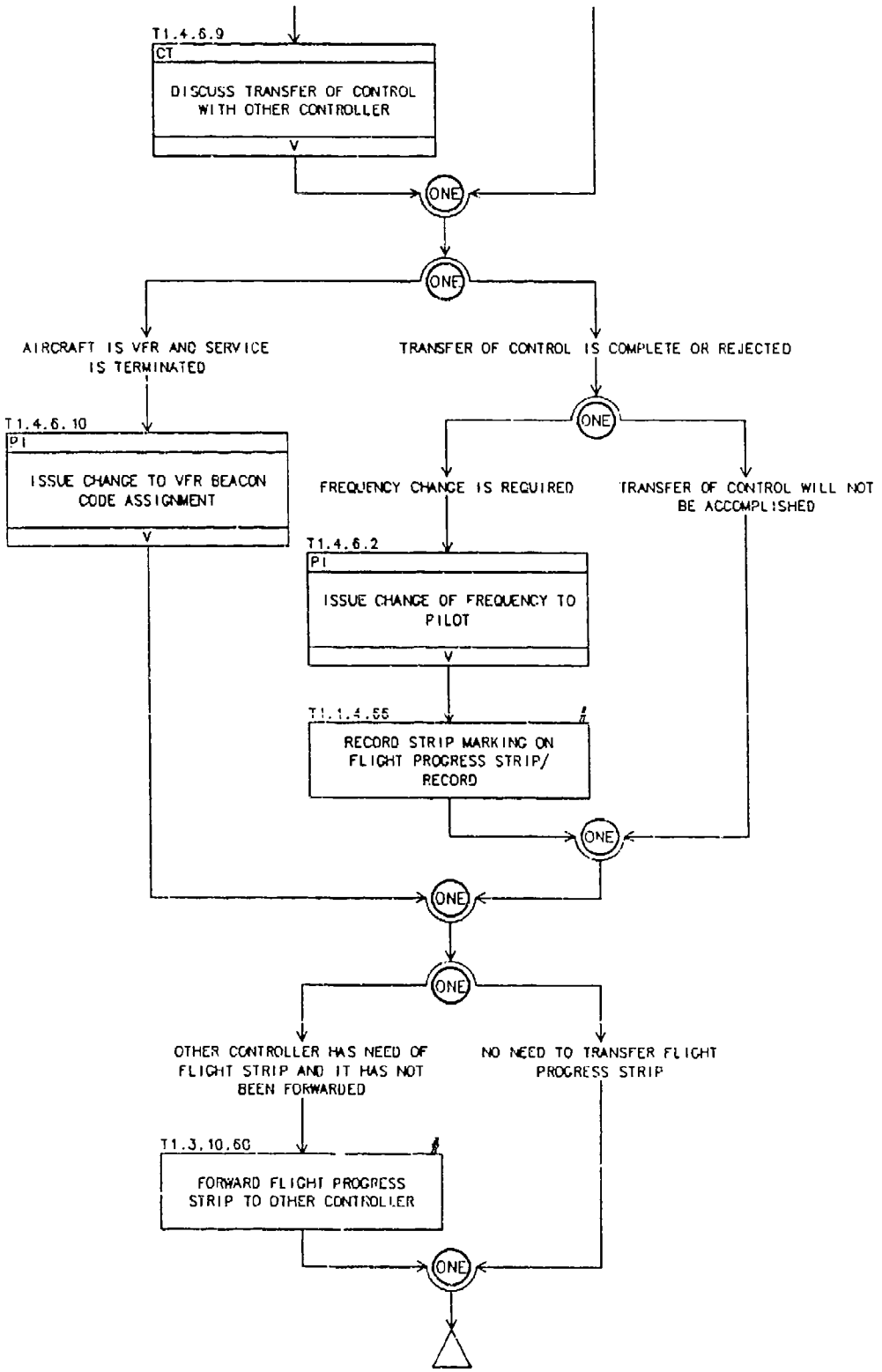



HANDOFF IS ACCEPTED
SOME
HANDOFF IS GIVEN VERBALLY
HANDOFF ACCOMPLISHED PER LOCAL DIRECTIVE
HANDOFF IS RECEIVED
T1.4.5.3
CT
ACCEPT VERBAL HANDOFF/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK
V
T1.4.5.4
CT
ACCEPT AUTOMATIC HANDOFF
F
SOME
T1.4.5.5
PI
RECEIVE INITIAL COMMUNICATIONS FROM PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL
V
ONE
ALTITUDE HAS NOT BEEN VERIFIED
ALTITUDE HAS BEEN VERIFIED/ OR NOT REQUIRED
T1.4.5.6
PI
VERIFY AIRCRAFT ALTITUDE WITH PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL
V
ONE
ONE

T1.4.6 INITIATING TRANSFER OF CONTROL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION

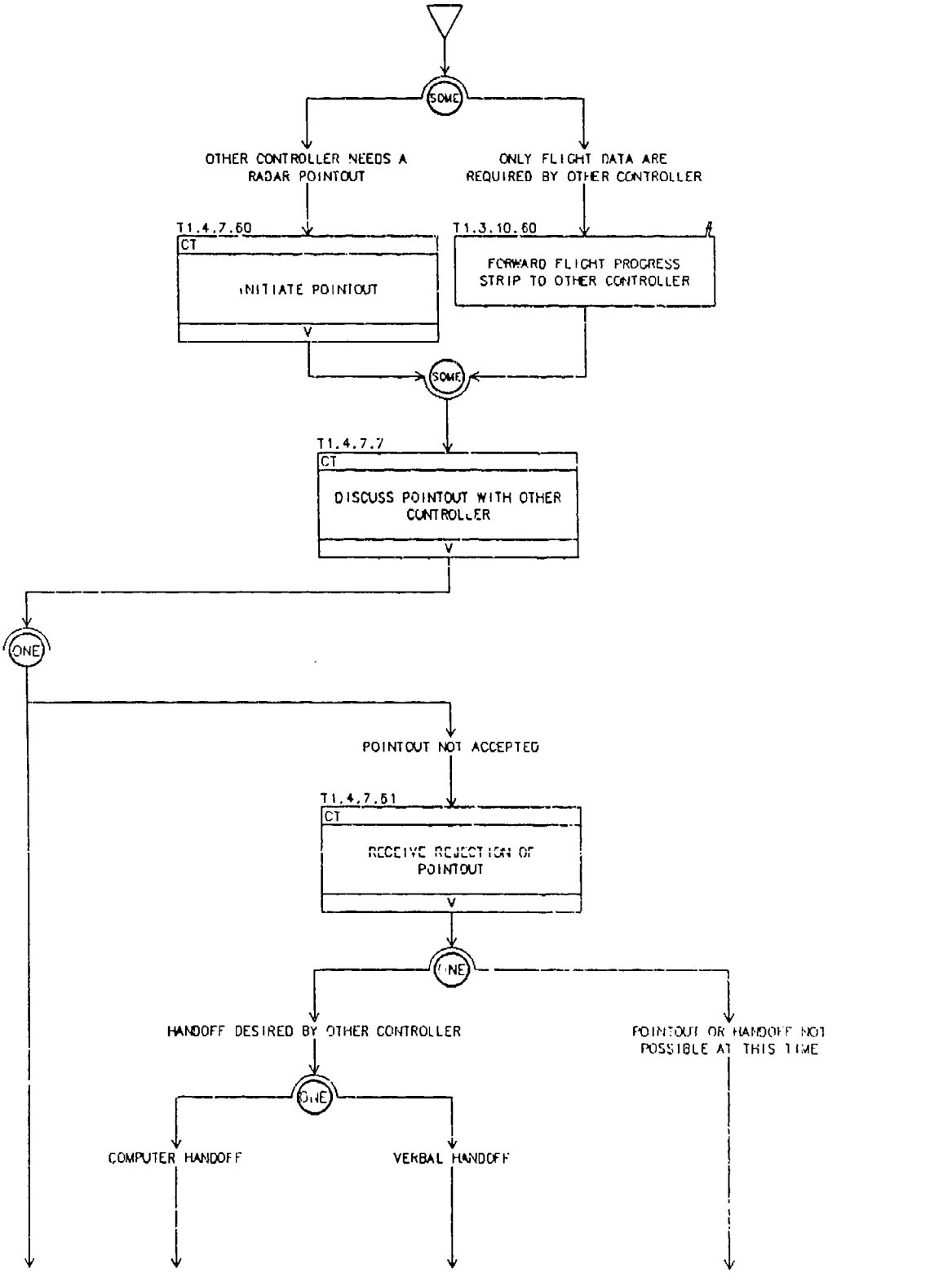
EVENTS. AIRCRAFT LEAVING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY, MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ PRACTICE APPROACH, AIRCRAFT TO EDGE OF ATA/ CONTROL ZONE



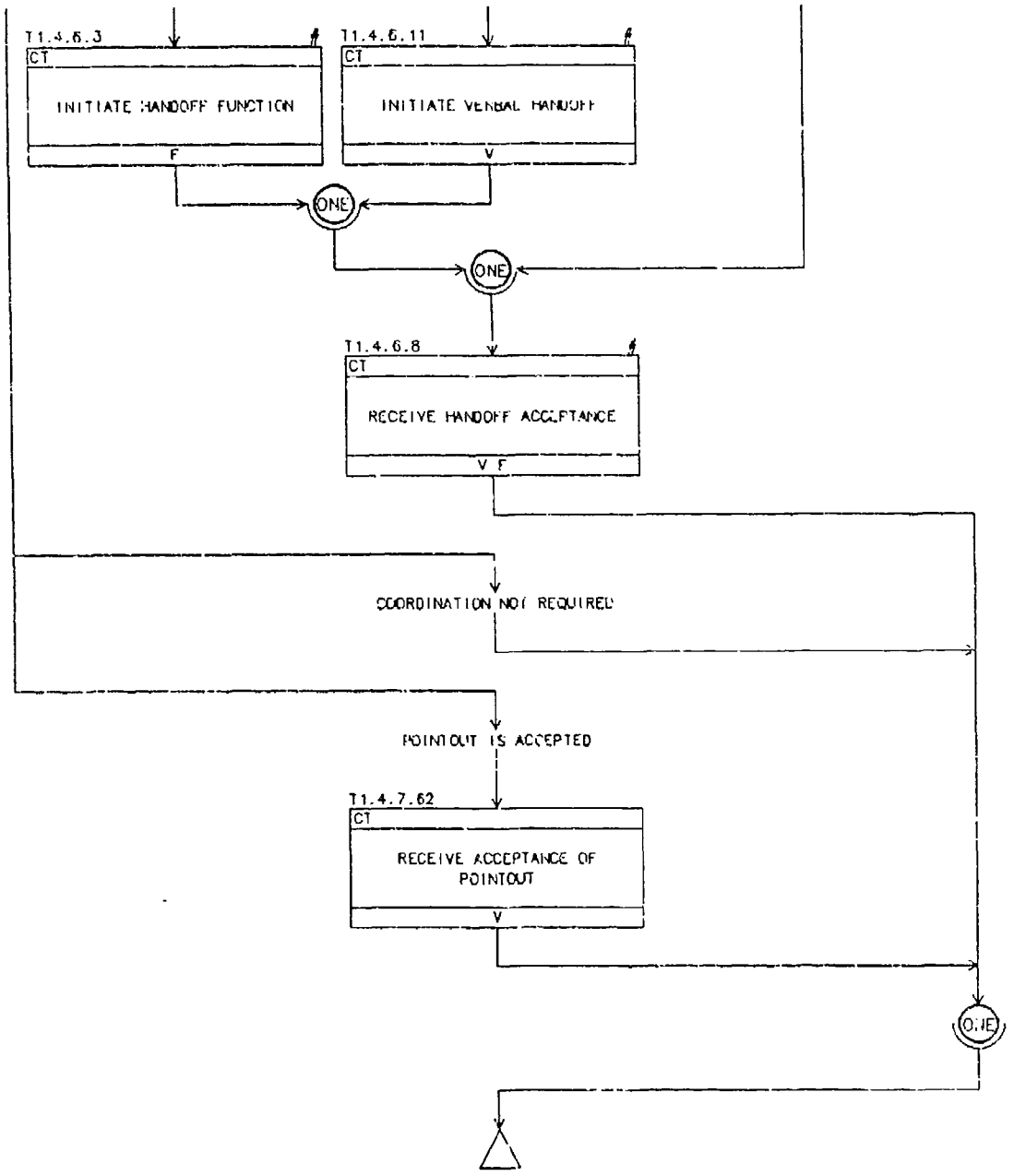

T1.4.6.9
CT
DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER
V
ONE
ONE
AIRCRAFT IS VFR AND SERVICE IS TERMINATED
TRANSFER OF CONTROL IS COMPLETE OR REJECTED
T1.4.6.10
PI
ISSUE CHANGE TO VFR BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT
V
ONE
FREQUENCY CHANGE IS REQUIRED
TRANSFER OF CONTROL WILL NOT BE ACCOMPLISHED
T1.4.6.2
PI
ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT
V
T1.1.4.55
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
ONE
ONE
ONE
OTHER CONTROLLER HAS NEED OF FLIGHT STRIP AND IT HAS NOT BEEN FORWARDED
NO NEED TO TRANSFER FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP
T1.3.10.60
FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER
ONE

T1.4.7 ISSUING POINTOUTS

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT LEAVING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY, MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ PRACTICE APPROACH, AIRCRAFT TO EDGE OF ATA/ CONTROL ZONE, HELICOPTER OPERATION, LAW ENFORCEMENT, LIFEGUARD MISSION

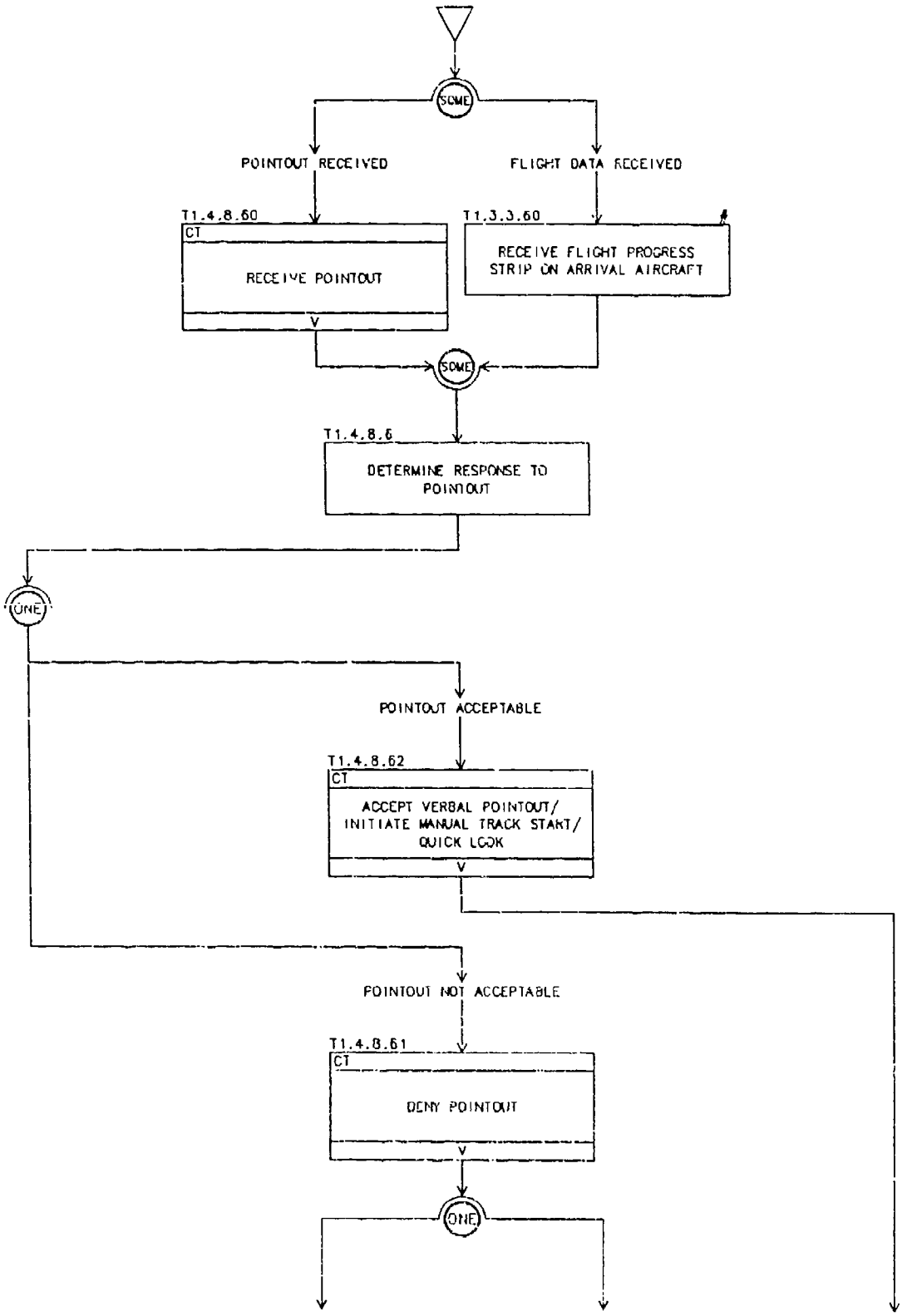


T1.4.7 ISSUING POINTOUTS (cont.)

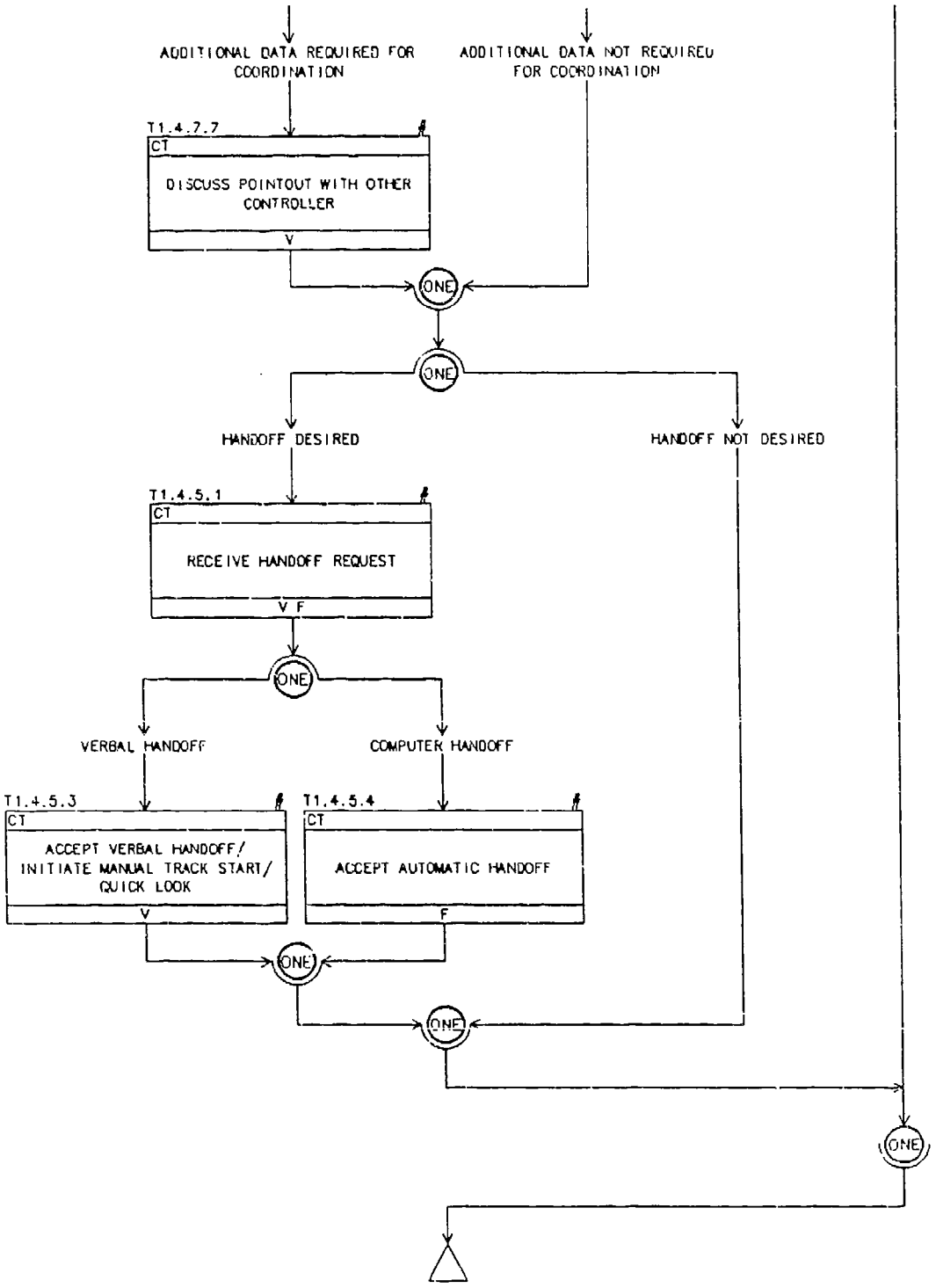


T1.4.8 RESPONDING TO POINTOUTS

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY, POINTOUT RECEIPT, HELICOPTER OPERATION, LAW ENFORCEMENT, LIFEGUARD MISSION

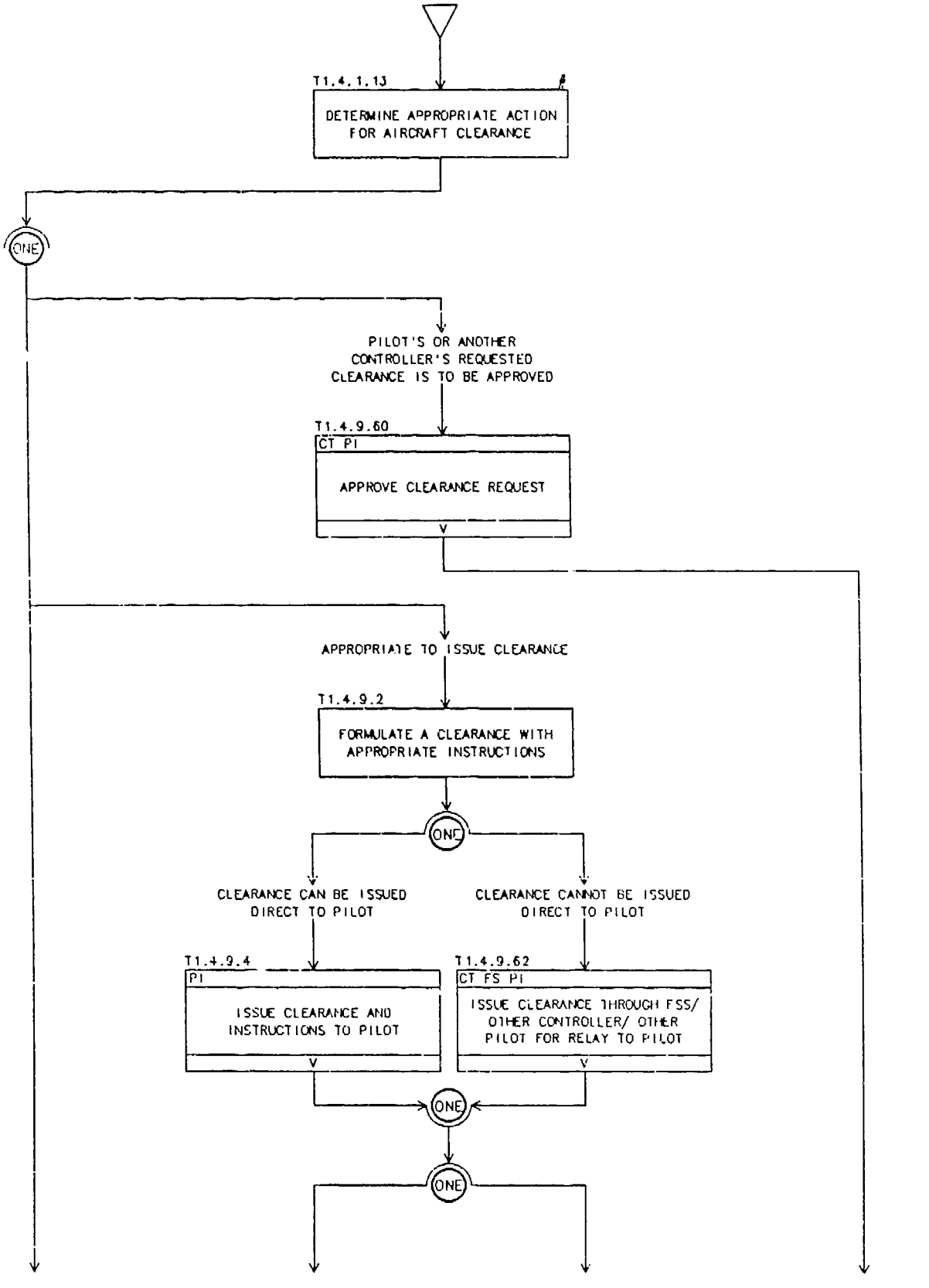


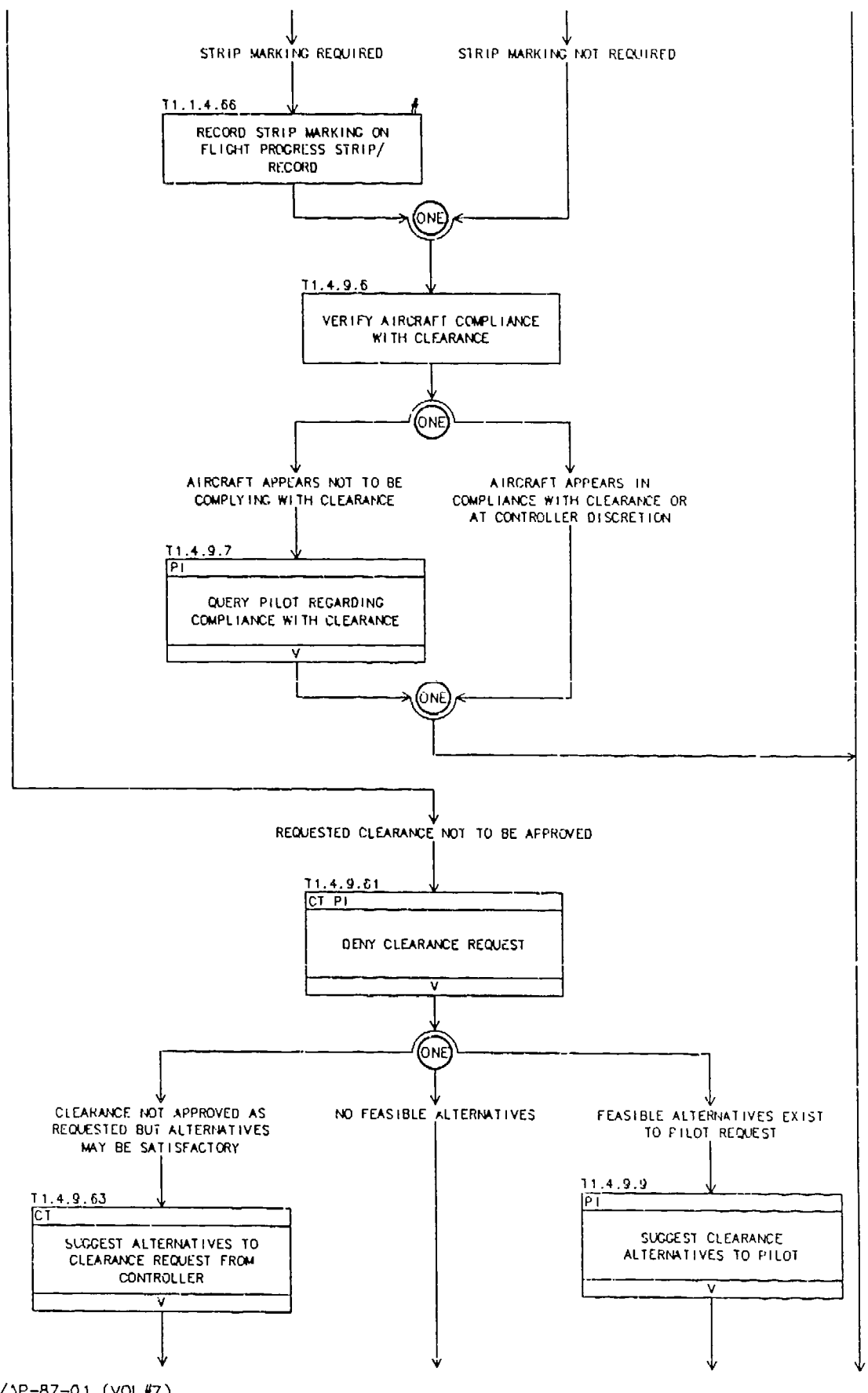
T1.4.8 RESPONDING TO POINTOUTS (cont.)



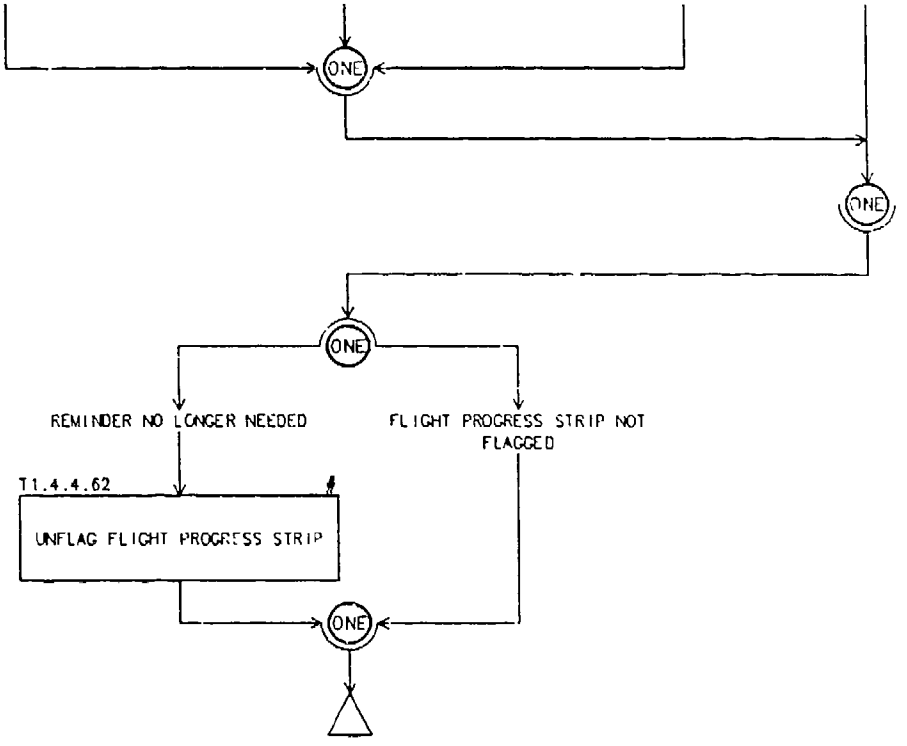
T1.4.9 ISSUING CLEARANCES

EVENTS: CLEARANCE DELIVERY, VFR TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA OPERATION, ENTERING/ LEAVING AIRBORNE HOLD

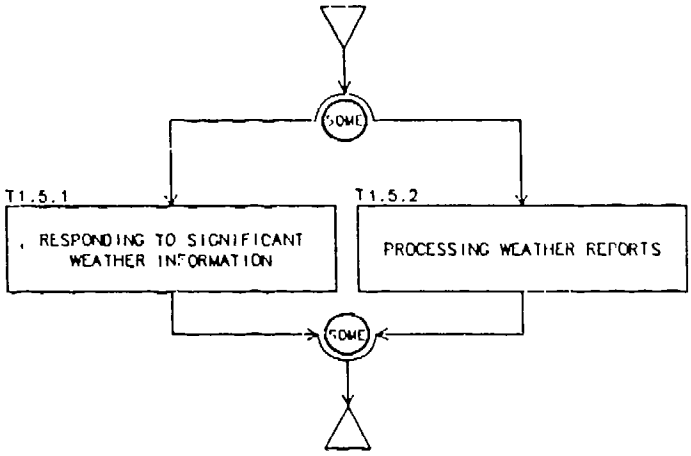



STRIP MARKING REQUIRED
STRIP MARKING NOT REQUIRED
T1.1.4.66
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
ONE
T1.4.9.6
VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE
ONE
AIRCRAFT APPEARS NOT TO BE COMPLYING WITH CLEARANCE
AIRCRAFT APPEARS IN COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE OR AT CONTROLLER DISCRETION
T1.4.9.7
PI
QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE
ONE
REQUESTED CLEARANCE NOT TO BE APPROVED
T1.4.9.61
CT PI
DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST
ONE
CLEARANCE NOT APPROVED AS REQUESTED BUT ALTERNATIVES MAY BE SATISFACTORY
NO FEASIBLE ALTERNATIVES
FEASIBLE ALTERNATIVES EXIST TO PILOT REQUEST
T1.4.9.63
CT
SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER
T1.4.9.9
PI
SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT

T1.4.9 ISSUING CLEARANCES (cont.)

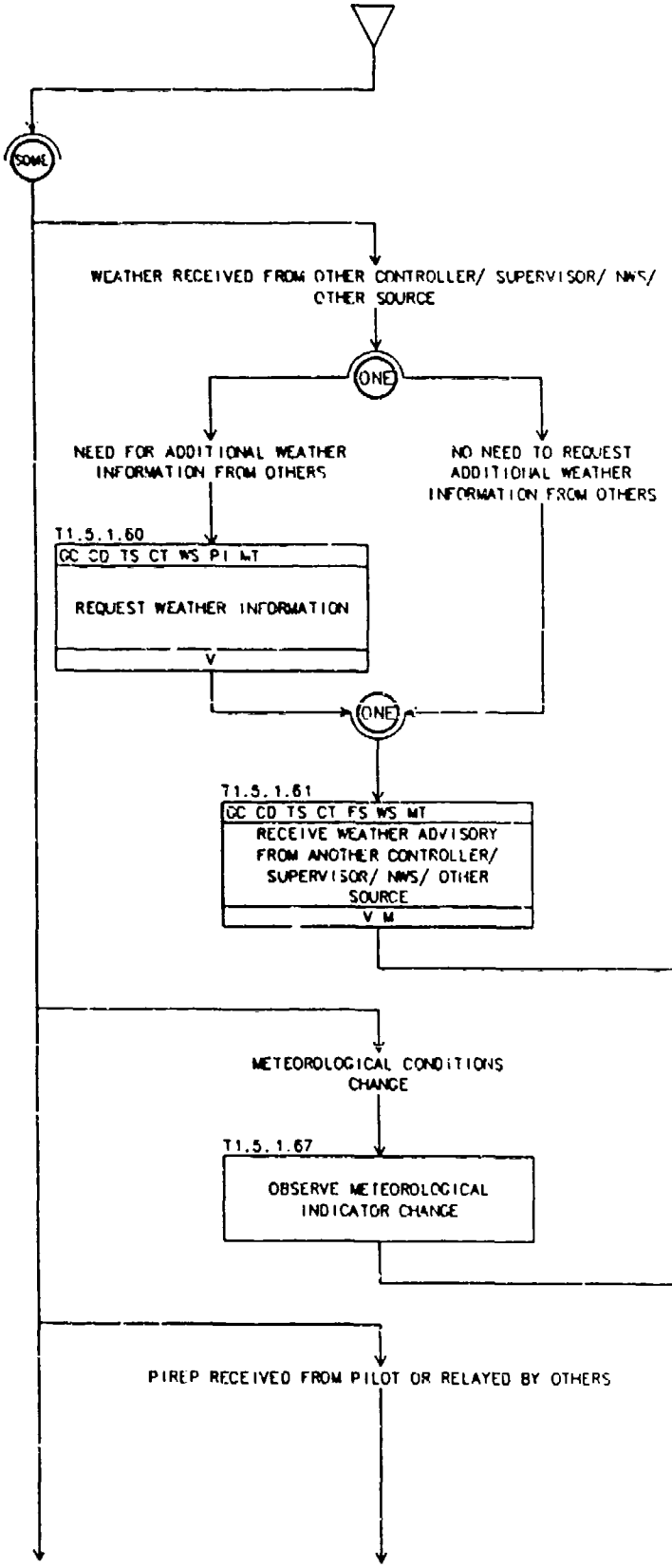


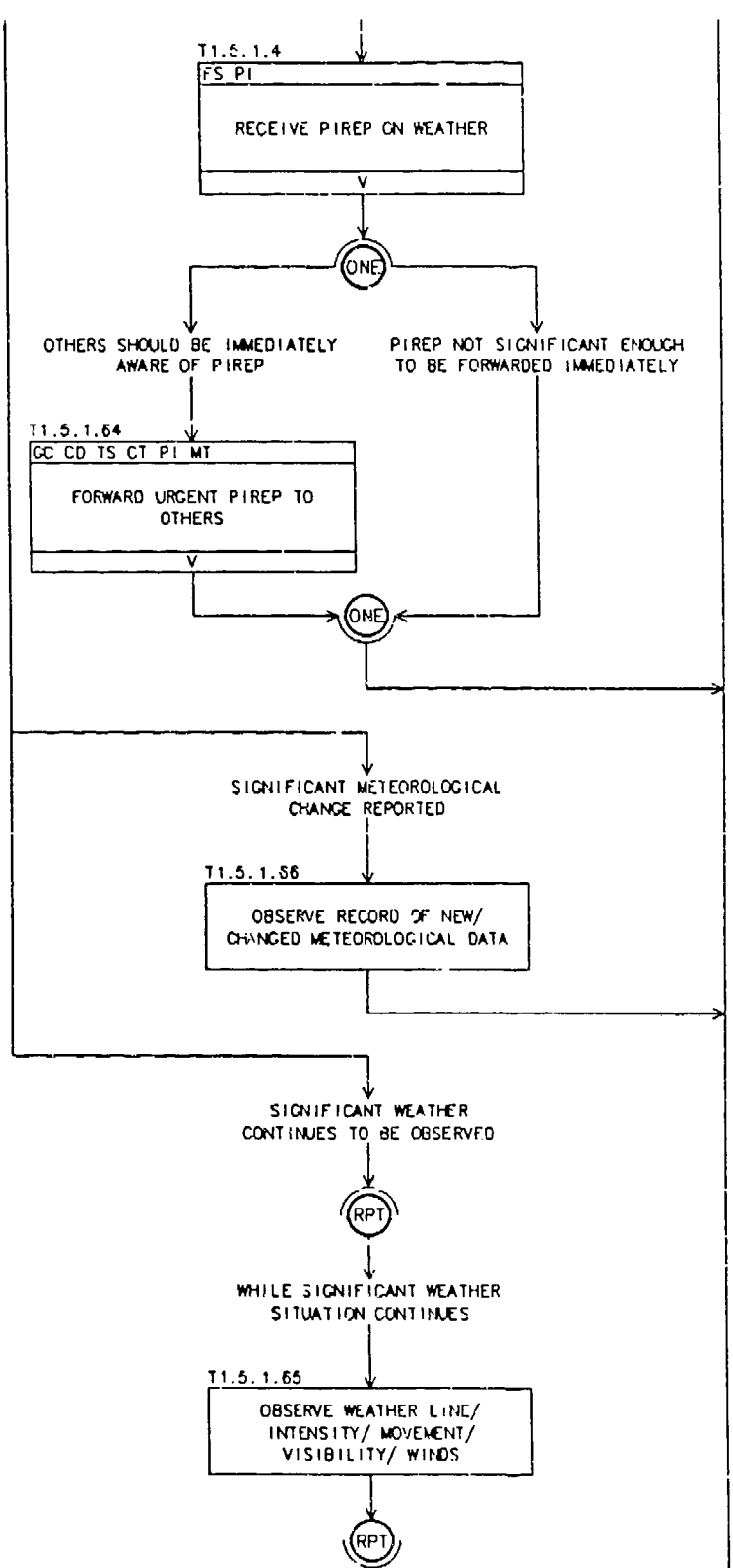
T1.5 ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT

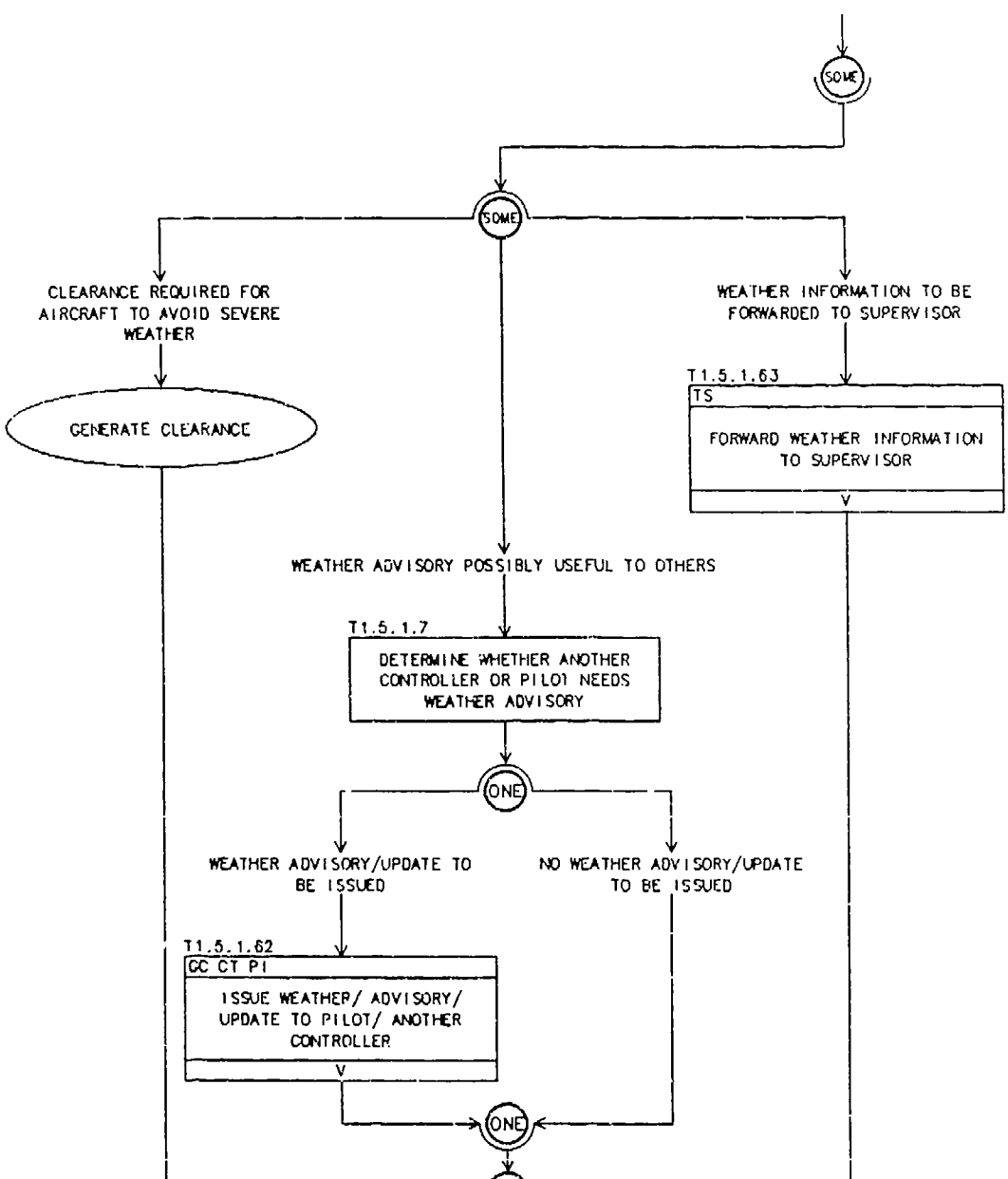


T1.5.1 RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION

EVENTS: PIREP, SEVERE WEATHER, SIGMET/ AIRMET, WIND SHEAR REPORT/ OBSERVATION, WIND SPEED/ DIRECTION REPORT/ OBSERVATION

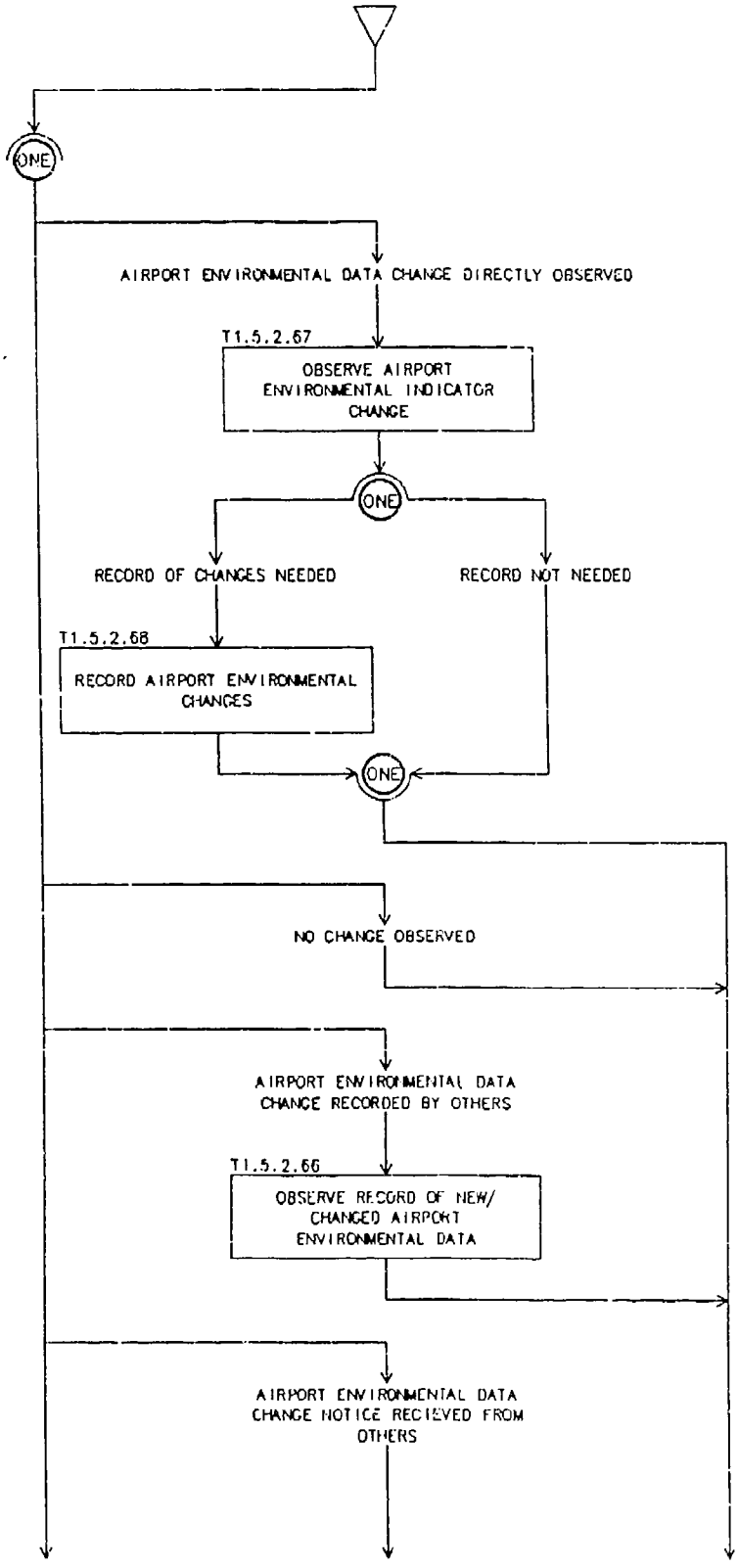


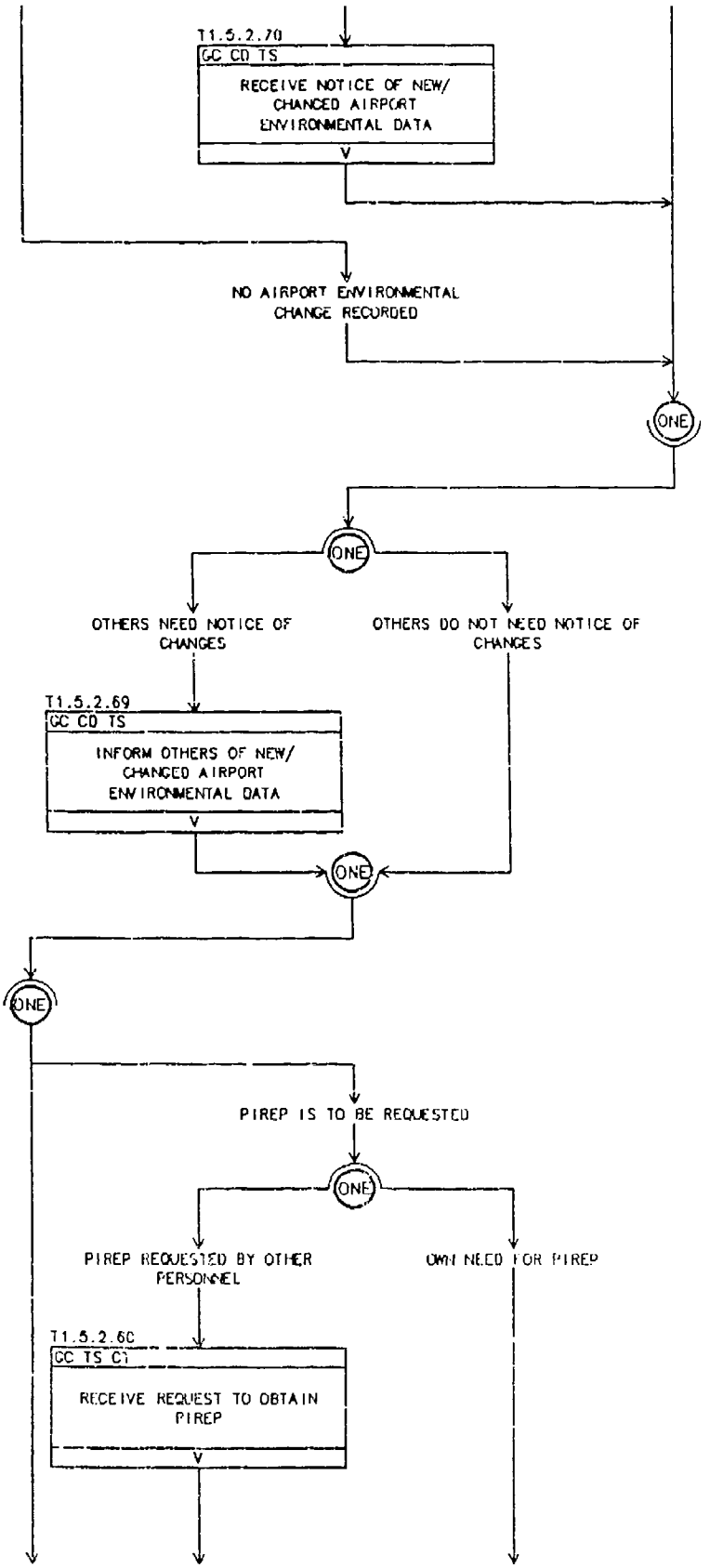

T1.5.1.4
FS PI
RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER
ONE
OTHERS SHOULD BE IMMEDIATELY AWARE OF PIREP
PIREP NOT SIGNIFICANT ENOUGH TO BE FORWARDED IMMEDIATELY
T1.5.1.64
GC CD TS CT PI MT
FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS
ONE
SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL CHANGE REPORTED
T1.5.1.56
OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED METEOROLOGICAL DATA
SIGNIFICANT WEATHER CONTINUES TO BE OBSERVED
RPT
WHILE SIGNIFICANT WEATHER SITUATION CONTINUES
T1.5.1.65
OBSERVE WEATHER LINE/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS
RPT

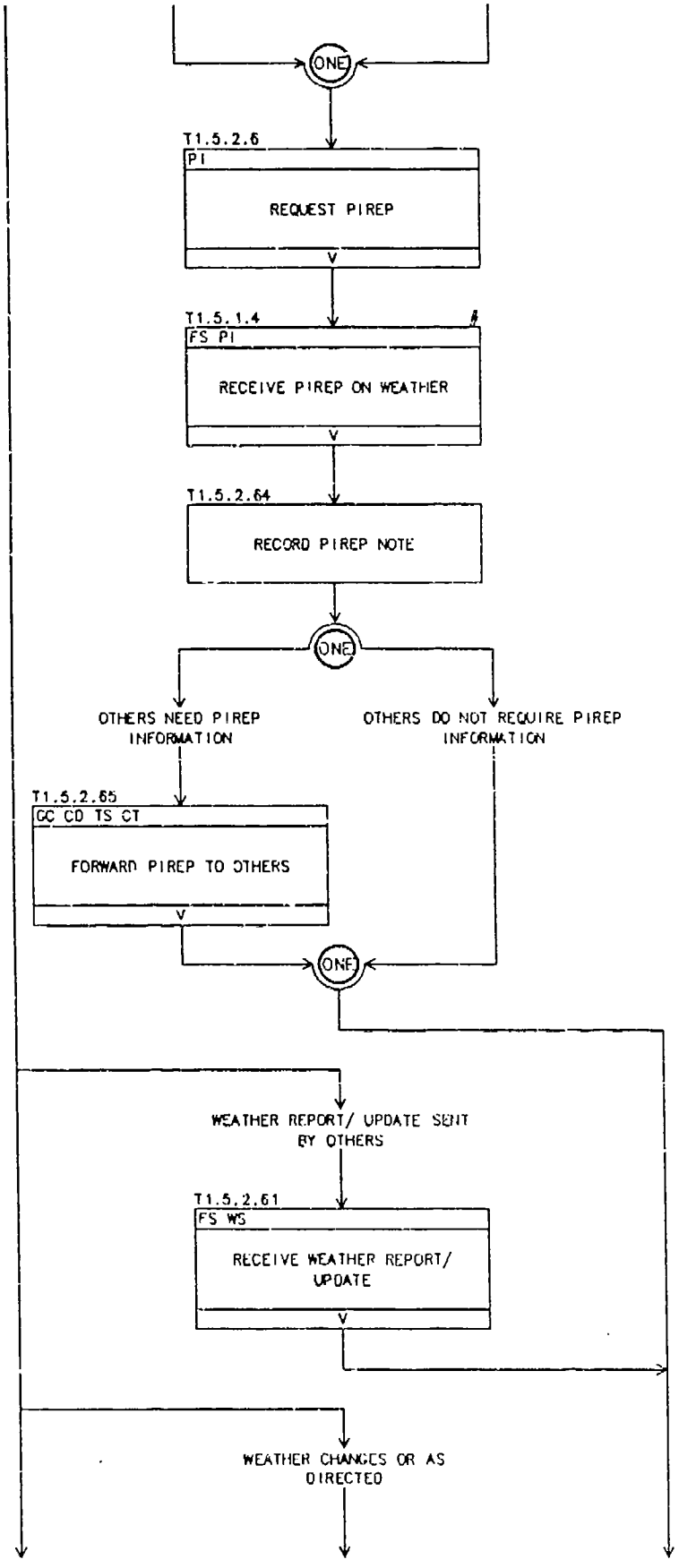

SOME
SOME
CLEARANCE REQUIRED FOR AIRCRAFT TO AVOID SEVERE WEATHER
GENERATE CLEARANCE
WEATHER INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO SUPERVISOR
T1.5.1.63
TS
FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR
V
WEATHER ADVISORY POSSIBLY USEFUL TO OTHERS
T1.5.1.7
DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY
ONE
WEATHER ADVISORY/UPDATE TO BE ISSUED
NO WEATHER ADVISORY/UPDATE TO BE ISSUED
T1.5.1.62
CC CT PI
ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER
V
ONE
SOME

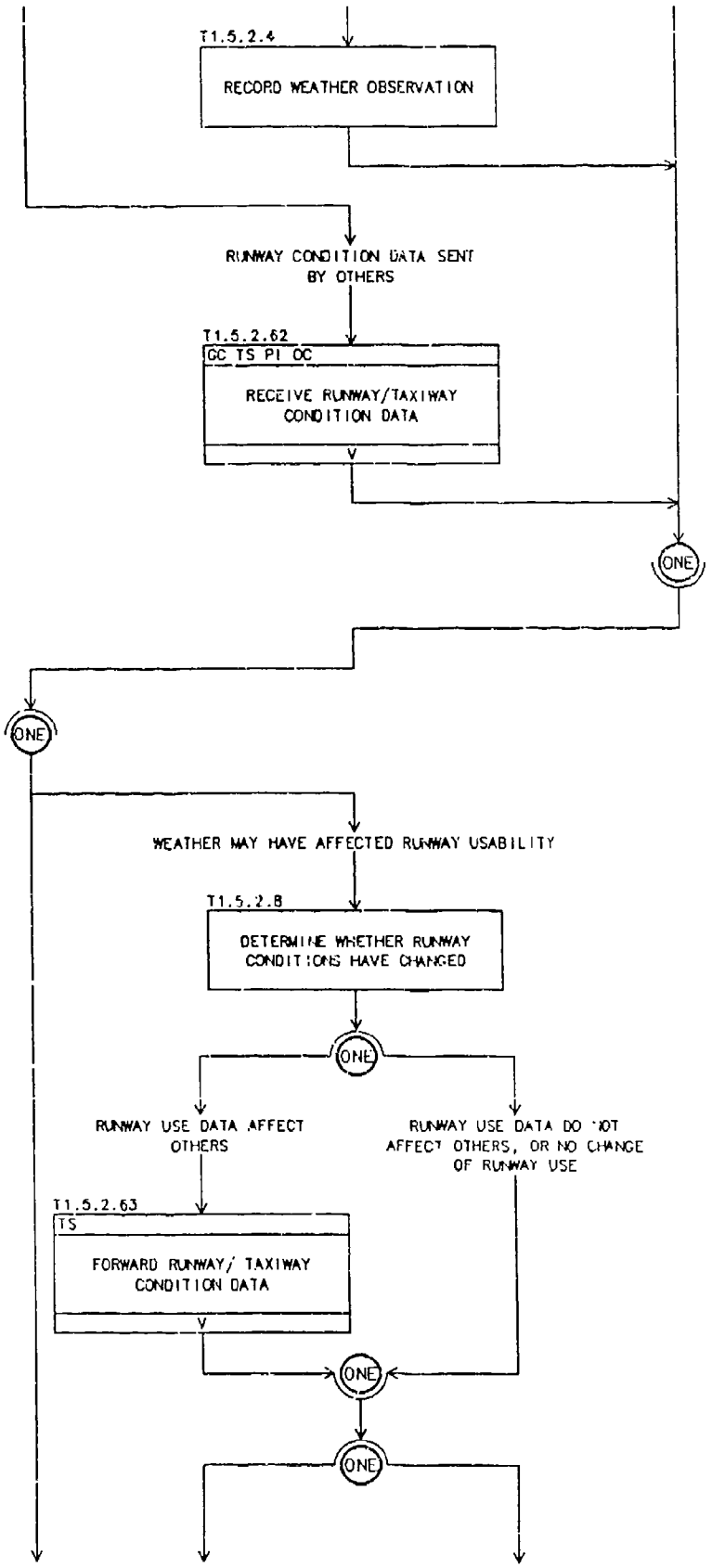
T1.5.2 PROCESSING WEATHER REPORTS

EVENTS: CEILING HEIGHT DISPLAY/ REPORT, PRESSURE DISPLAY/ REPORT, VISIBILITY REPORT, WIND SHEAR REPORT

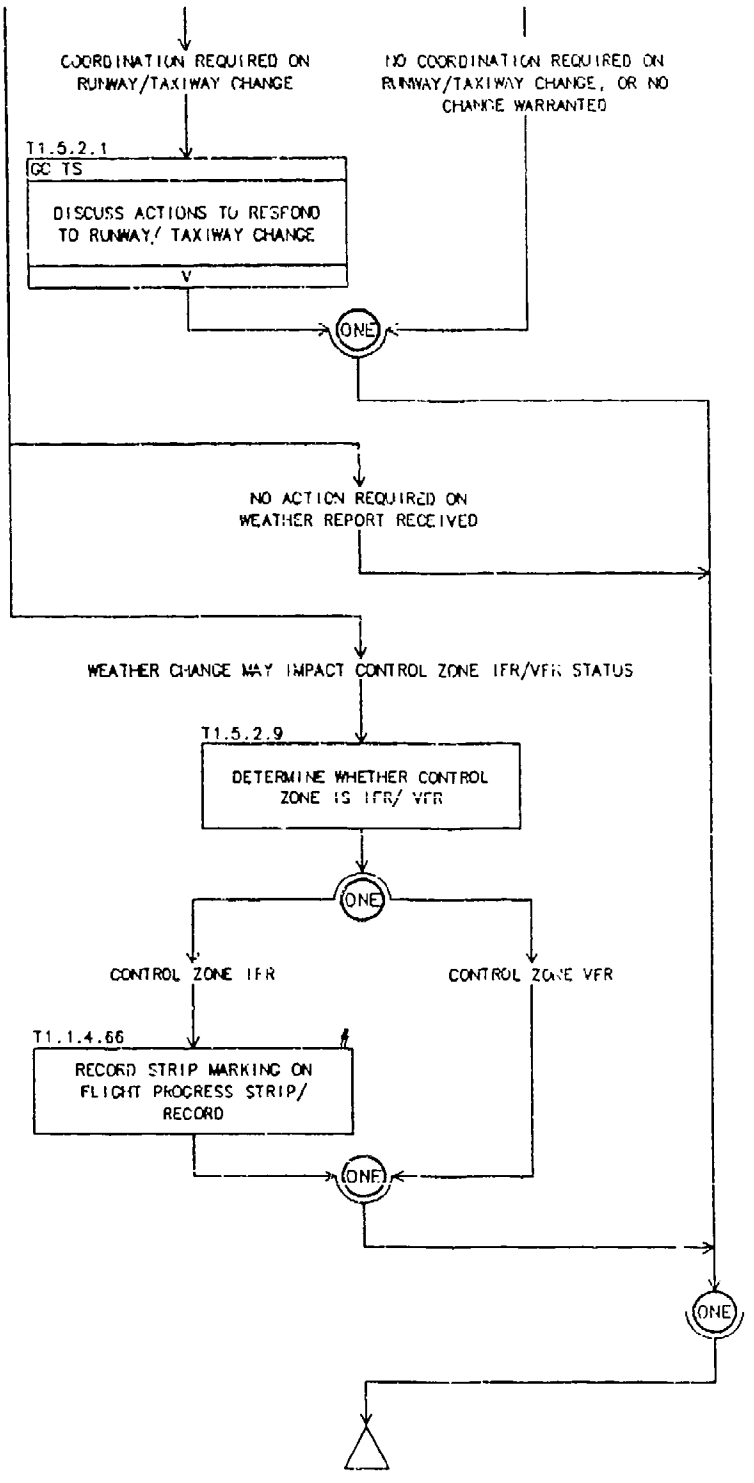



T1.5.2.70
GC CD TS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA
NO AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGE RECORDED
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
T1.5.2.69
GC CD TS
INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA
ONE
ONE
PIREP IS TO BE REQUESTED
ONE
PIREP REQUESTED BY OTHER PERSONNEL
OWN NEED FOR PIREP
T1.5.2.6C
GC TS C1
RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP

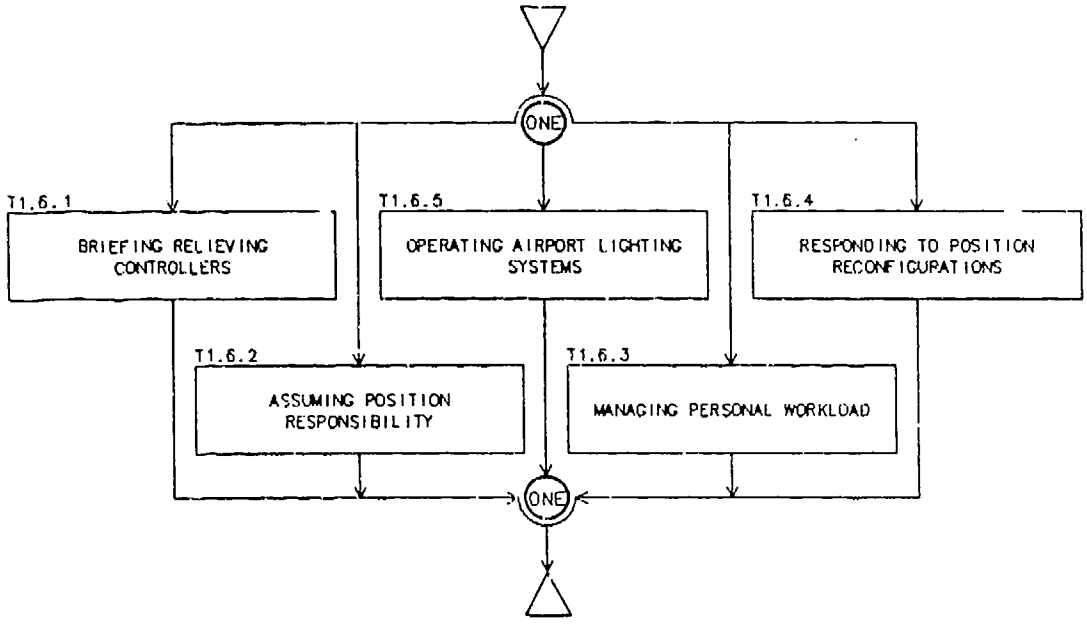

ONE
T1.5.2.6
PI
REQUEST PIREP
T1.5.1.4
FS PI
RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER
T1.5.2.64
RECORD PIREP NOTE
ONE
OTHERS NEED PIREP INFORMATION
OTHERS DO NOT REQUIRE PIREP INFORMATION
T1.5.2.65
GC CD TS CT
FORWARD PIREP TO OTHERS
ONE
WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE SENT BY OTHERS
T1.5.2.61
FS WS
RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE
WEATHER CHANGES OR AS DIRECTED


T1.5.2.4
RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION
RUNWAY CONDITION DATA SENT BY OTHERS
T1.5.2.62
GC TS PI OC
RECEIVE RUNWAY/TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA
ONE
ONE
WEATHER MAY HAVE AFFECTED RUNWAY USABILITY
T1.5.2.8
DETERMINE WHETHER RUNWAY CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED
ONE
RUNWAY USE DATA AFFECT OTHERS
RUNWAY USE DATA DO NOT AFFECT OTHERS, OR NO CHANGE OF RUNWAY USE
T1.5.2.63
TS
FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA
ONE
ONE

T1.5.2 PROCESSING WEATHER REPORTS (cont.)

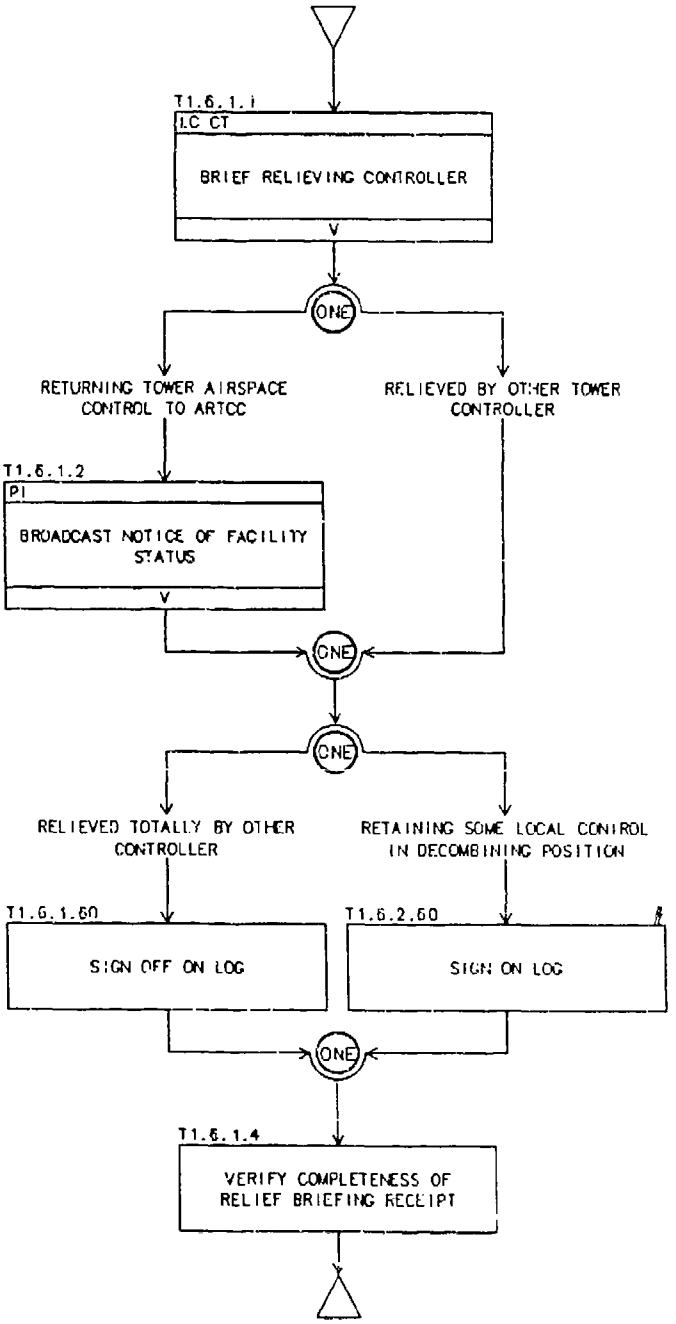


T1.6 MANAGE LOCAL CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES



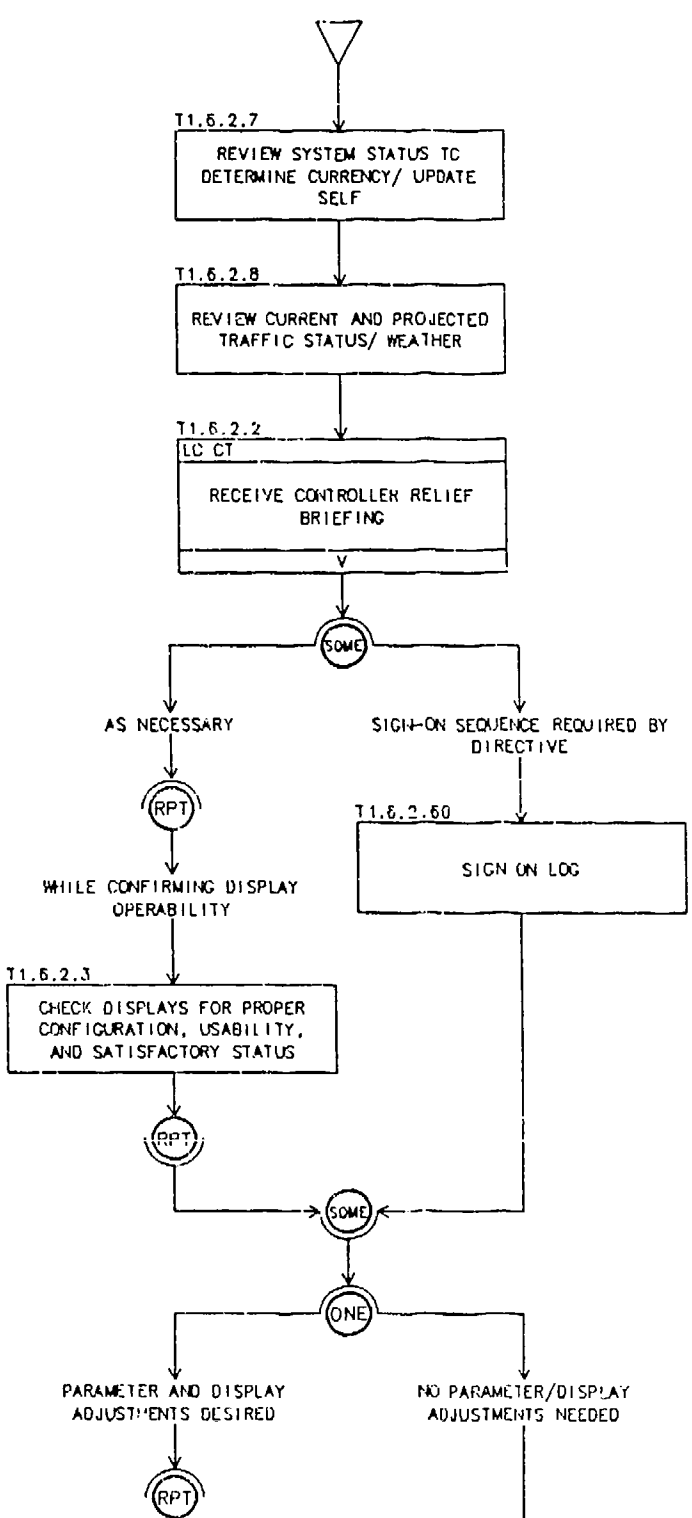
T1.6.1 BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS

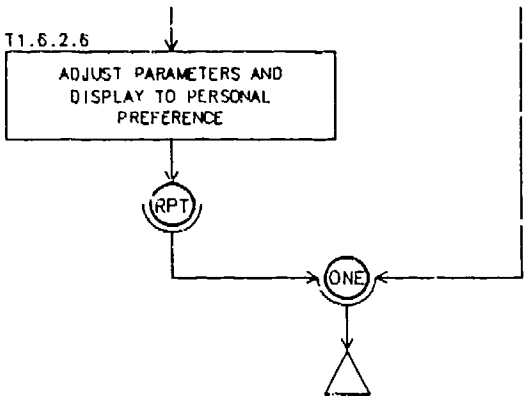
EVENTS: FACILITY CLOSURE, POSITION RELIEF



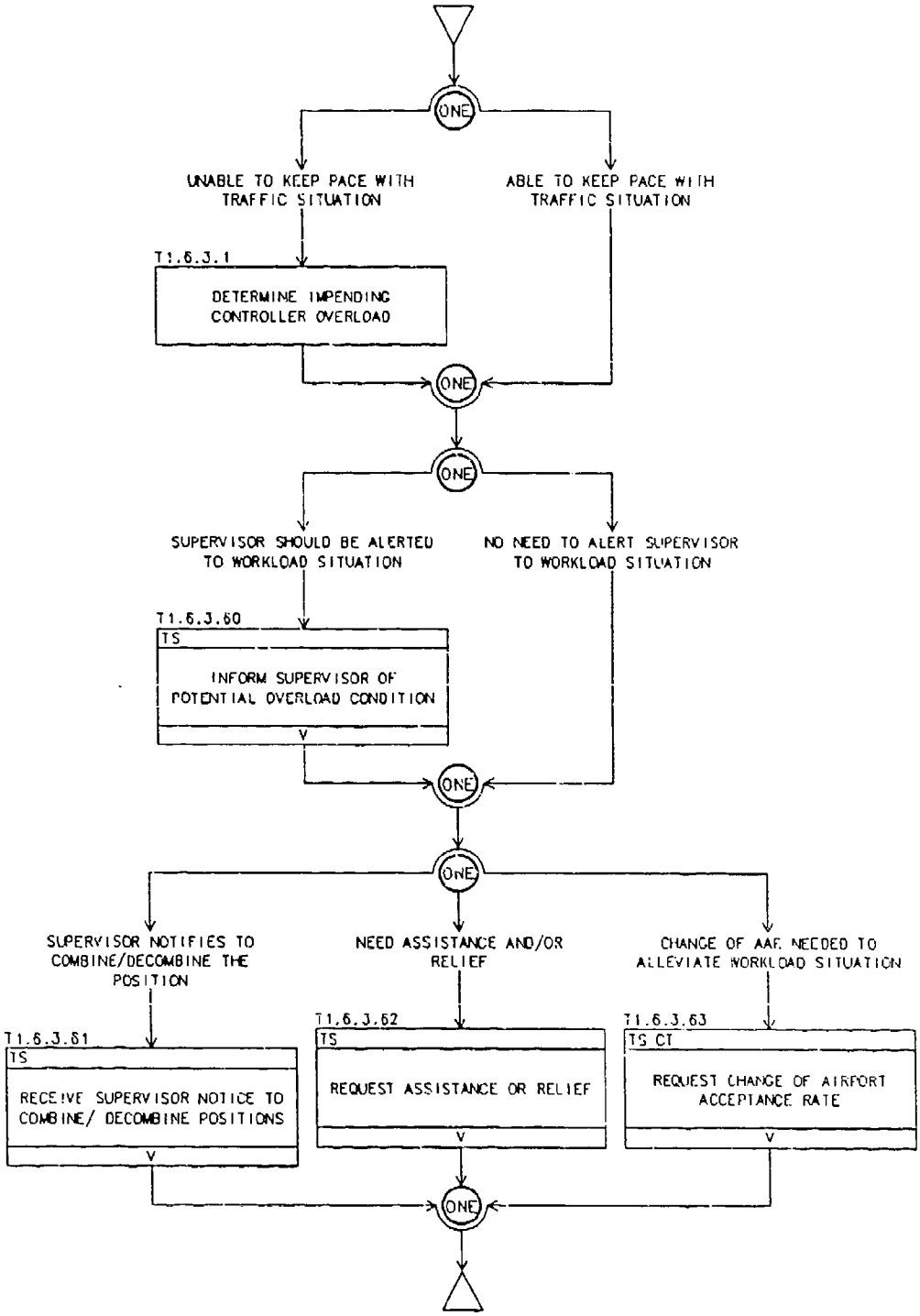
T1.6.2 ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

EVENTS: FACILITY REOPENING, POSITION RELIEF



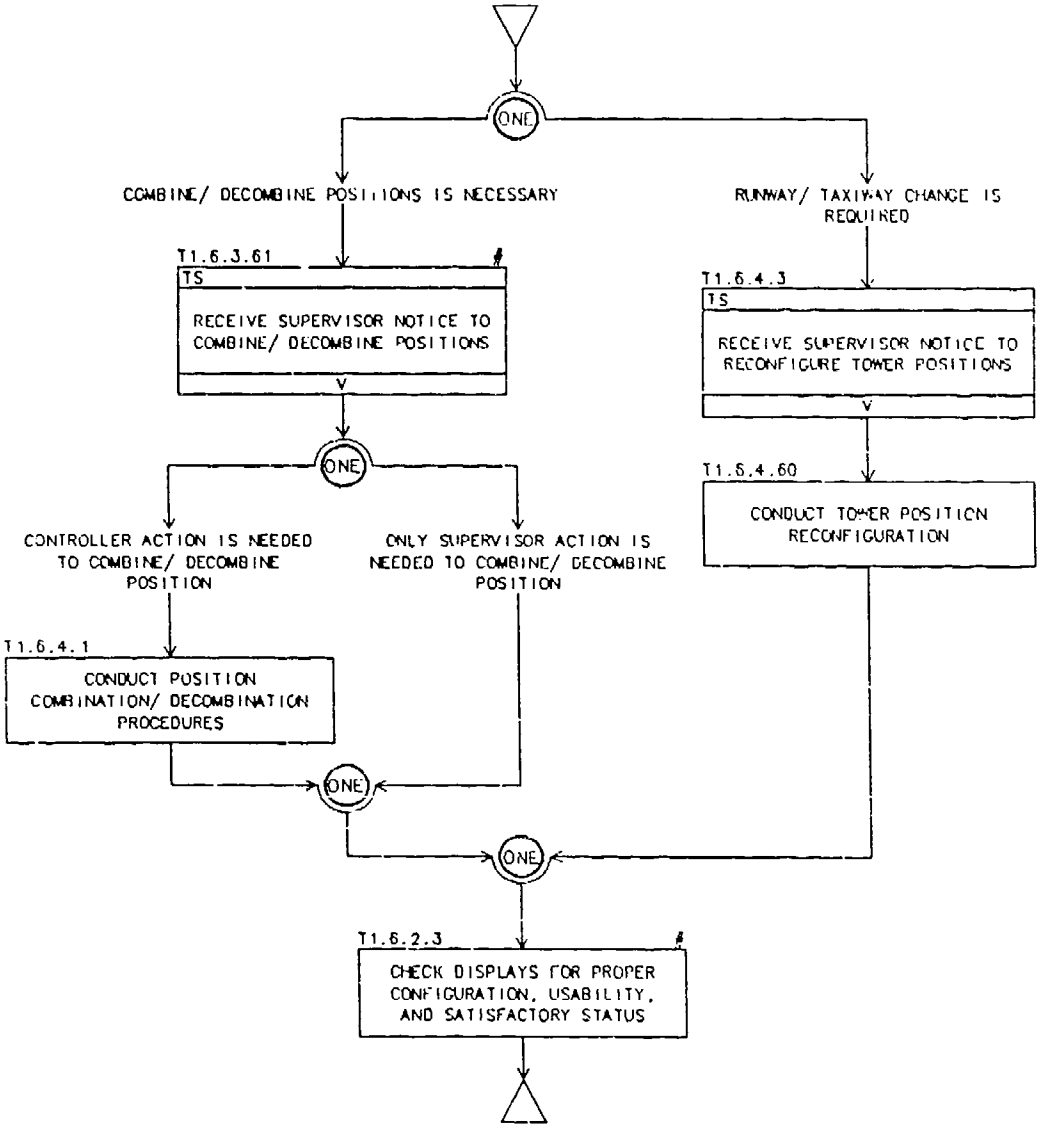

T1.6.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE
RPT
ONE

EVENTS: CONTROLLER OVERLOAD



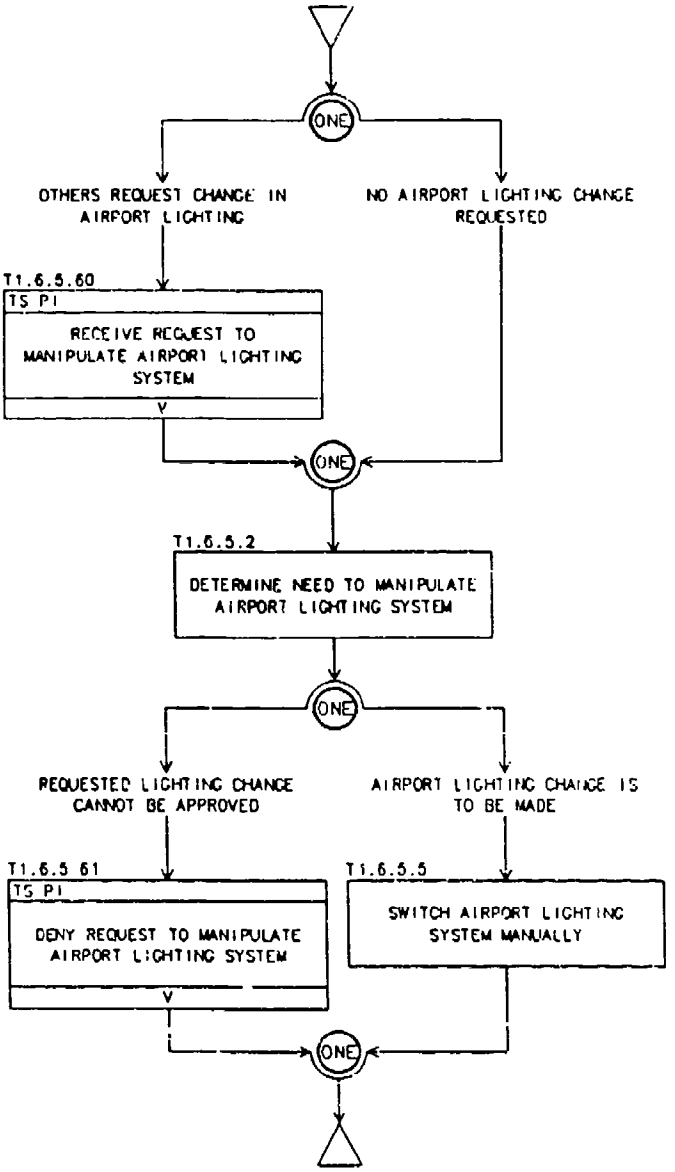
T1.6.4 RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS

EVENTS: POSITION CONSOLIDATION/ DECONSOLIDATION

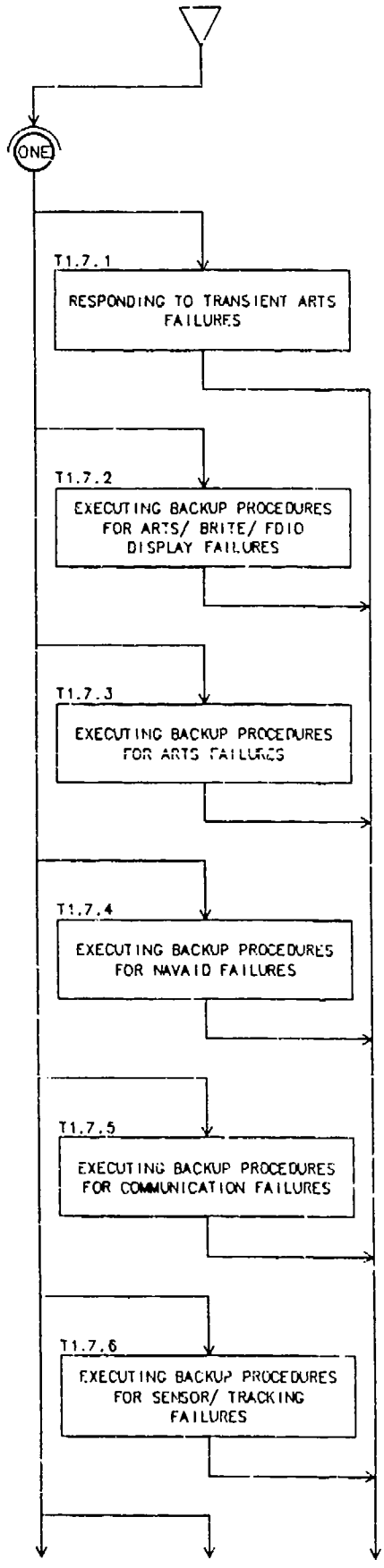


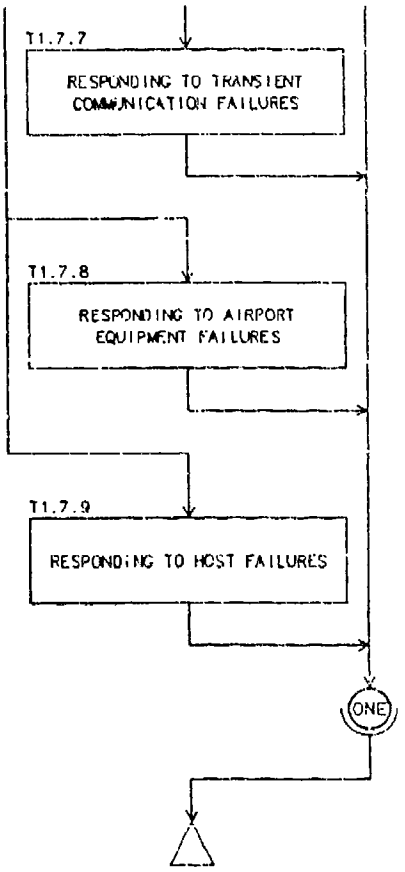
T1.L.5 OPERATING AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEMS

EVENTS: PILOT REQUEST FOR LIGHTING MANIPULATION, VISIBILITY REPORT/ OBSERVATION, RUNWAY OPEN/ CLOSE



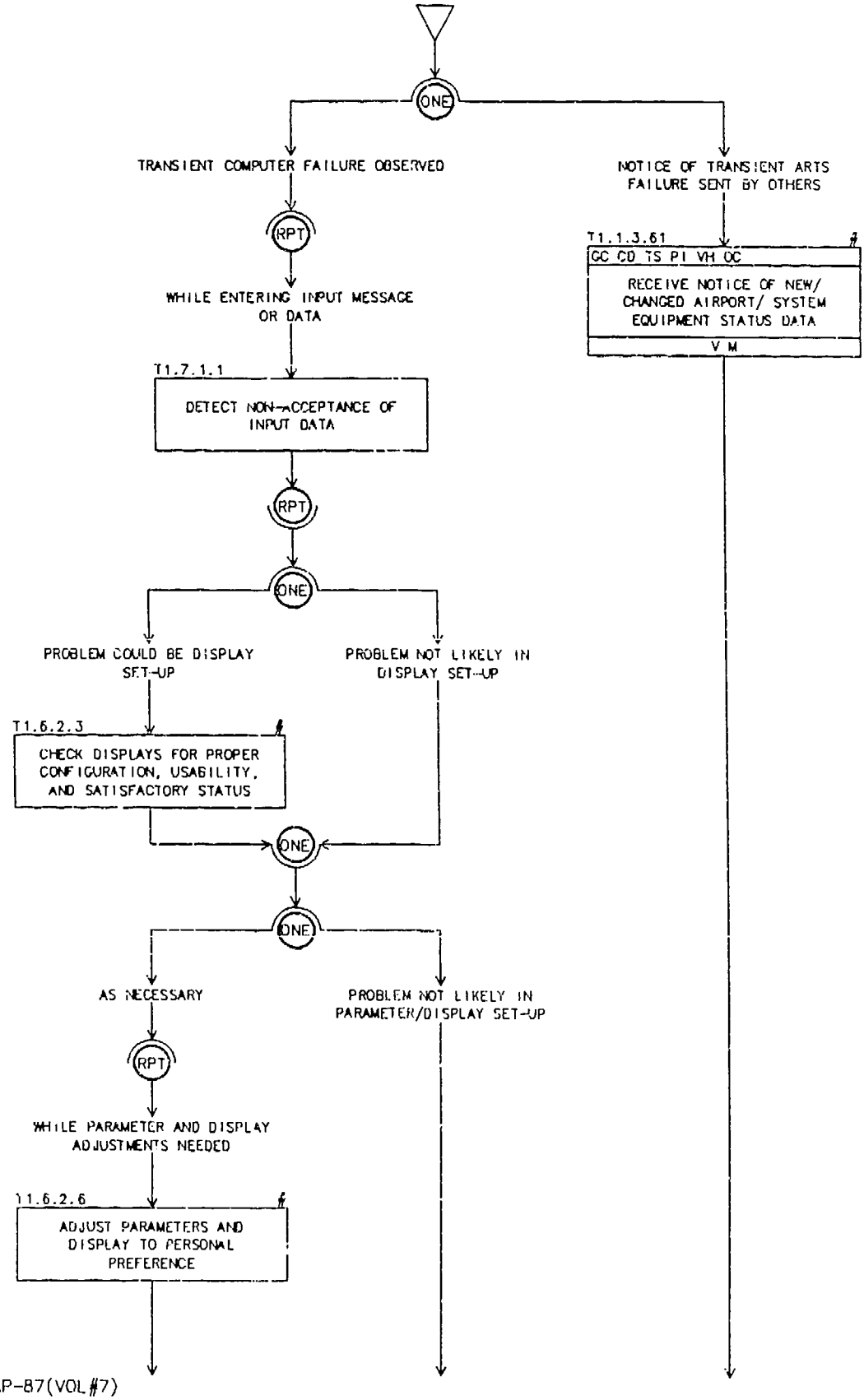
T1.7 RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION

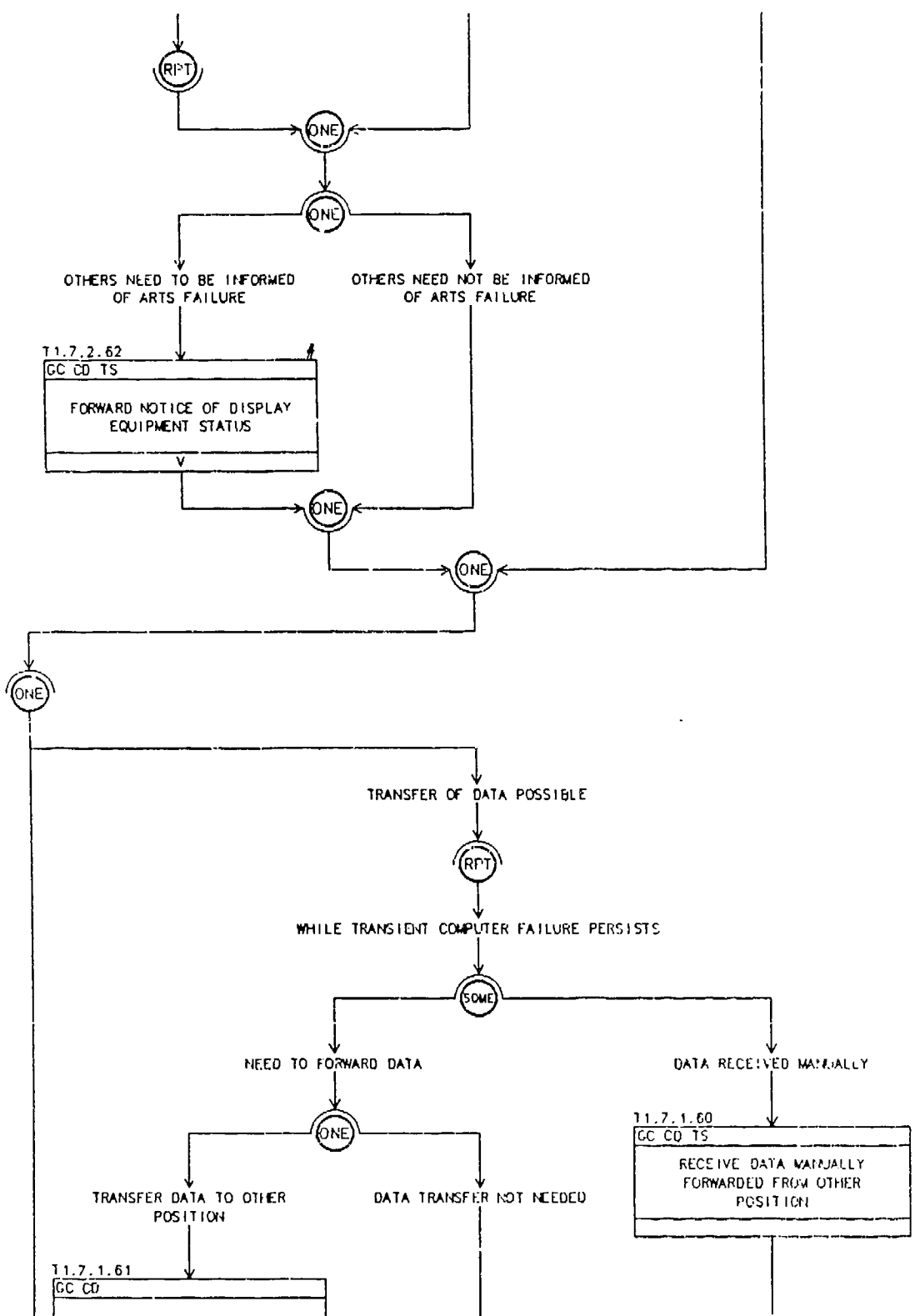


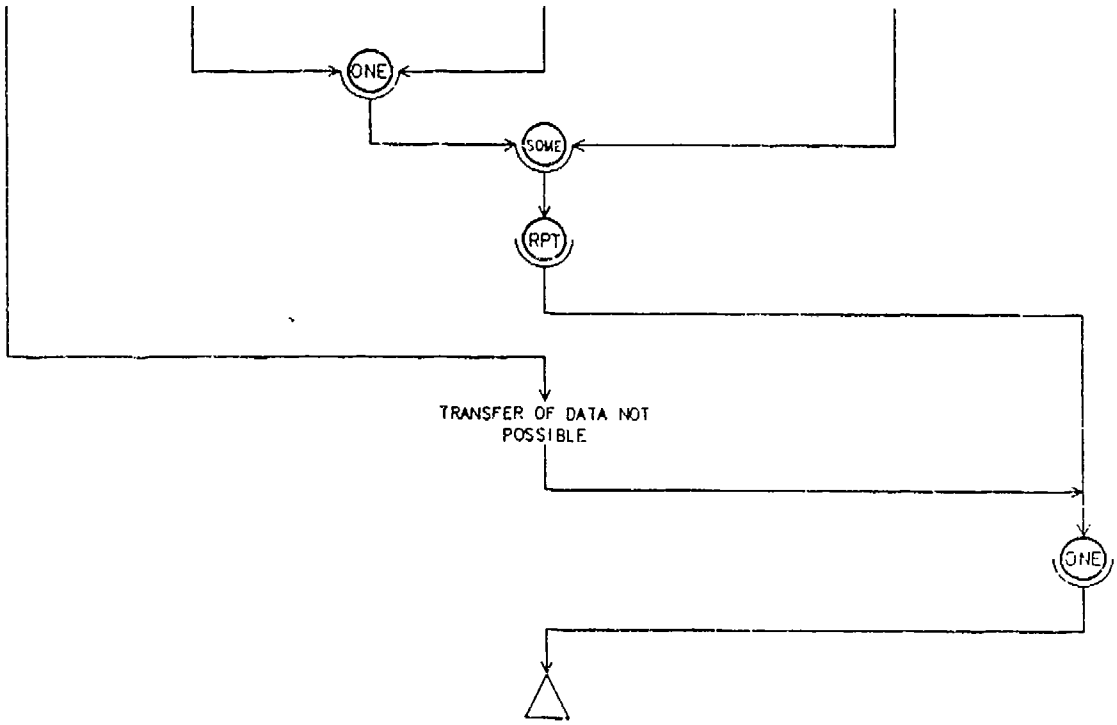

T1.7.7
RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES
T1.7.8
RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES
T1.7.9
RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES
ONE

T1.7.1 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS FAILURES

EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE

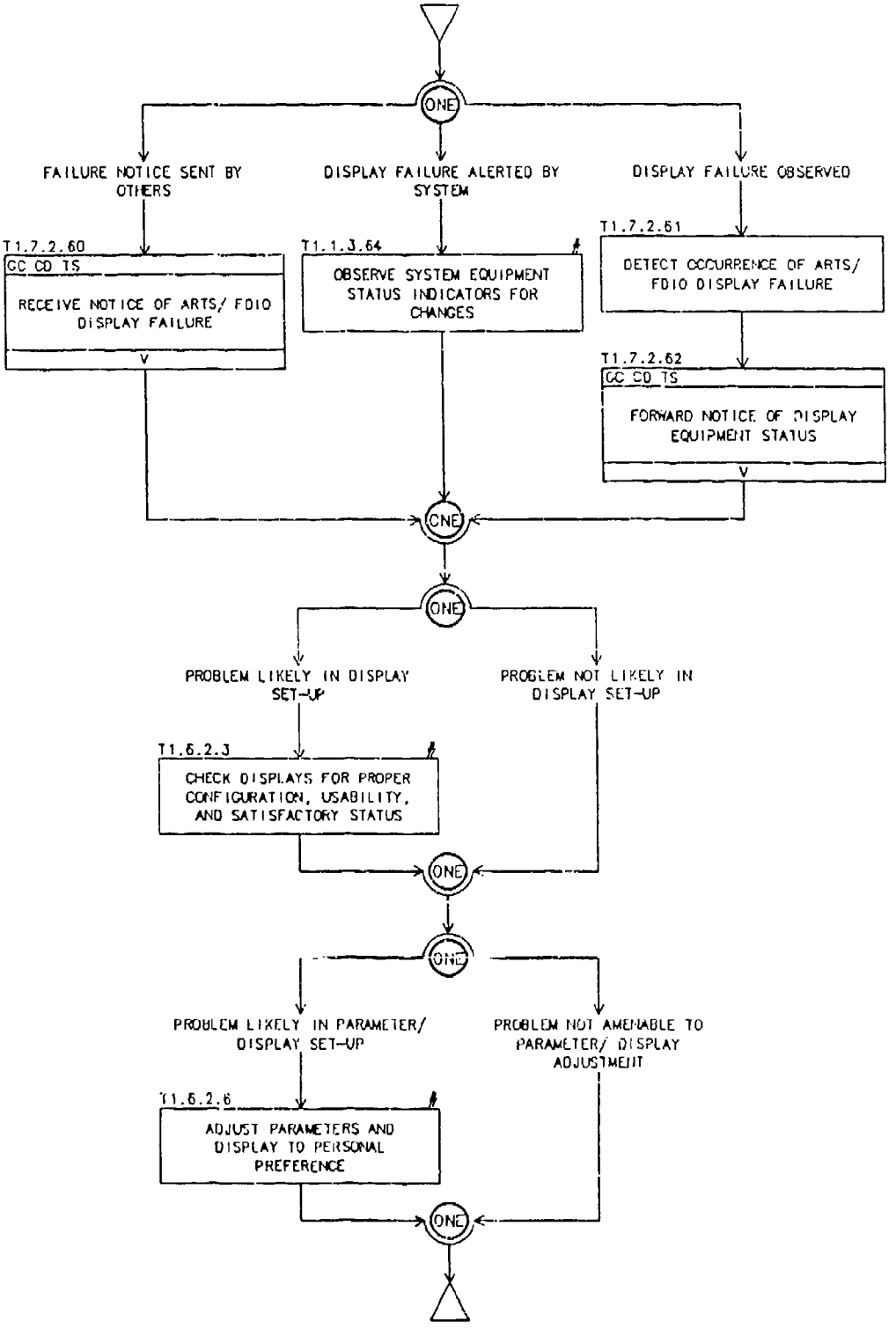



RPT
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF ARTS FAILURE
OTHERS NEED NOT BE INFORMED OF ARTS FAILURE
T1.7.2.62
GC CD TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS
ONE
ONE
ONE
TRANSFER OF DATA POSSIBLE
RPT
WHILE TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE PERSISTS
SOME
NEED TO FORWARD DATA
DATA RECEIVED MANUALLY
ONE
T1.7.1.60
GC CD TS
RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION
TRANSFER DATA TO OTHER POSITION
DATA TRANSFER NOT NEEDED
T1.7.1.61
GC CD
FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION


ONE
SOME
RPT
TRANSFER OF DATA NOT POSSIBLE
ONE

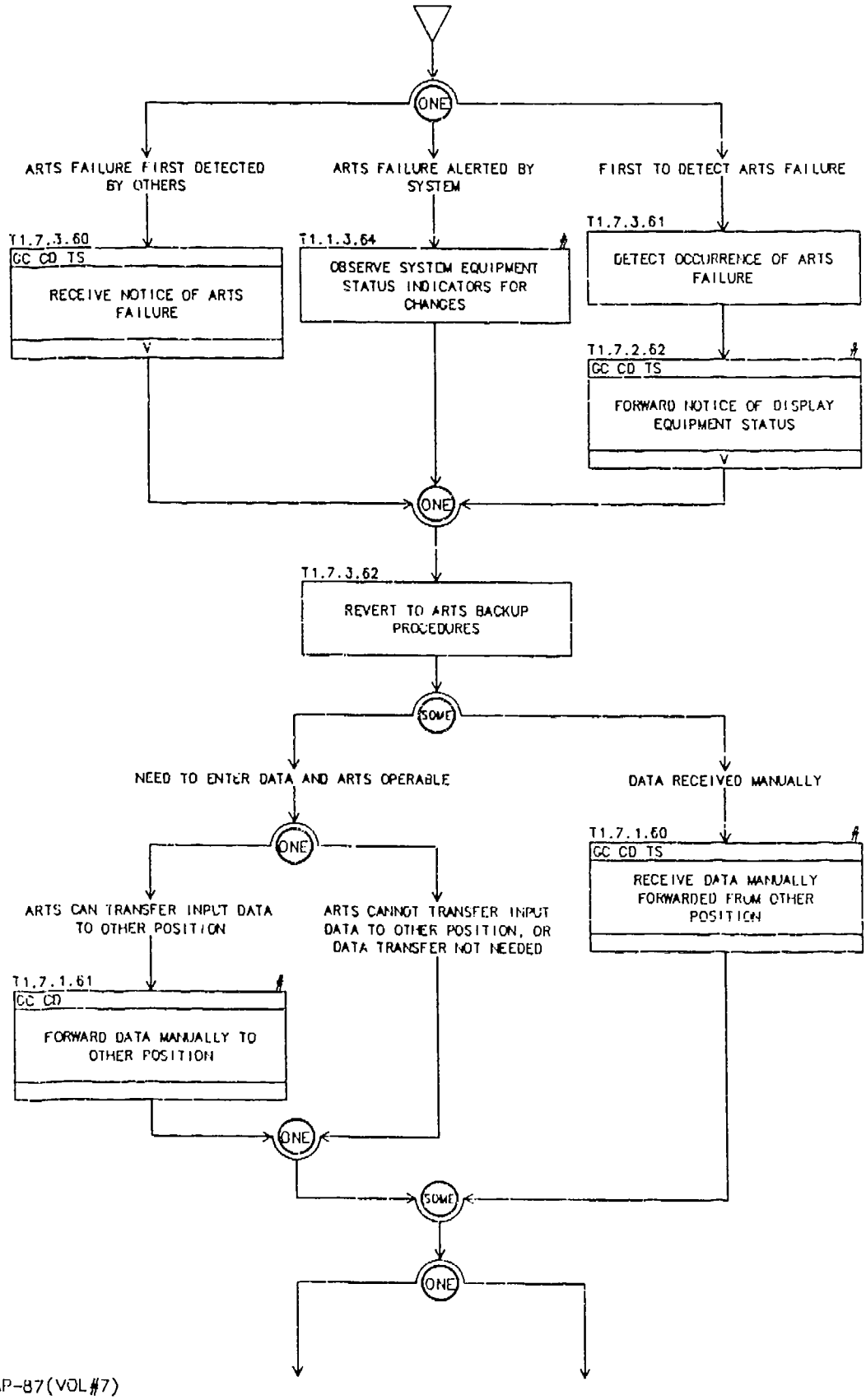
T1.7.2 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS/ BRITE/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES

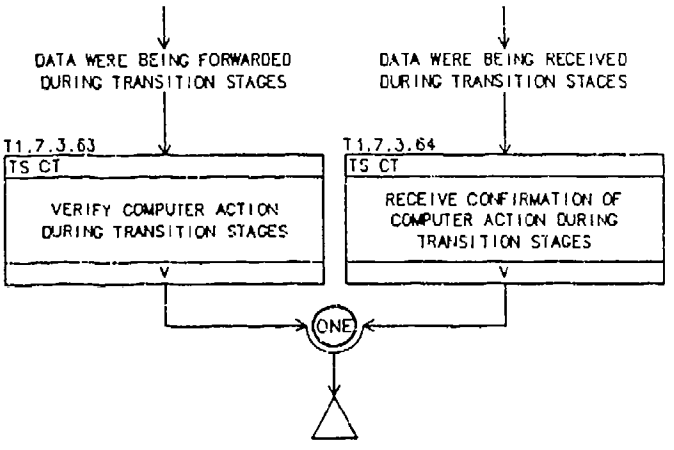
EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE



T1.7.3 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS FAILURES

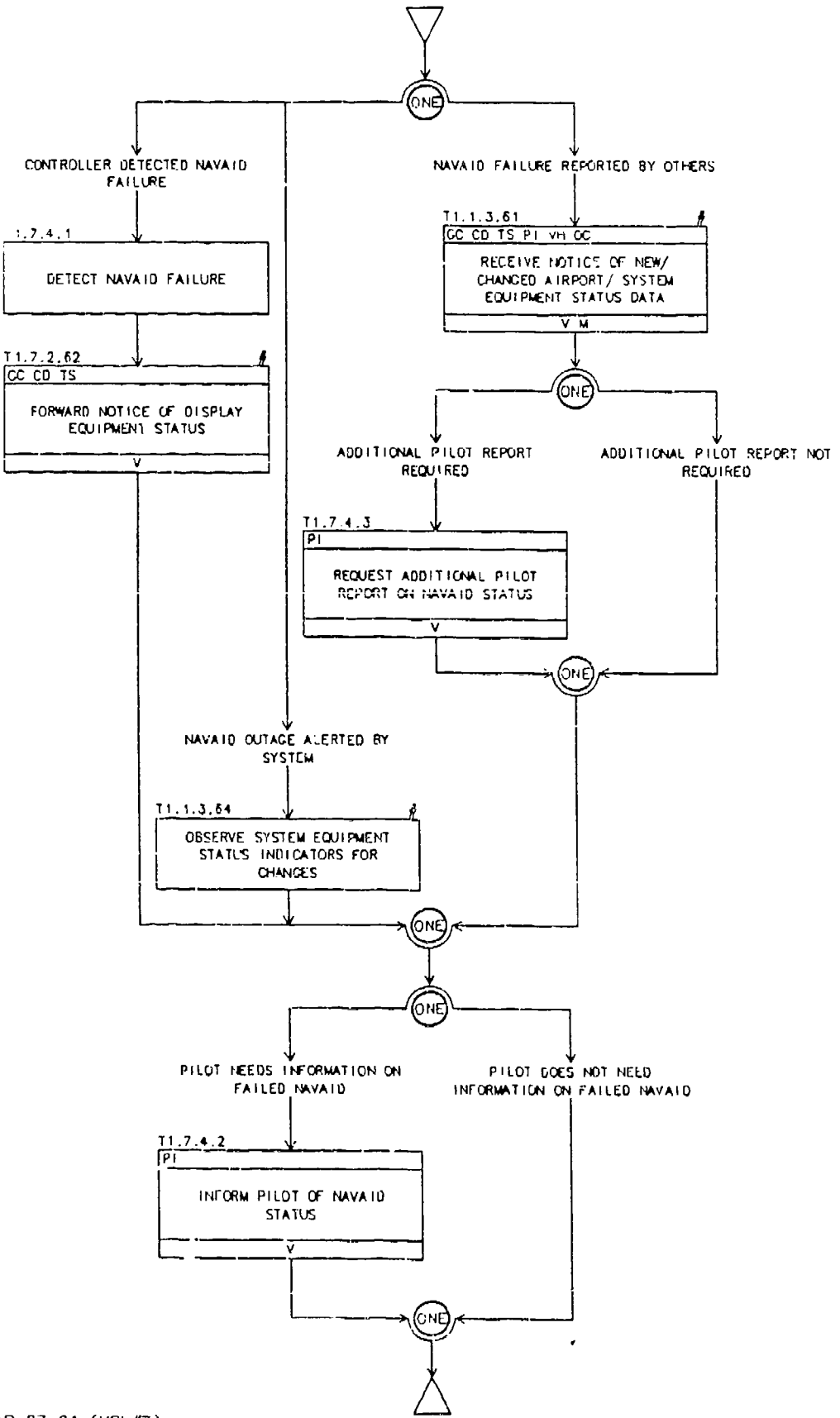
EVENTS: ARTS RADAR DATA PROCESSING FAILURE, DUPLICATE BEACON CODE




DATA WERE BEING FORWARDED DURING TRANSITION STAGES
DATA WERE BEING RECEIVED DURING TRANSITION STAGES
T1.7.3.63
TS CT
VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES
T1.7.3.64
TS CT
RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES
ONE

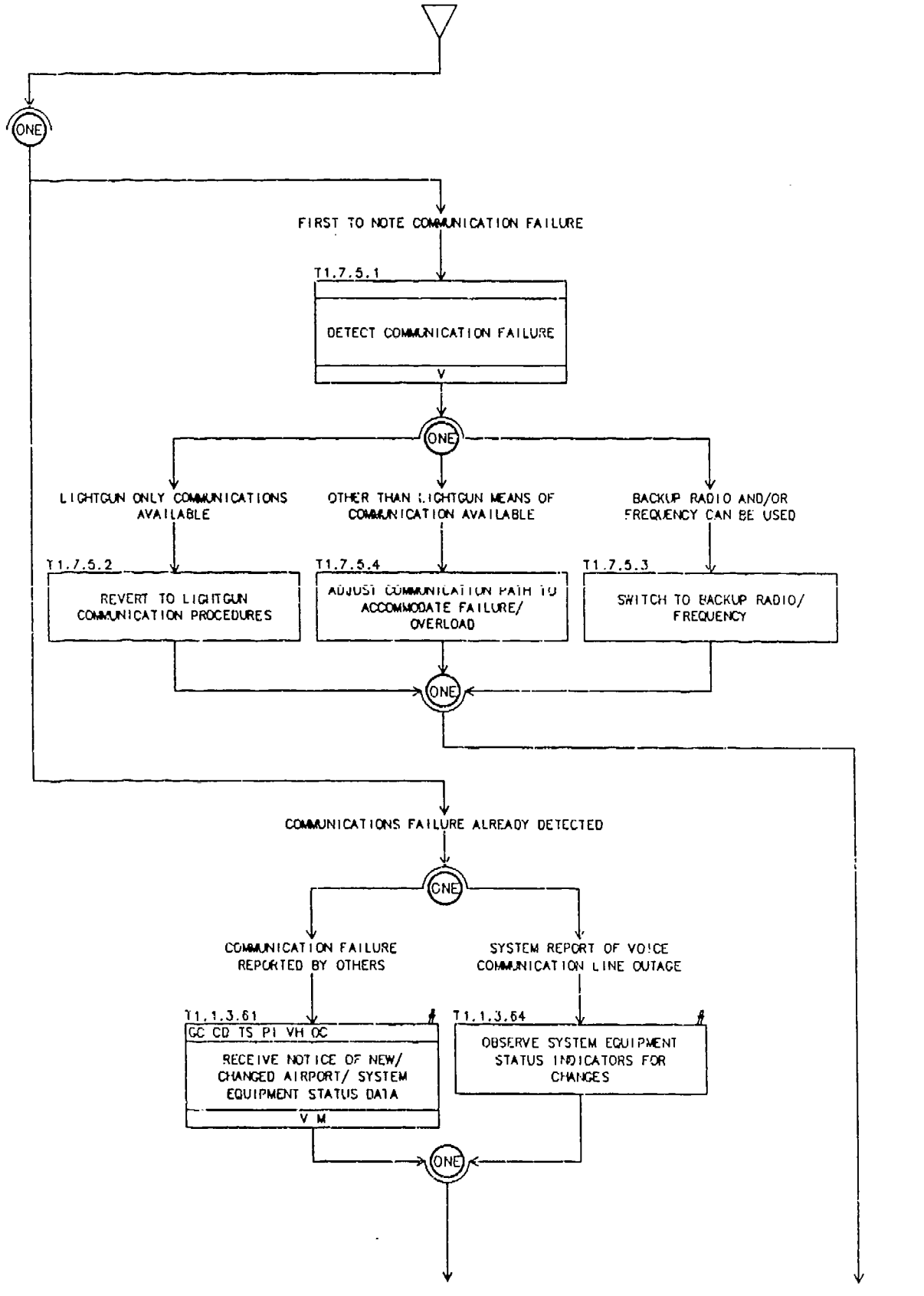
T1.7.4 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR NAVAID FAILURES

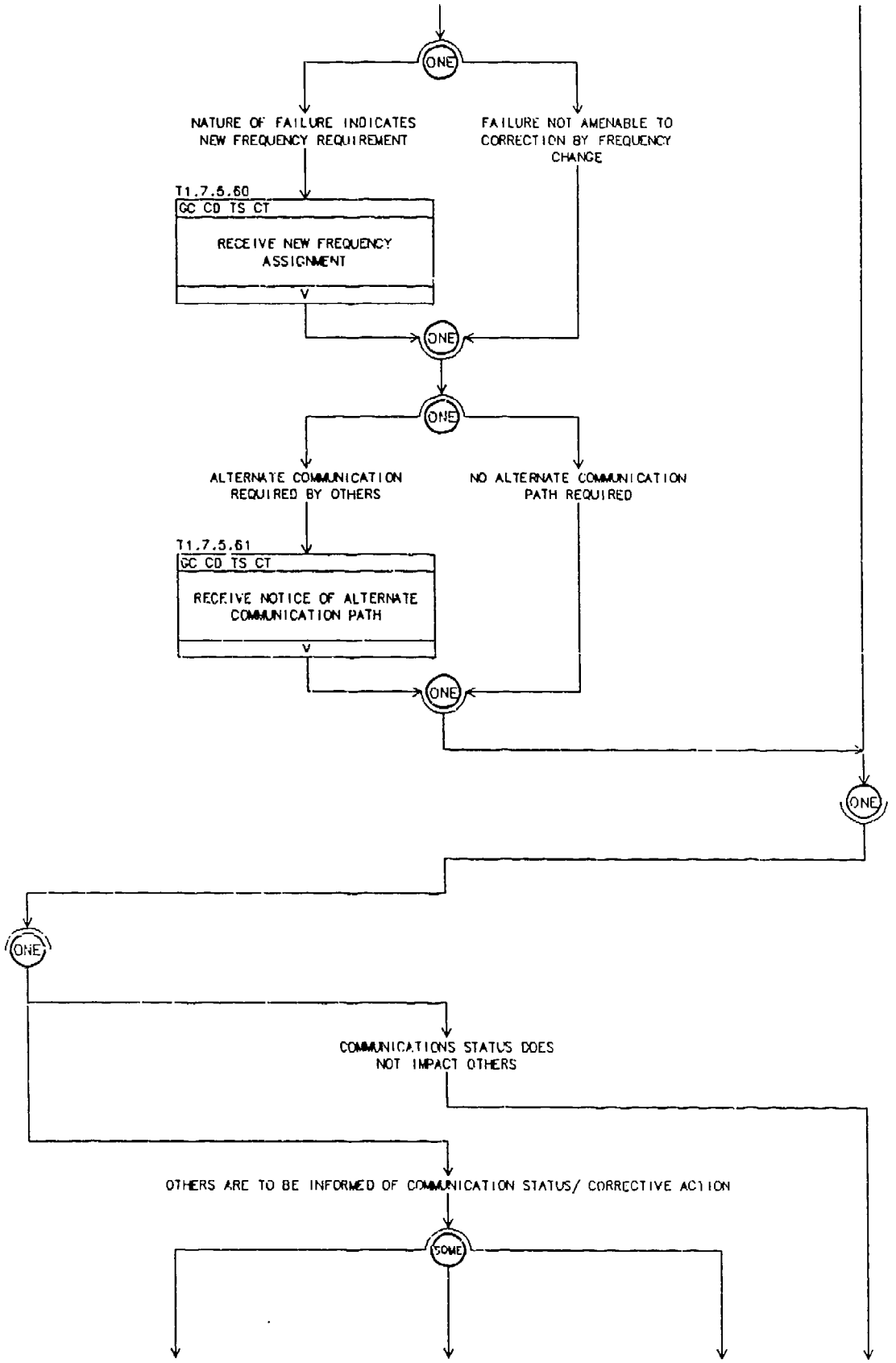
EVENTS: NAVAID FAILURE

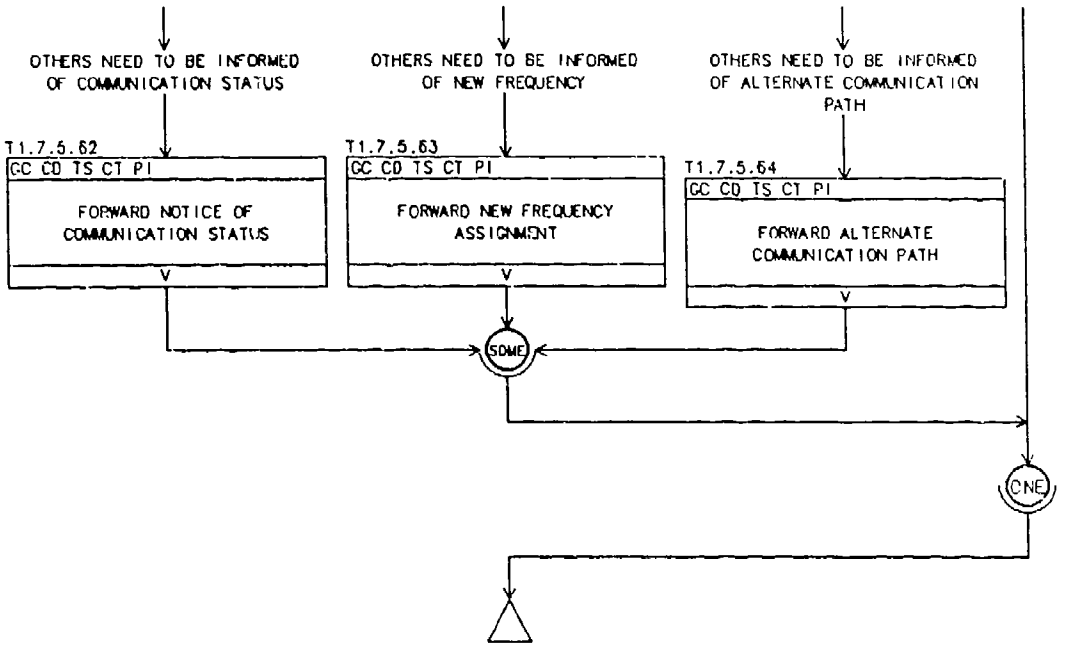


T1.7.5 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES

EVENTS: COMMUNICATION FAILURE

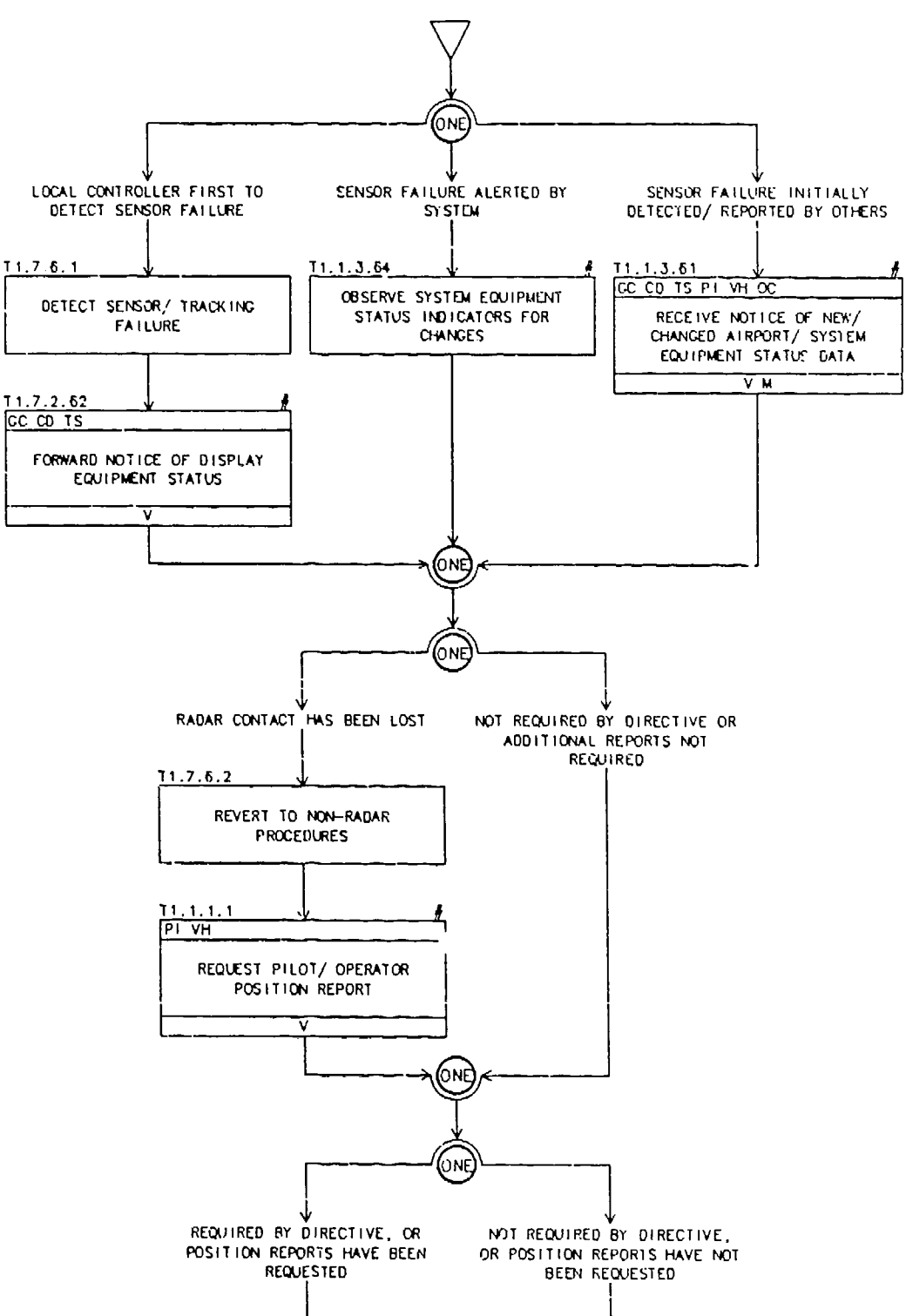


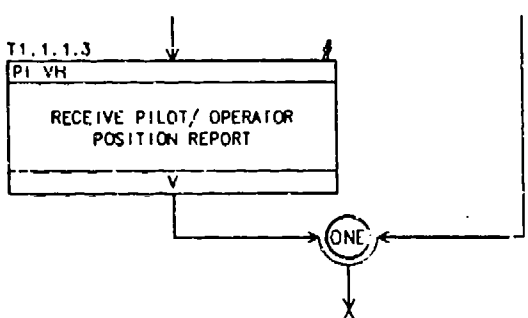

ONE
NATURE OF FAILURE INDICATES NEW FREQUENCY REQUIREMENT
FAILURE NOT AMENABLE TO CORRECTION BY FREQUENCY CHANGE
T1.7.5.60
GC CD TS CT
RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT
ONE
ONE
ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION REQUIRED BY OTHERS
NO ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH REQUIRED
T1.7.5.61
GC CD TS CT
RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
ONE
ONE
ONE
COMMUNICATIONS STATUS DOES NOT IMPACT OTHERS
OTHERS ARE TO BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION STATUS/ CORRECTIVE ACTION
SOME


OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF NEW FREQUENCY
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
T1.7.5.62
GC CD TS CT PI
FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
T1.7.5.63
GC CD TS CT PI
FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT
T1.7.5.64
GC CD TS CT PI
FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
SOME
CNE

T1.7.6 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURES

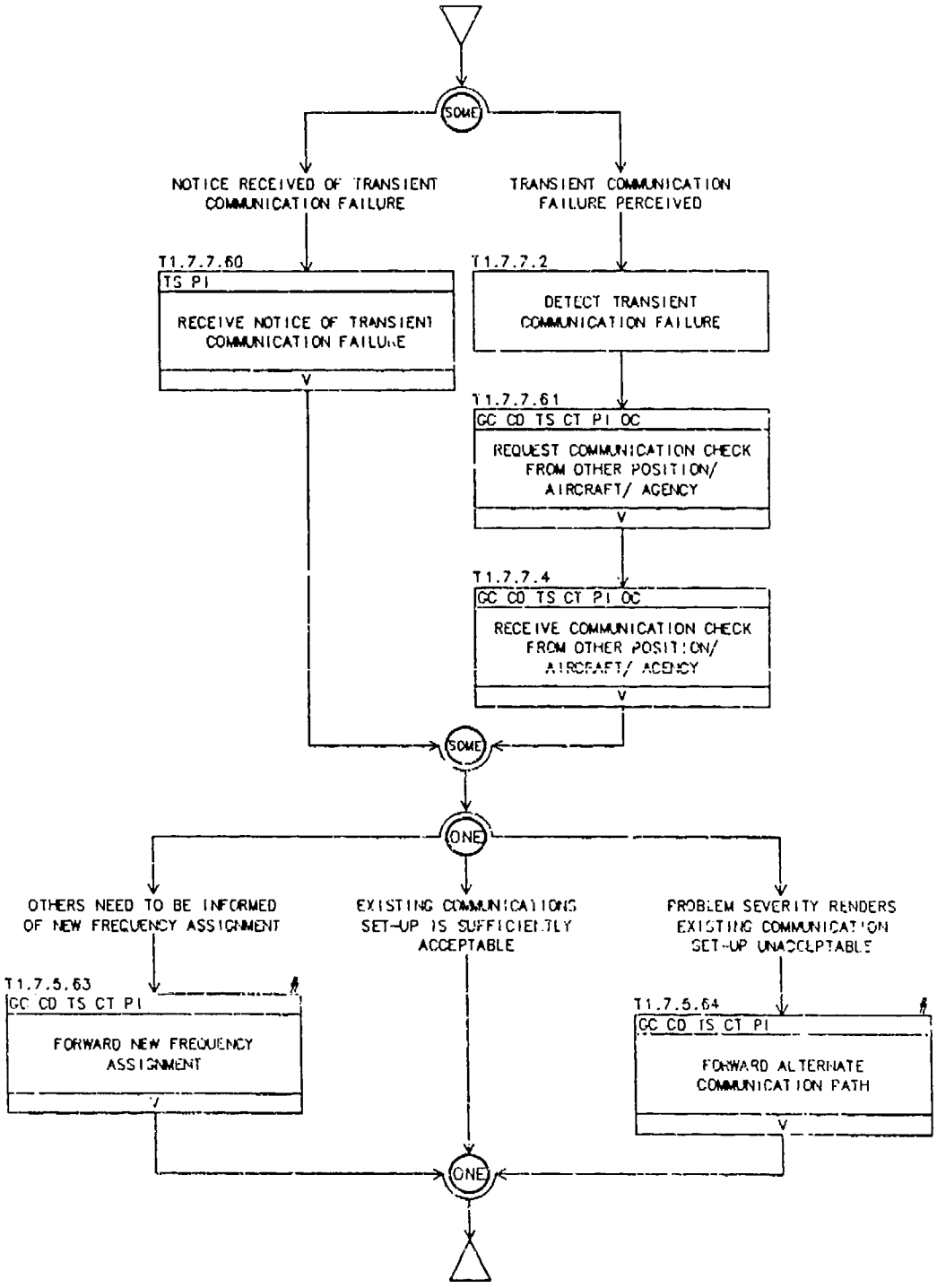
EVENTS: RADAR SURVEILLANCE SENSOR FAILURE




T1.1.1.3
PI VH
RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
V
ONE

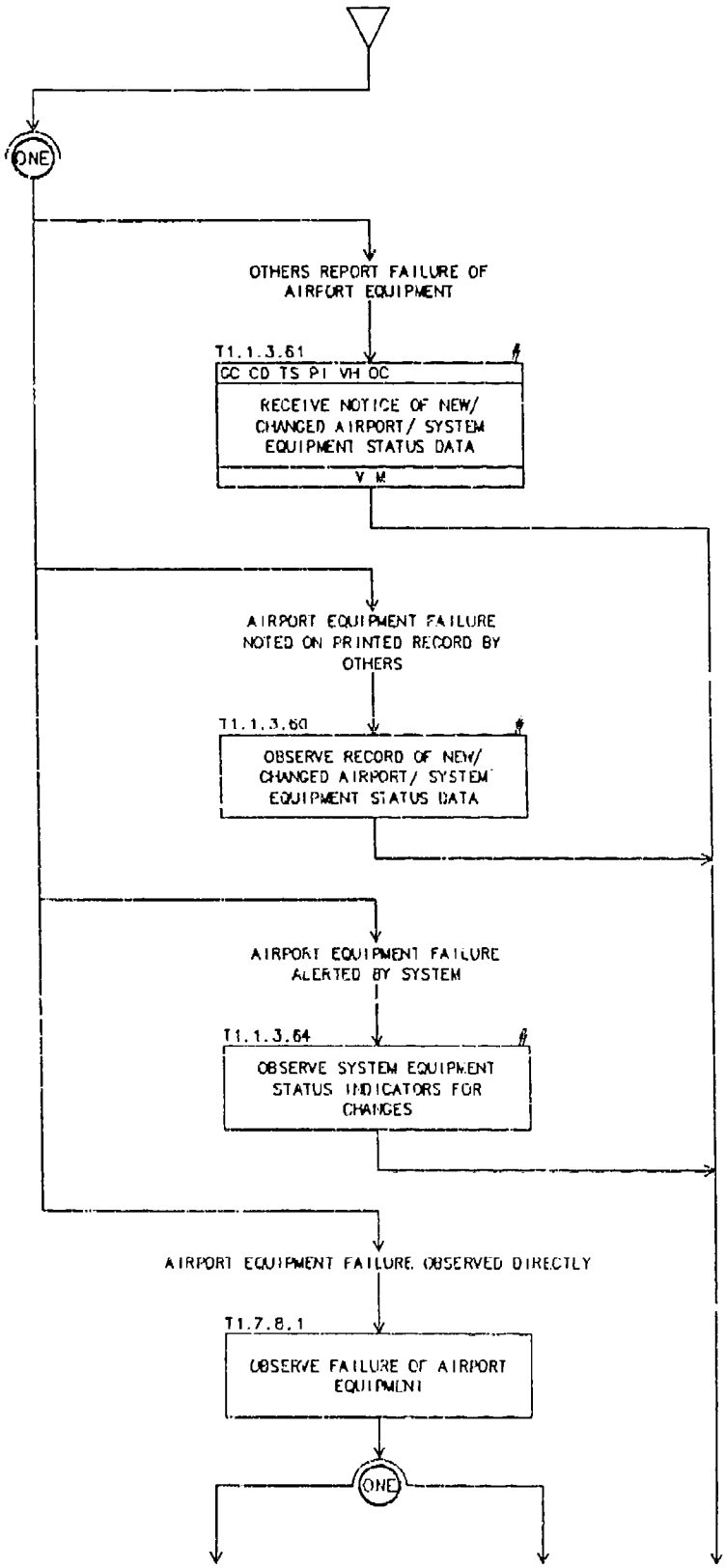
T1.7.7 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES

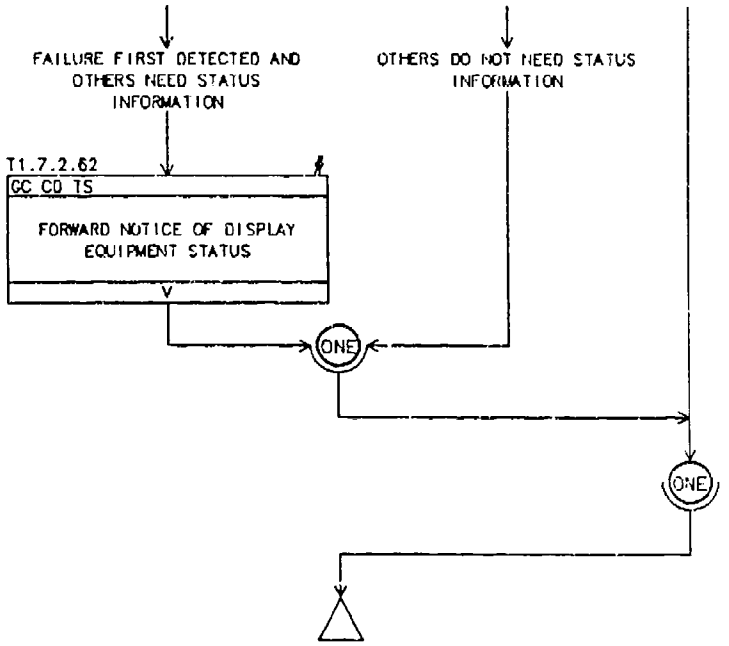
EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE



T1.7.8 RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES

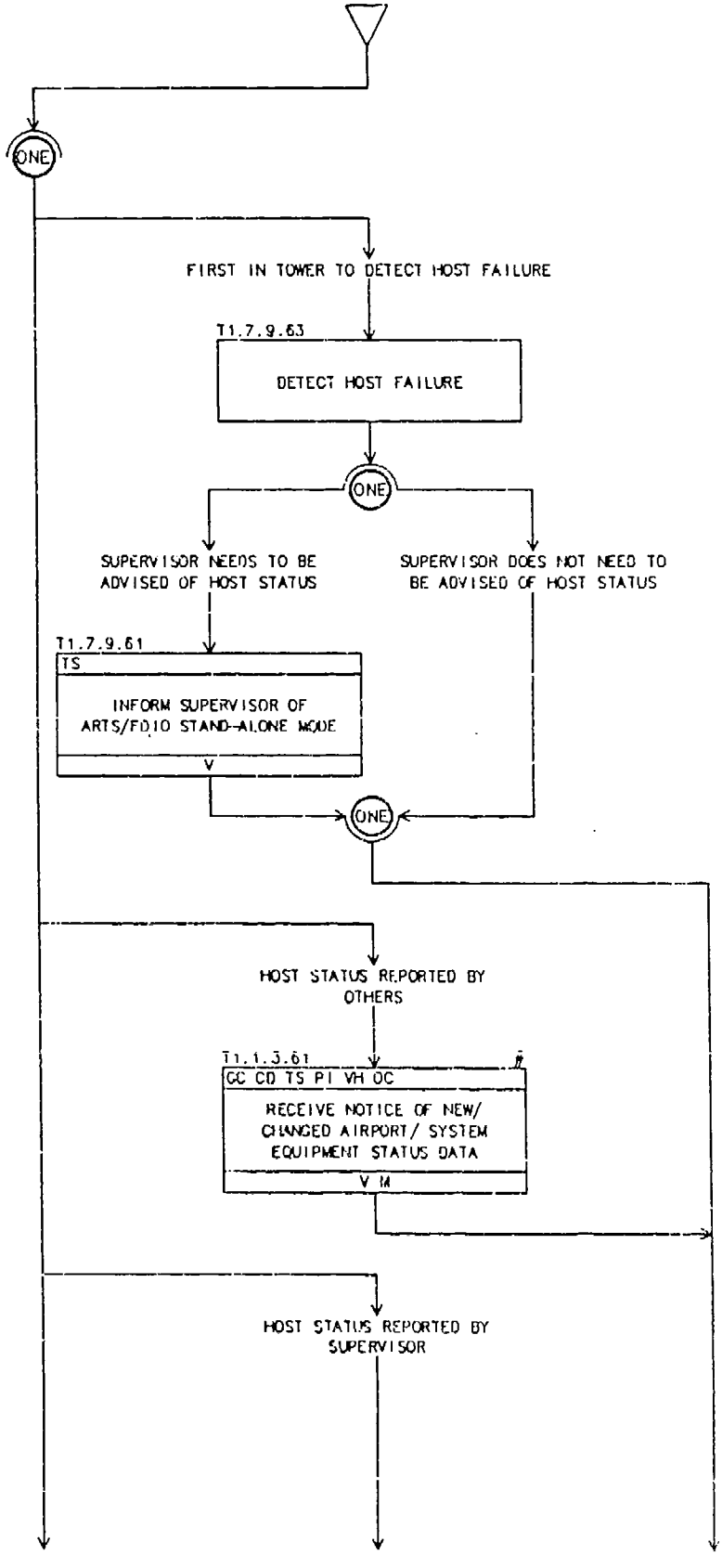
EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE



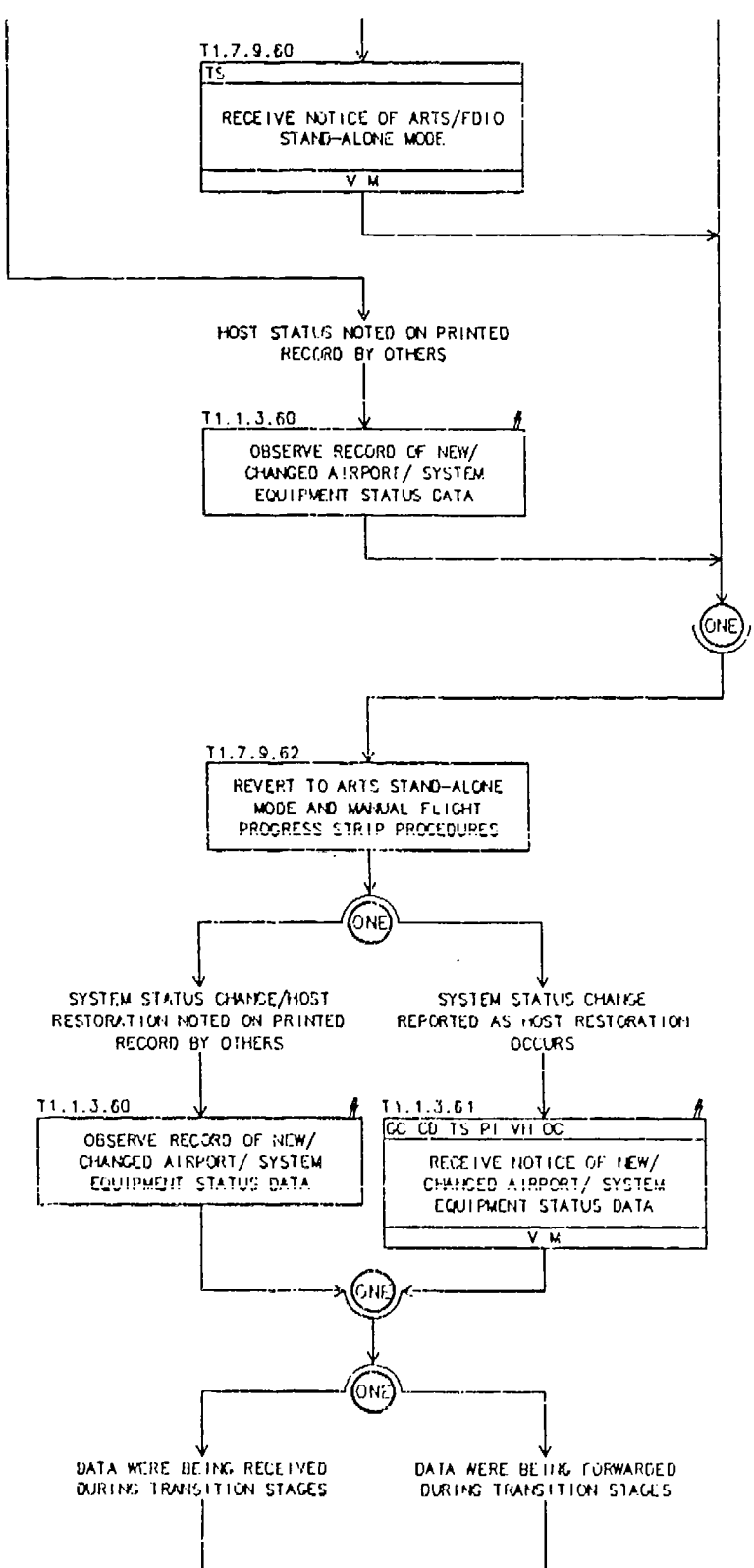

FAILURE FIRST DETECTED AND OTHERS NEED STATUS INFORMATION
OTHERS DO NOT NEED STATUS INFORMATION
T1.7.2.62
CC CD TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS
ONE
ONE

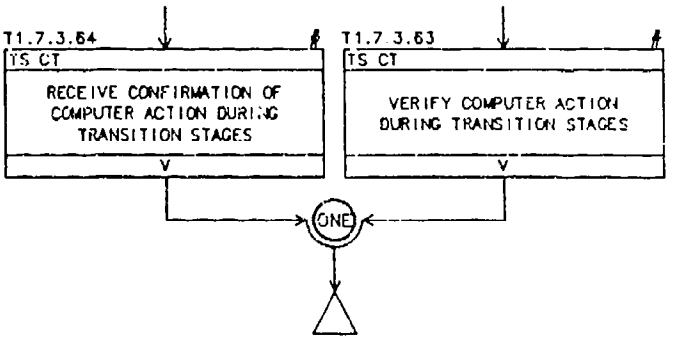
T1.7.9 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES

EVENTS: HOST FAILURE



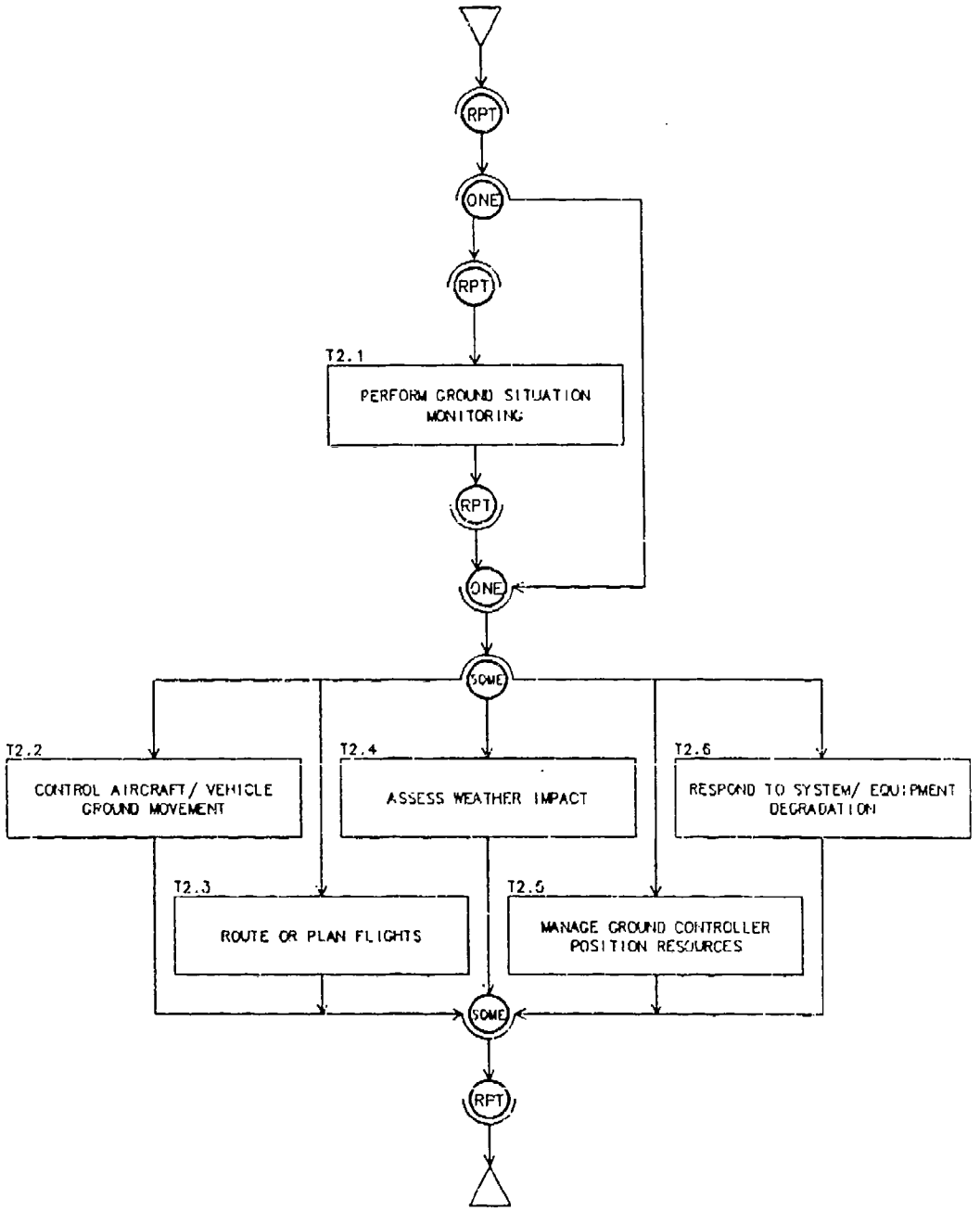
T1.7.9 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES (cont.)



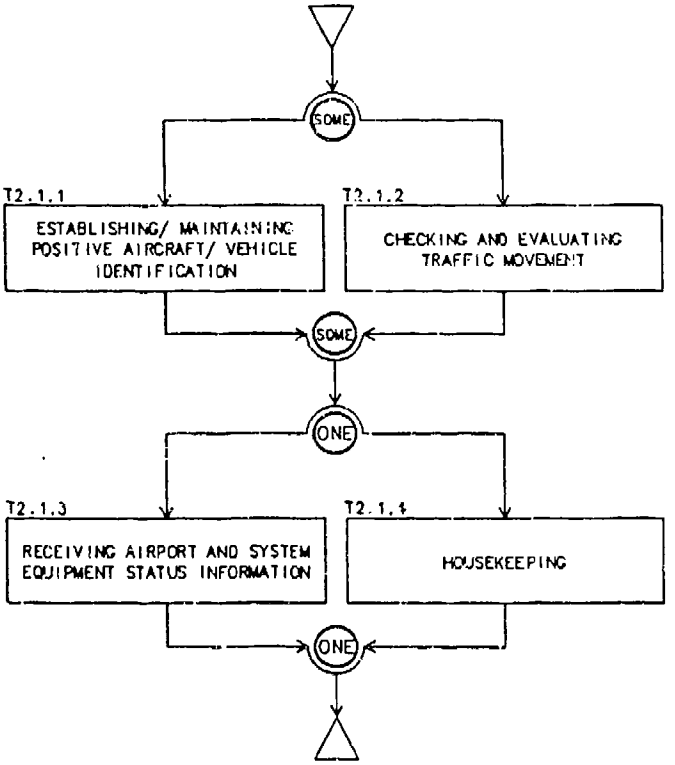

T1.7.3.64
TS CT
RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES
T1.7.3.63
TS CT
VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES
ONE

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

T2 GROUND CONTROLLER

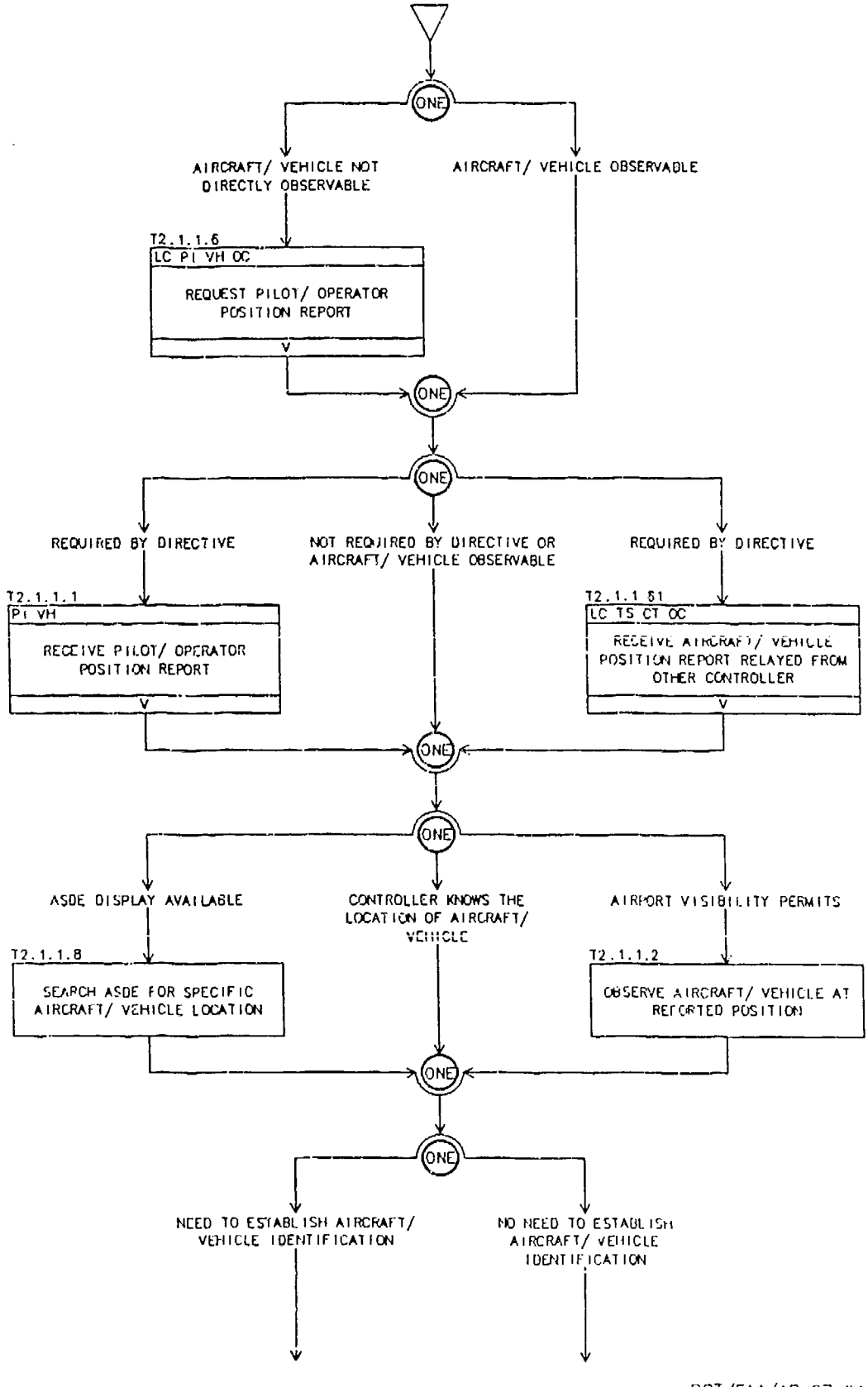


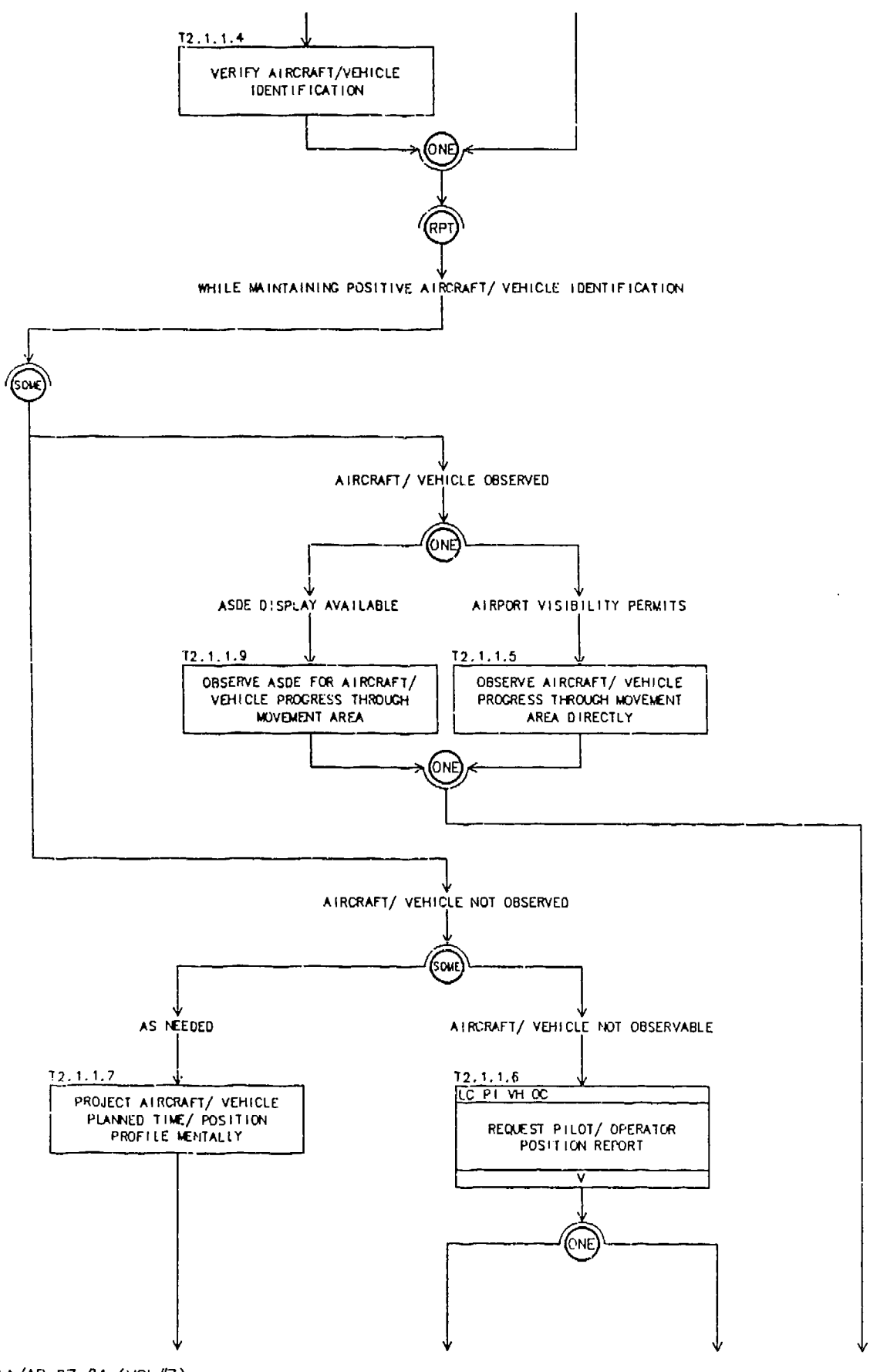
T2.1 PERFORM GROUND SITUATION MONITORING

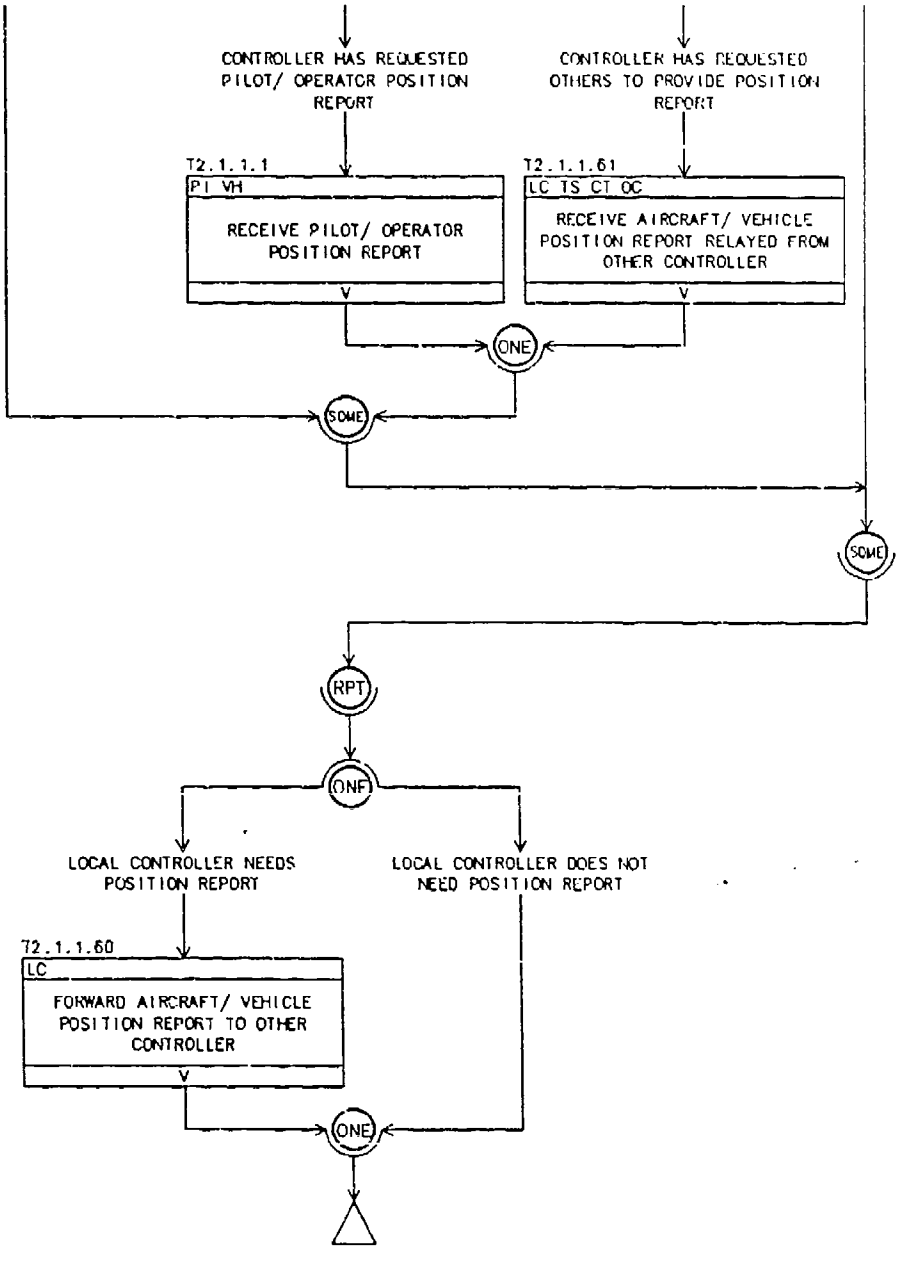


T2.1.1 ESTABLISHING/ MAINTAINING POSITIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

EVENTS: INITIAL CONTACT, AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

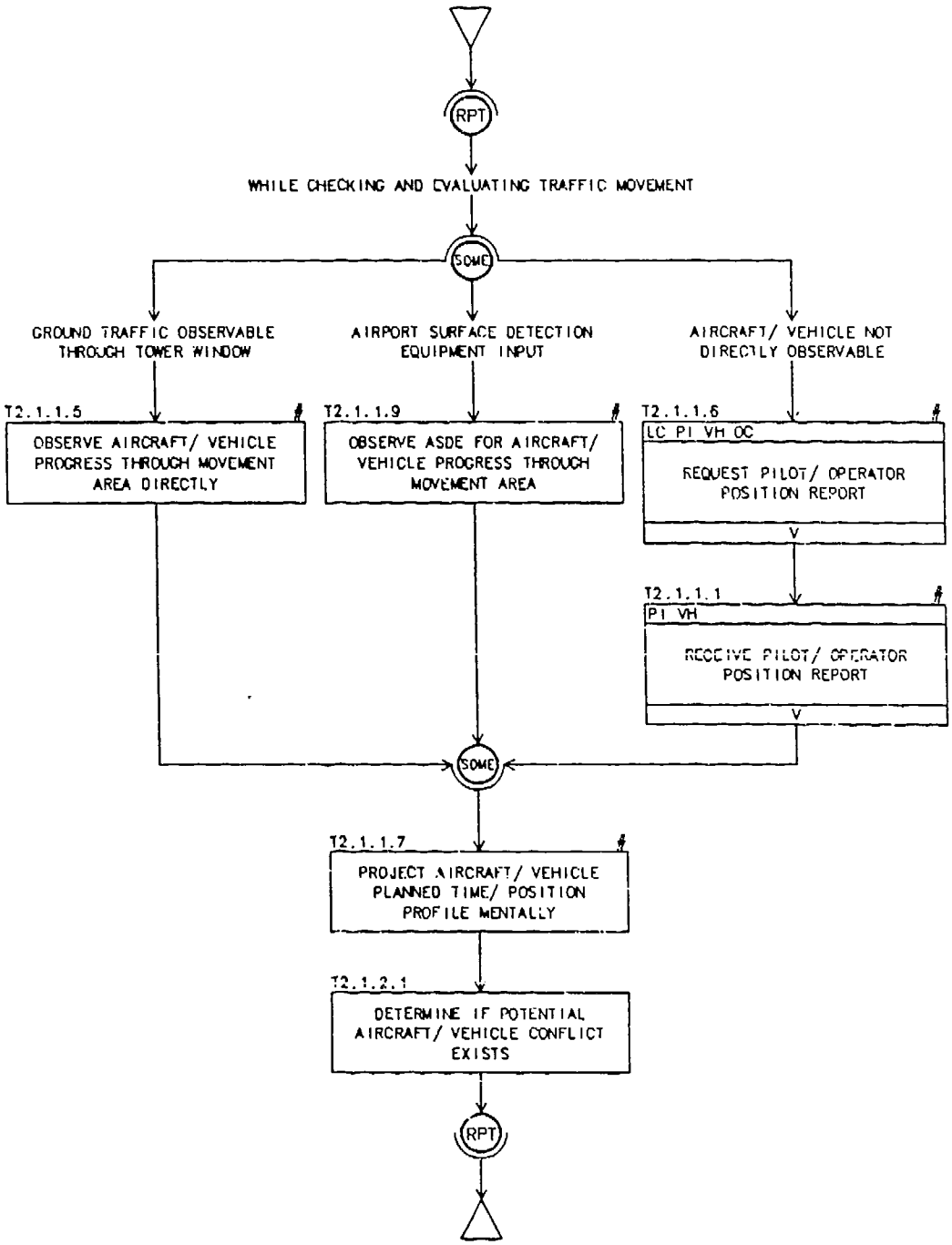



T2.1.1.4
VERIFY AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION
ONE
RPT
WHILE MAINTAINING POSITIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION
SOME
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE OBSERVED
ONE
ASDE DISPLAY AVAILABLE
AIRPORT VISIBILITY PERMITS
T2.1.1.9
OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
T2.1.1.5
OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY
ONE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE NOT OBSERVED
SOME
AS NEEDED
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE NOT OBSERVABLE
T2.1.1.7
PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY
T2.1.1.6
LC PI VH OC
REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
V
ONE


CONTROLLER HAS REQUESTED PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
CONTROLLER HAS REQUESTED OTHERS TO PROVIDE POSITION REPORT
T2.1.1.1
PI VH
RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
T2.1.1.61
LC TS CT OC
RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER
ONE
SOME
SOME
RPT
ONE
LOCAL CONTROLLER NEEDS POSITION REPORT
LOCAL CONTROLLER DOES NOT NEED POSITION REPORT
T2.1.1.60
LC
FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER
ONE

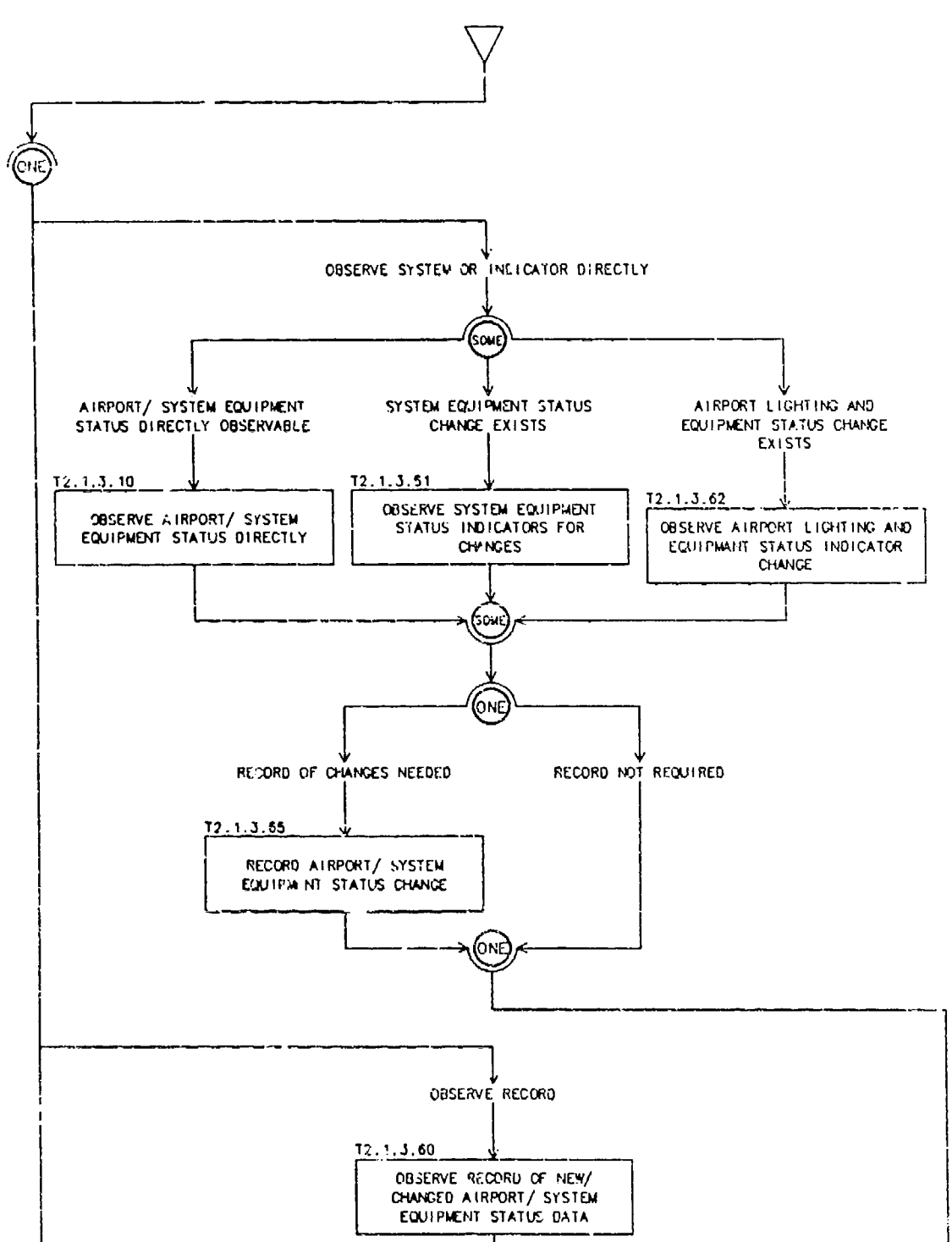
T2.1.2 CHECKING AND EVALUATING TRAFFIC MOVEMENT

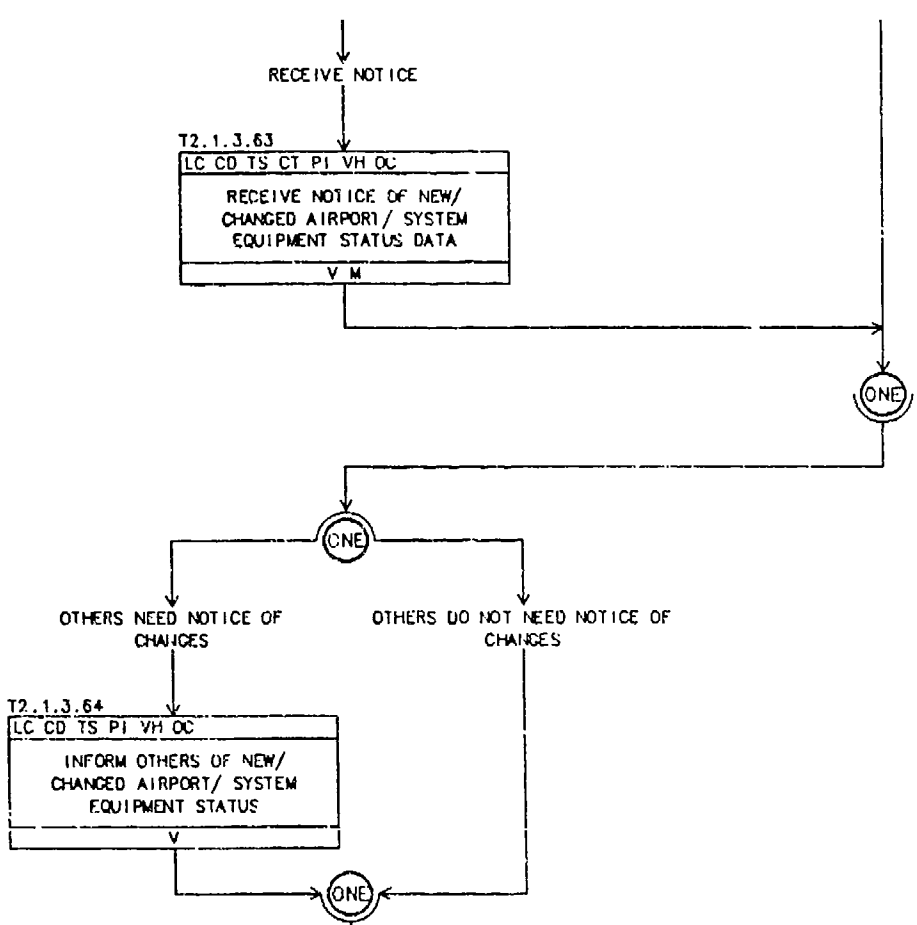
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT-AIRCRAFT CONFLICT, AIRCRAFT-VEHICLE CONFLICT, VEHICLE-VEHICLE CONFLICT, AIRFIELD TRAFFIC



T2.1.3 RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION

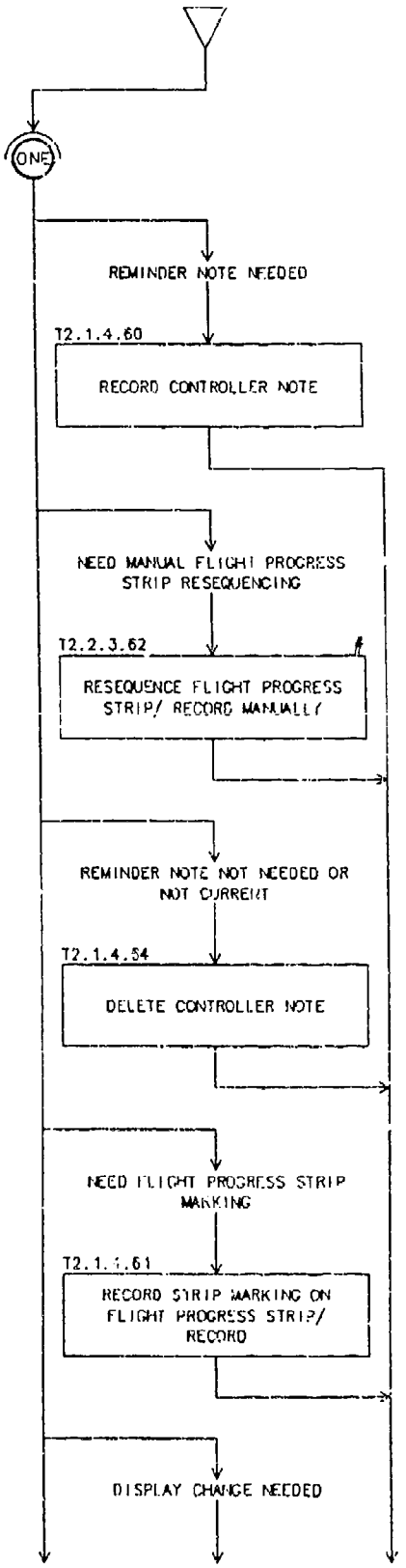
EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE, ARTS RADAR DATA PROCESSING FAILURE, COMMUNICATION FAILURE, RADAR SURVEILLANCE SENSOR FAILURE, HOST COMPUTER FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE

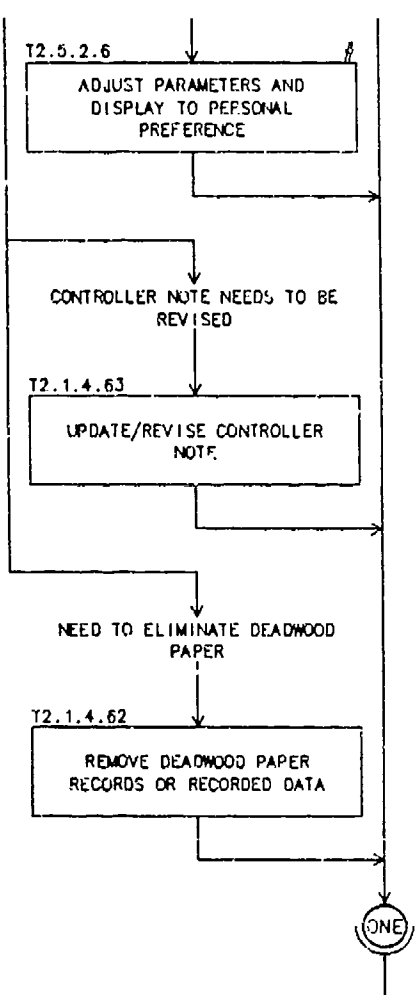



RECEIVE NOTICE
T2.1.3.63
LC CD TS CT PI VH OC
RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA
V M
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
T2.1.3.64
LC CD TS PI VH OC
INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS
V
ONE

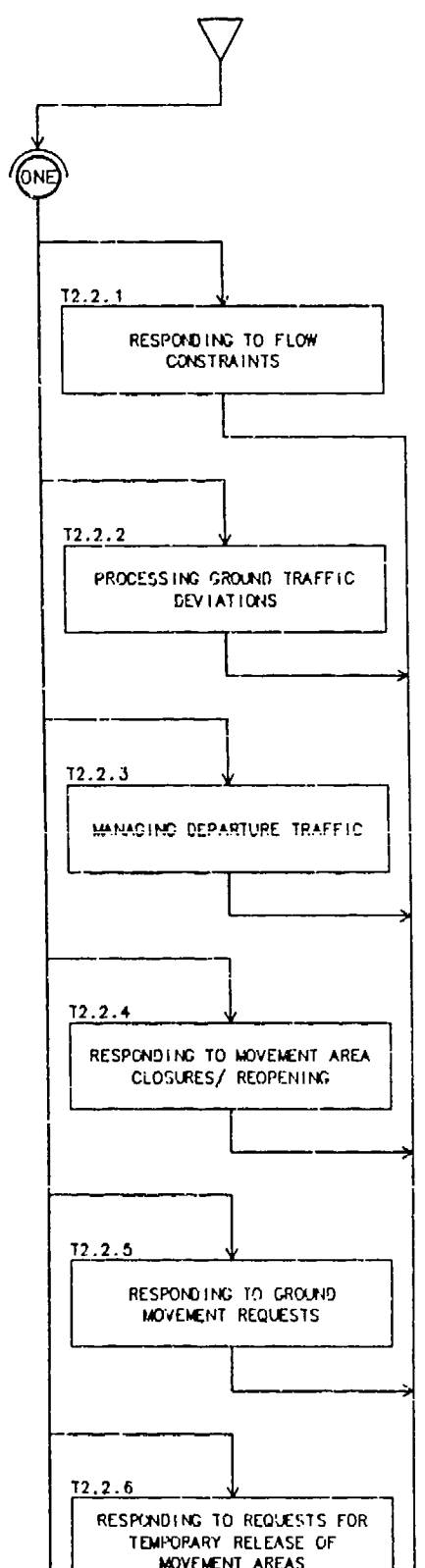
T2.1.4 HOUSEKEEPING

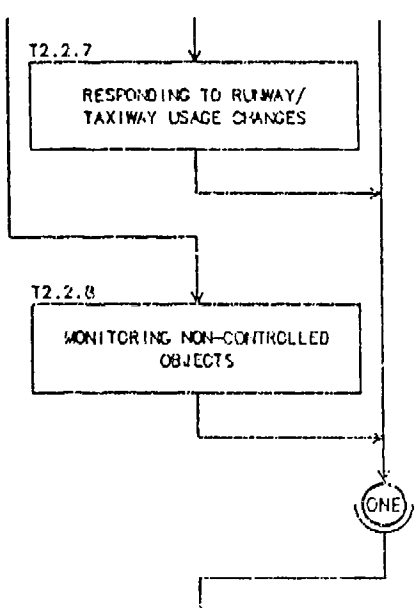
EVENTS: (NO SPECIFIC EVENTS APPLICABLE)




T2.5.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE
CONTROLLER NOTE NEEDS TO BE REVISED
T2.1.4.63
UPDATE/REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE
NEED TO ELIMINATE DEADWOOD PAPER
T2.1.4.62
REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA
ONE

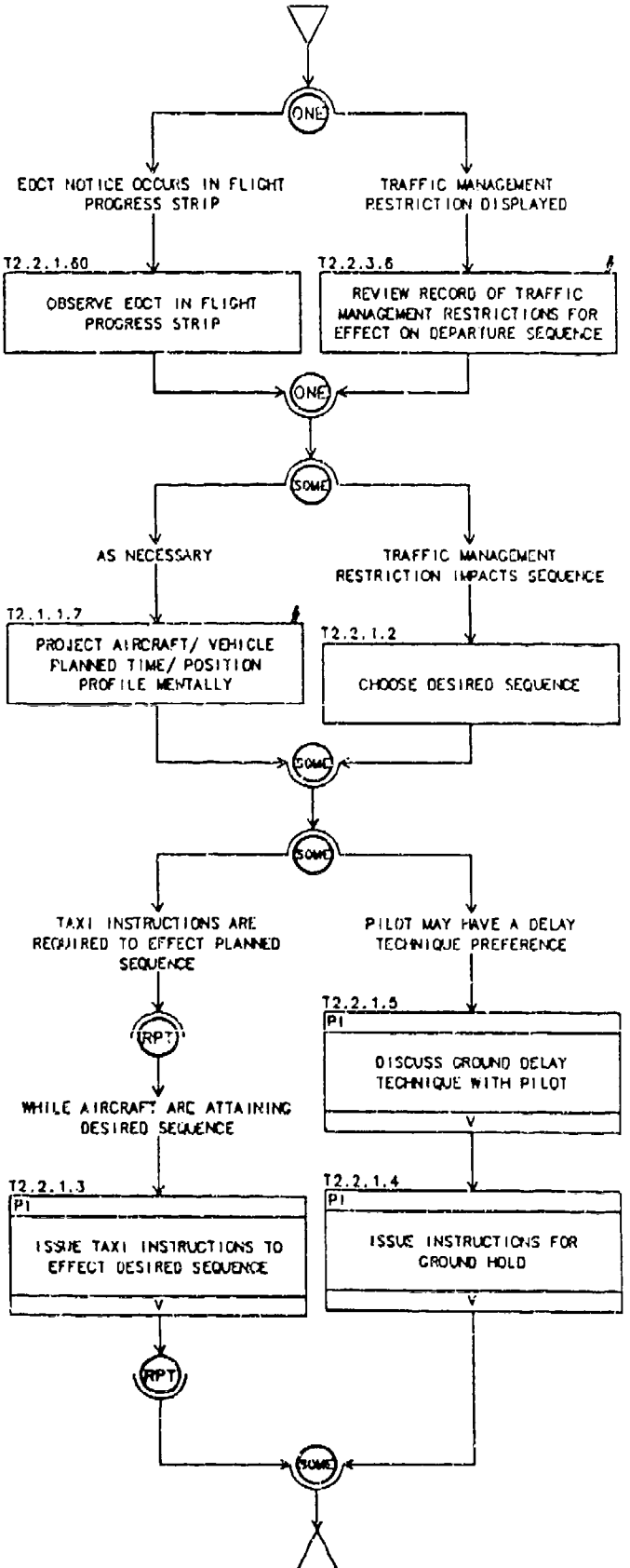
T2.2 CONTROL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE GROUND MOVEMENT




T2.2.7
RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGES
T2.2.8
MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS
ONE

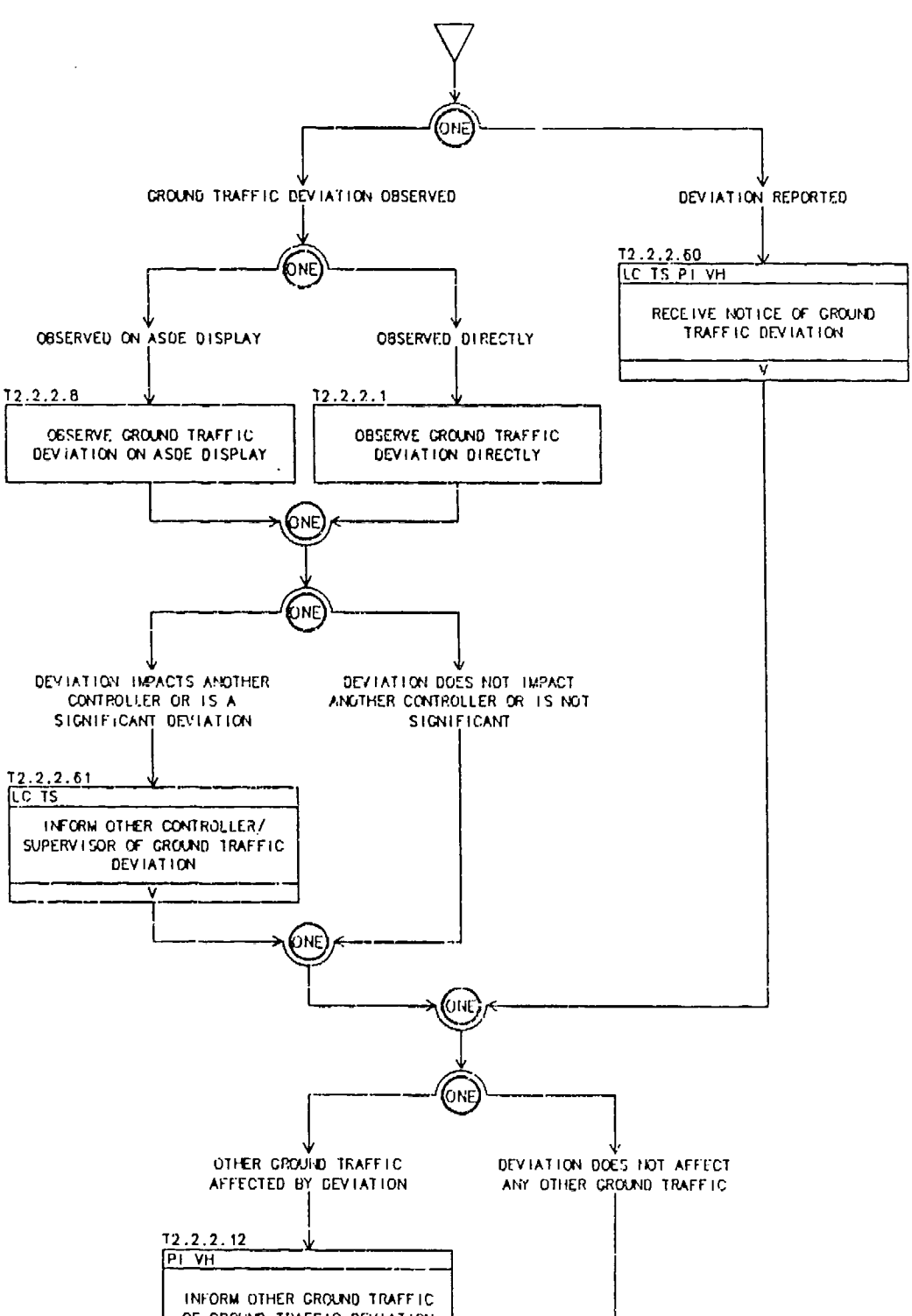
T2.2.1 RESPONDING TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS

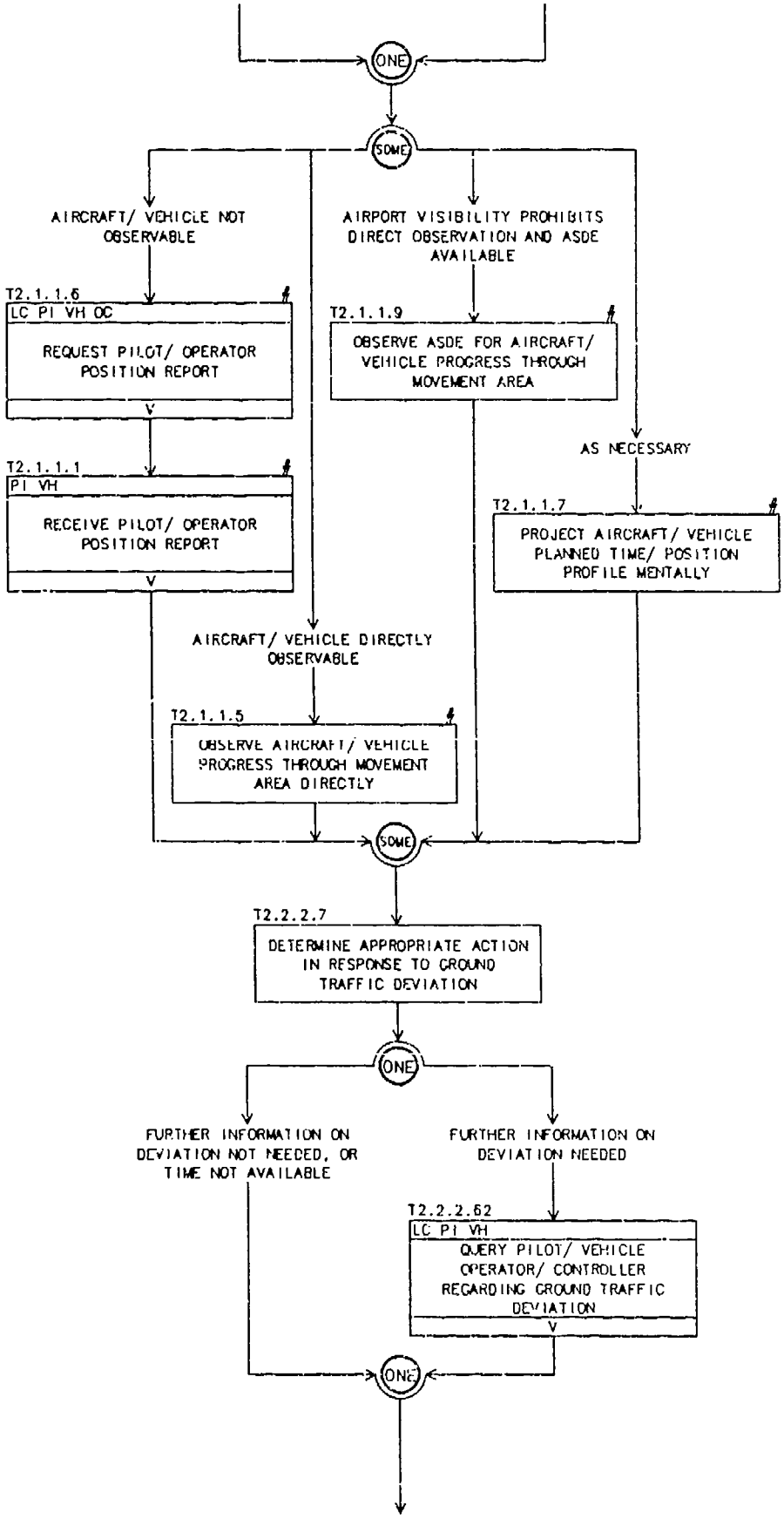
EVENTS: CHANGE FLOW PATTERN, FLOW MANAGEMENT

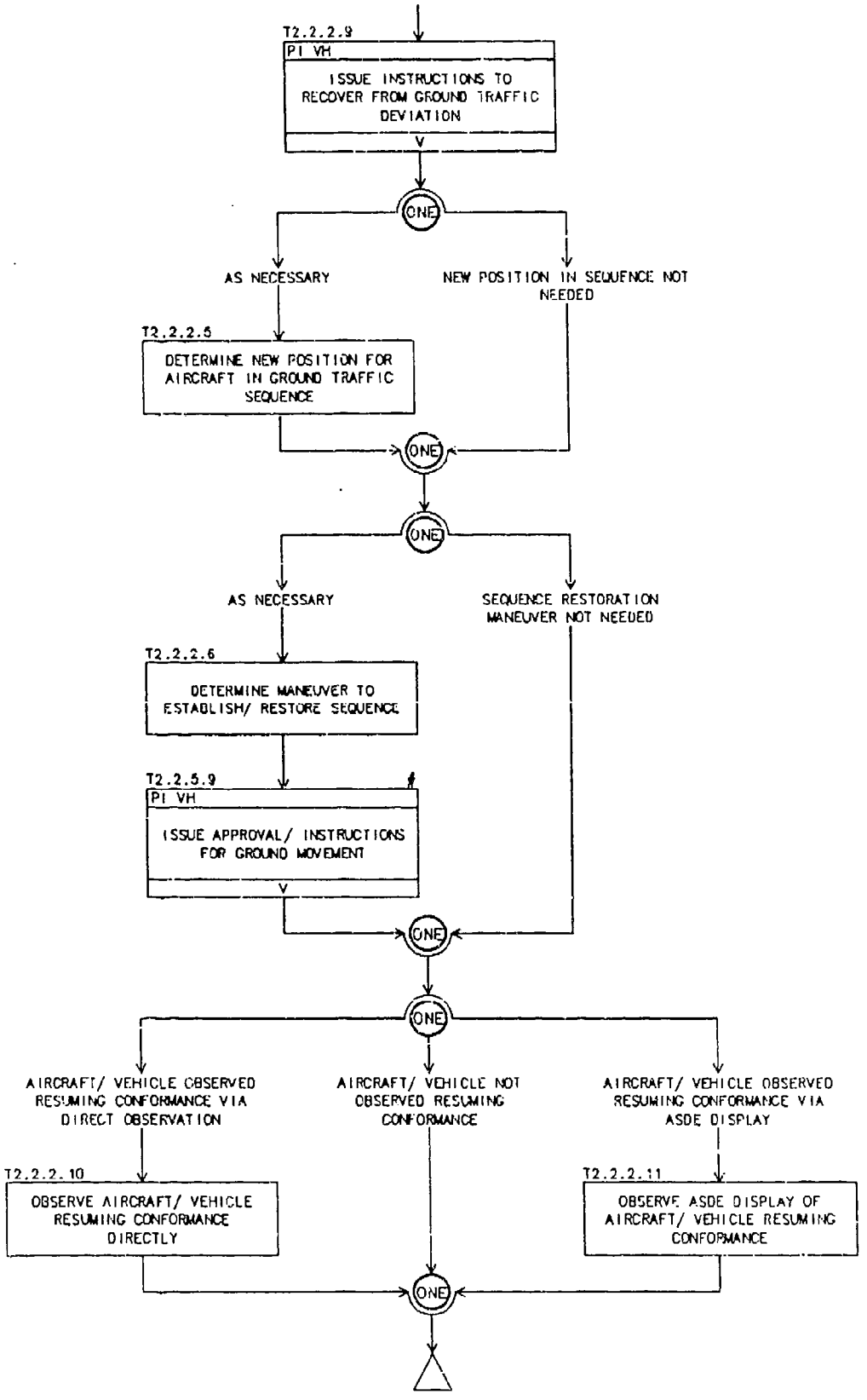


T2.2.2 PROCESSING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATIONS

EVENTS: RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY INCURSION BY OBSTACLE/ VEHICLE/ AIRCRAFT, GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION

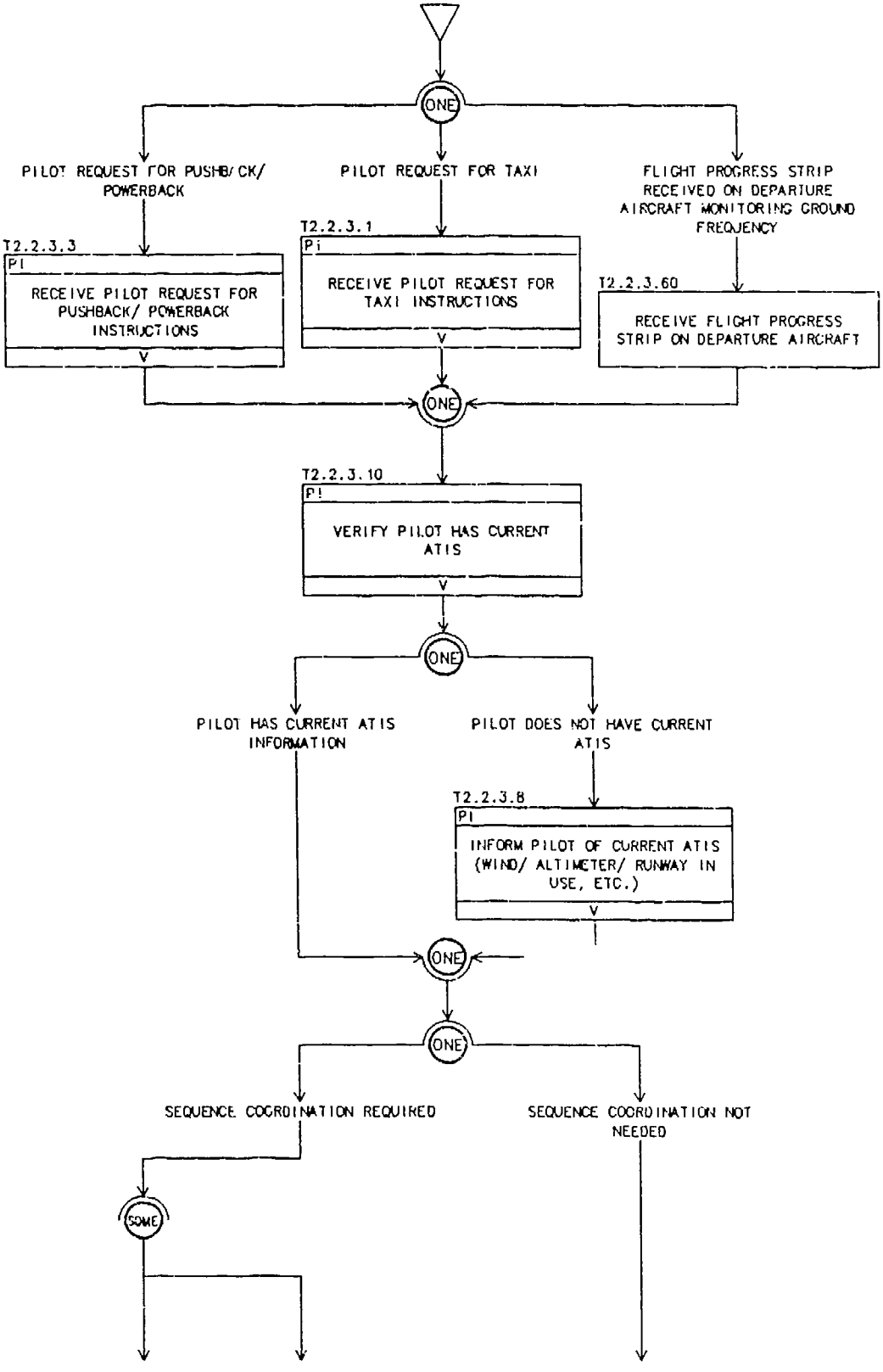


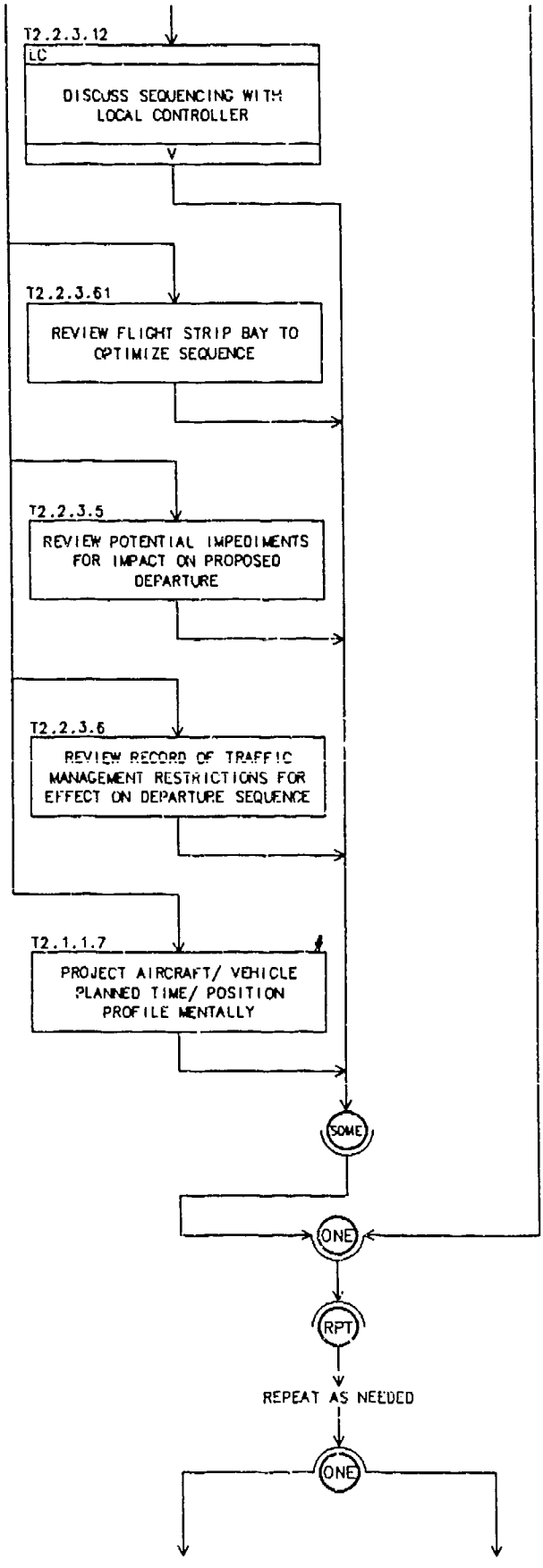

ONE
SOME
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE NOT OBSERVABLE
AIRPORT VISIBILITY PROHIBITS DIRECT OBSERVATION AND ASDE AVAILABLE
T2.1.1.6
LC PI VH OC
REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
T2.1.1.9
OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
AS NECESSARY
T2.1.1.1
PI VH
RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT
T2.1.1.7
PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE DIRECTLY OBSERVABLE
T2.1.1.5
OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY
SOME
T2.2.2.7
DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN RESPONSE TO GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION
ONE
FURTHER INFORMATION ON DEVIATION NOT NEEDED, OR TIME NOT AVAILABLE
FURTHER INFORMATION ON DEVIATION NEEDED
T2.2.2.62
LC PI VH
QUERY PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION
ONE

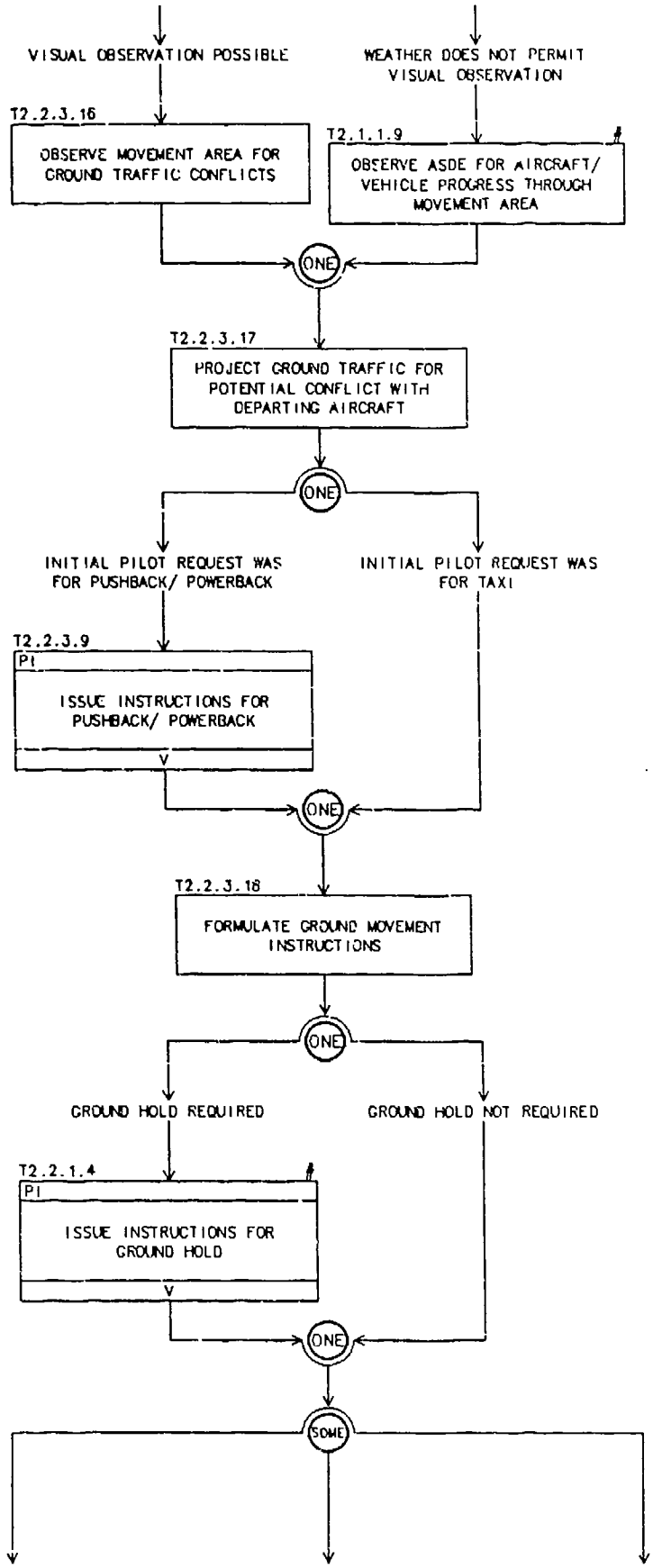

T2.2.2.9
PI VH
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO RECOVER FROM GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION
ONE
AS NECESSARY
NEW POSITION IN SEQUENCE NOT NEEDED
T2.2.2.5
DETERMINE NEW POSITION FOR AIRCRAFT IN GROUND TRAFFIC SEQUENCE
ONE
ONE
AS NECESSARY
SEQUENCE RESTORATION MANEUVER NOT NEEDED
T2.2.2.6
DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE SEQUENCE
T2.2.5.9
PI VH
ISSUE APPROVAL/ INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
ONE
ONE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE OBSERVED RESUMING CONFORMANCE VIA DIRECT OBSERVATION
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE NOT OBSERVED RESUMING CONFORMANCE
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE OBSERVED RESUMING CONFORMANCE VIA ASDE DISPLAY
T2.2.2.10
OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY
T2.2.2.11
OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE
ONE

T2.2.3 MANAGING DEPARTURE TRAFFIC

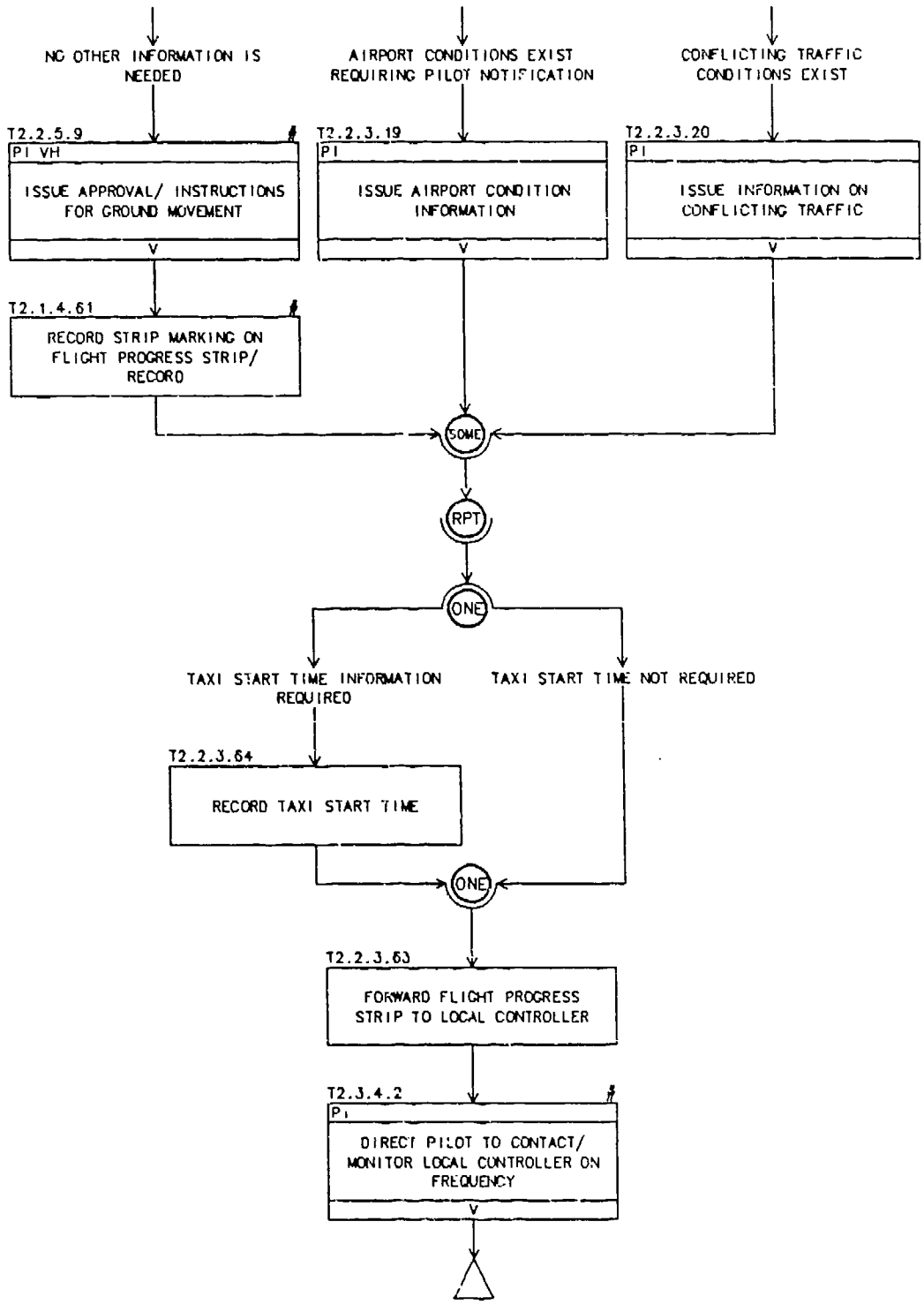
EVENTS: CHANGE FLOW PATTERN, SEQUENCING REQUIRED, INITIAL CONTACT, NOISE ABATEMENT PROCEDURE, AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, ENTERING/ LEAVING OUTBOUND GROUND HOLD, MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION, MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE




T2.2.3.12
LC
DISCUSS SEQUENCING WITH LOCAL CONTROLLER
T2.2.3.61
REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE SEQUENCE
T2.2.3.5
REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE
T2.2.3.6
REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON DEPARTURE SEQUENCE
T2.1.1.7
PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY
SOME
ONE
RPT
REPEAT AS NEEDED
ONE

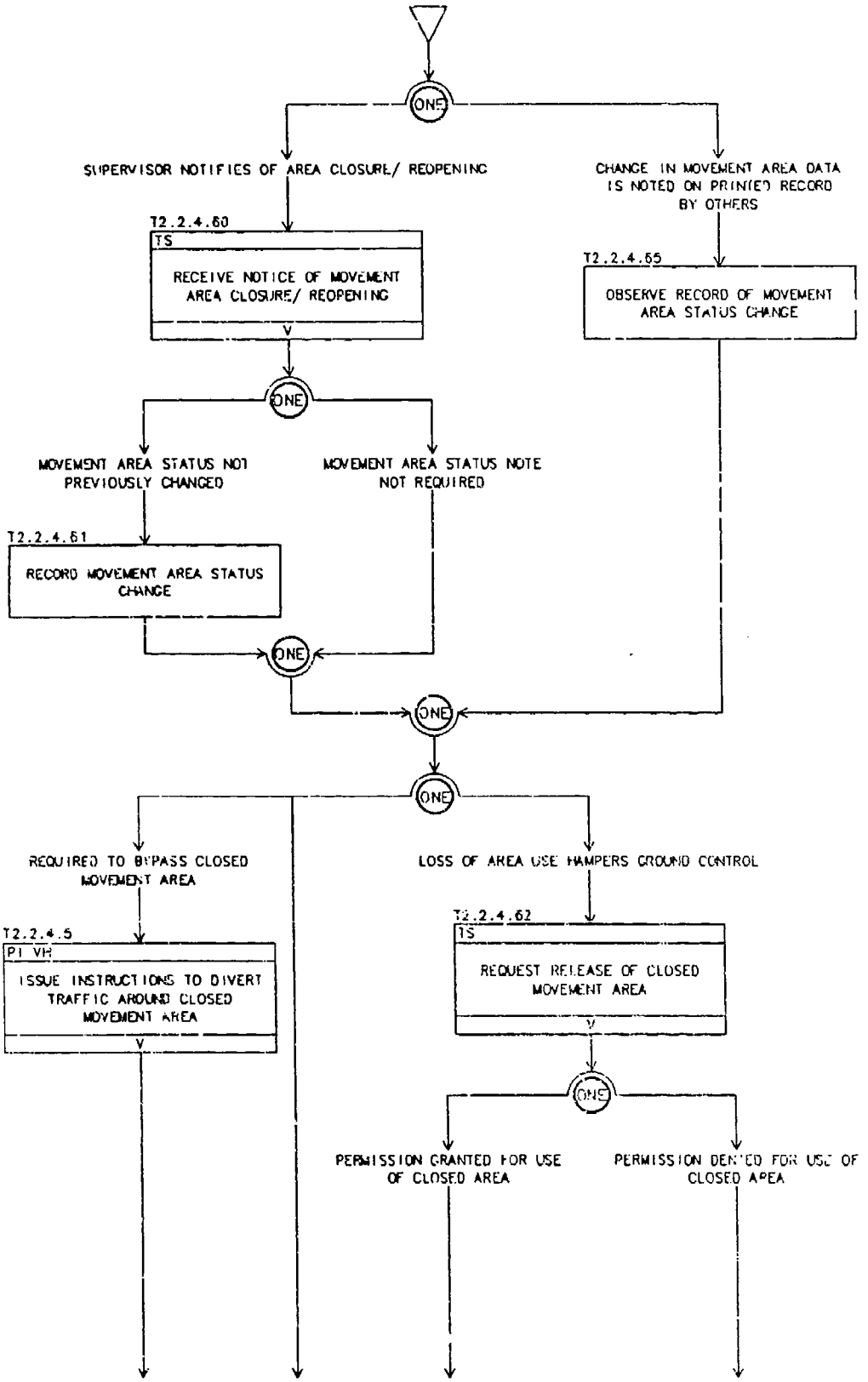

VISUAL OBSERVATION POSSIBLE
WEATHER DOES NOT PERMIT VISUAL OBSERVATION
T2.2.3.16
OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREA FOR GROUND TRAFFIC CONFLICTS
T2.1.1.9
#
OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
ONE
T2.2.3.17
PROJECT GROUND TRAFFIC FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT WITH DEPARTING AIRCRAFT
ONE
INITIAL PILOT REQUEST WAS FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK
INITIAL PILOT REQUEST WAS FOR TAXI
T2.2.3.9
PI
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK
V
ONE
T2.2.3.18
FORMULATE GROUND MOVEMENT INSTRUCTIONS
ONE
GROUND HOLD REQUIRED
GROUND HOLD NOT REQUIRED
T2.2.1.4
#
PI
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND HOLD
V
ONE
SOME

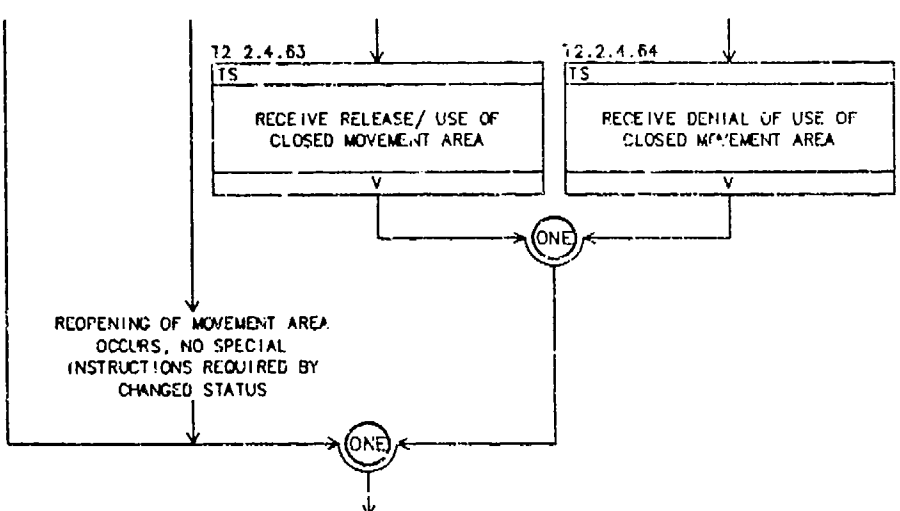
T2.2.3 MANAGING DEPARTURE TRAFFIC (cont.)



T2.2.4 RESPONDING TO MOVEMENT AREA CLOSURES/ REOPENING

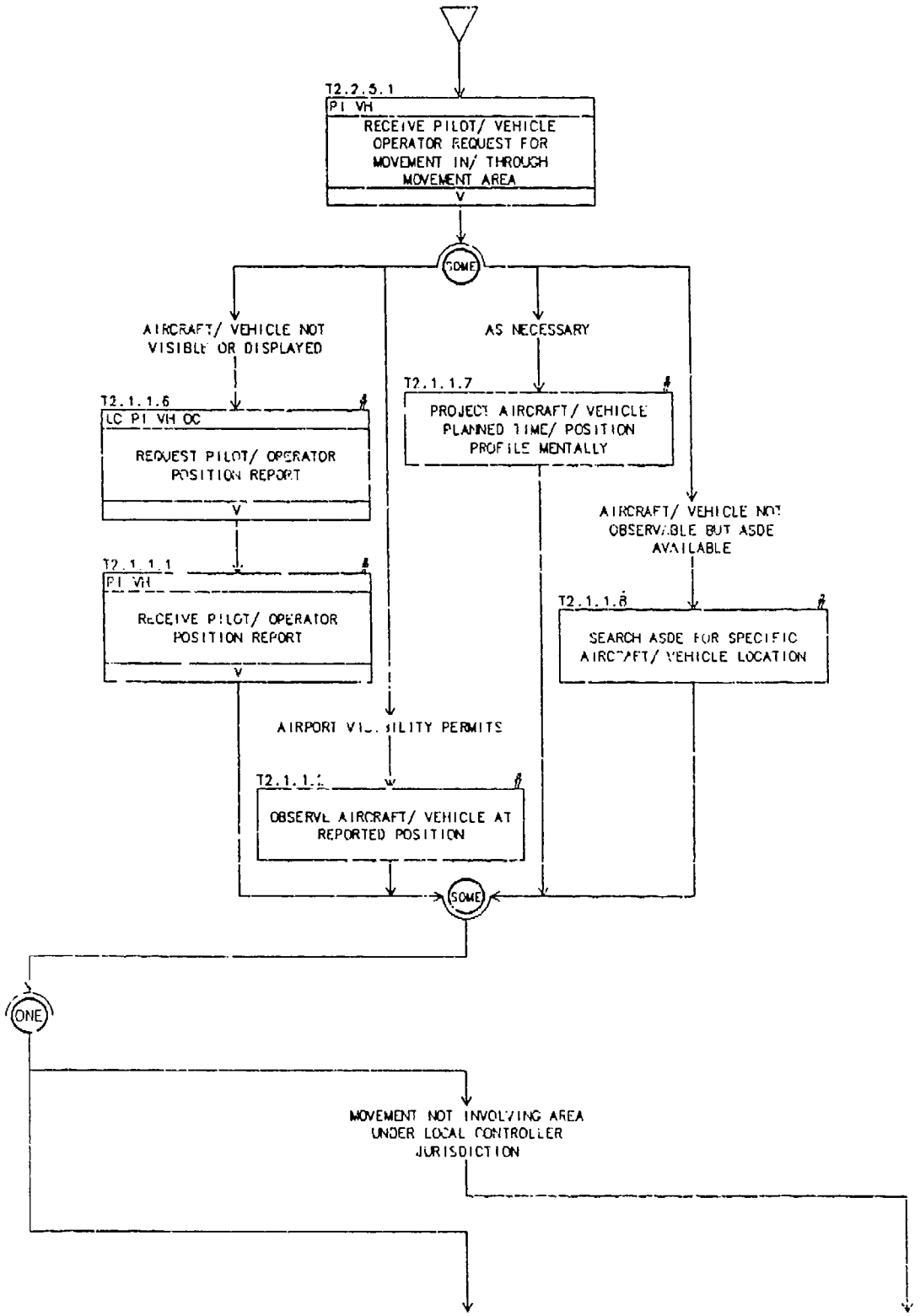
EVENTS: RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY OPEN/ CLOSE



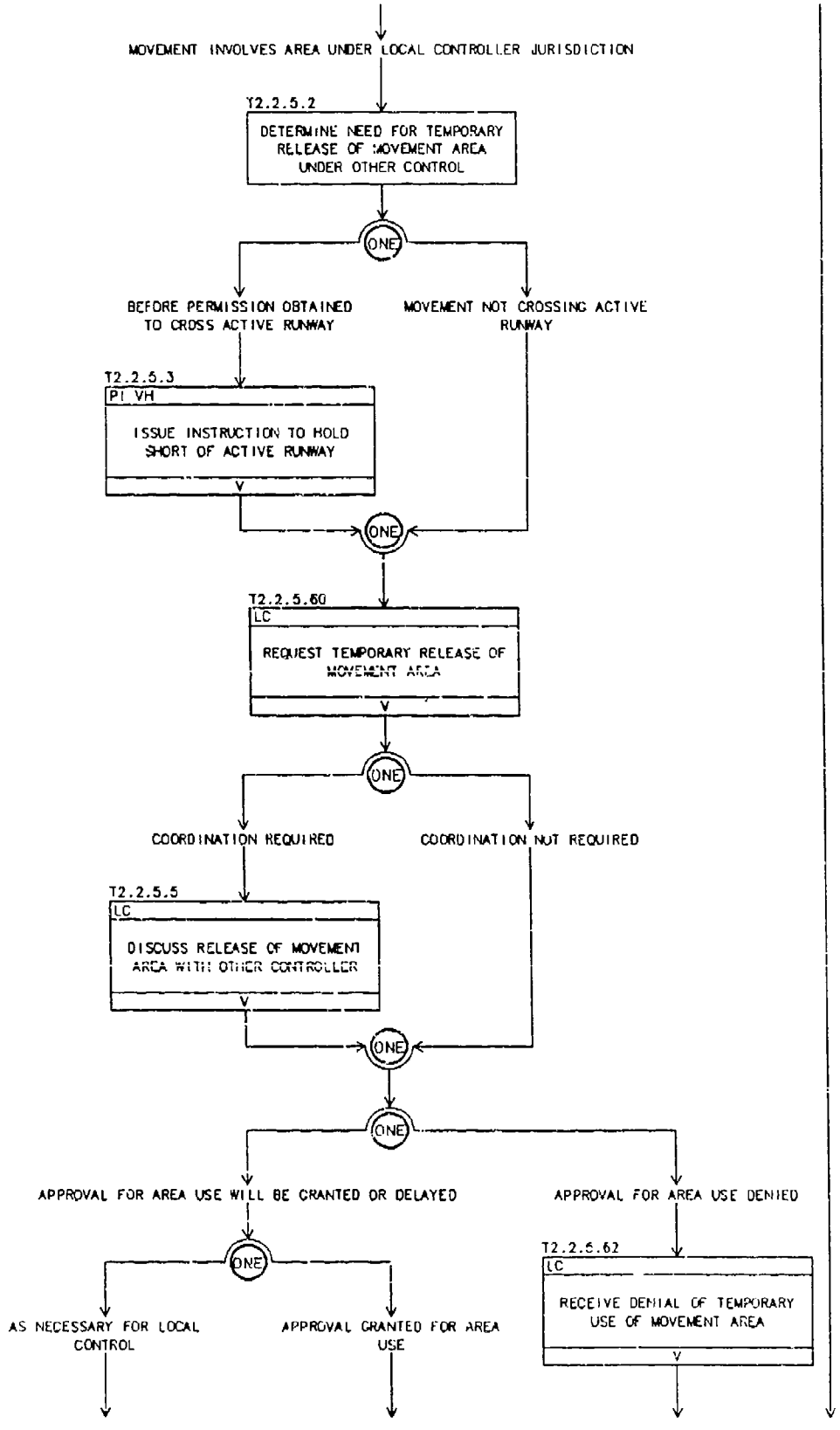

T2.2.4.63
TS
RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA
T2.2.4.64
TS
RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA
ONE
REOPENING OF MOVEMENT AREA OCCURS, NO SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS REQUIRED BY CHANGED STATUS
ONE

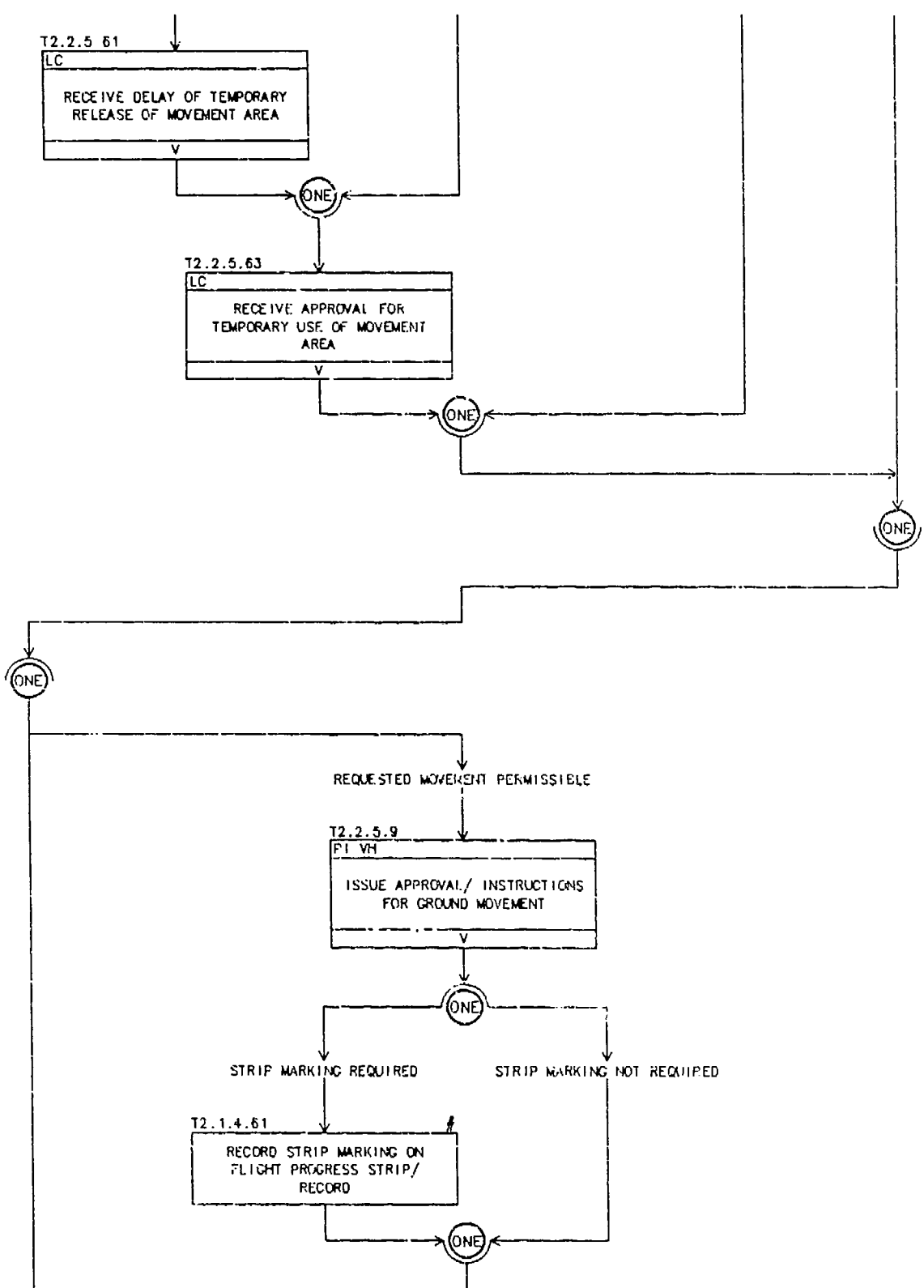
T2.2.5 RESPONDING TO GROUND MOVEMENT REQUESTS

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, ENTERING/ LEAVING INBOUND GROUND HOLD, ENTERING/ LEAVING OUTBOUND GROUND HOLD, MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE, MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION, INITIAL CONTACT

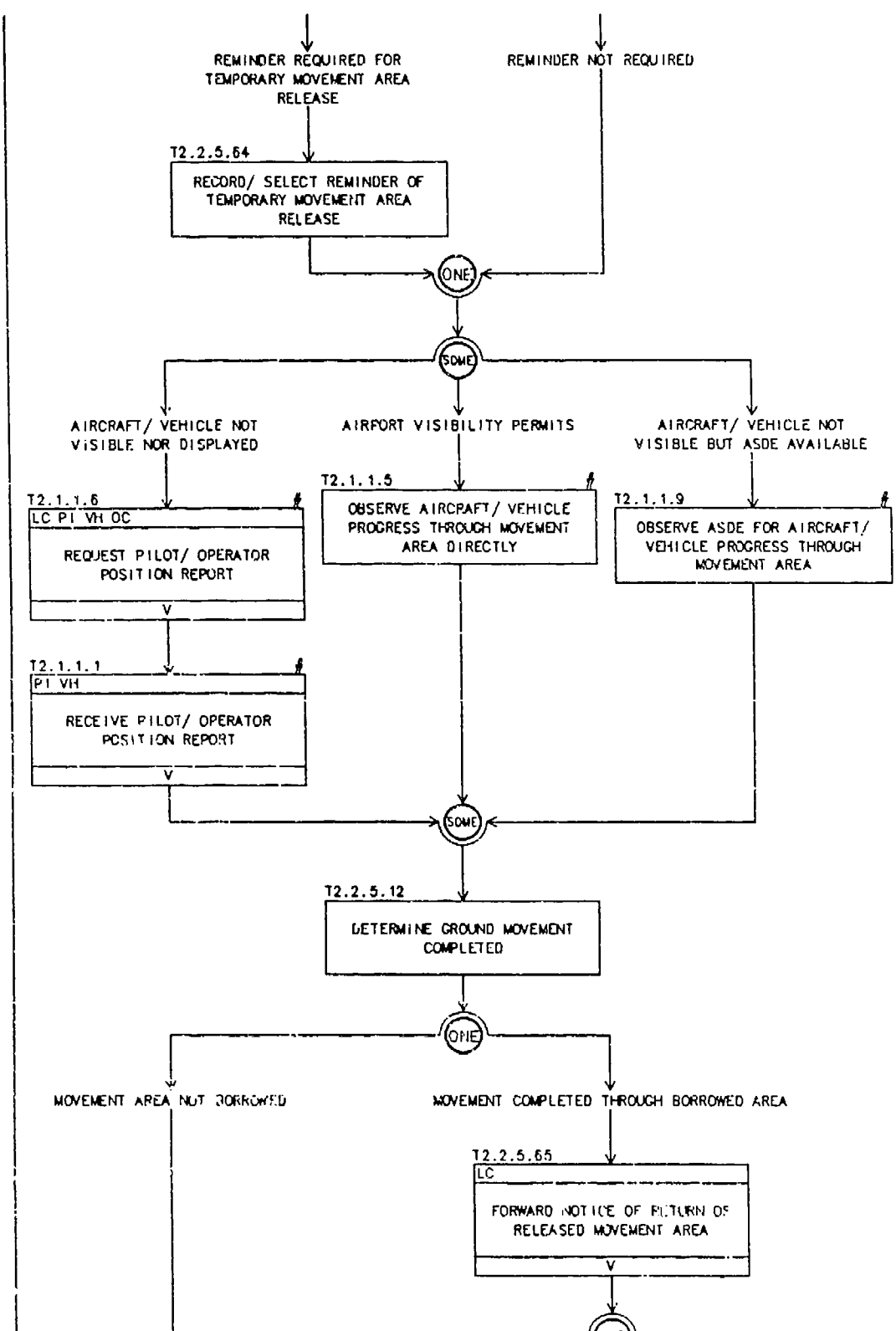


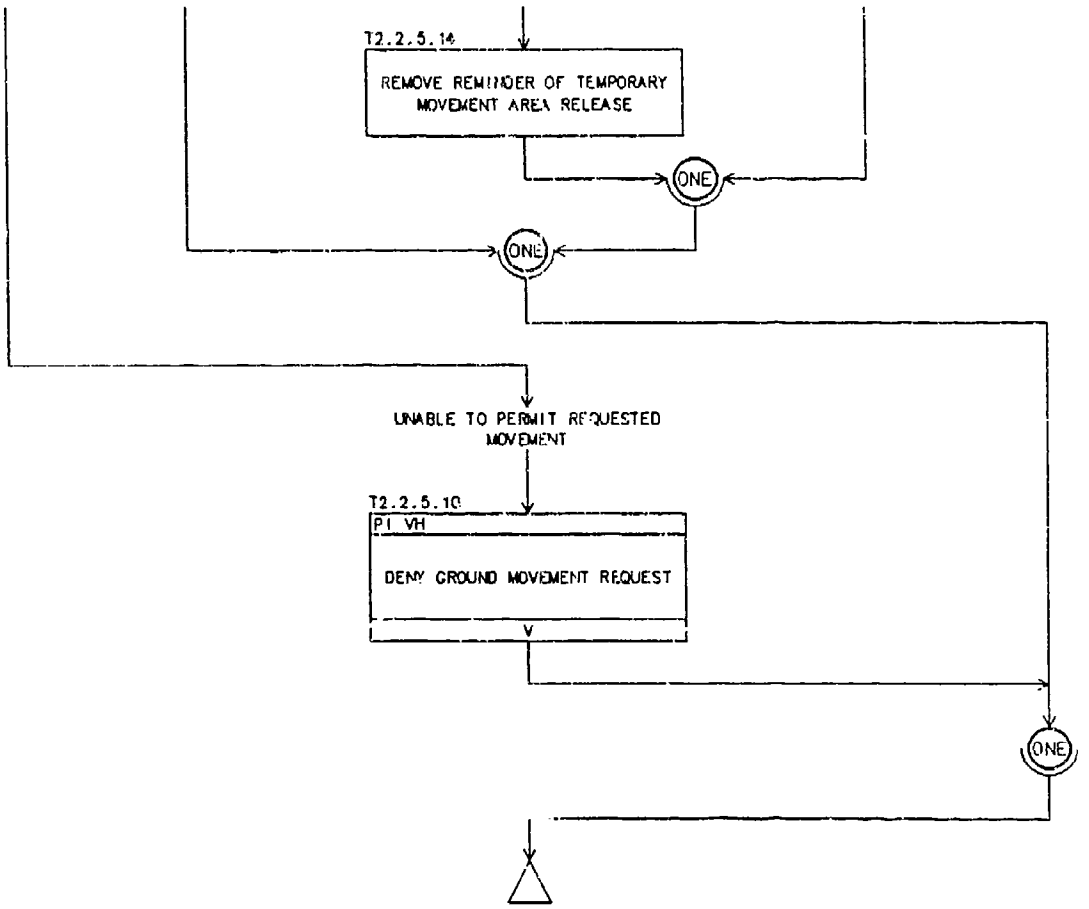
T2.2.5 RESPONDING TO GROUND MOVEMENT REQUESTS (cont.)




T2.2.5 61
LC
RECEIVE DELAY OF TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA
V
ONE
T2.2.5.63
LC
RECEIVE APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA
V
ONE
ONE
ONE
REQUESTED MOVEMENT PERMISSIBLE
T2.2.5.9
FI VH
ISSUE APPROVAL/ INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND MOVEMENT
V
ONE
STRIP MARKING REQUIRED
STRIP MARKING NOT REQUIRED
T2.1.4.61
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
ONE
ONE

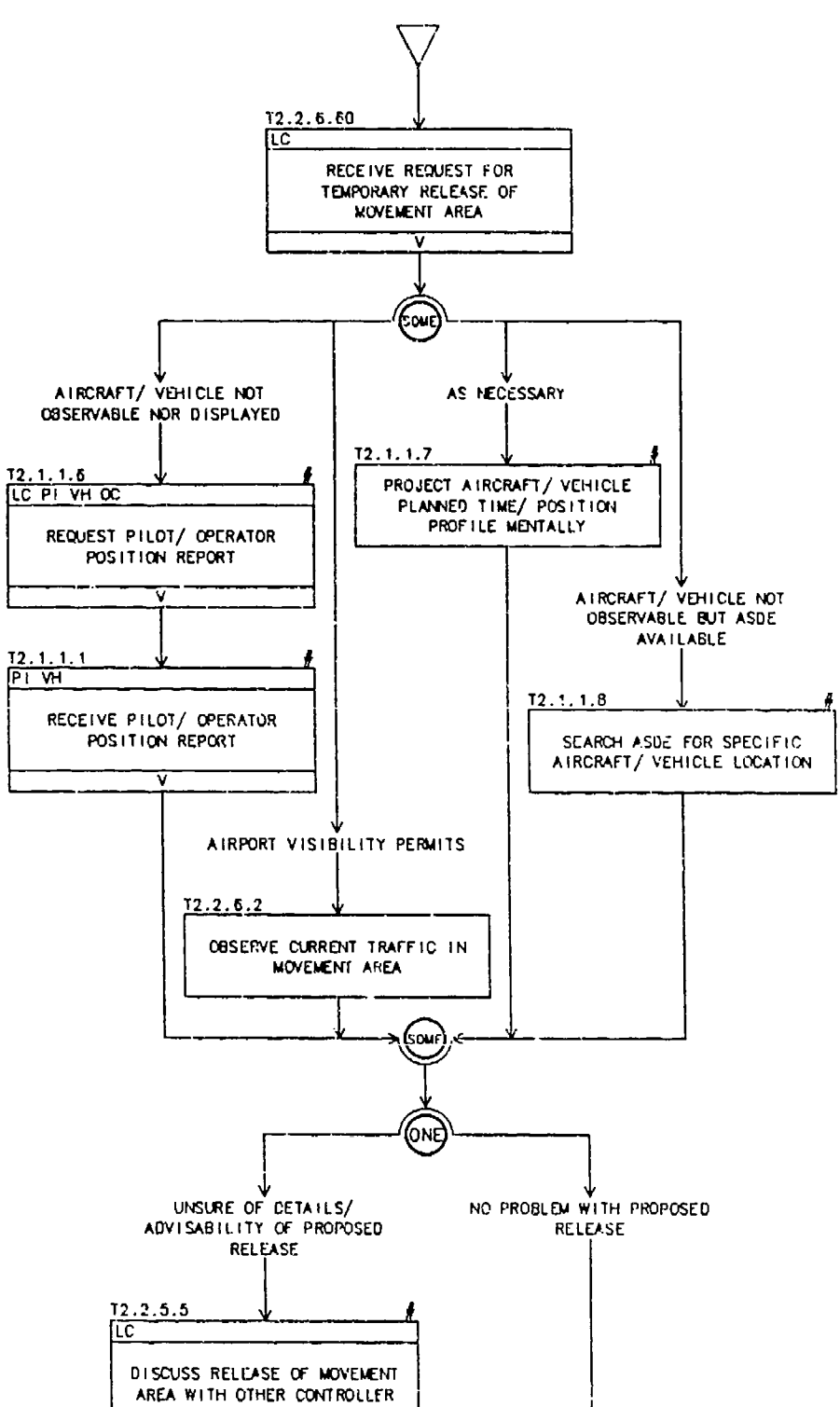
T2.2.5 RESPONDING TO GROUND MOVEMENT REQUESTS (cont.)

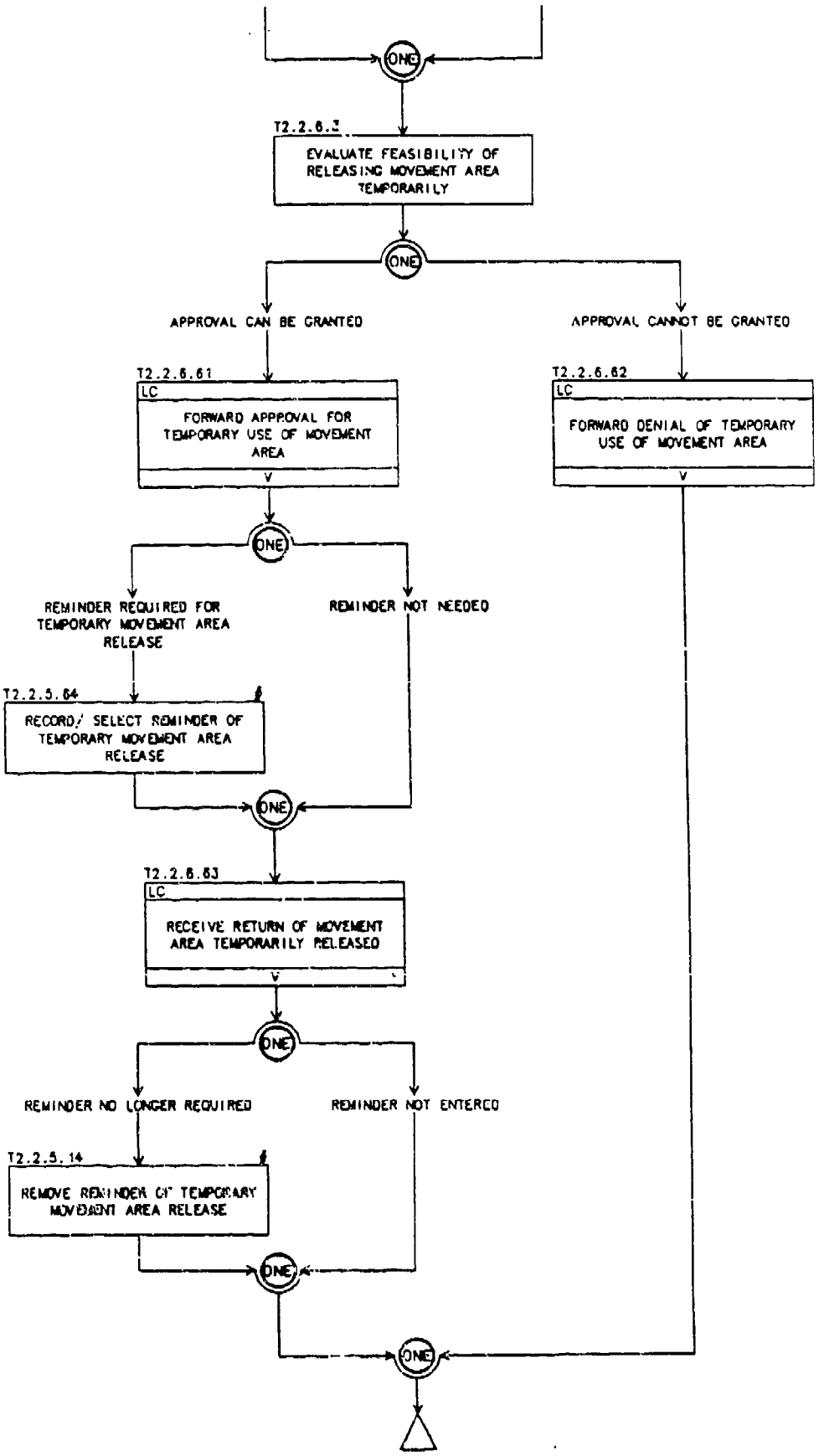



T2.2.5.14
REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
ONE
ONE
UNABLE TO PERMIT REQUESTED MOVEMENT
T2.2.5.10
P1 VH
DENY GROUND MOVEMENT REQUEST
ONE

T2.2.6 RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREAS

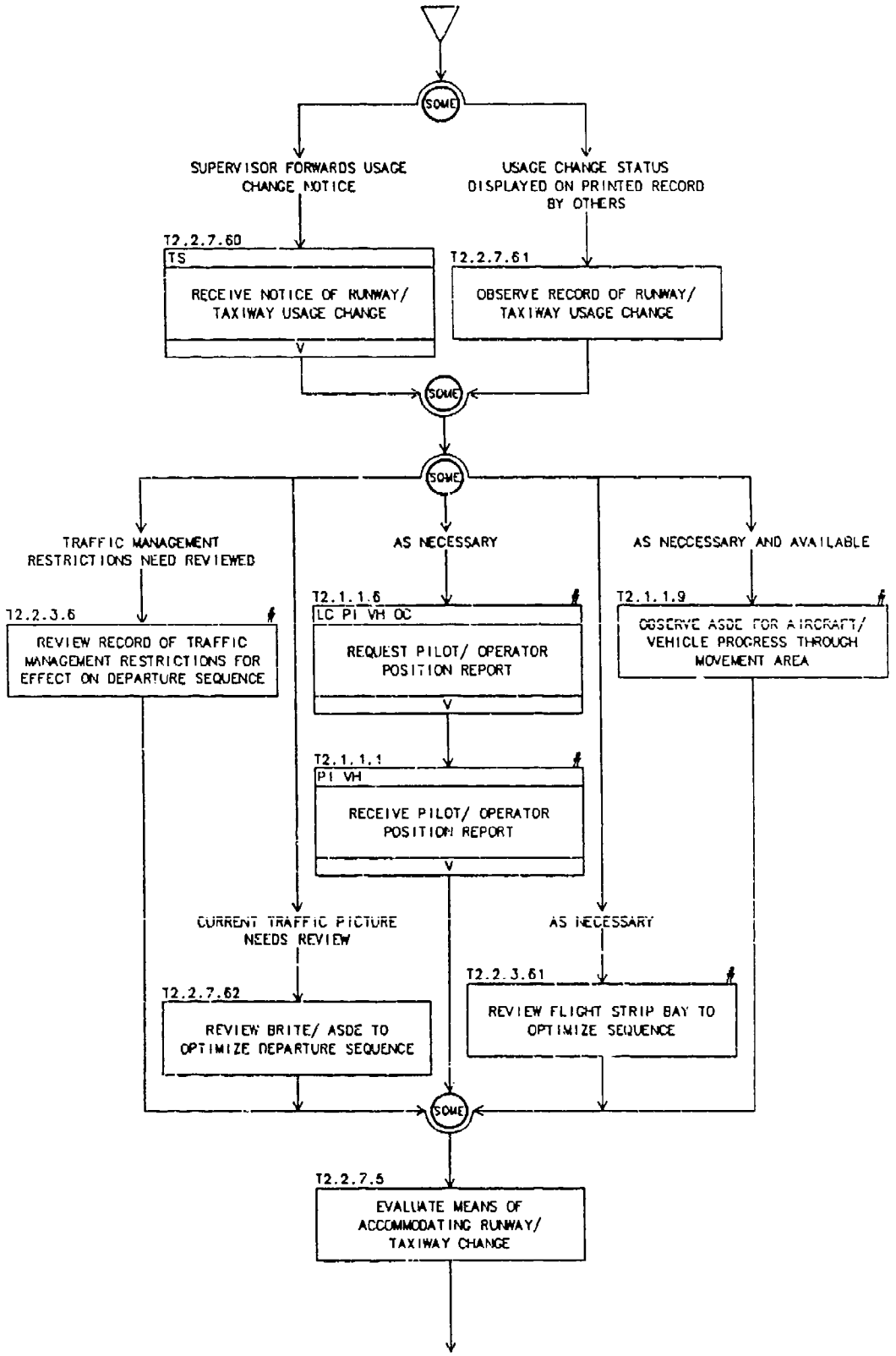
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CROSSING ACTIVE RUNWAY, MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE



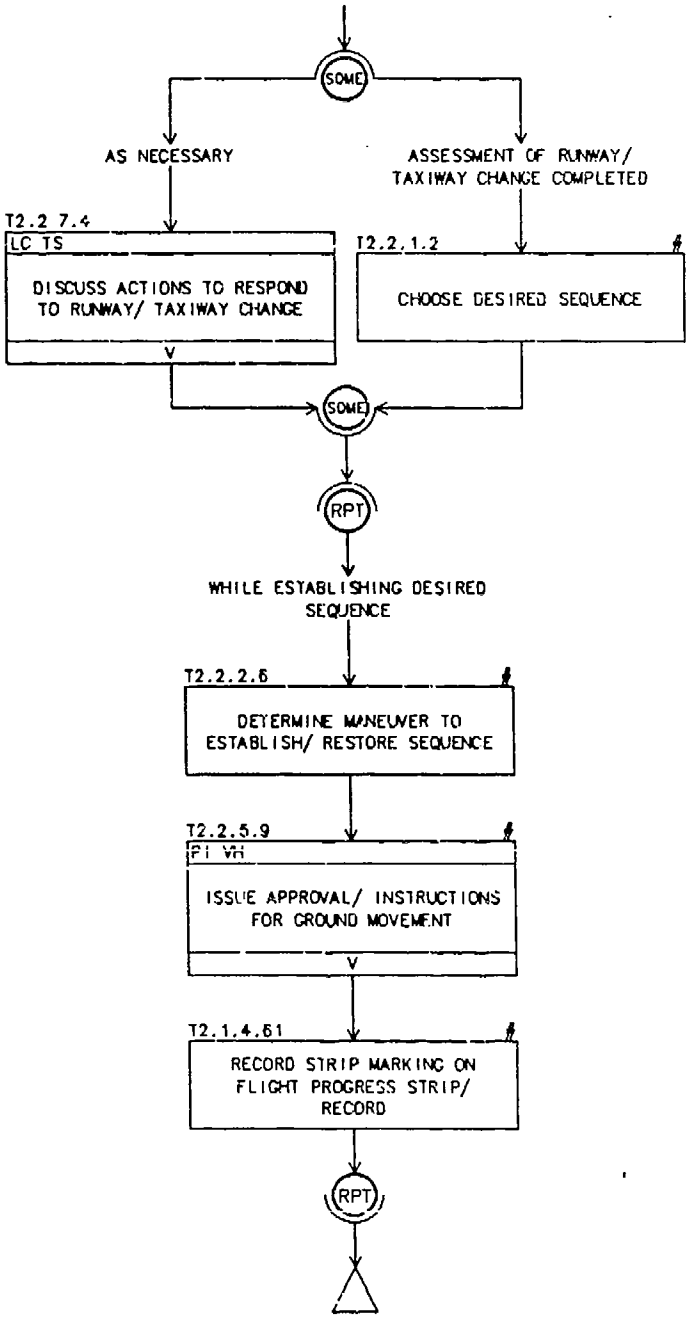

ONE
T2.2.6.3
EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY
ONE
APPROVAL CAN BE GRANTED
APPROVAL CANNOT BE GRANTED
T2.2.6.61
LC
FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA
T2.2.6.62
LC
FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA
ONE
REMINDER REQUIRED FOR TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
REMINDER NOT NEEDED
T2.2.5.64
RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
ONE
T2.2.6.63
LC
RECEIVE RETURN OF MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED
ONE
REMINDER NO LONGER REQUIRED
REMINDER NOT ENTERED
T2.2.5.14
REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE
ONE
ONE

T2.2.7 RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGES

EVENTS: RUNWAY CONFIGURATION CHANGE, MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION, MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE, RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY OPEN/ CLOSE

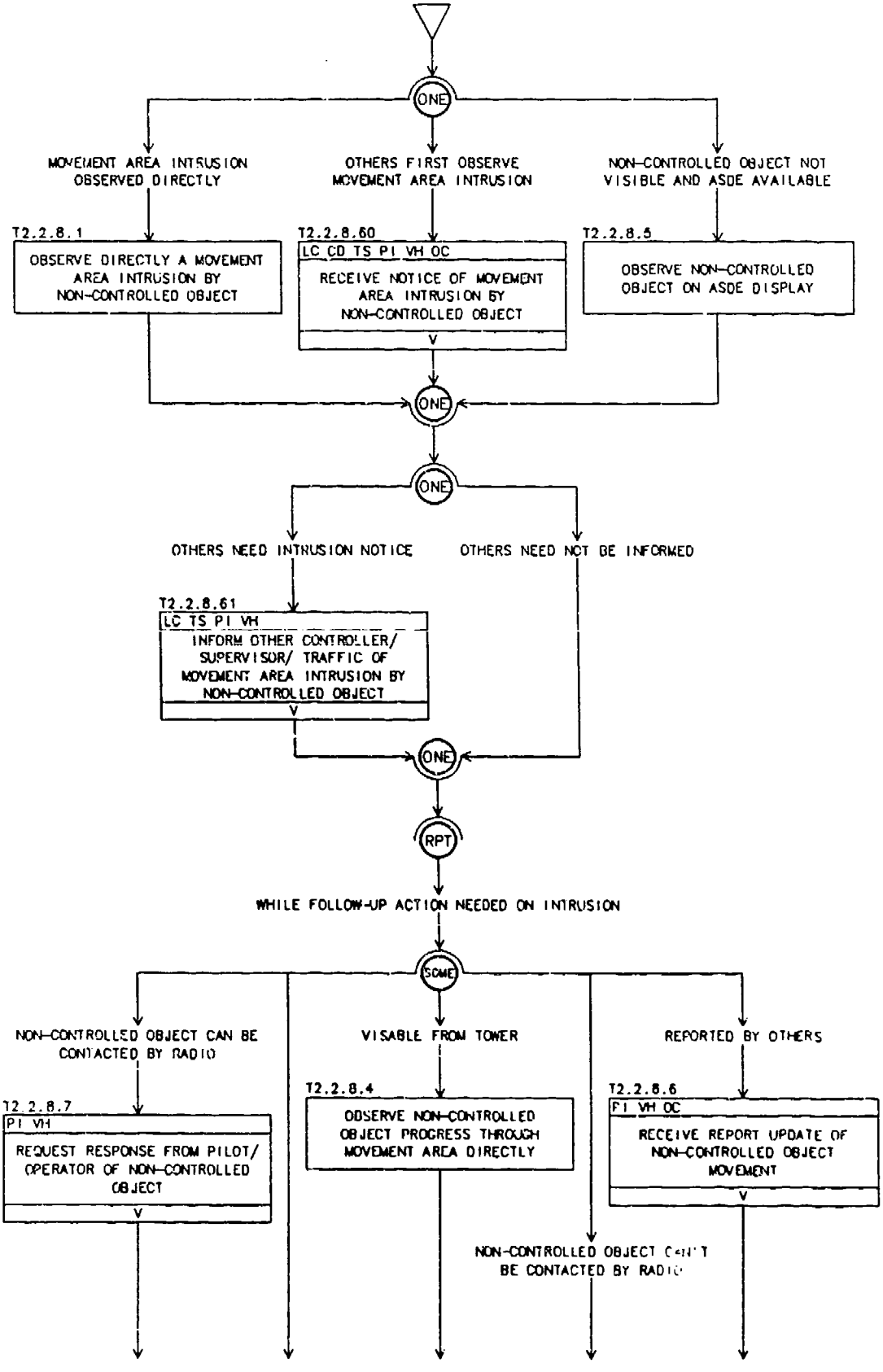


T2.2.7 RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGES (cont.)

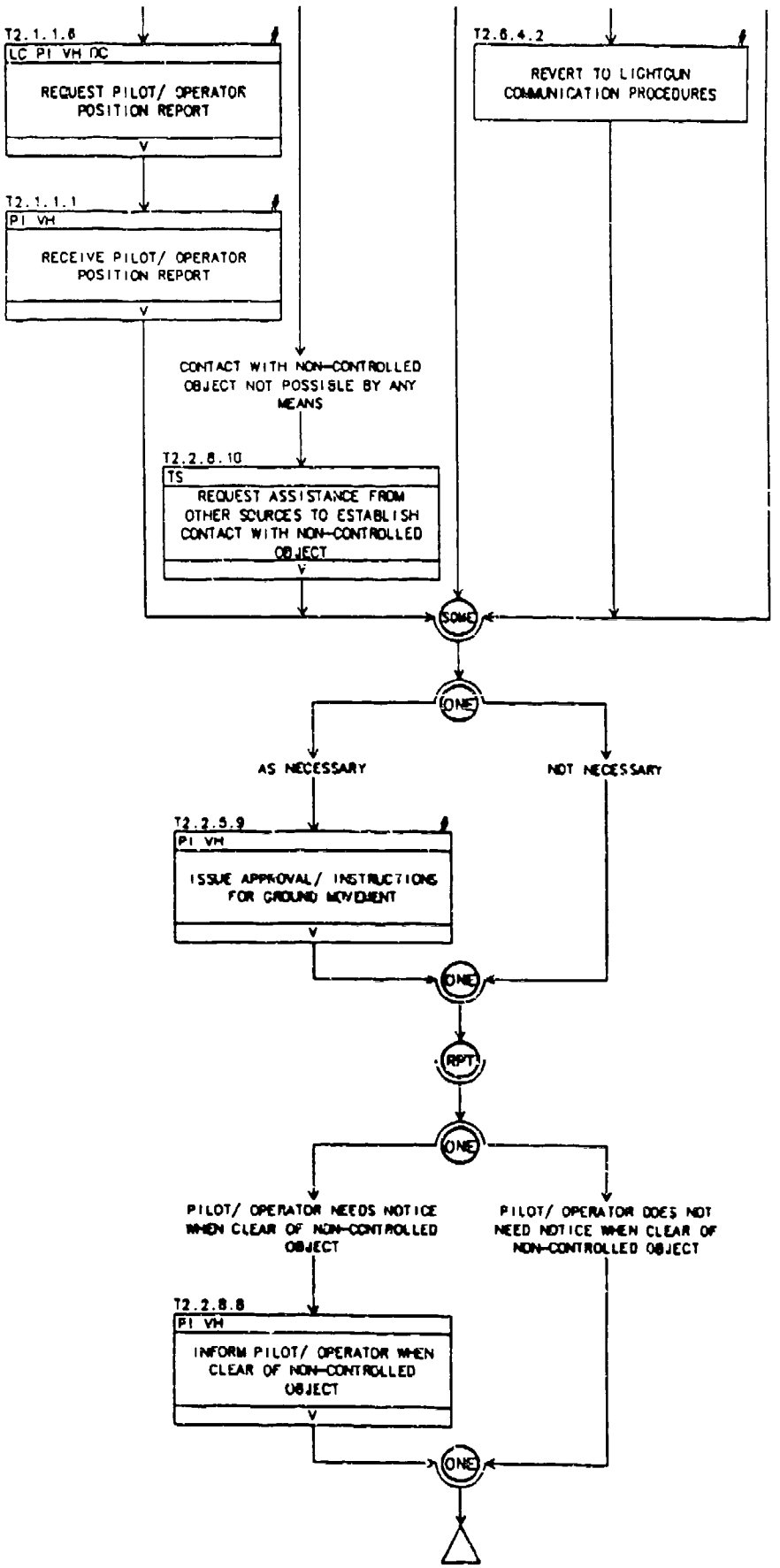


T2.2.8 MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS

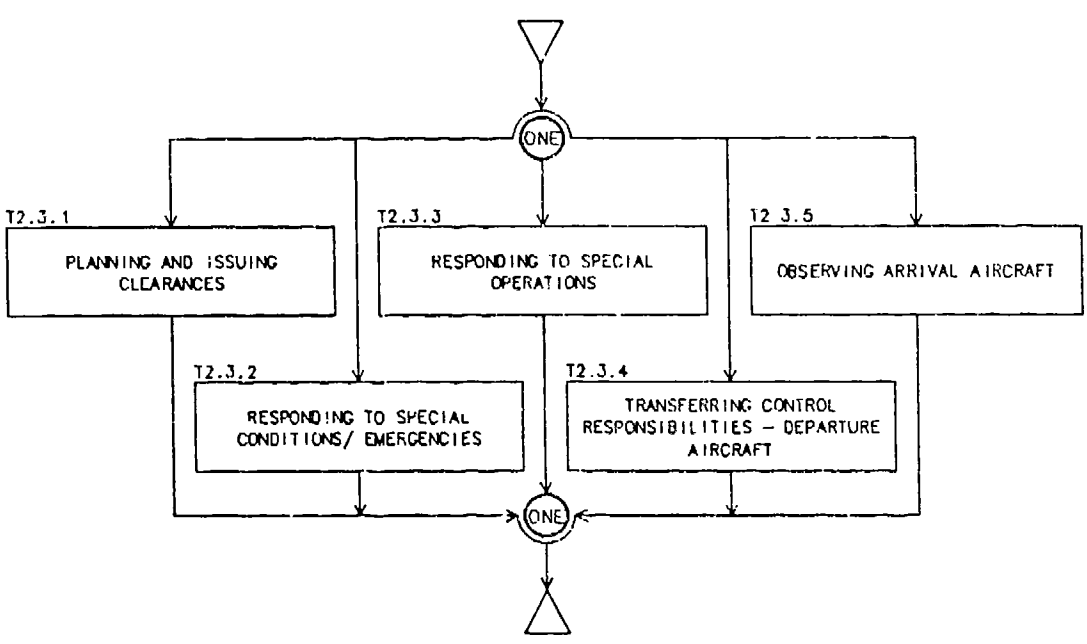
EVENTS: RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY INCURSION BY OBSTACLE/ VEHICLE/ AIRCRAFT



T2.2.8 MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS (cont.)

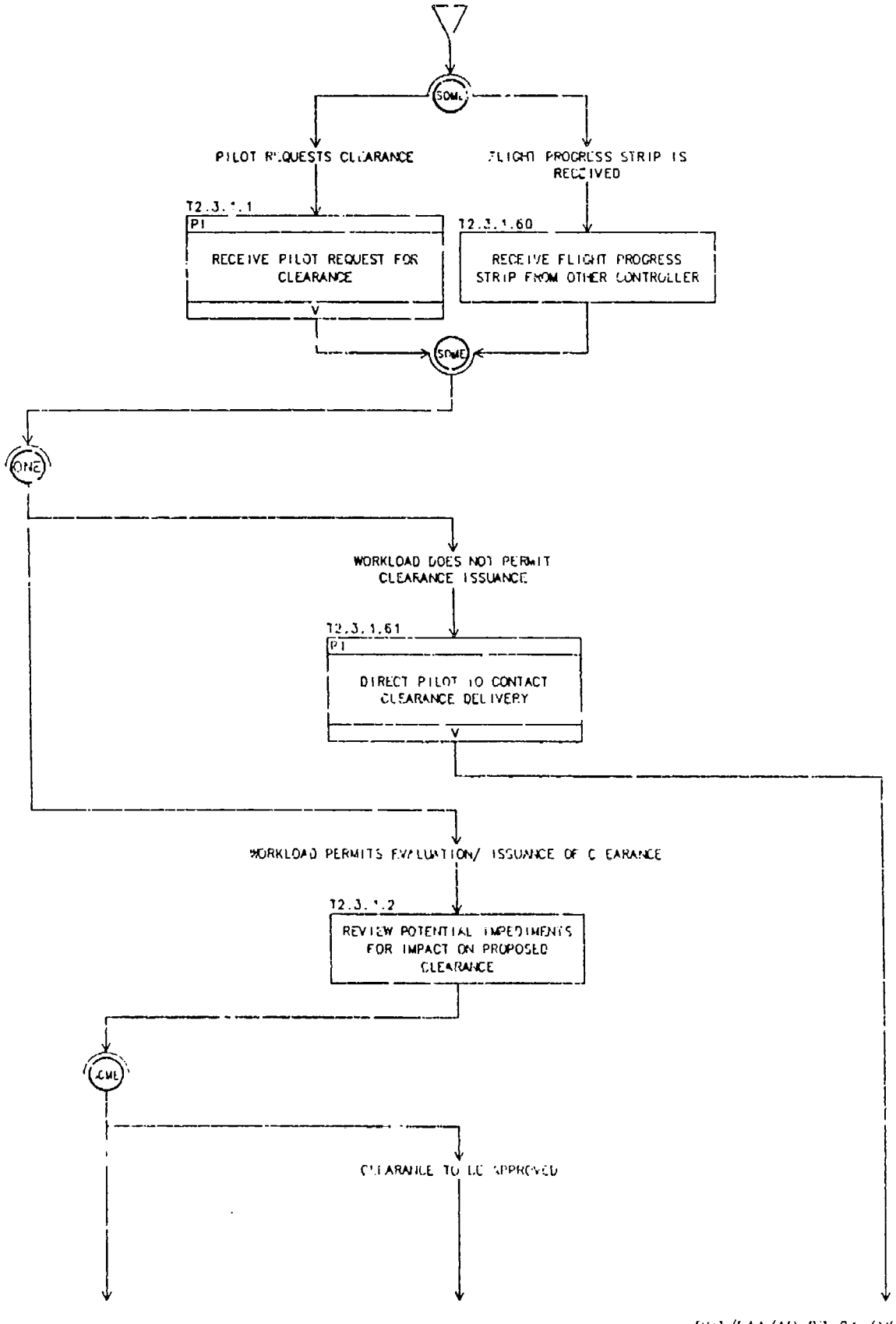


T2.3 ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS

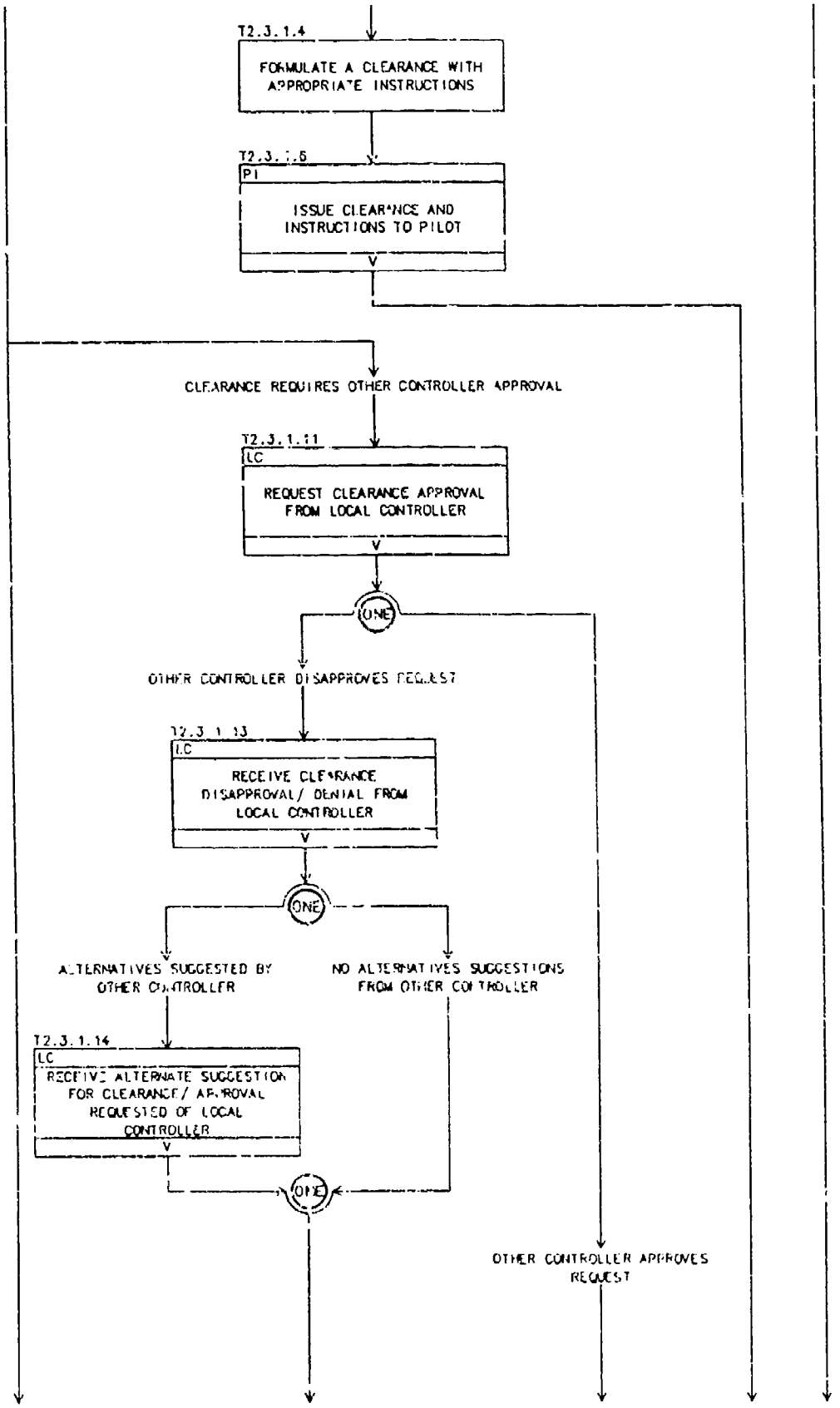


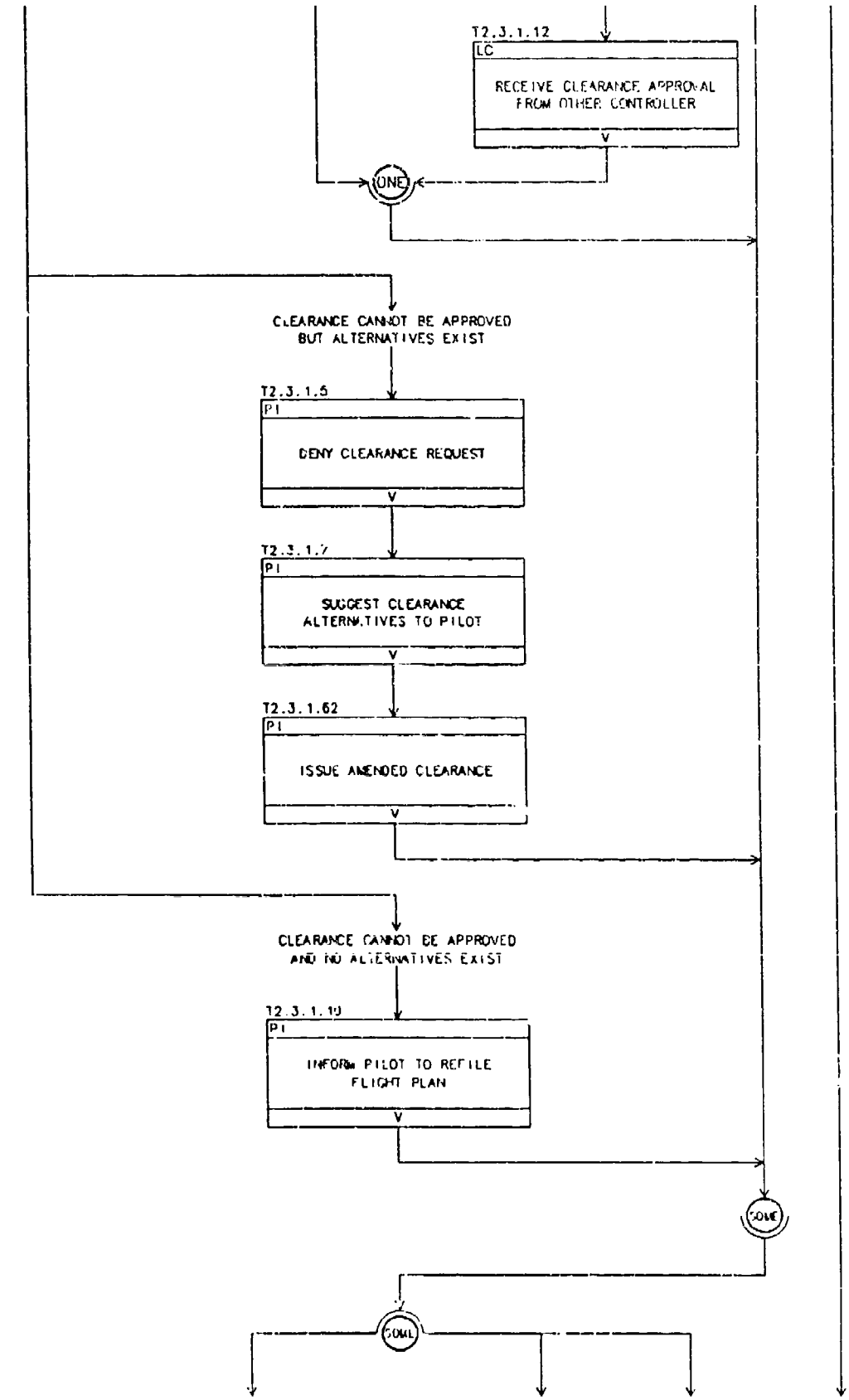
T2.3.1 PLANNING AND ISSUING CLEARANCES

EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST, CLEARANCE DELIVERY

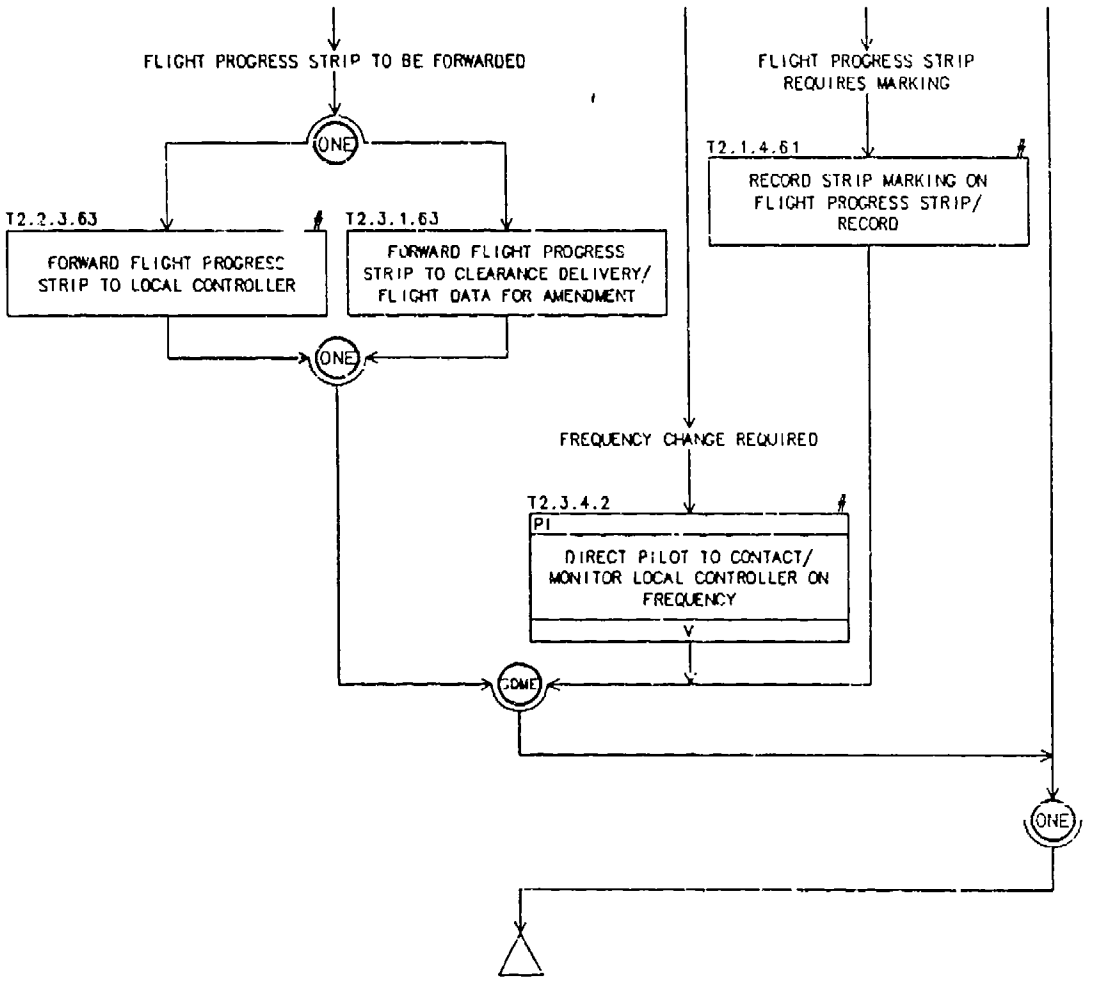


T2.3.1 PLANNING AND ISSUING CLEARANCES (cont)



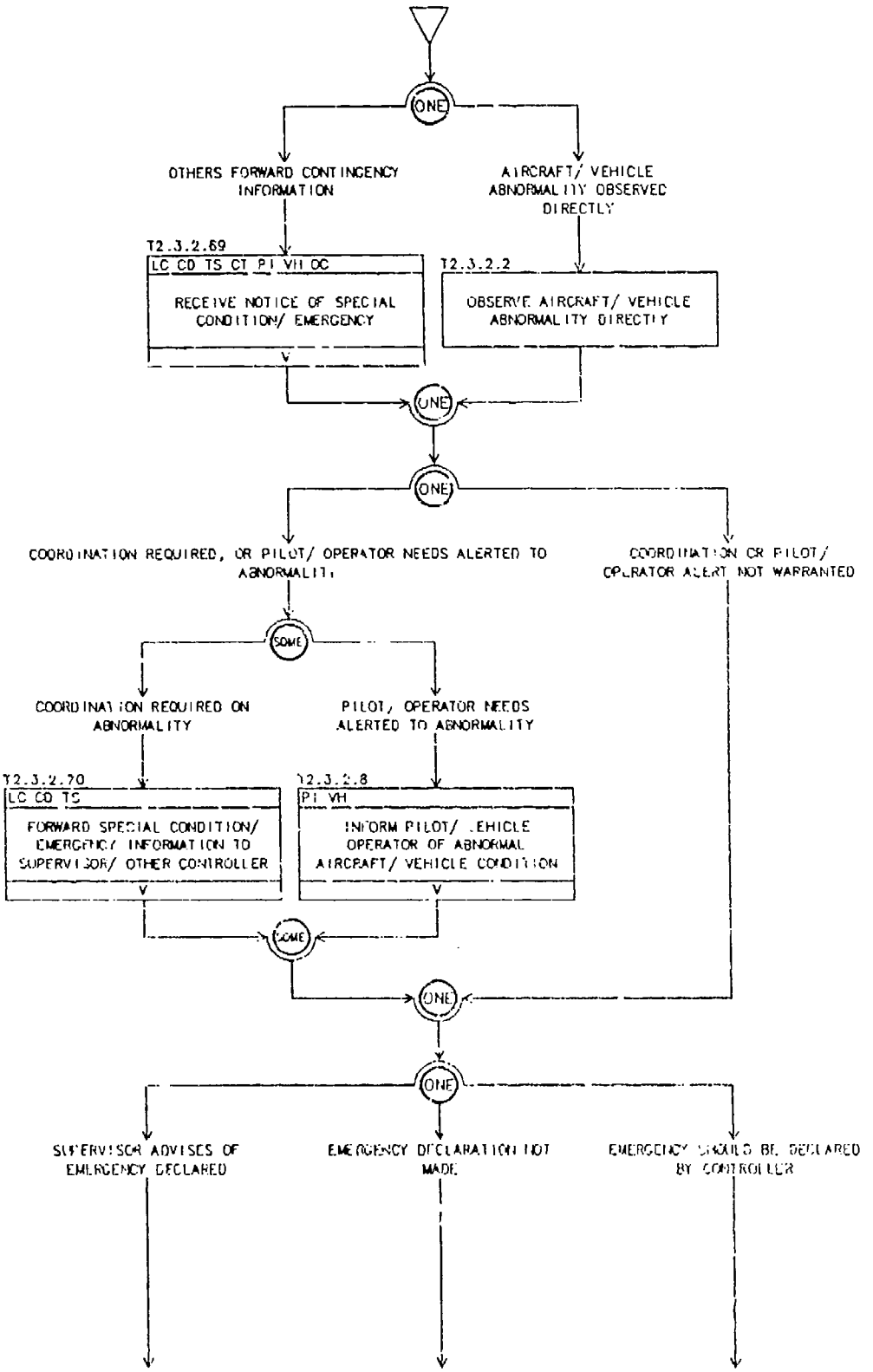

T2.3.1.12
LC
RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM OTHER CONTROLLER
V
ONE
CLEARANCE CANNOT BE APPROVED BUT ALTERNATIVES EXIST
T2.3.1.5
P1
DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST
V
T2.3.1.7
P1
SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT
V
T2.3.1.62
P1
ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE
V
CLEARANCE CANNOT BE APPROVED AND NO ALTERNATIVES EXIST
T2.3.1.10
P1
INFORM PILOT TO REFILE FLIGHT PLAN
V
ONE
COMM

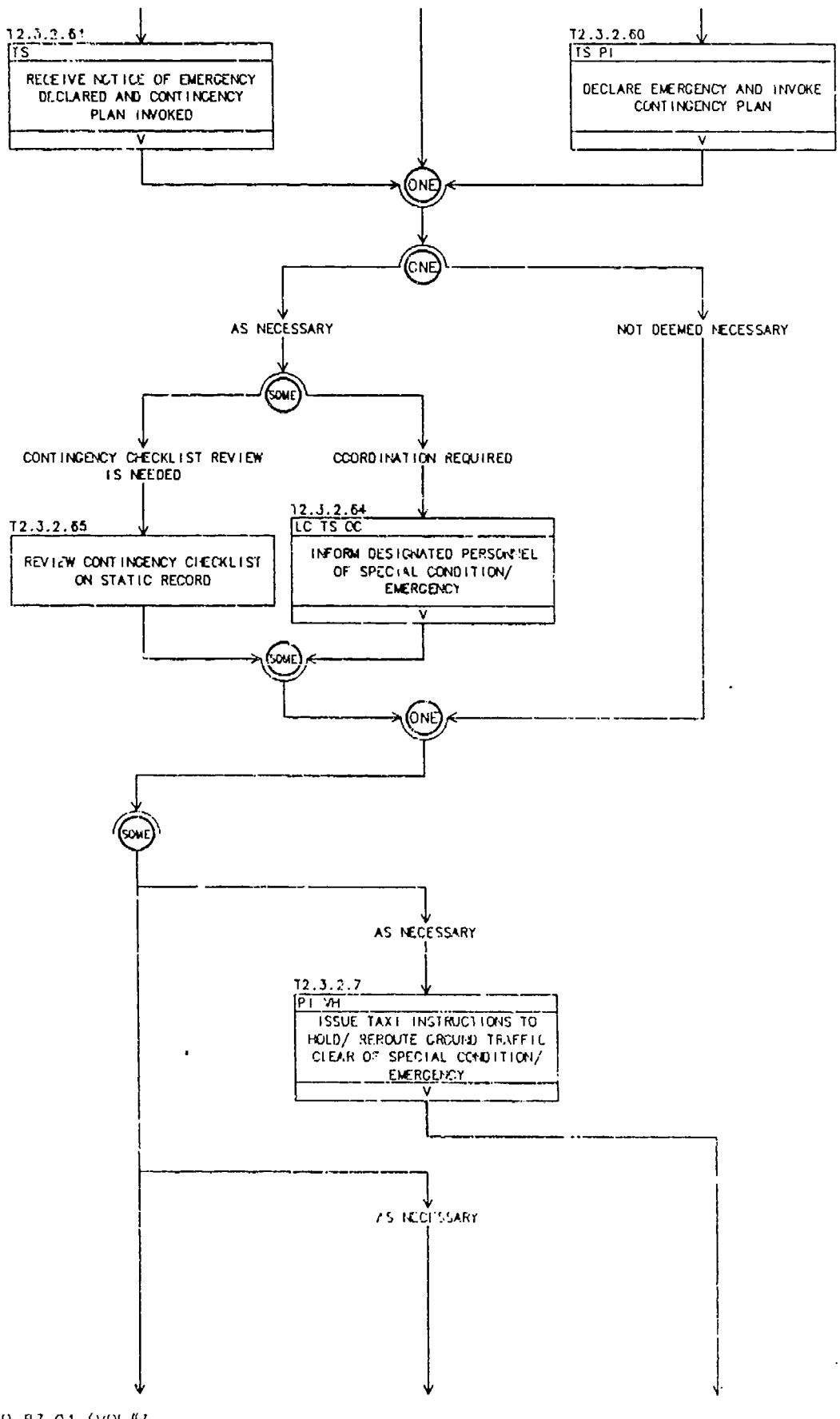
T2.3.1 PLANNING AND ISSUING CLEARANCES (cont.)

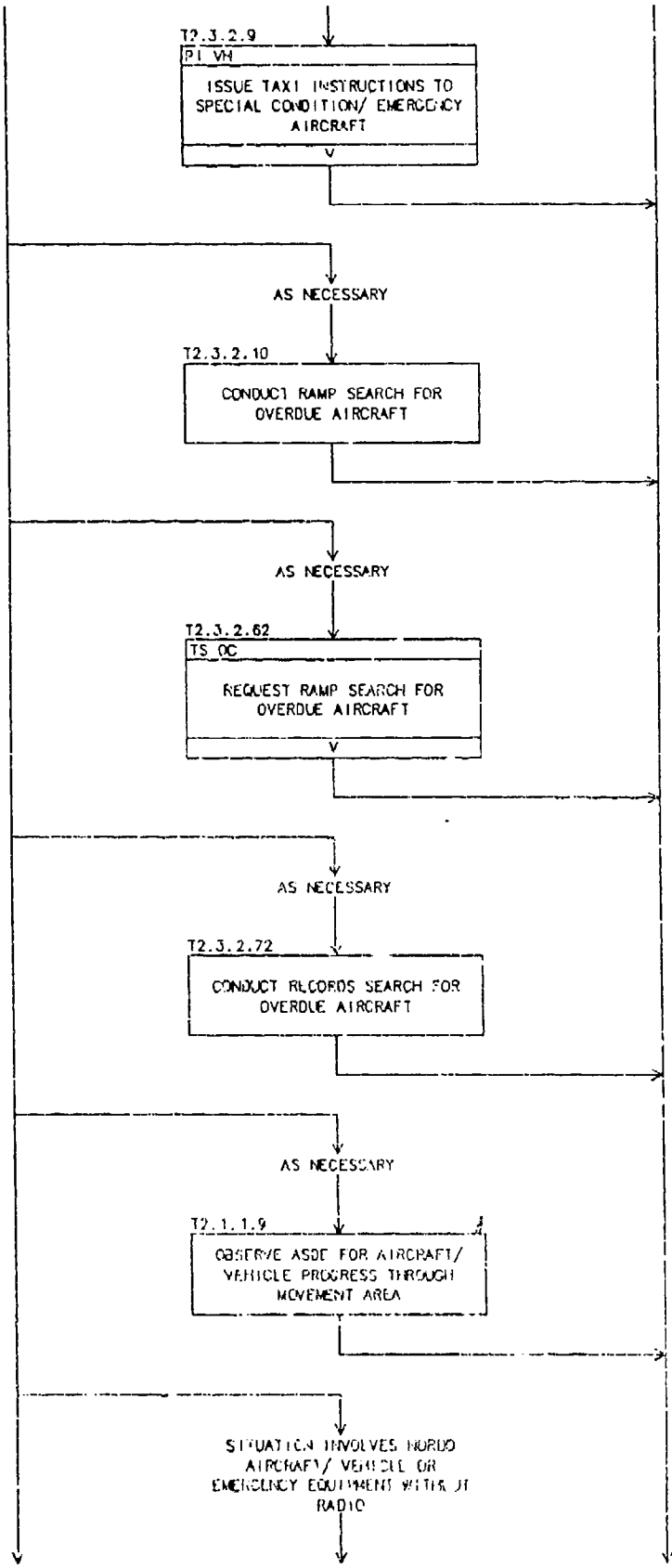


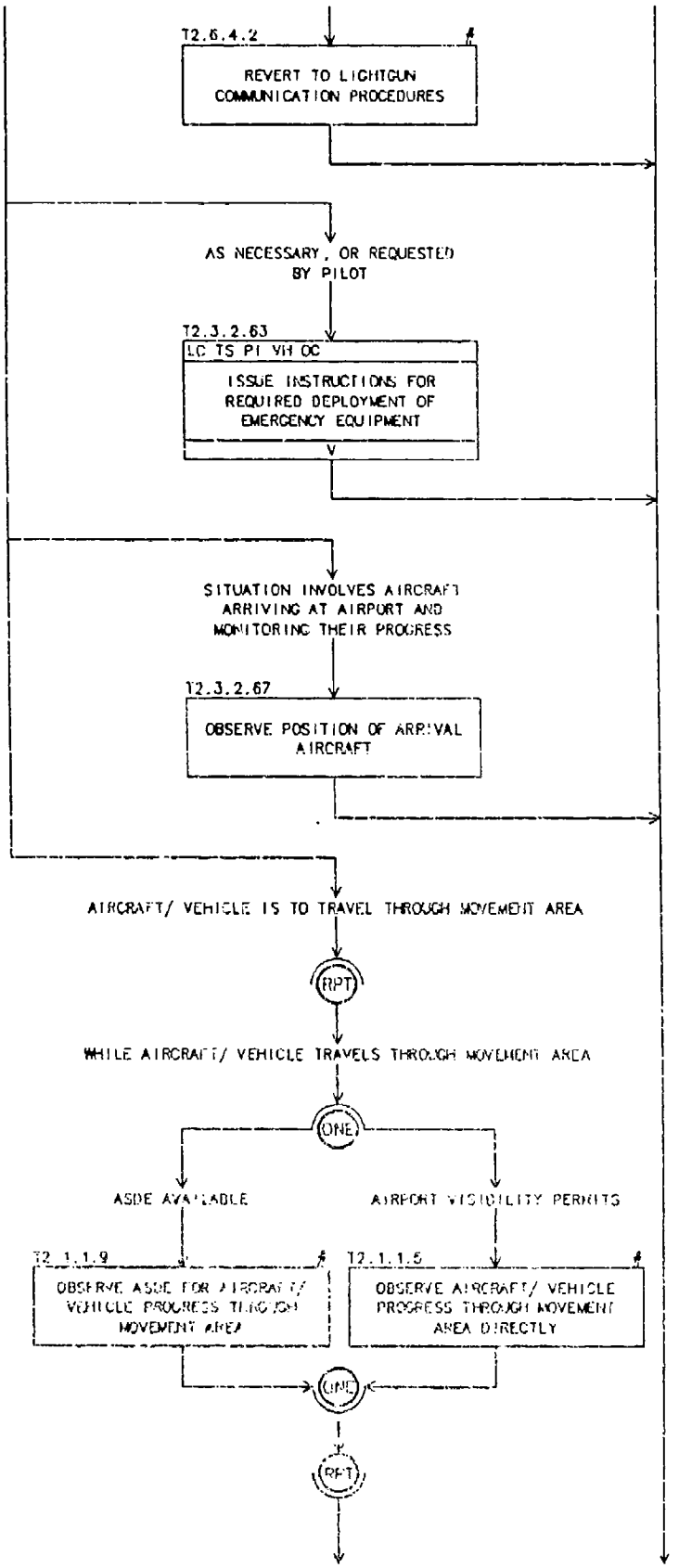
T2.3.2 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES

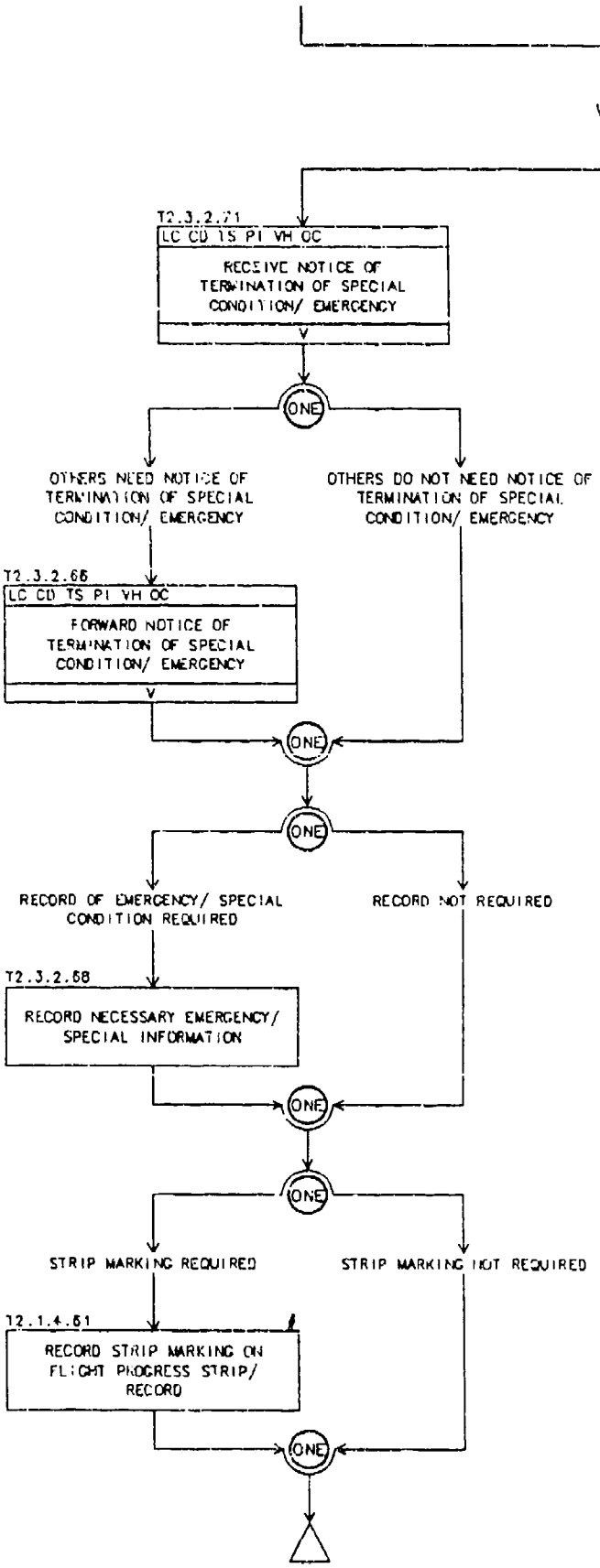
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT EMERGENCY/ INCIDENT - GROUND, OVERDUE AIRCRAFT, HIJACK, NO RADIO, AIRCRAFT ACCIDENT, BOMB THREAT, MEDICAL EMERGENCY




T2.3.2.61
TS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED
T2.3.2.60
TS PI
DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN
ONE
ONE
AS NECESSARY
NOT DEEMED NECESSARY
SOME
CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST REVIEW IS NEEDED
COORDINATION REQUIRED
T2.3.2.65
REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD
T2.3.2.64
LC TS CC
INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
SOME
ONE
SOME
AS NECESSARY
T2.3.2.7
PI VH
ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD/ REROUTE GROUND TRAFFIC CLEAR OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
AS NECESSARY

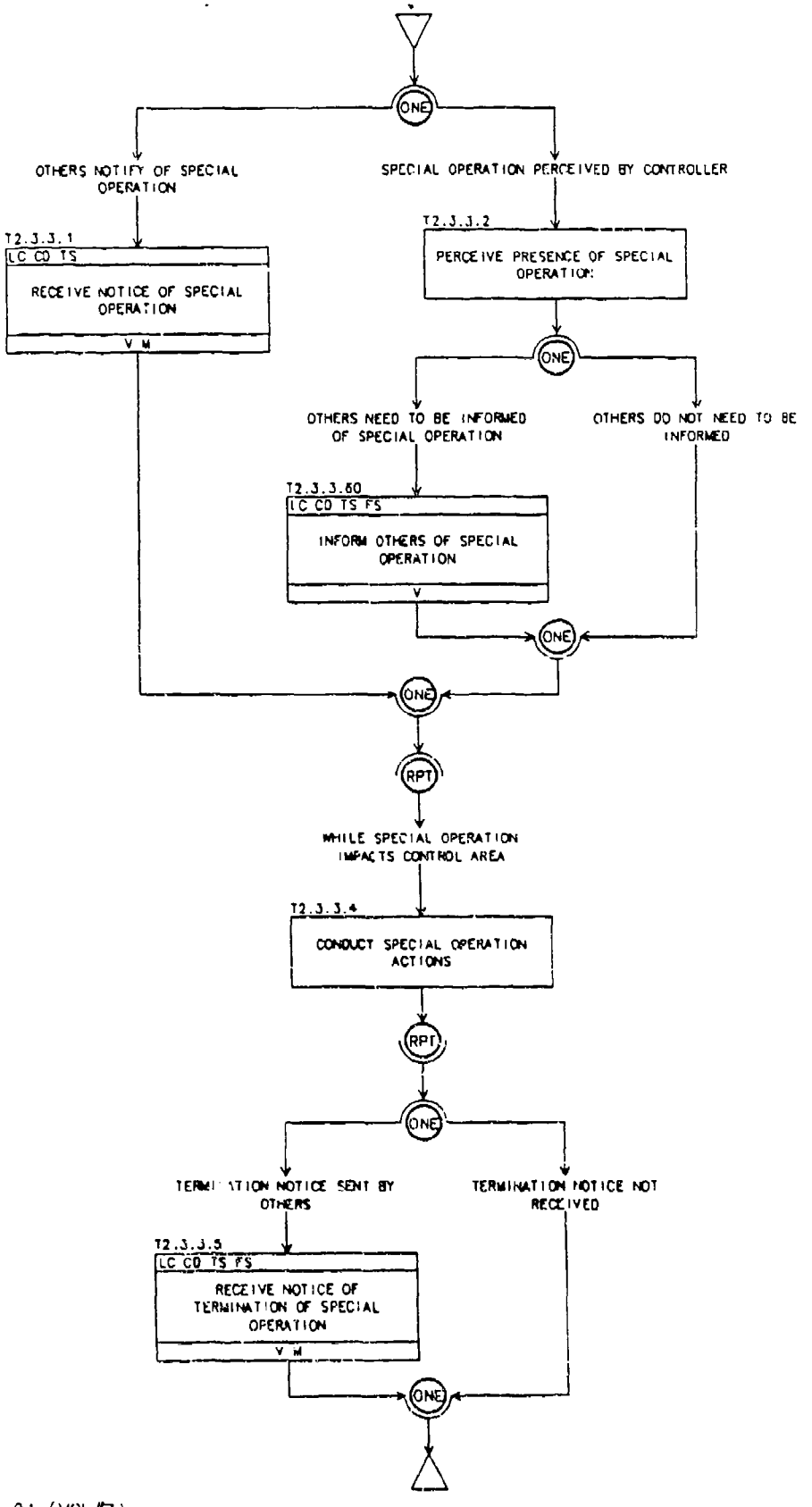

T2.3.2.9
P1 VH
ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AIRCRAFT
AS NECESSARY
T2.3.2.10
CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
AS NECESSARY
T2.3.2.62
TS OC
REQUEST RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
AS NECESSARY
T2.3.2.72
CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
AS NECESSARY
T2.1.1.9
OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
SITUATION INVOLVES NORDO AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE OR EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT WITHOUT RADIO


T2.6.4.2
#
REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES
AS NECESSARY, OR REQUESTED BY PILOT
T2.3.2.63
LC TS PT VH OC
ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REQUIRED DEPLOYMENT OF EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT
V
SITUATION INVOLVES AIRCRAFT ARRIVING AT AIRPORT AND MONITORING THEIR PROGRESS
T2.3.2.67
OBSERVE POSITION OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT
AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS TO TRAVEL THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
RPT
WHILE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE TRAVELS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
ONE
ASDE AVAILABLE
AIRPORT VISIBILITY PERMITS
T2.1.1.9
#
OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA
T2.1.1.5
#
OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY
ONE
RPT


SOME
T2.3.2.71
LC CD TS PI VH OC
RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
T2.3.2.66
LC CD TS PI VH OC
FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
ONE
ONE
RECORD OF EMERGENCY/ SPECIAL CONDITION REQUIRED
RECORD NOT REQUIRED
T2.3.2.68
RECORD NECESSARY EMERGENCY/ SPECIAL INFORMATION
ONE
ONE
STRIP MARKING REQUIRED
STRIP MARKING NOT REQUIRED
T2.1.4.61
RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD
ONE

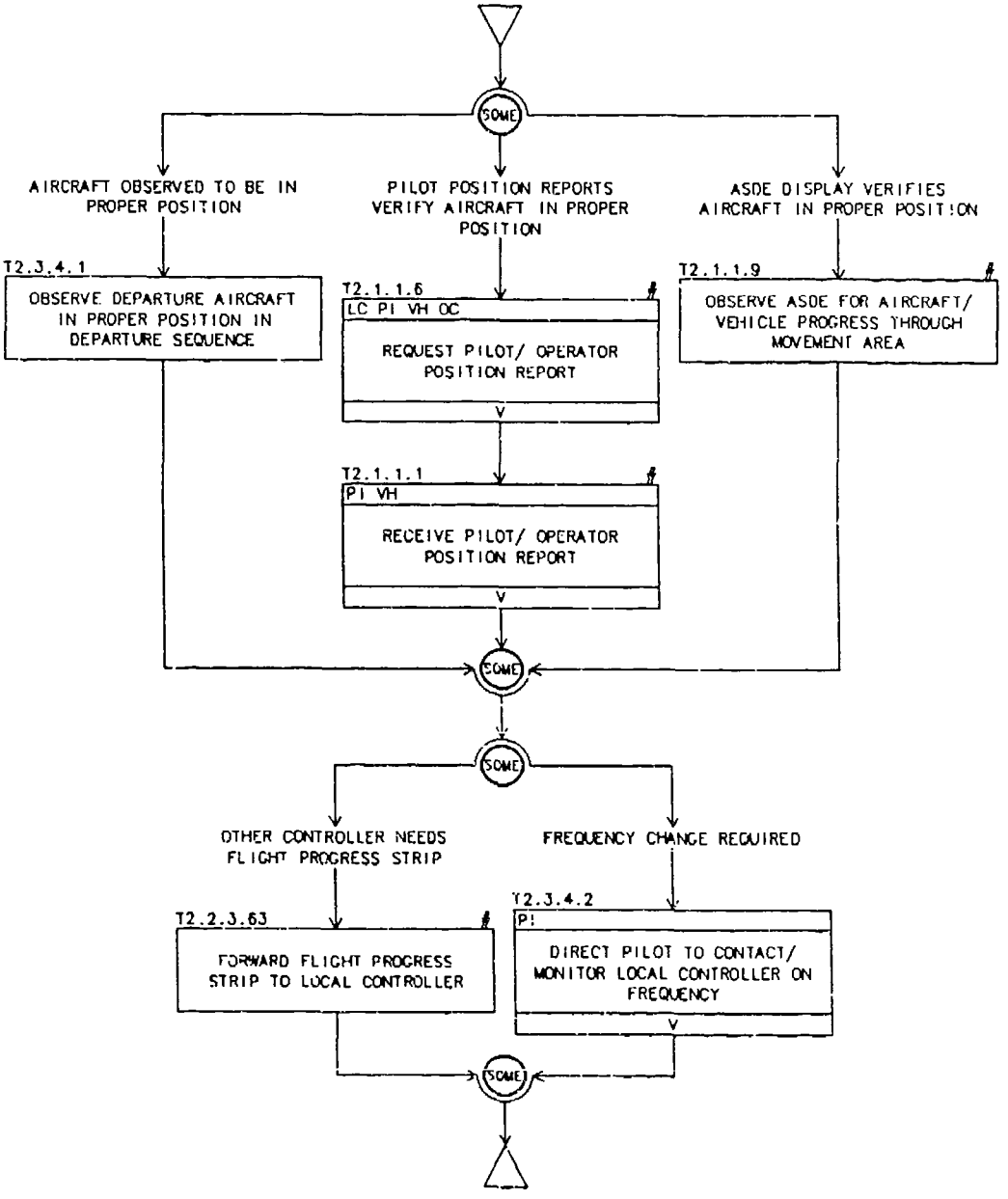
T2.3.3 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS

EVENTS: LIFEGUARD MISSION, MILITARY OPERATION, EXPERIMENTAL FLIGHT, GENERAL INTEREST FLIGHT, HAZARDOUS CARGO, HELICOPTER OPERATION, LAW ENFORCEMENT



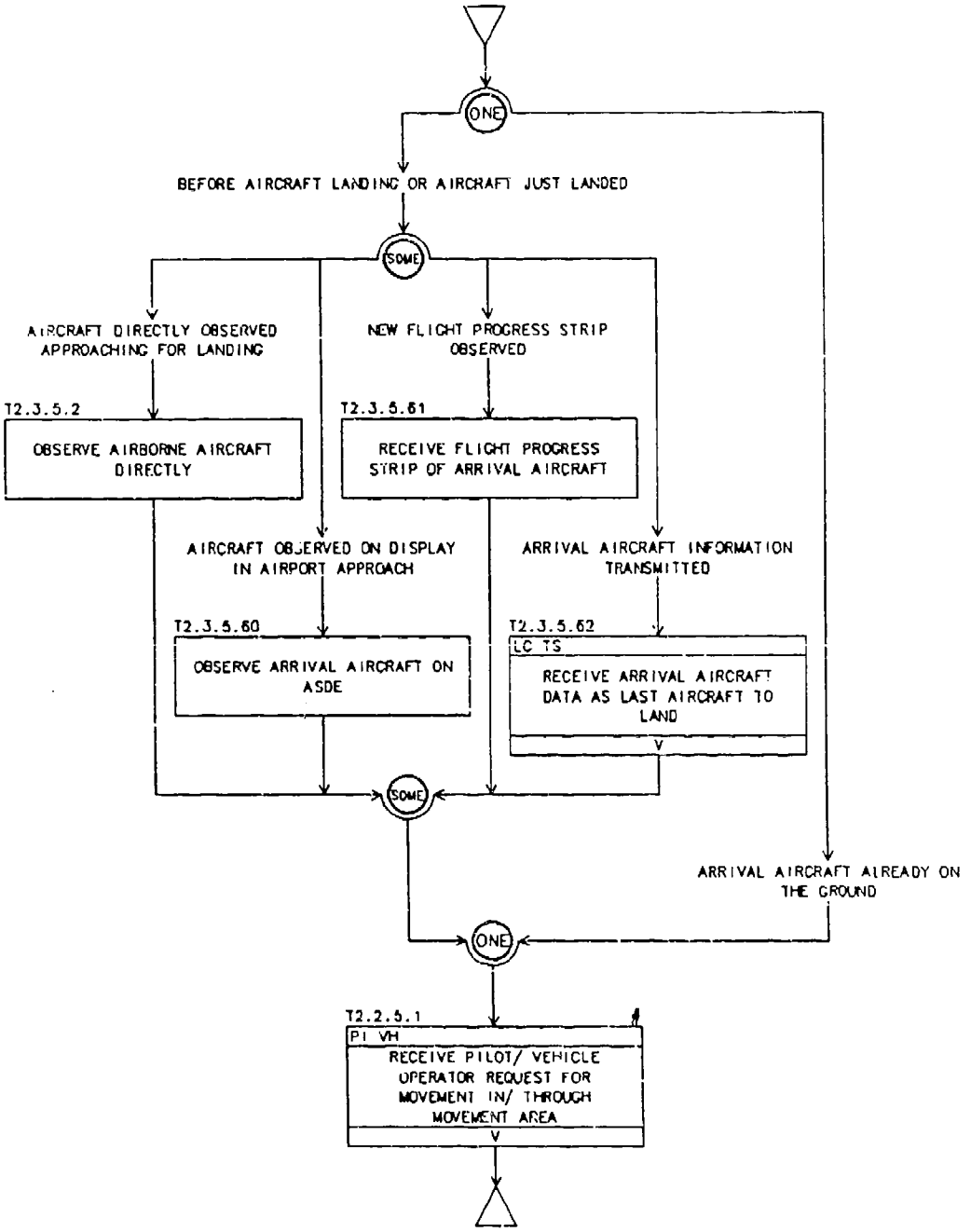
T2.3.4 TRANSFERRING CONTROL RESPONSIBILITIES – DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT LEAVING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY



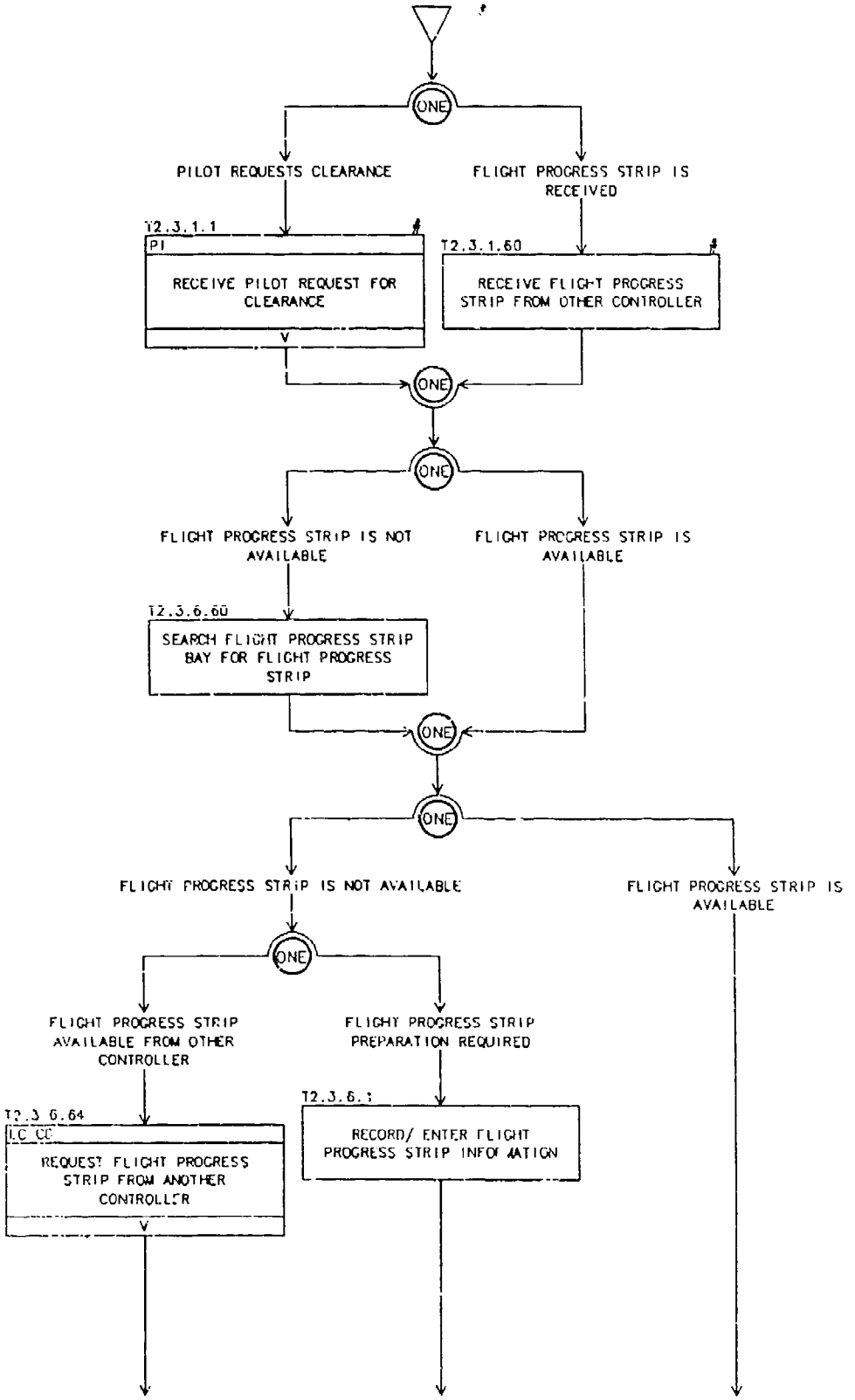
T2.3.5 OBSERVING ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT

EVENTS: INITIAL CONTACT, AIRCRAFT ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY, AIRCRAFT ENTERS ATA

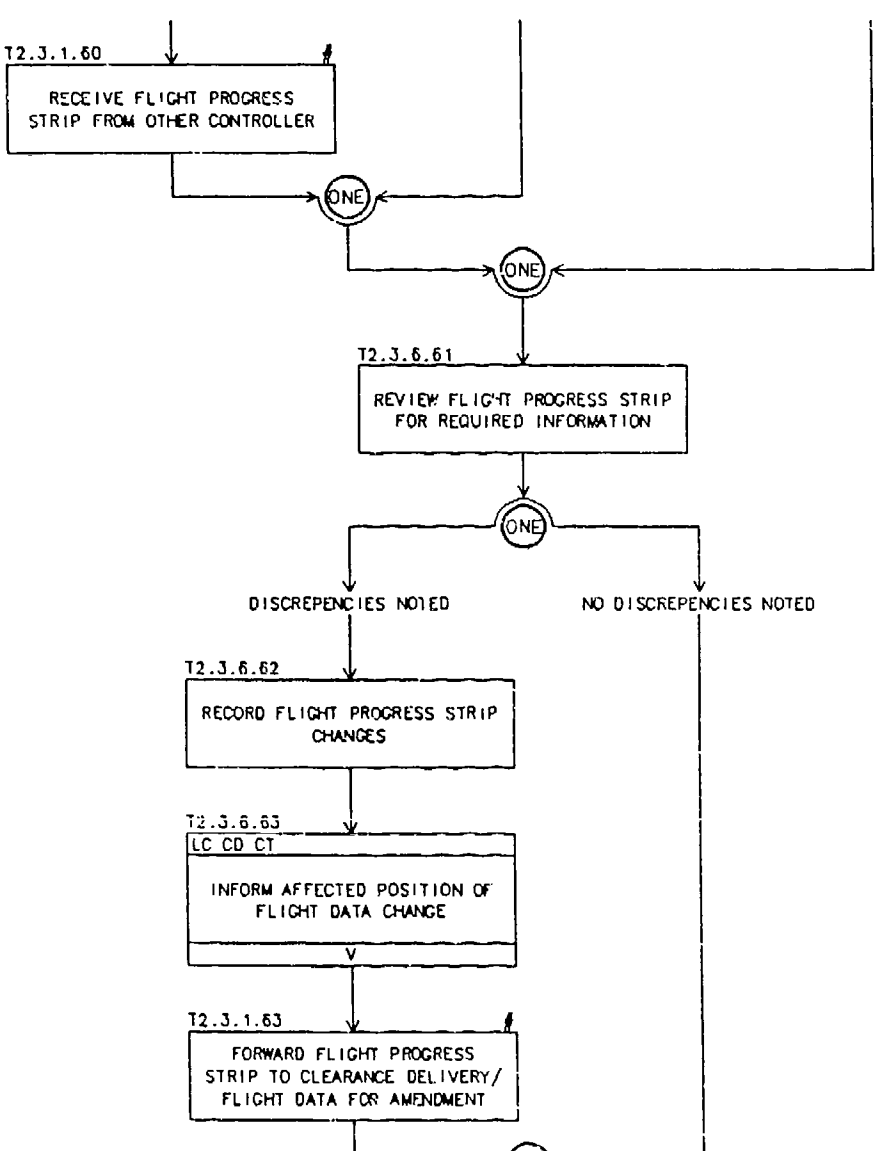


T2.3.6 PROCESSING FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS

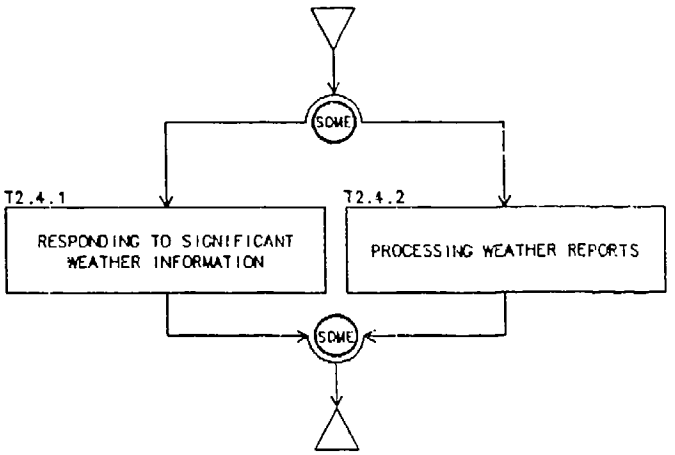
EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST, AIRCRAFT ENTERING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY



T2.3.6 PROCESSING FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS (cont.)

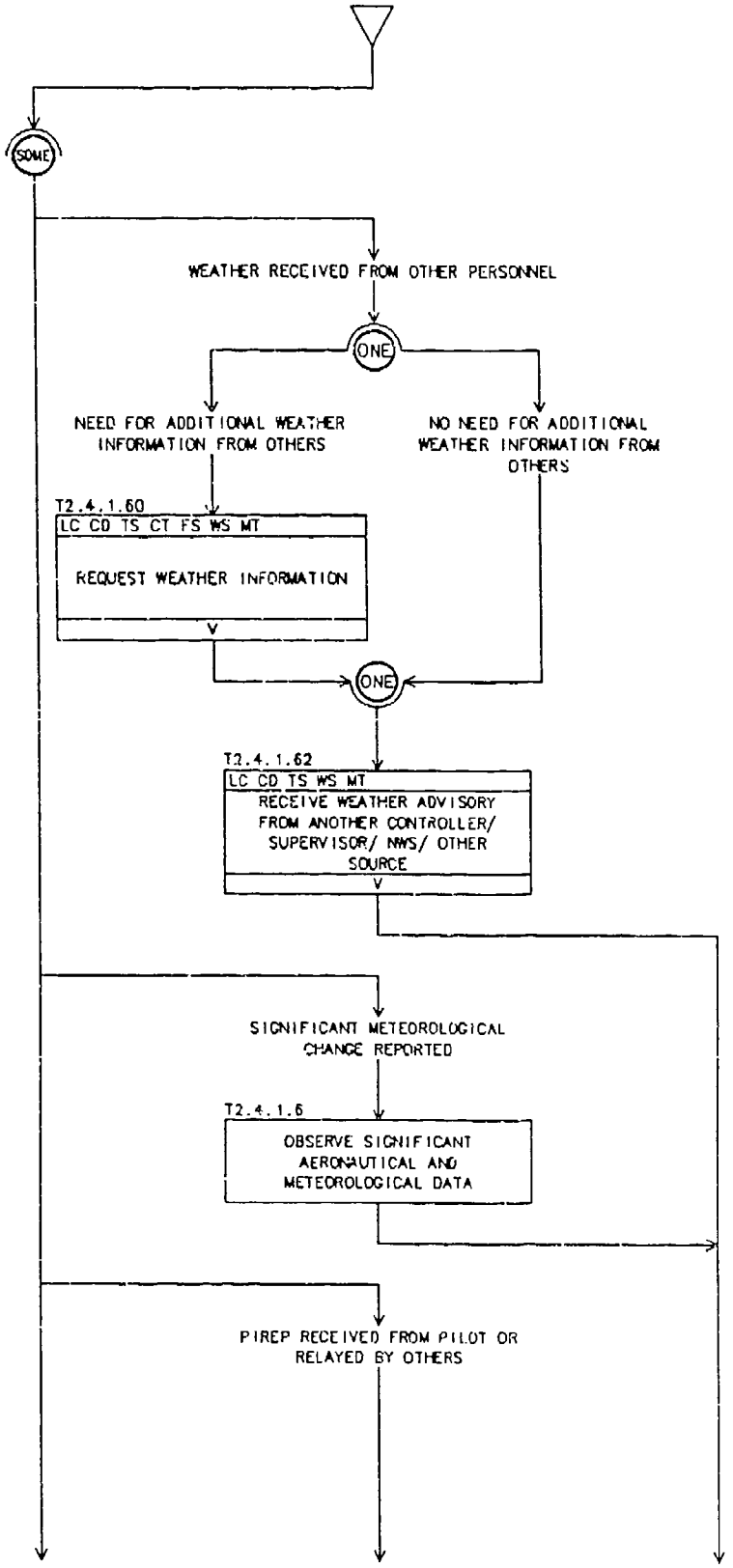


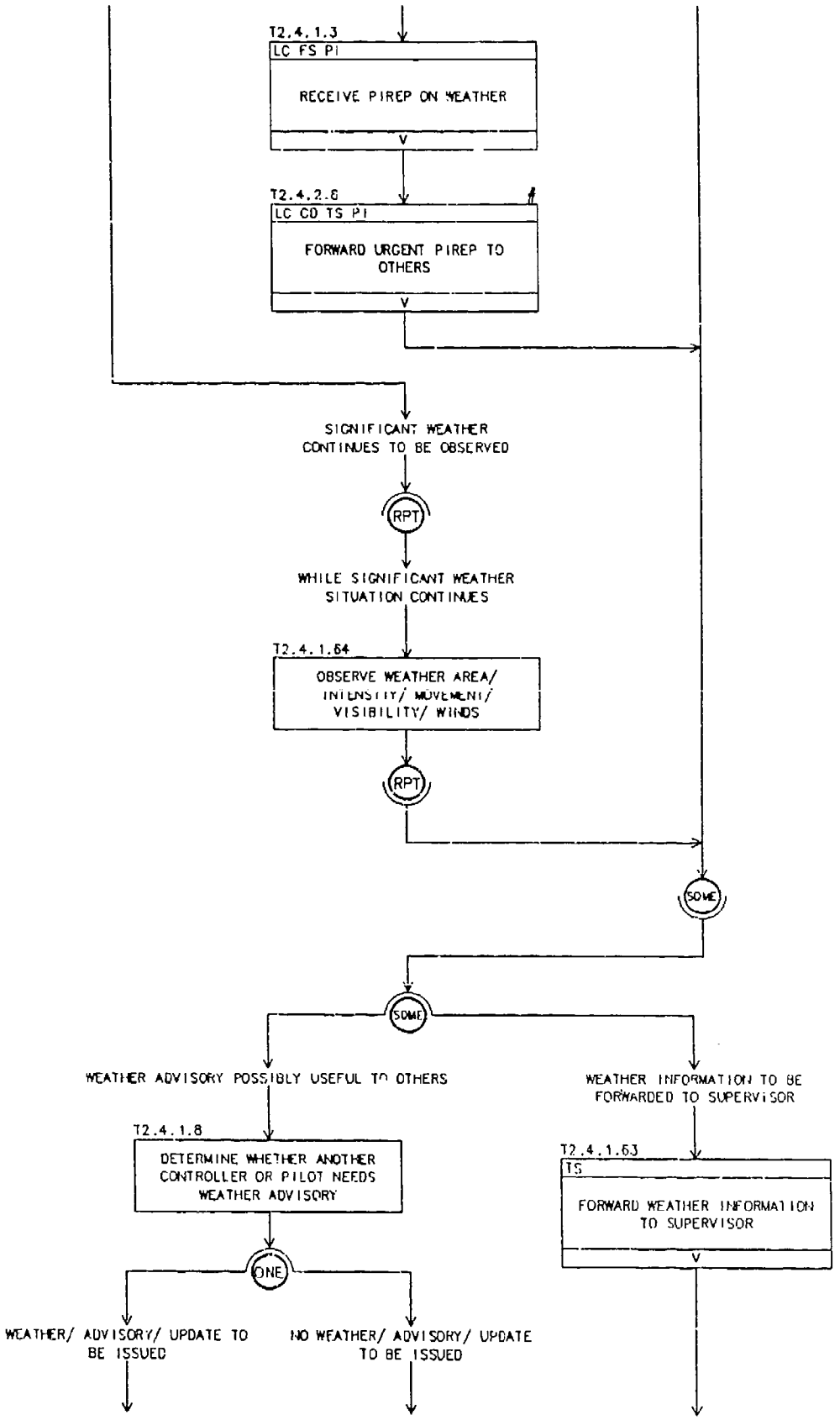
T2.4 ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT

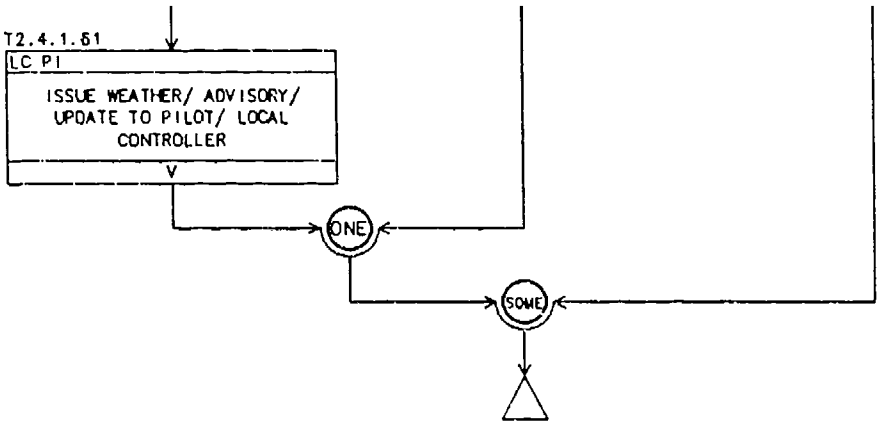


T2.4.1 RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION

EVENTS: SEVERE WEATHER, PIREP, WIND SPEED/ DIRECTION OBSERVATION

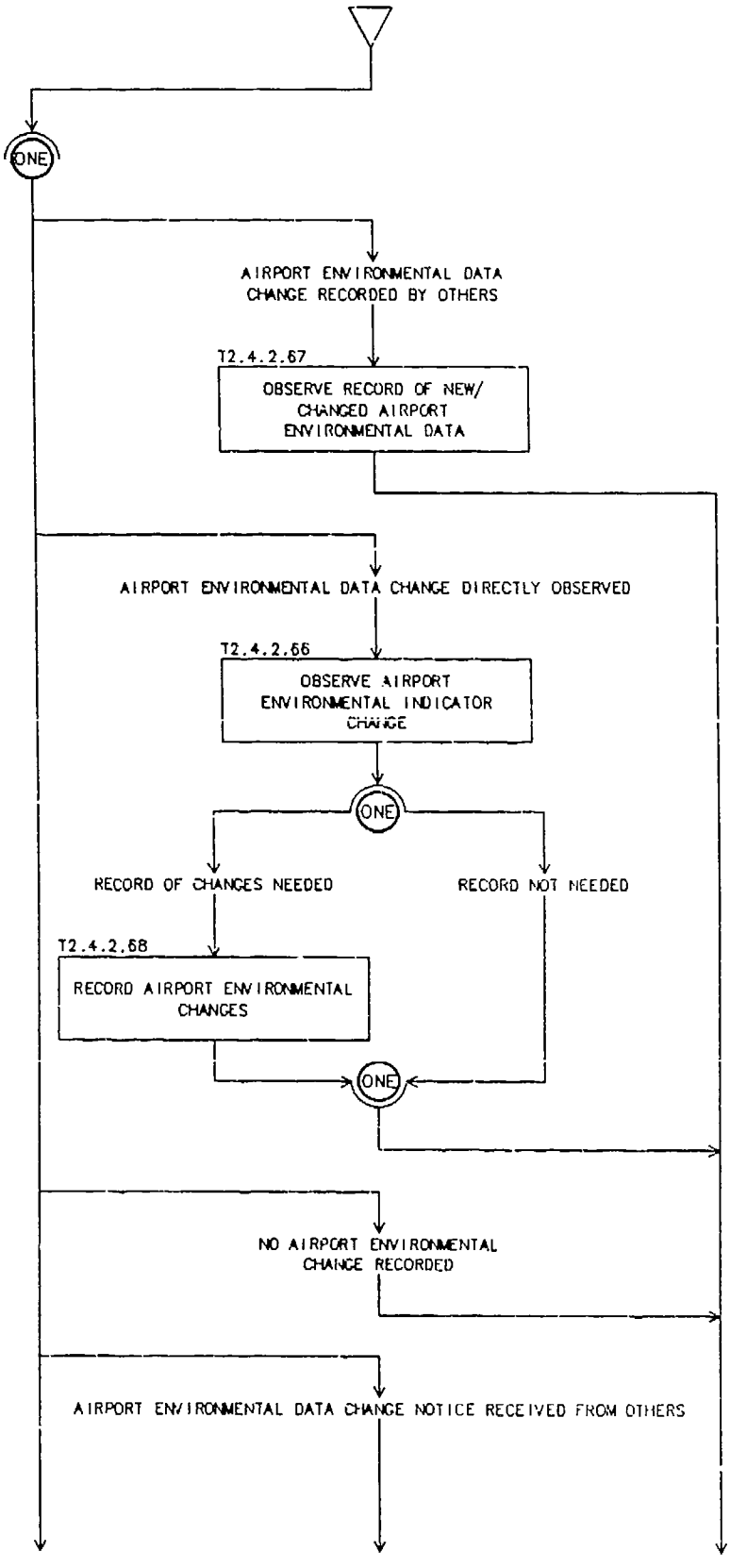


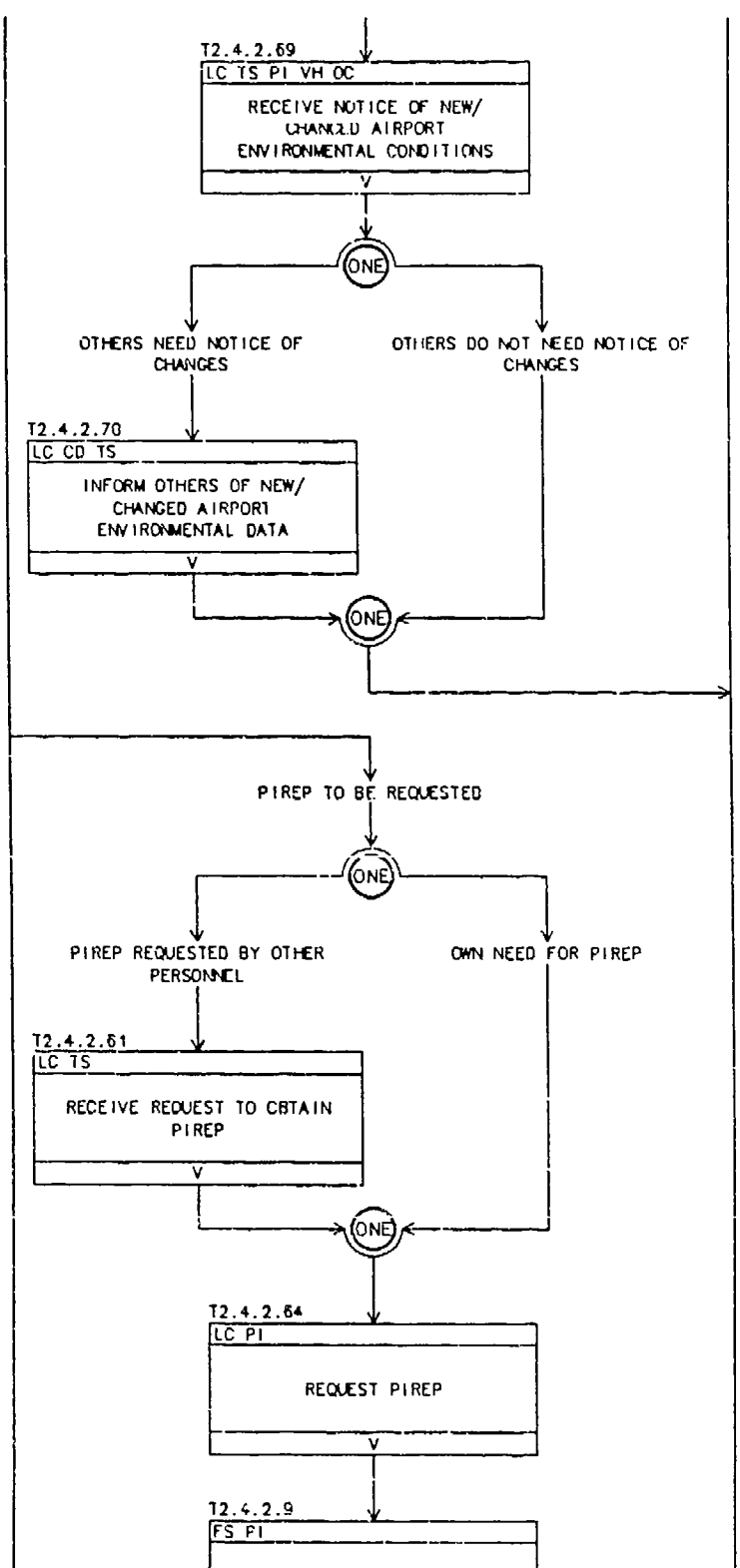

T2.4.1.3
LC FS PI
RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER
T2.4.2.6
LC CD TS PI
FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS
SIGNIFICANT WEATHER CONTINUES TO BE OBSERVED
RPT
WHILE SIGNIFICANT WEATHER SITUATION CONTINUES
T2.4.1.64
OBSERVE WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS
RPT
SOME
SOME
WEATHER ADVISORY POSSIBLY USEFUL TO OTHERS
WEATHER INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO SUPERVISOR
T2.4.1.8
DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY
T2.4.1.63
TS
FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR
ONE
WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO BE ISSUED
NO WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO BE ISSUED

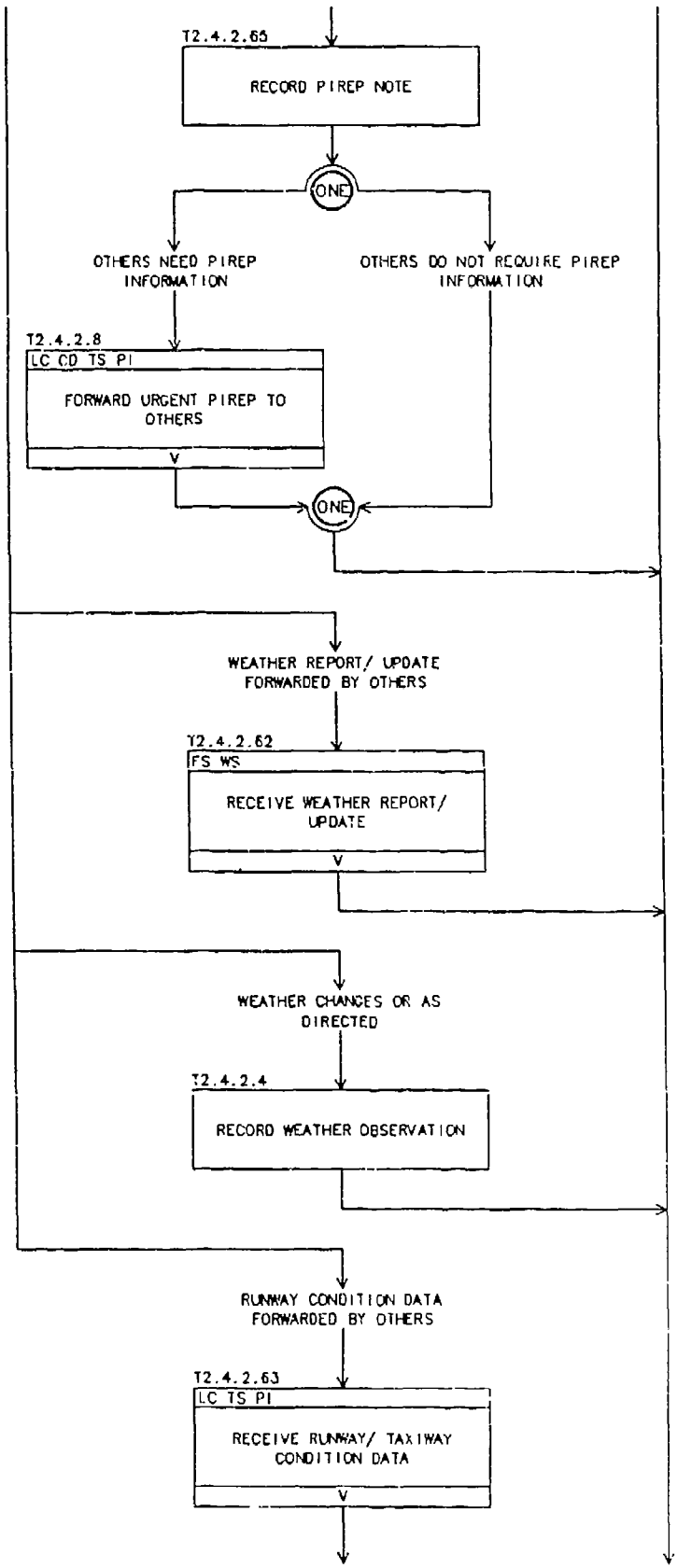

T2.4.1.61
LC PI
ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER
V
ONE
SOME

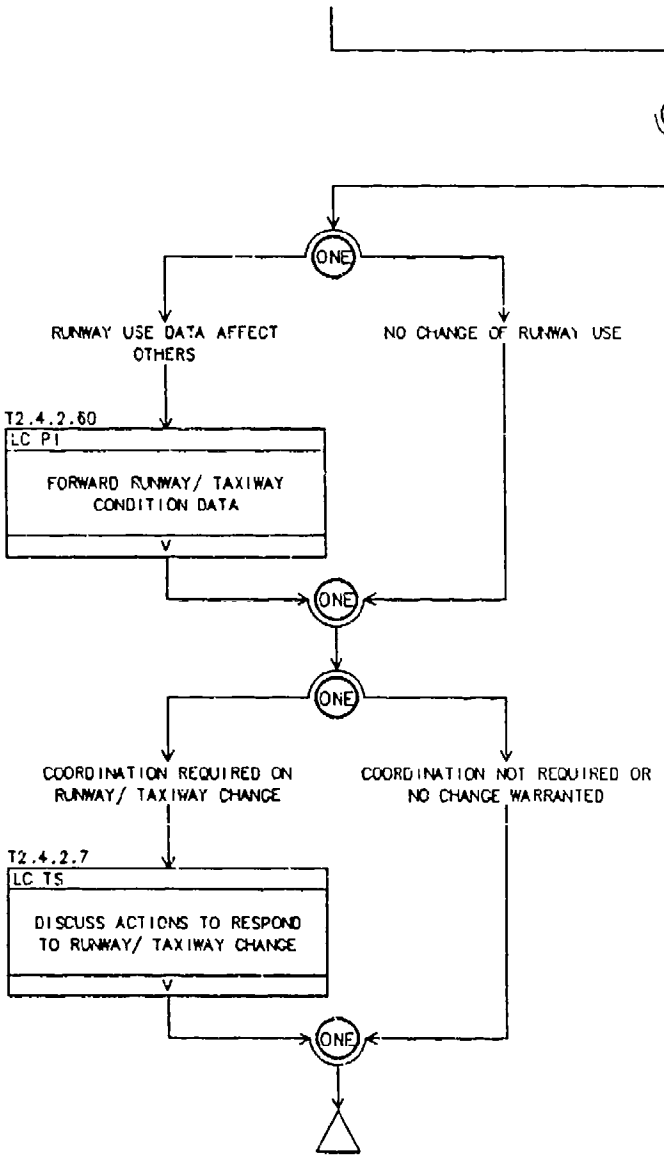
T2.4.2 PROCESSING WEATHER REPORTS

EVENTS: SEVERE WEATHER, PIREP, CEILING HEIGHT REPORT, VISIBILITY REPORT

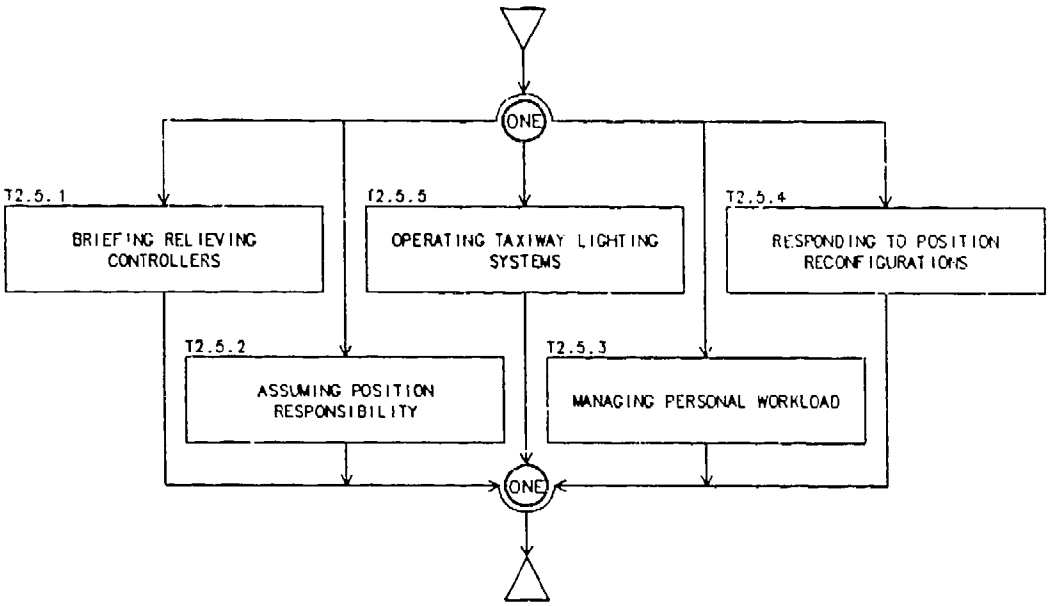



T2.4.2.69
LC TS PI VH OC
RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS
V
ONE
OTHERS NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
OTHERS DO NOT NEED NOTICE OF CHANGES
T2.4.2.70
LC CD TS
INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA
V
ONE
PIREP TO BE REQUESTED
ONE
PIREP REQUESTED BY OTHER PERSONNEL
OWN NEED FOR PIREP
T2.4.2.61
LC TS
RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP
V
ONE
T2.4.2.64
LC PI
REQUEST PIREP
V
T2.4.2.9
FS PI
RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER
V


T2.4.2.65
RECORD PIREP NOTE
ONE
OTHERS NEED PIREP INFORMATION
OTHERS DO NOT REQUIRE PIREP INFORMATION
T2.4.2.8
LC CD TS PI
FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS
ONE
WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE FORWARDED BY OTHERS
T2.4.2.62
FS WS
RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE
WEATHER CHANGES OR AS DIRECTED
T2.4.2.4
RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION
RUNWAY CONDITION DATA FORWARDED BY OTHERS
T2.4.2.63
LC TS PI
RECEIVE RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA

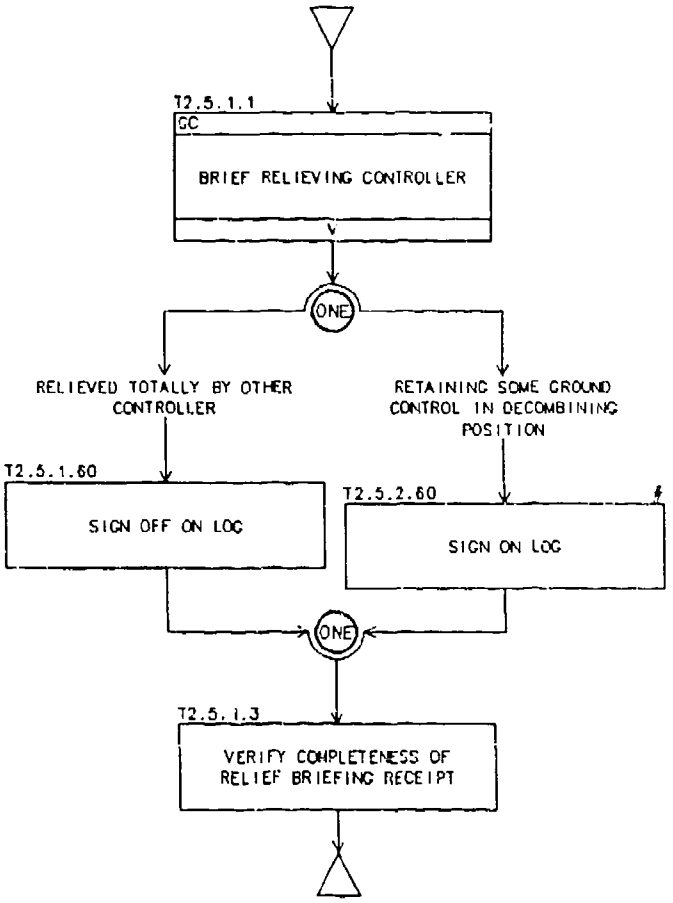

ONE
ONE
RUNWAY USE DATA AFFECT OTHERS
NO CHANGE OF RUNWAY USE
T2.4.2.60
LC P1
FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA
ONE
ONE
COORDINATION REQUIRED ON RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE
COORDINATION NOT REQUIRED OR NO CHANGE WARRANTED
T2.4.2.7
LC TS
DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE
ONE

T2.5 MANAGE GROUND CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES



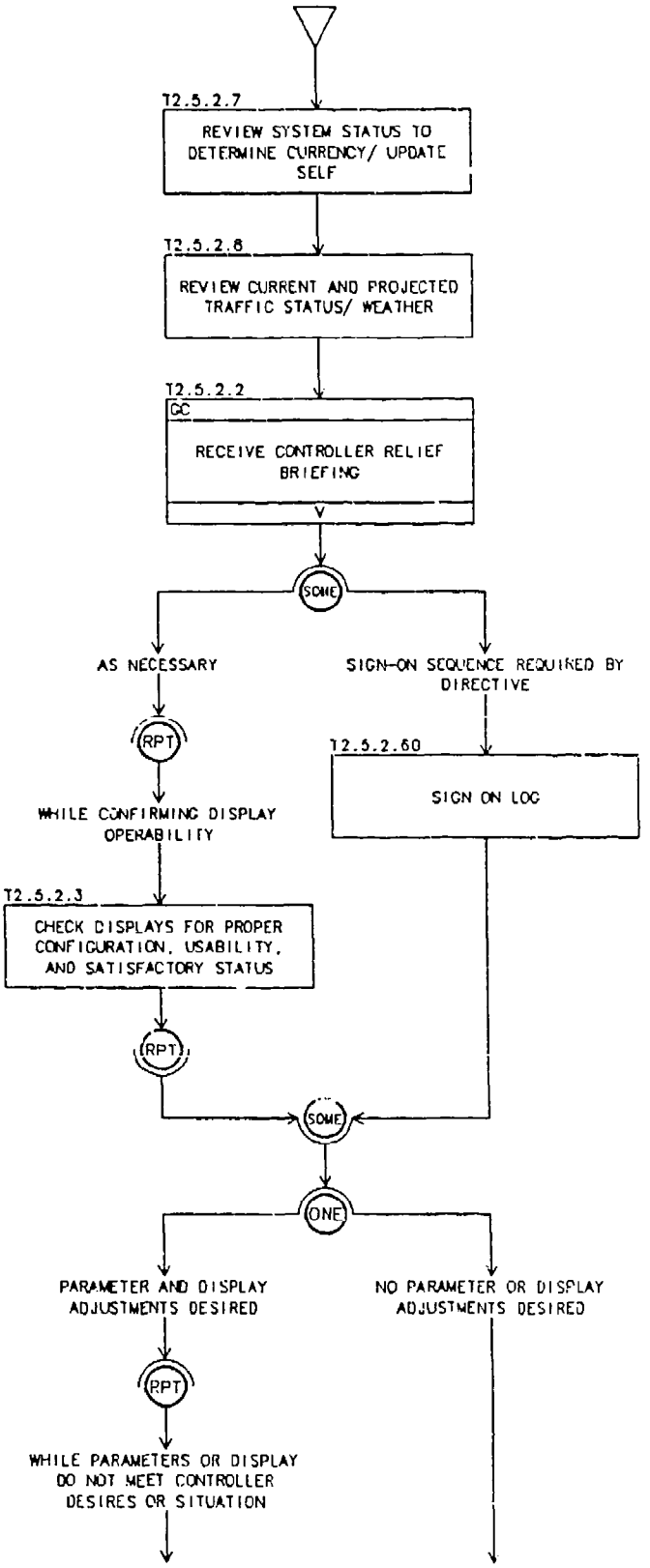
T2.5.1 BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS

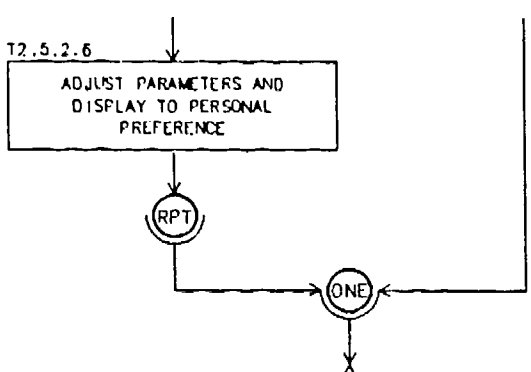
EVENTS: POSITION RELIEF



T2.5.2 ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

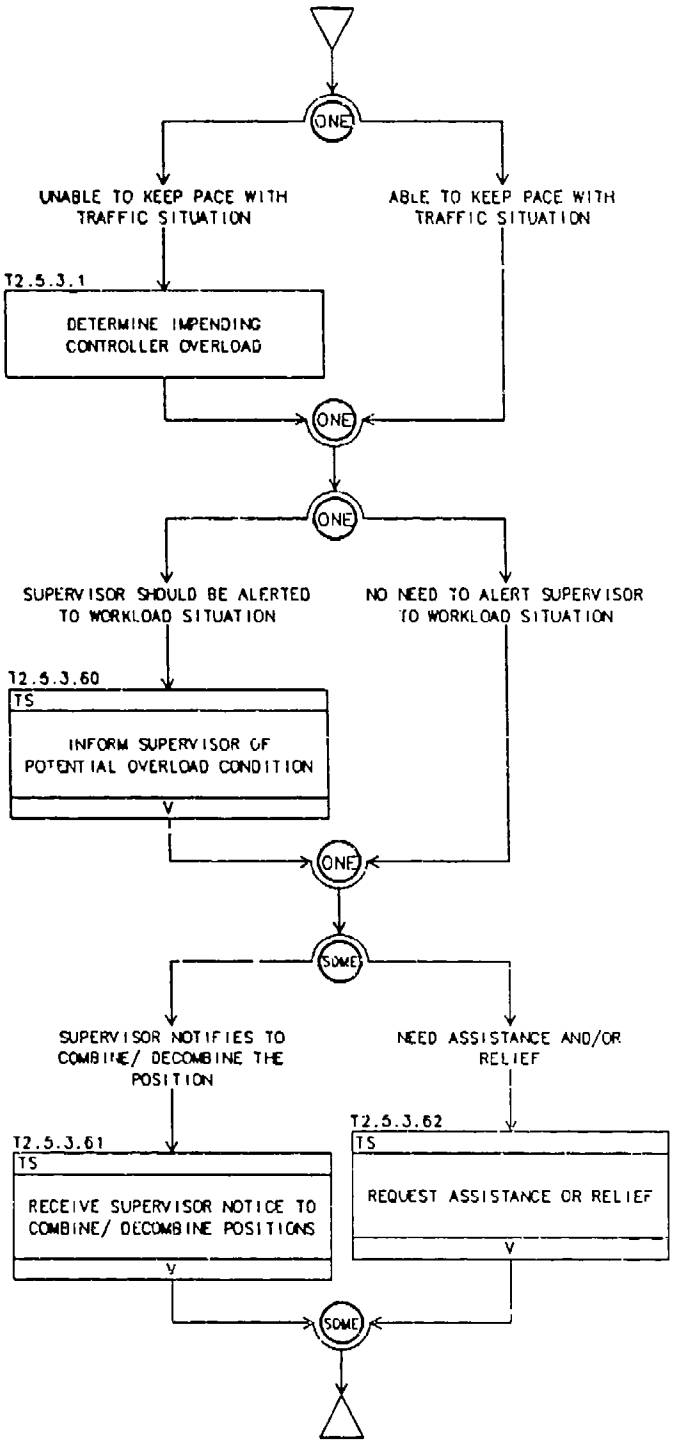
EVENTS: POSITION RELIEF




T2.5.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE
RPT
ONE

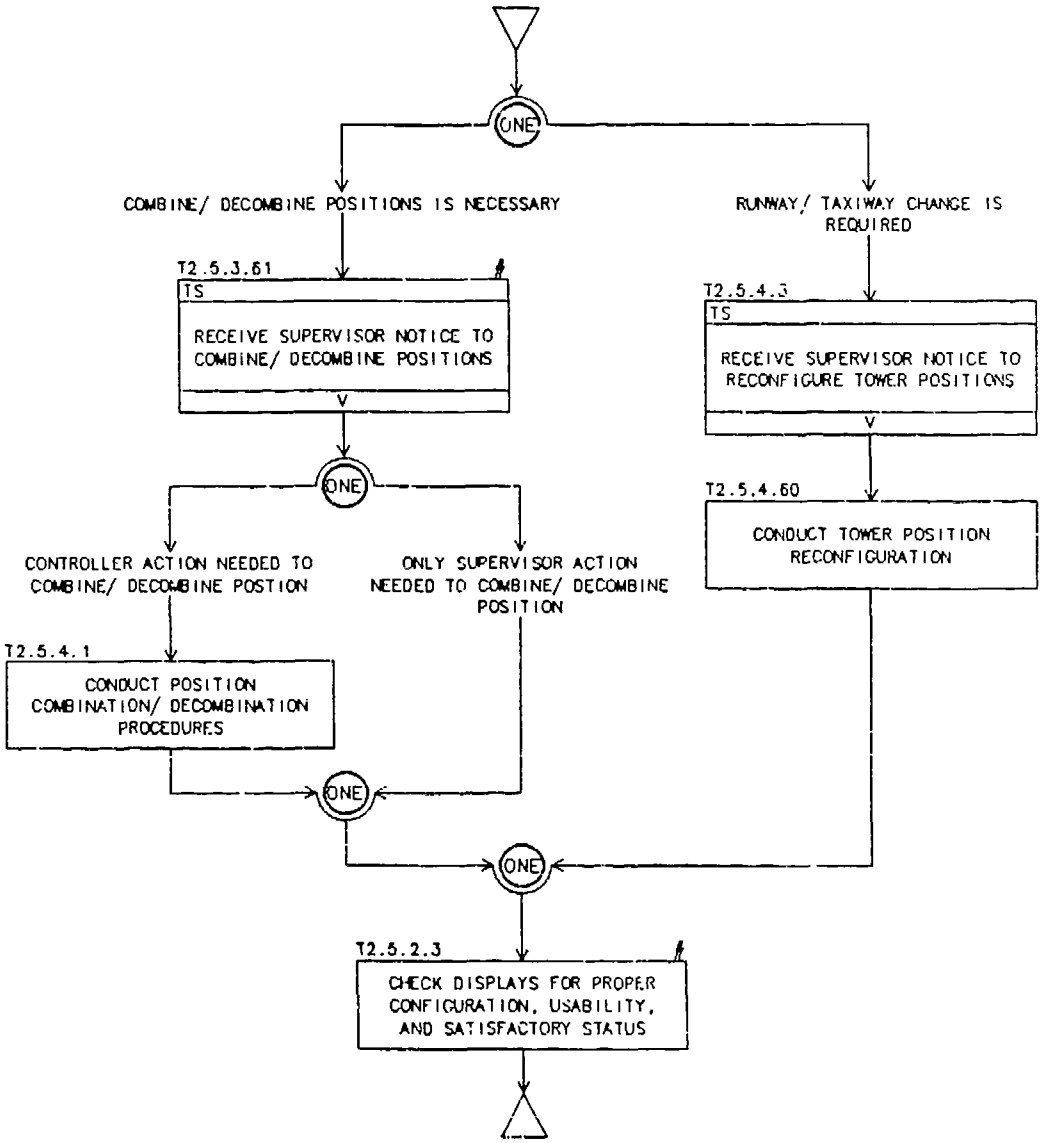
T2.5.3 MANAGING PERSONAL WORKLOAD

EVENTS: CONTROLLER OVERLOAD



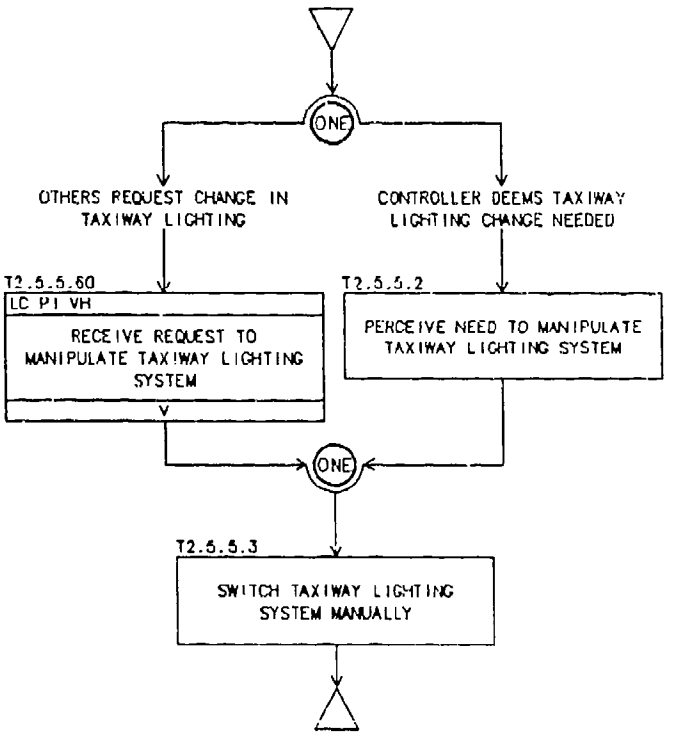
T2.5.4 RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS

EVENTS: POSITION CONSOLIDATION/ DECONSOLIDATION

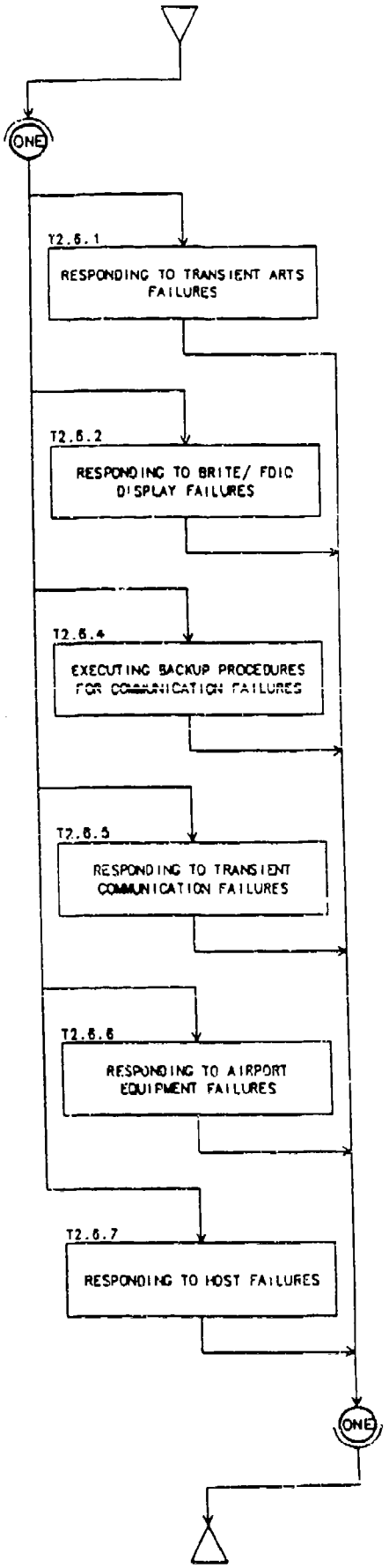


T2.5.5 OPERATING TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEMS

EVENTS: PILOT REQUEST FOR LIGHTING MANIPULATION, VISIBILITY OBSERVATION/ REPORT, TAXIWAY OPEN/ CLOSE

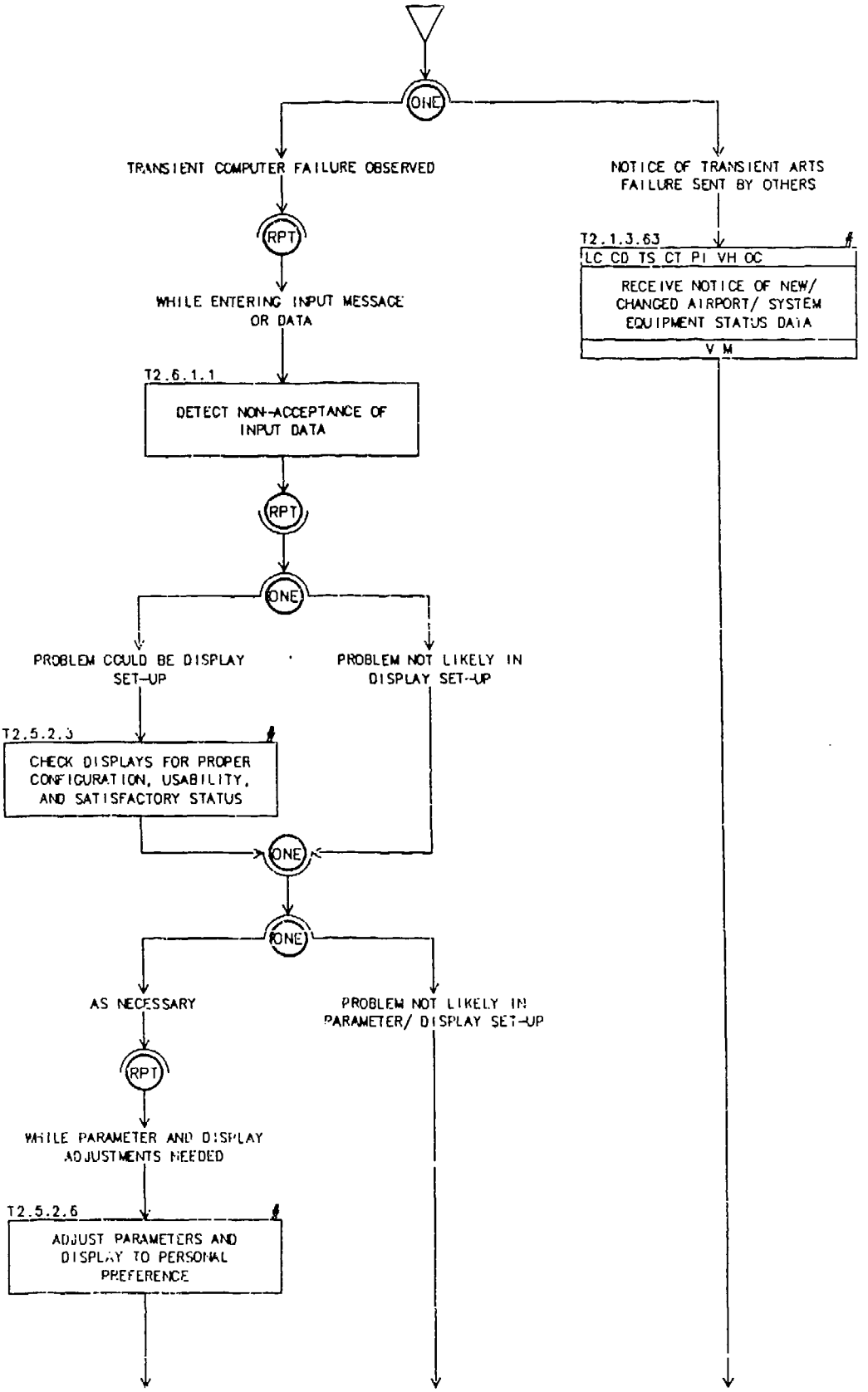


T2.6 RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION

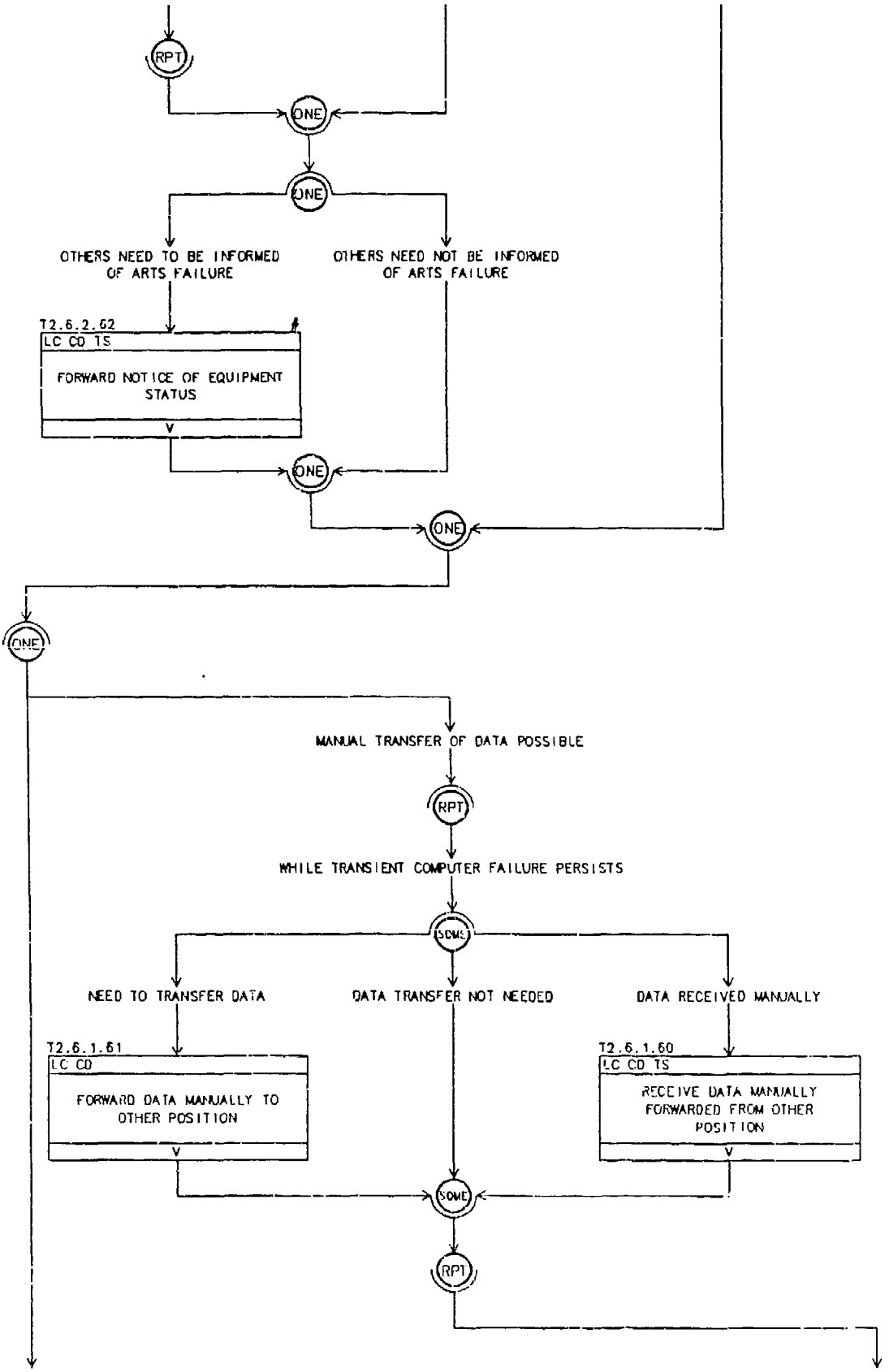


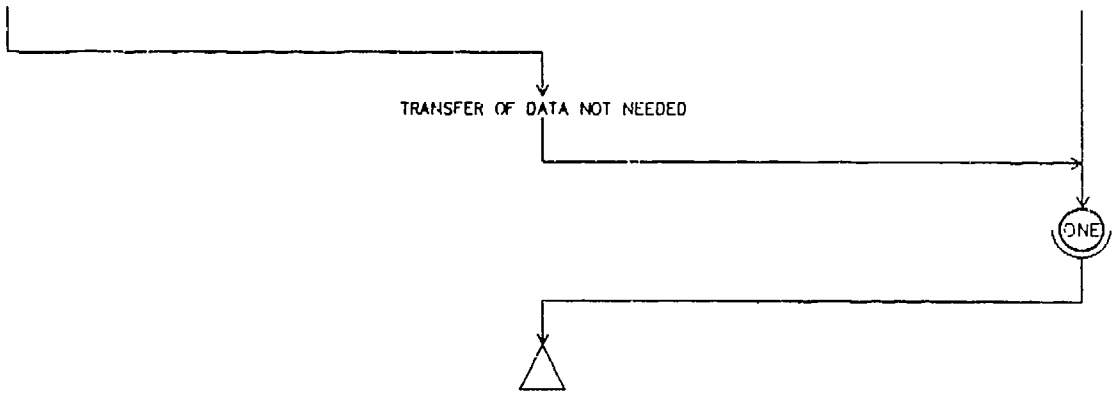
T2.6.1 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS FAILURES

EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE



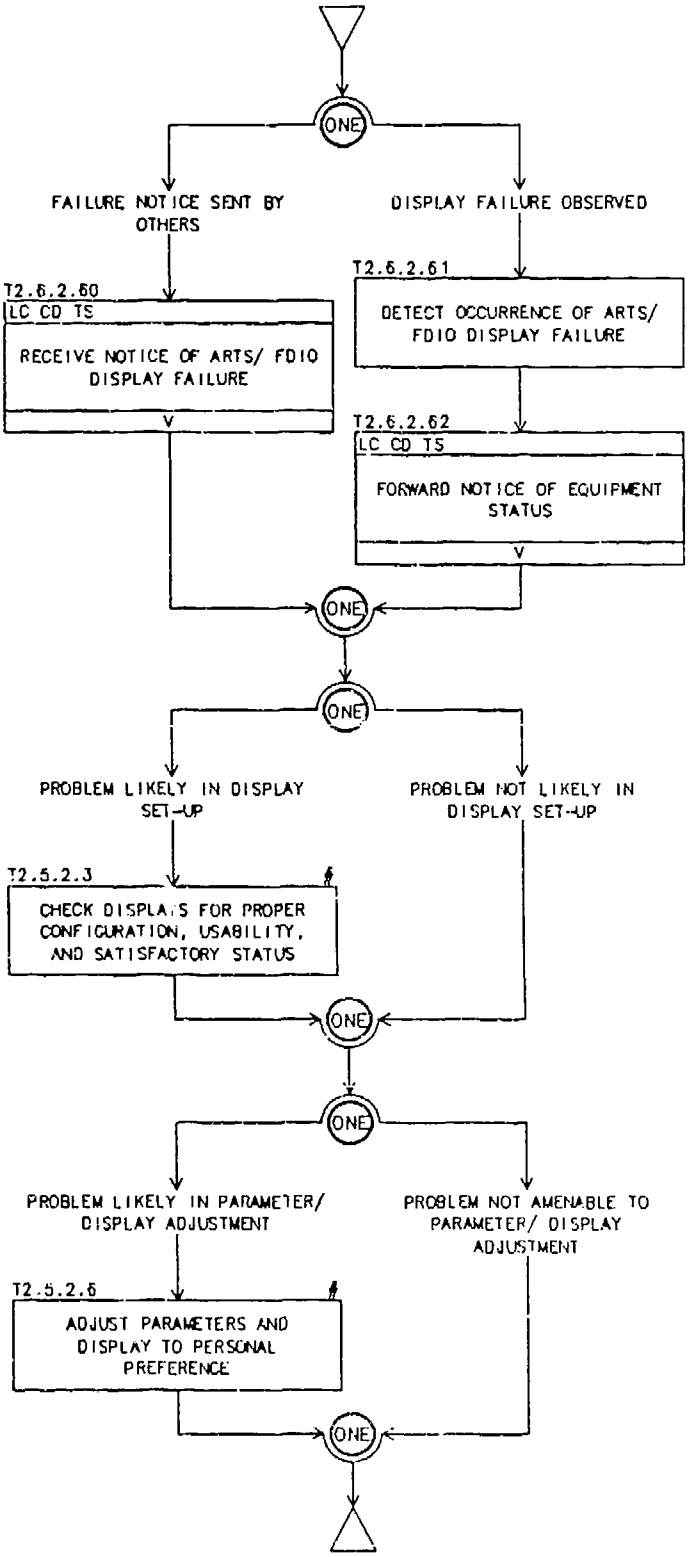
T2.6.1 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS FAILURES (cont.)




TRANSFER OF DATA NOT NEEDED
ONE

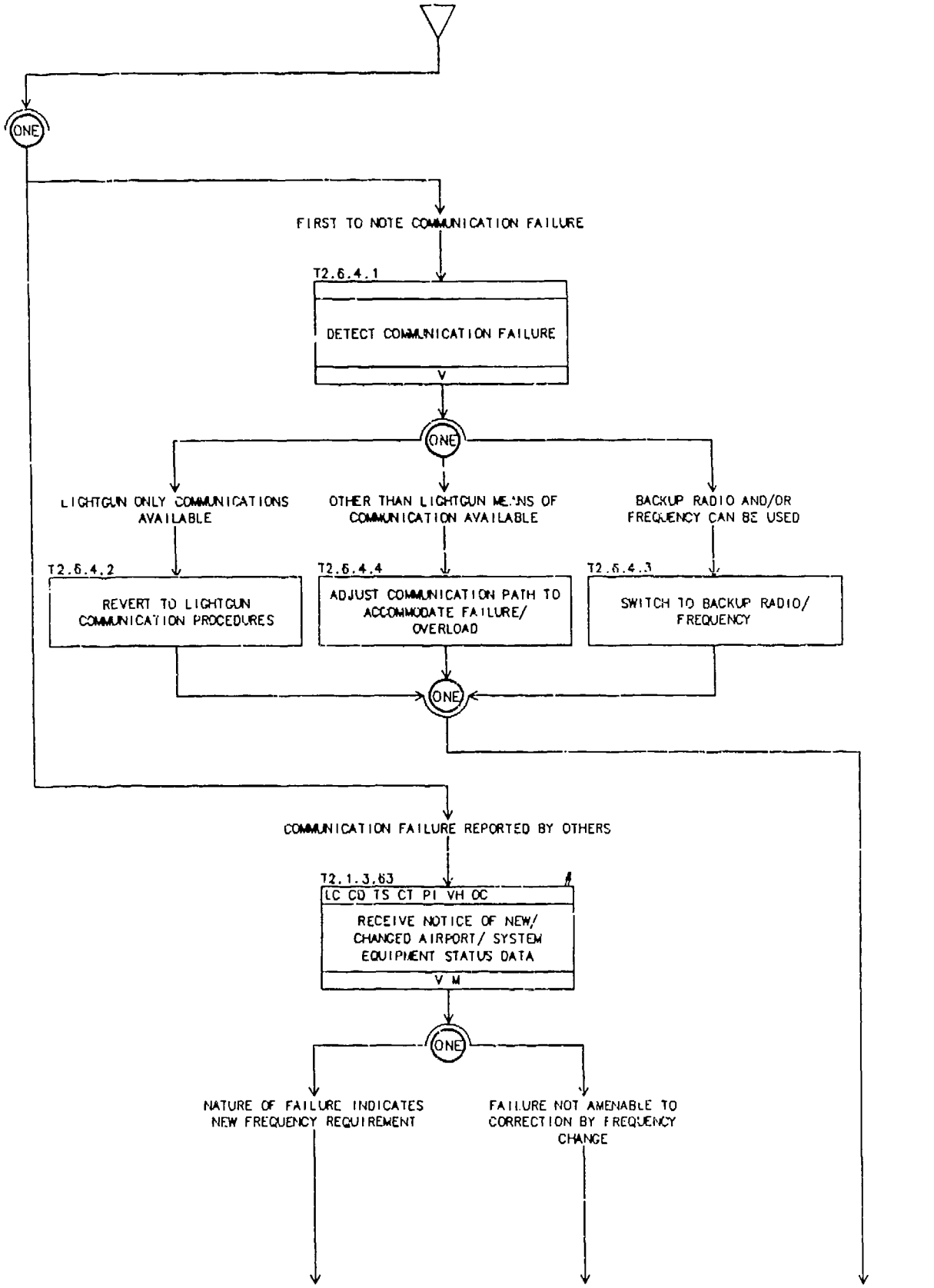
T2.6.2 RESPONDING TO BRITE/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES

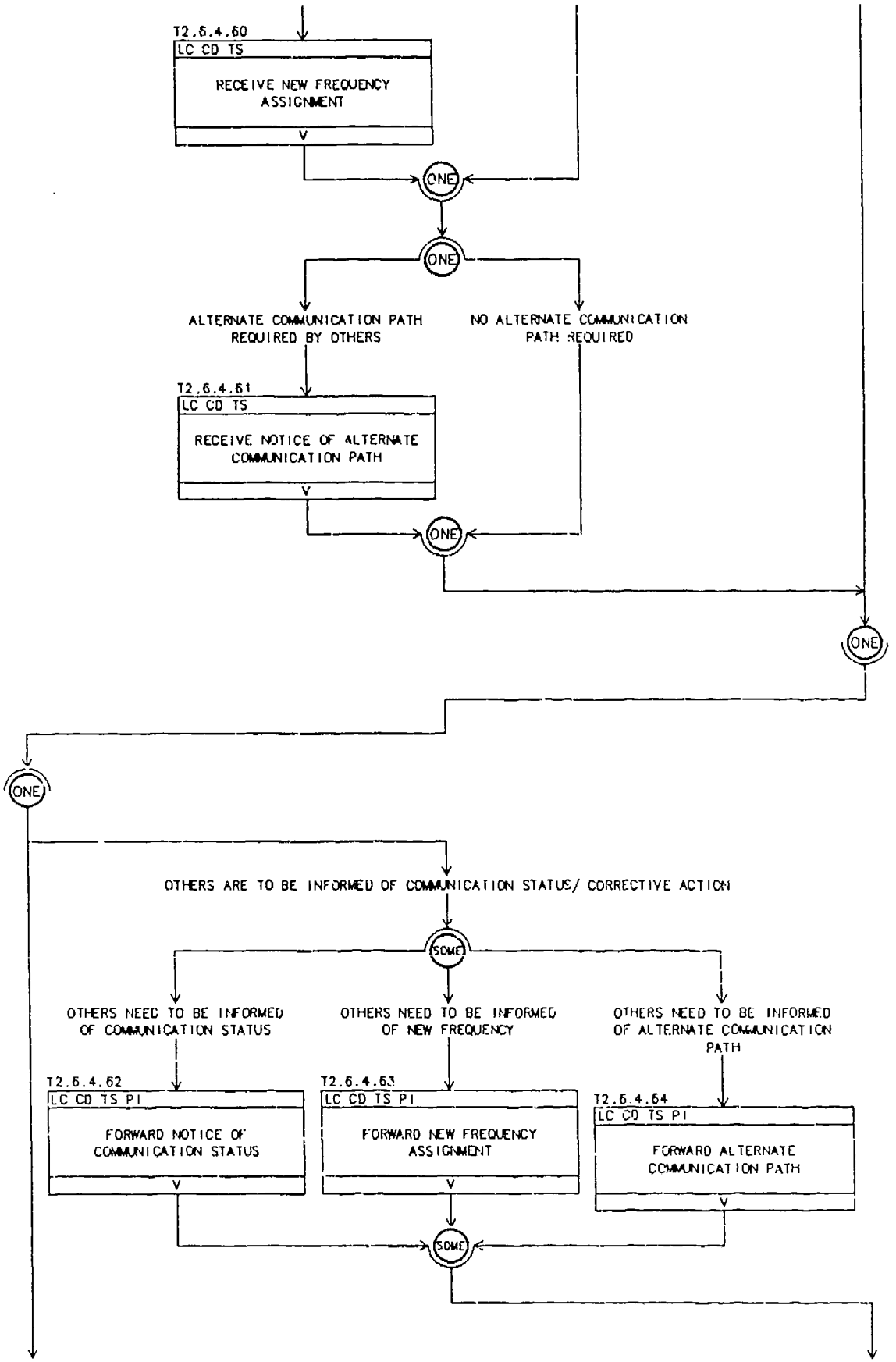
EVENTS: ARTS RADAR DATA PROCESSING FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE

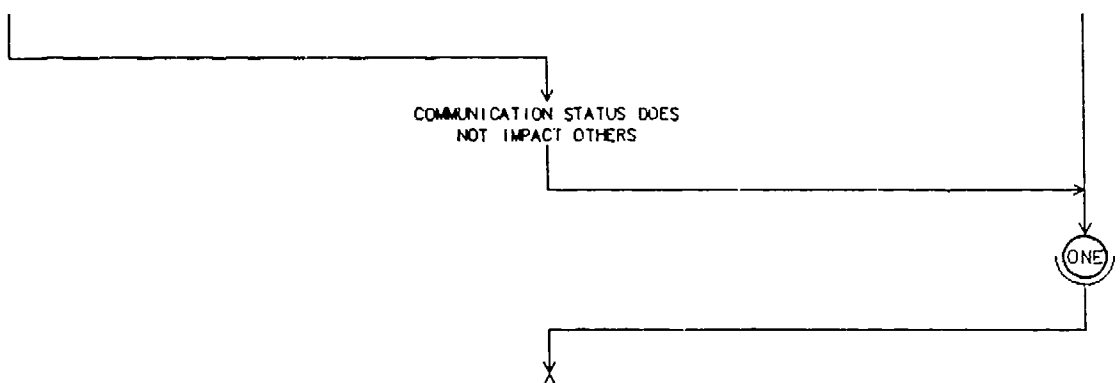


T2.6.4 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES

EVENTS: COMMUNICATION FAILURE

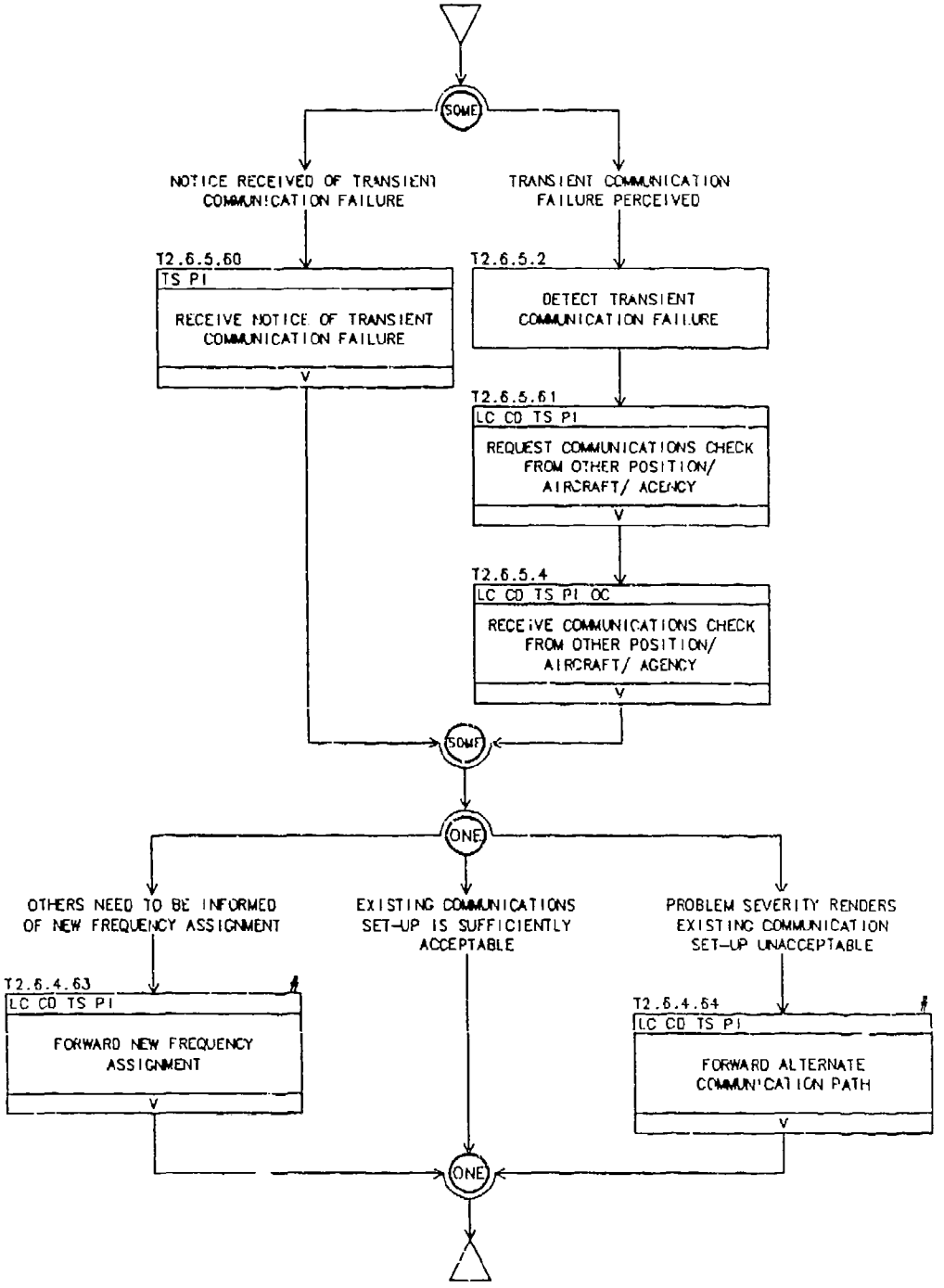



T2.6.4.60
LC CD TS
RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT
ONE
ONE
ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH REQUIRED BY OTHERS
NO ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH REQUIRED
T2.6.4.61
LC CD TS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
ONE
ONE
ONE
OTHERS ARE TO BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION STATUS/ CORRECTIVE ACTION
SOME
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF NEW FREQUENCY
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
T2.6.4.62
LC CD TS PI
FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
T2.6.4.63
LC CD TS PI
FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT
T2.6.4.64
LC CD TS PI
FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
SOME


COMMUNICATION STATUS DOES
NOT IMPACT OTHERS
ONE

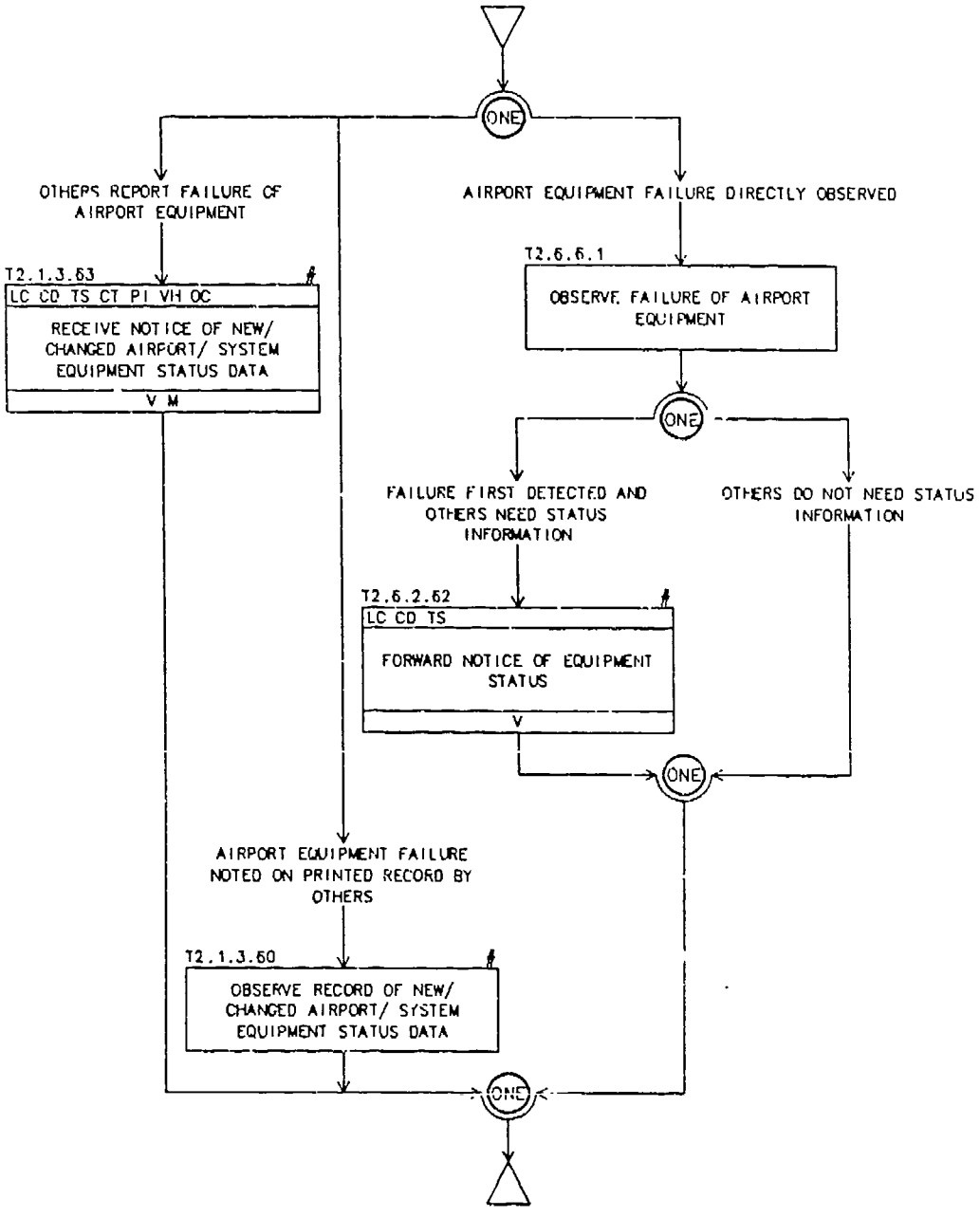
T2.6.5 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES

EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE



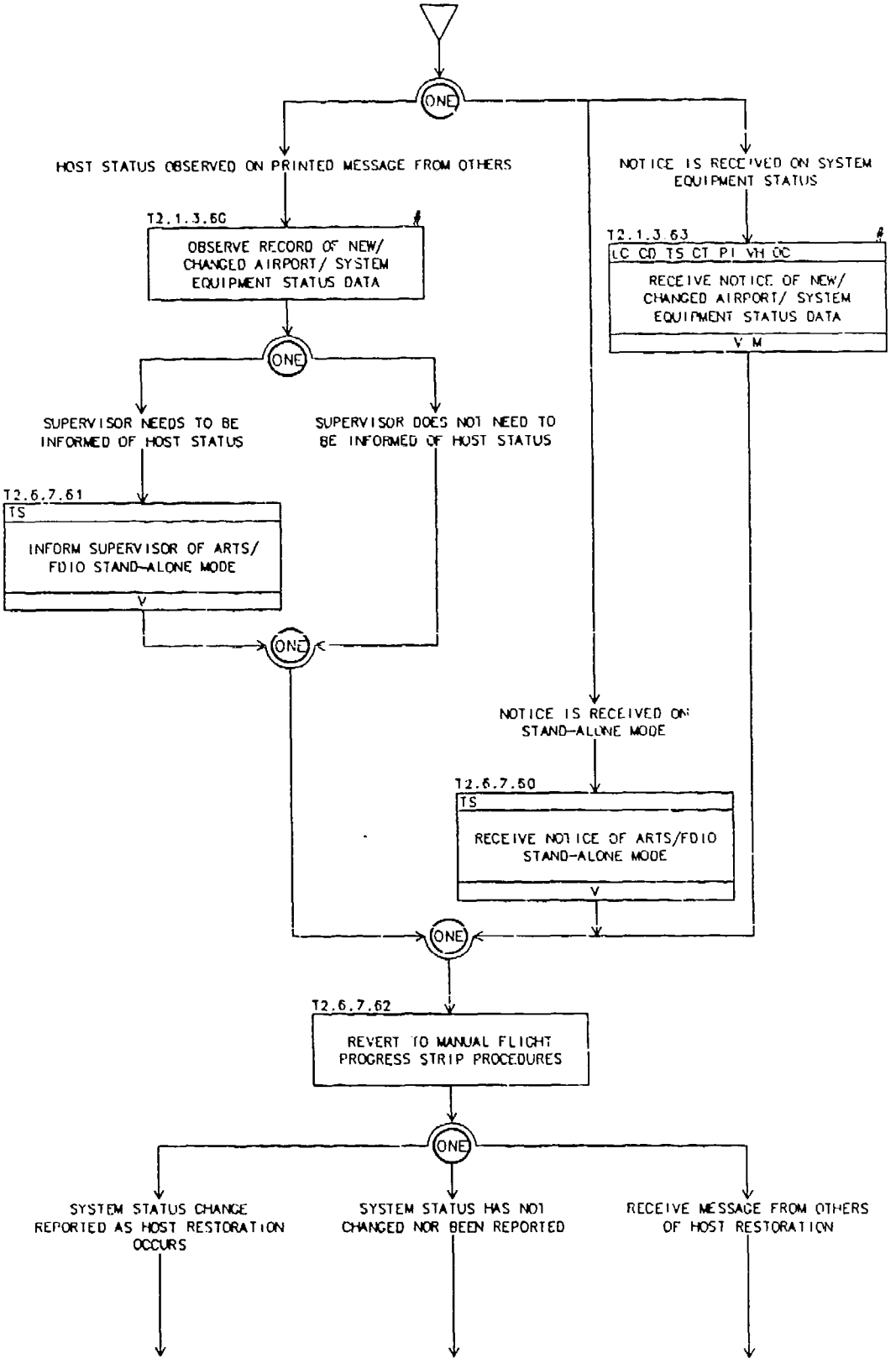
T2.6.6 RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES

EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE, NAVAID FAILURE

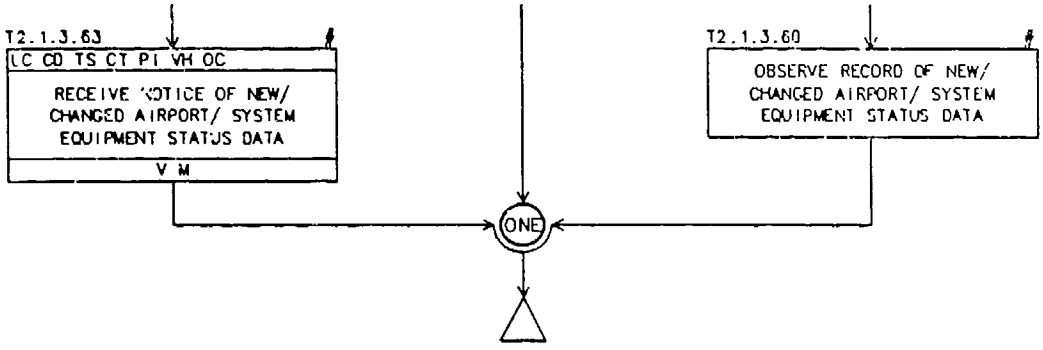


T2.6.7 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES

EVENTS: HOST FAILURE

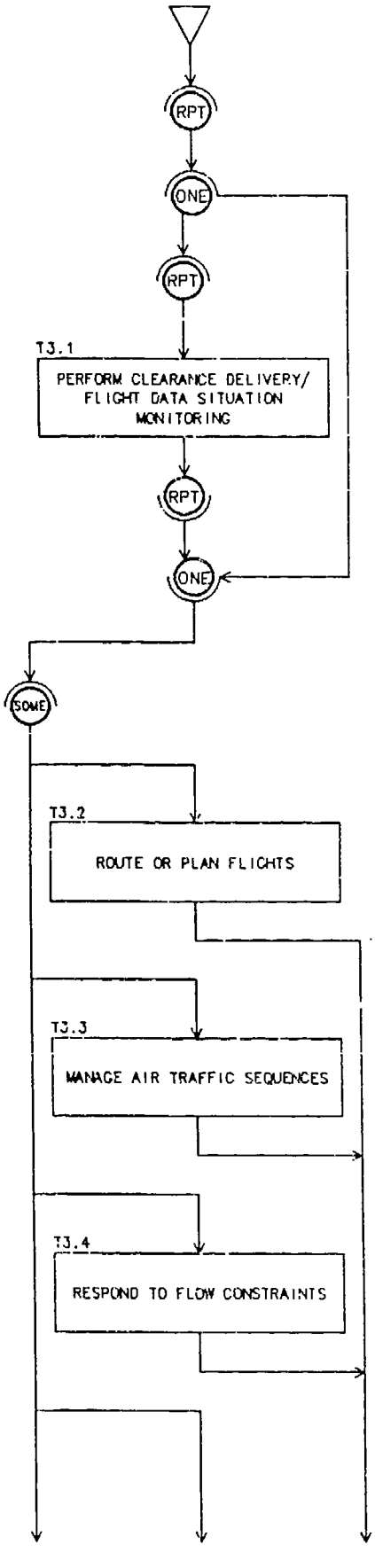


T2.6.7 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES (cont.)

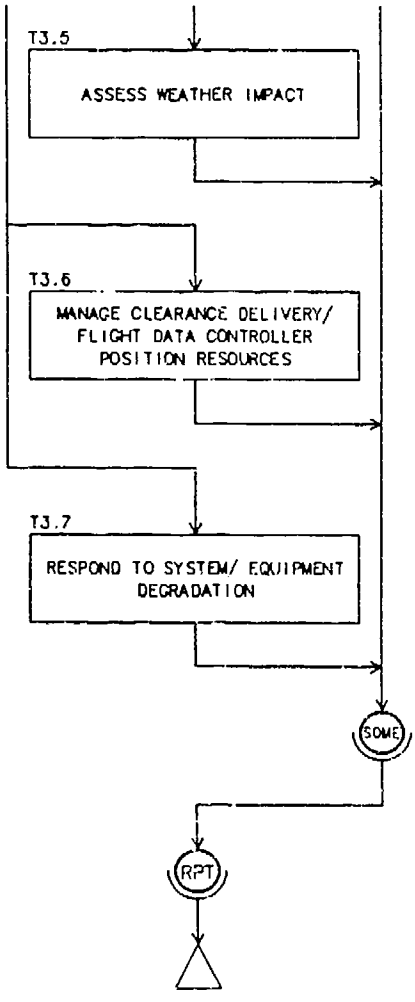


This Page Intentionally Left Blank

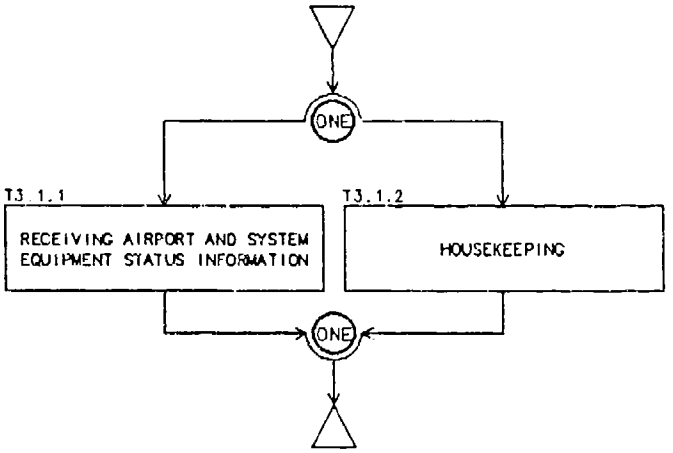
T3 CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA



T3 CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA (cont.)

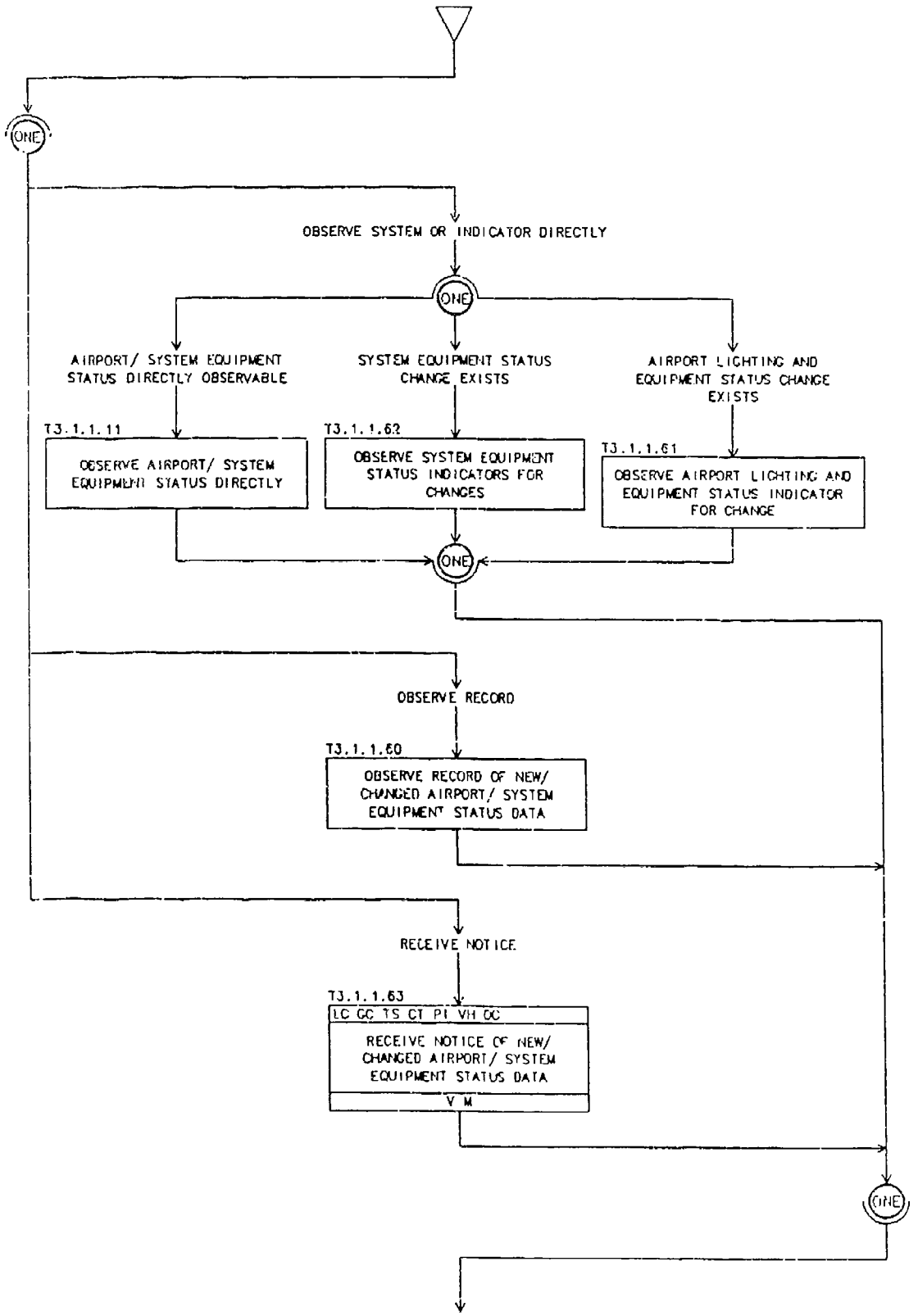


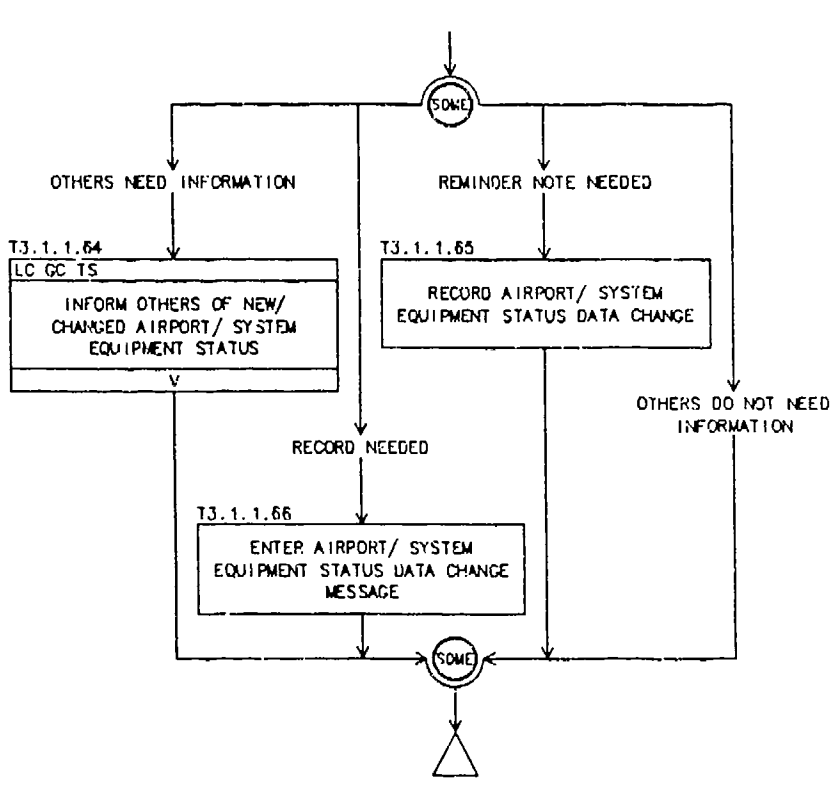
T3.1 PERFORM CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA SITUATION MONITORING



T3.1.1 RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION

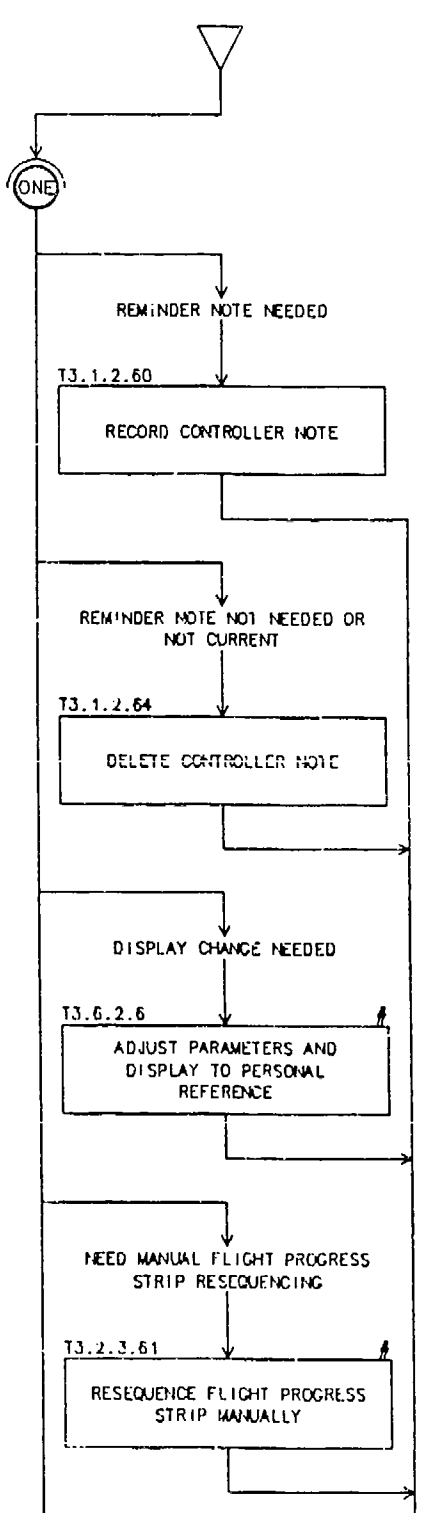
EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE, COMMUNICATION FAILURE, HOST COMPUTER FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE

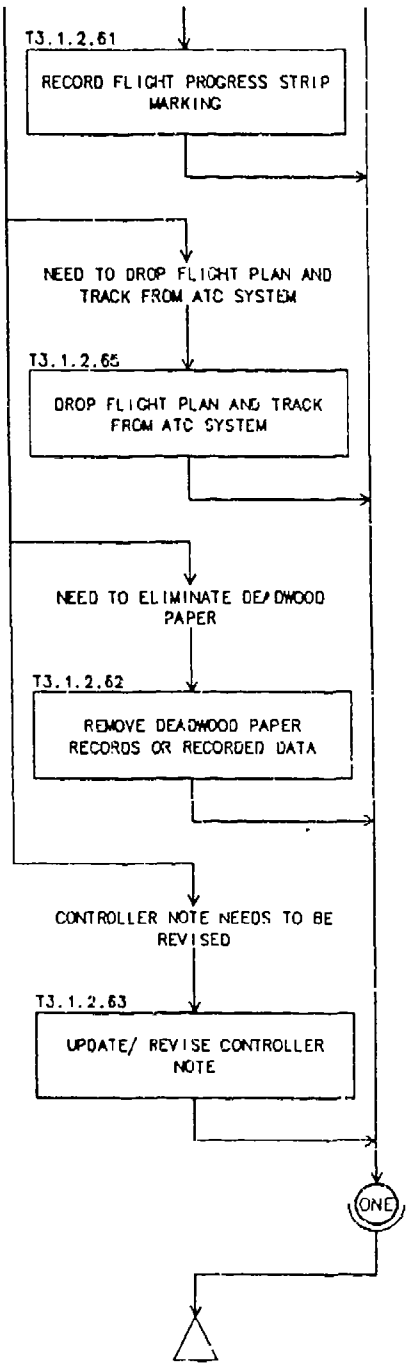



SOME
OTHERS NEED INFORMATION
REMINDER NOTE NEEDED
T3.1.1.64
LC GC TS
INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS
T3.1.1.65
RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE
OTHERS DO NOT NEED INFORMATION
RECORD NEEDED
T3.1.1.66
ENTER AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE MESSAGE
SOME

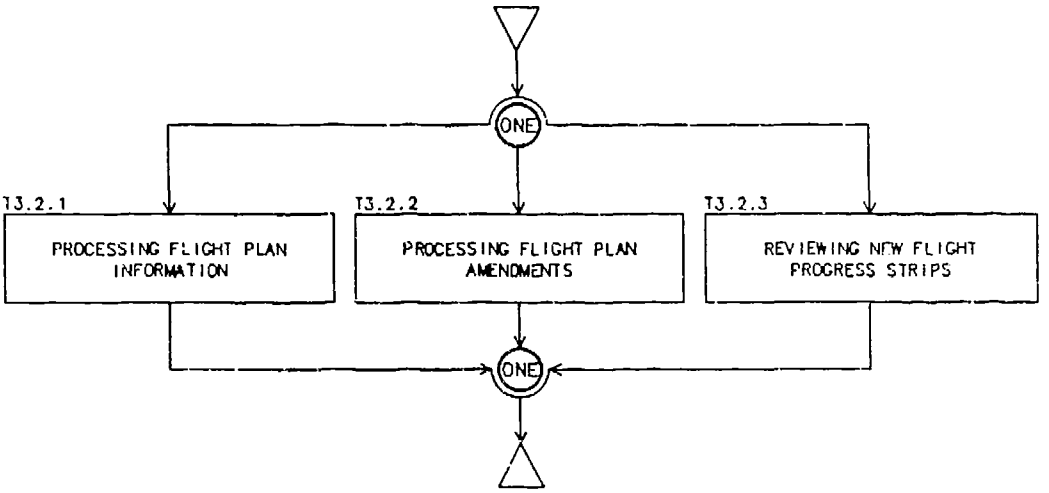
T3.1.2 HOUSEKEEPING

EVENTS: (NO SPECIFIC EVENT APPLICABLE)



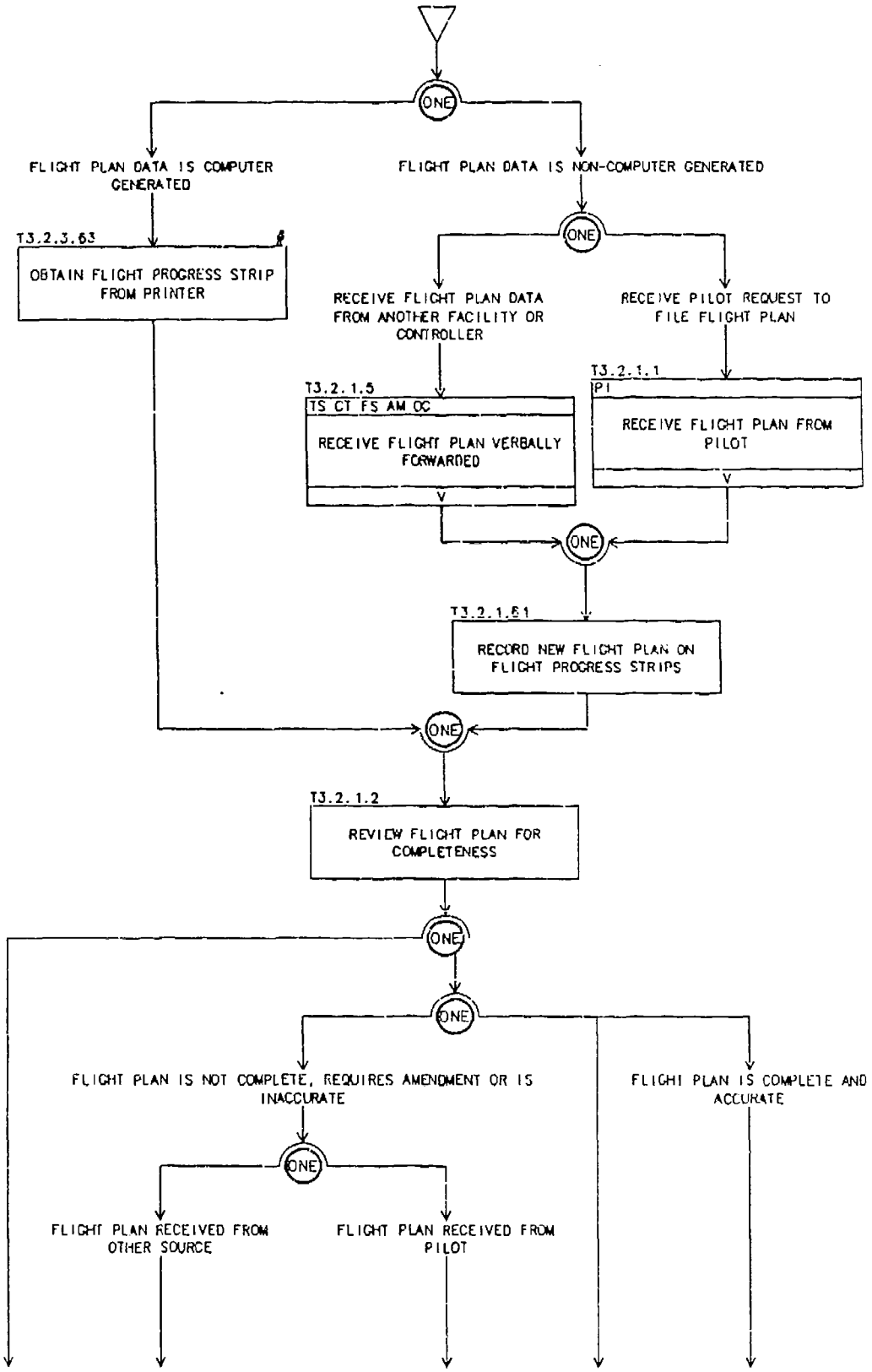

T3.1.2.61
RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING
NEED TO DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM
T3.1.2.65
DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM
NEED TO ELIMINATE DEADWOOD PAPER
T3.1.2.62
REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA
CONTROLLER NOTE NEEDS TO BE REVISED
T3.1.2.63
UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE
ONE

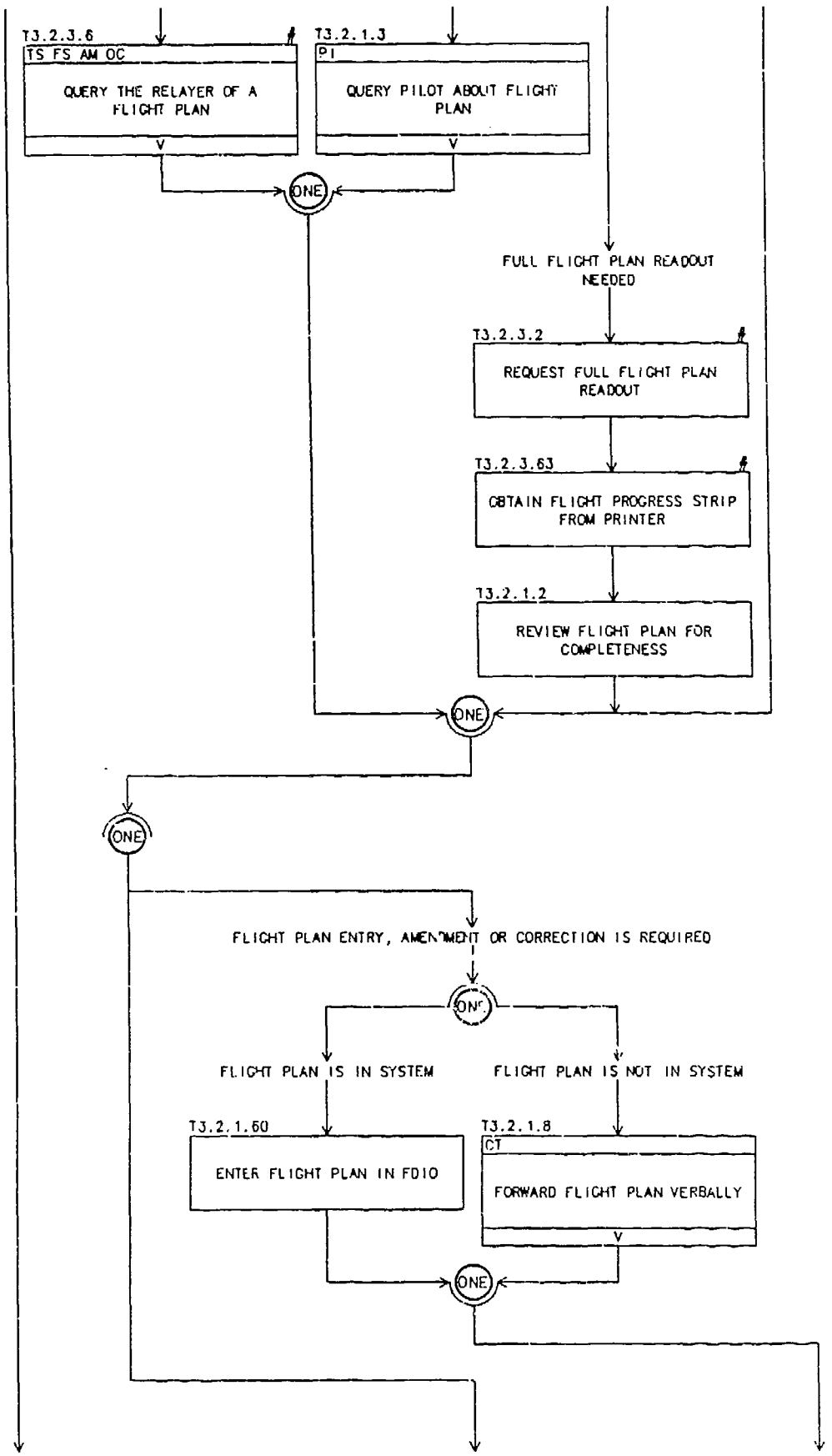
T3.2 ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS

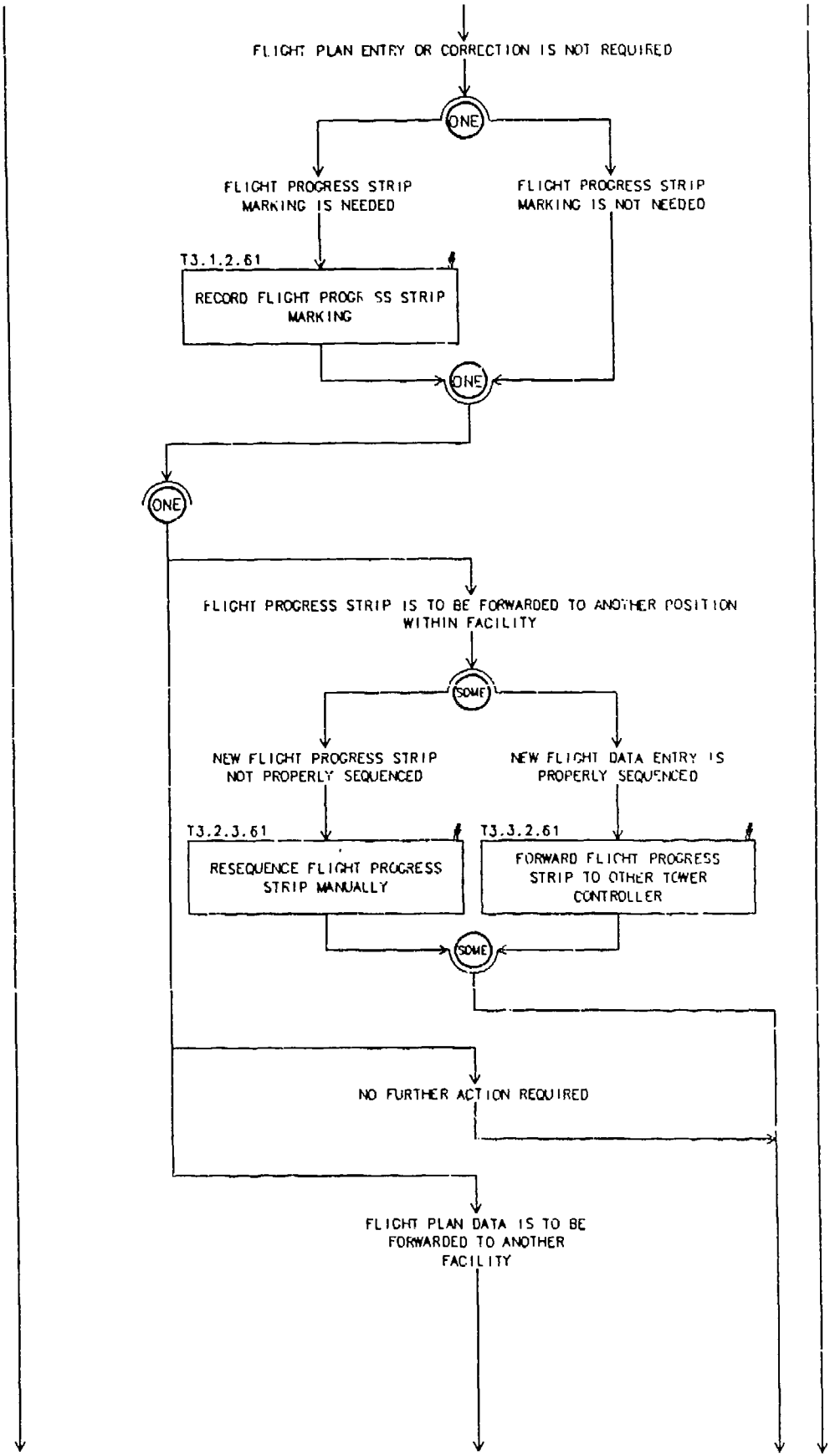


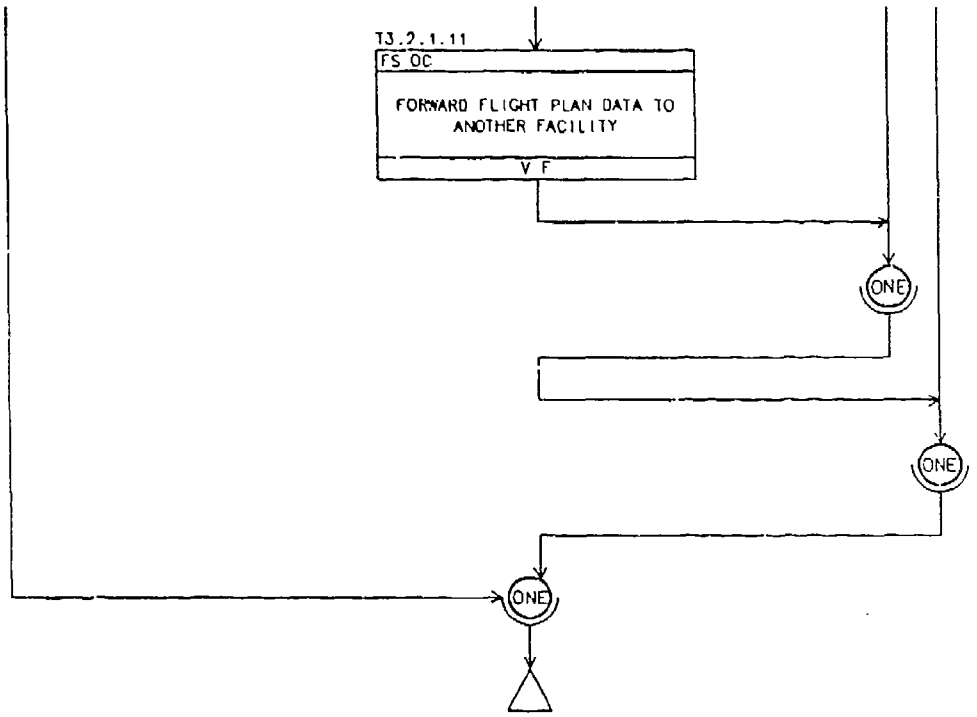
T3.2.1 PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION

EVENTS: FILED FLIGHT PLAN



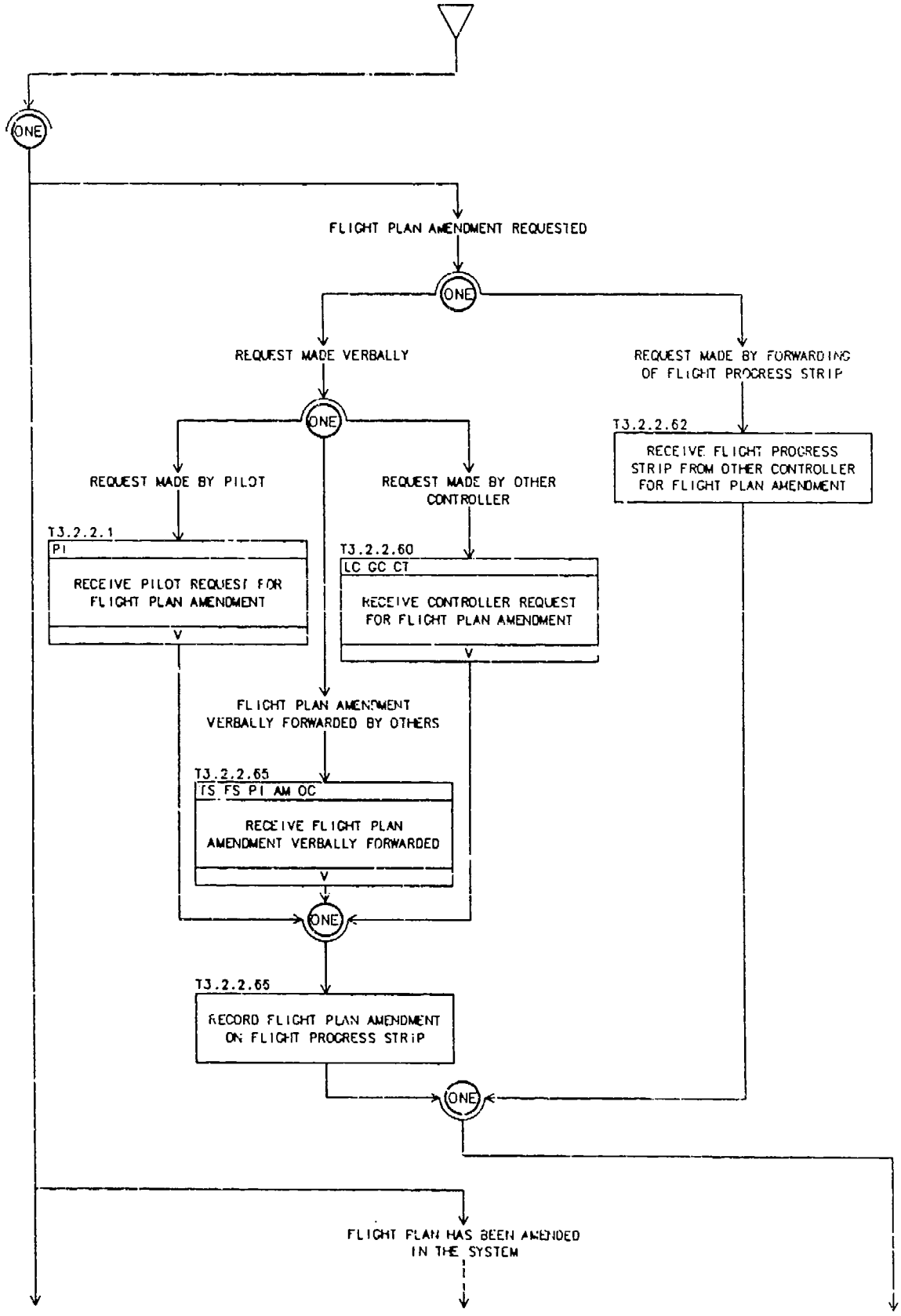

T3.2.3.6
TS FS AM OC
QUERY THE RELAYER OF A FLIGHT PLAN
T3.2.1.3
PI
QUERY PILOT ABOUT FLIGHT PLAN
ONE
FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT NEEDED
T3.2.3.2
REQUEST FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT
T3.2.3.63
OBTAIN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM PRINTER
T3.2.1.2
REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS
ONE
ONE
FLIGHT PLAN ENTRY, AMENDMENT OR CORRECTION IS REQUIRED
ONE
FLIGHT PLAN IS IN SYSTEM
FLIGHT PLAN IS NOT IN SYSTEM
T3.2.1.60
ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO
T3.2.1.8
CT
FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY
ONE


FLIGHT PLAN ENTRY OR CORRECTION IS NOT REQUIRED
ONE
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING IS NEEDED
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING IS NOT NEEDED
T3.1.2.61
RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING
ONE
ONE
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP IS TO BE FORWARDED TO ANOTHER POSITION WITHIN FACILITY
SOME
NEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP NOT PROPERLY SEQUENCED
NEW FLIGHT DATA ENTRY IS PROPERLY SEQUENCED
T3.2.3.61
RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANUALLY
T3.3.2.61
FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER
SOME
NO FURTHER ACTION REQUIRED
FLIGHT PLAN DATA IS TO BE FORWARDED TO ANOTHER FACILITY

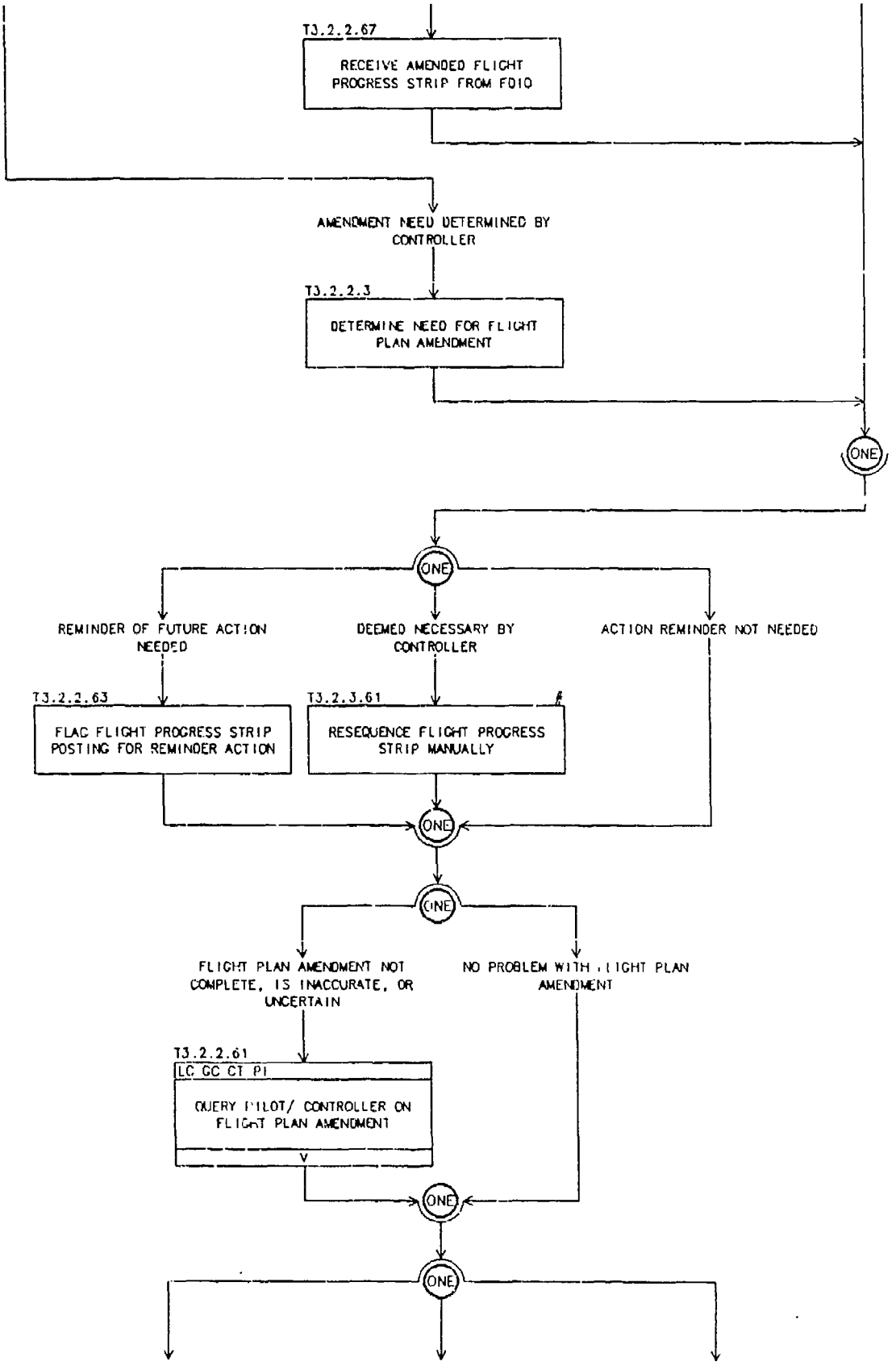

T3.2.1.11
FS OC
FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN DATA TO ANOTHER FACILITY
V F
ONE
ONE
ONE

T3.2.2 PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS

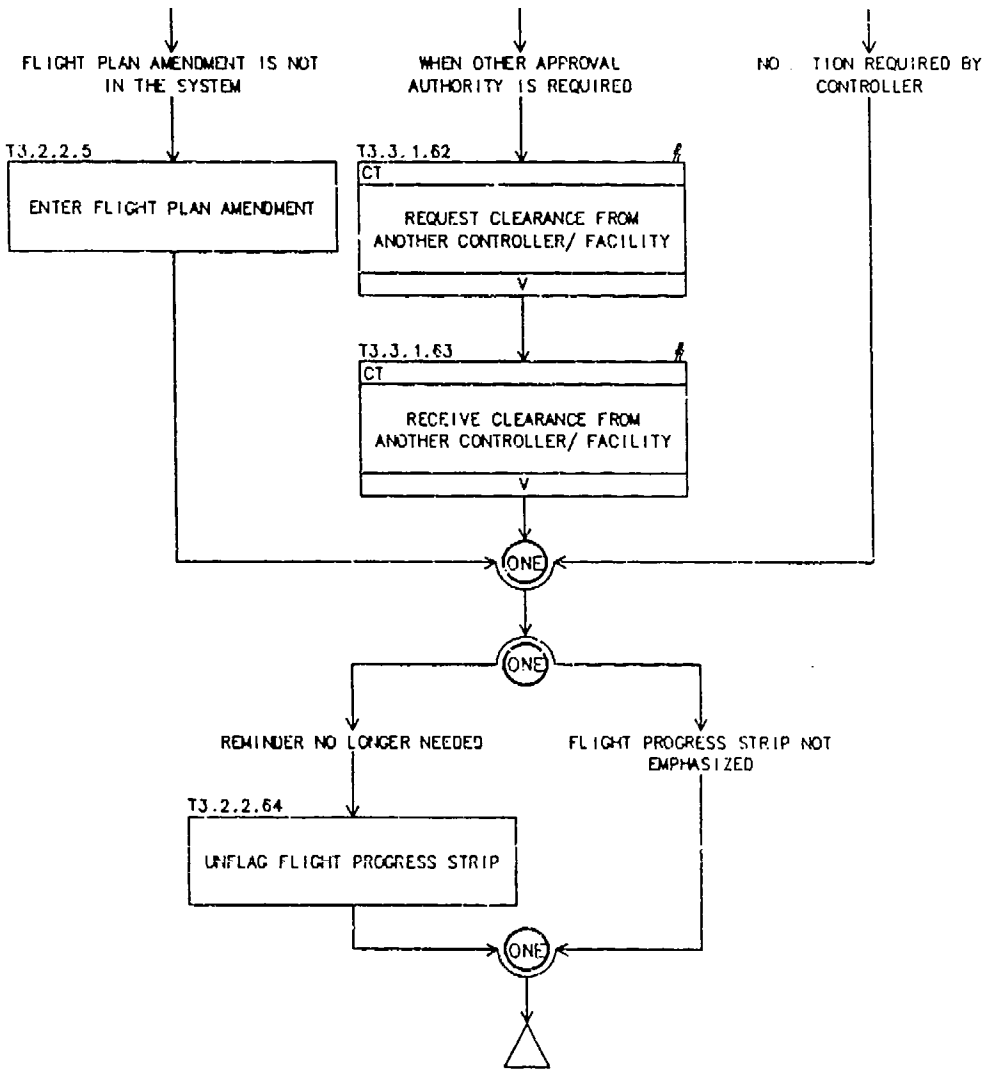
EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST



T3.2.2 PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS (cont.)

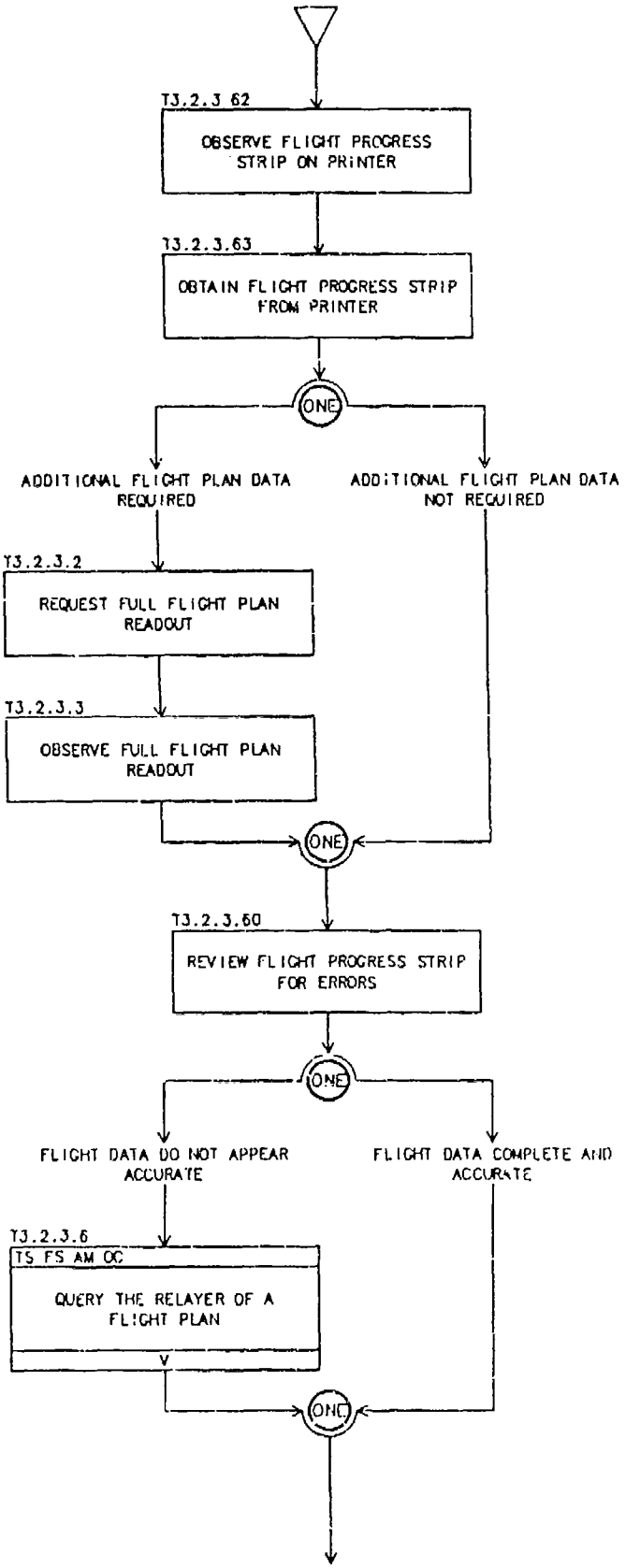


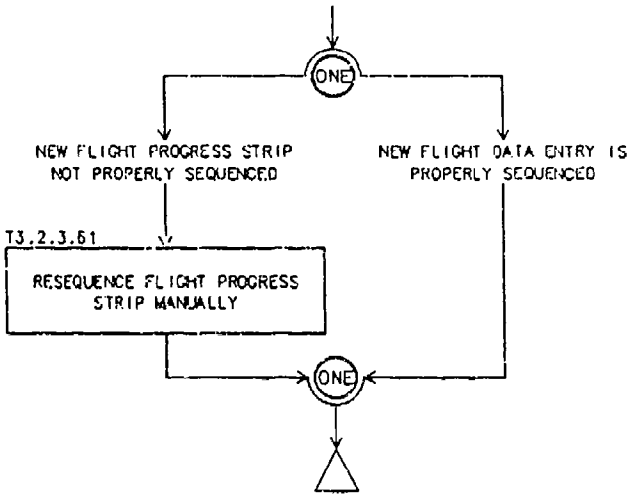
T3.2.2 PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS (cont.)



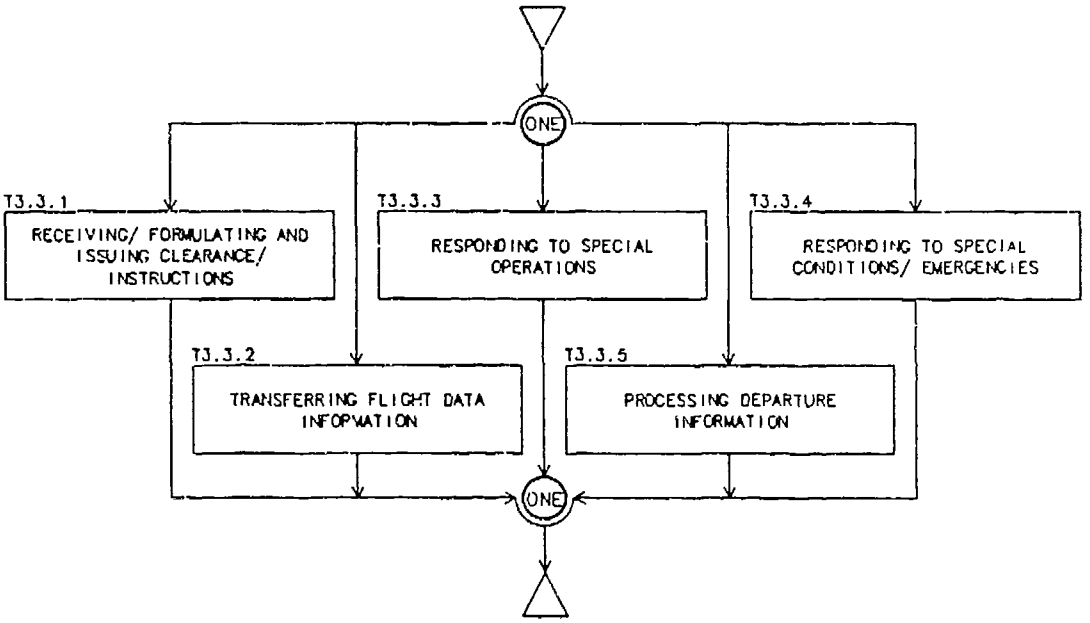
T3.2.3 REVIEWING NEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS

EVENTS: FILED FLIGHT PLAN



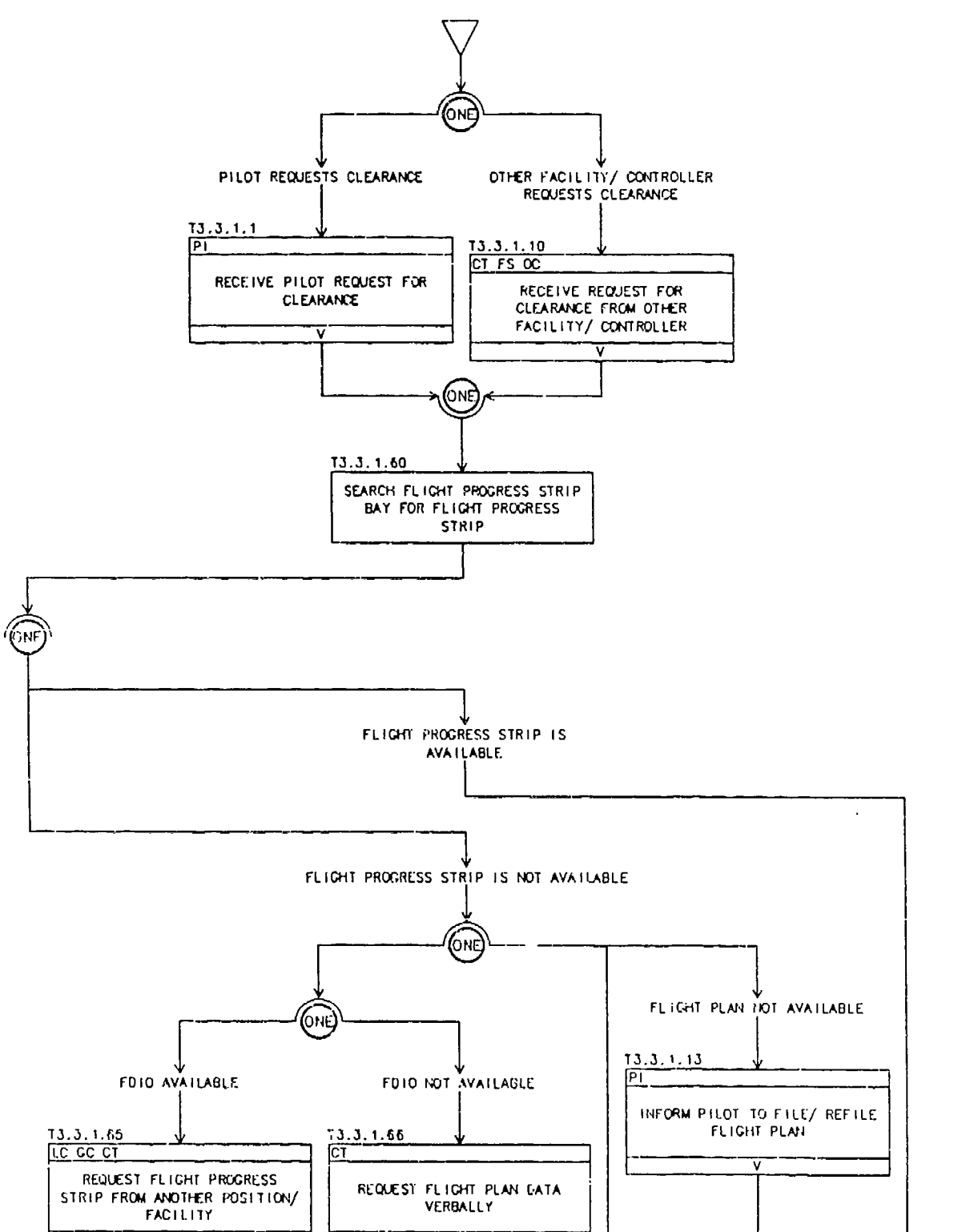

ONE
NEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP NOT PROPERLY SEQUENCED
NEW FLIGHT DATA ENTRY IS PROPERLY SEQUENCED
T3.2.3.61
RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANUALLY
ONE

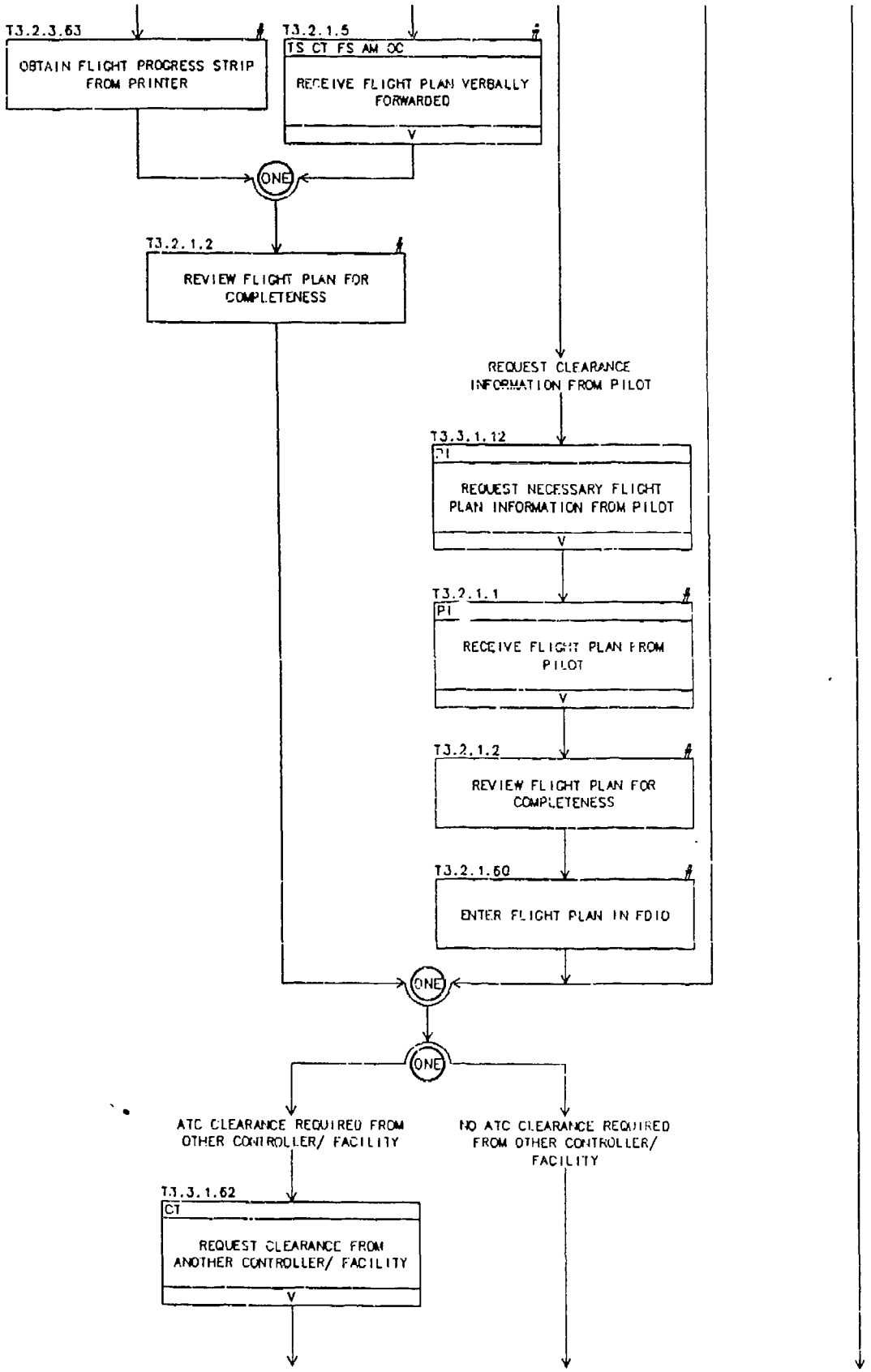
T3.3 MANAGE AIR TRAFFIC SEQUENCES

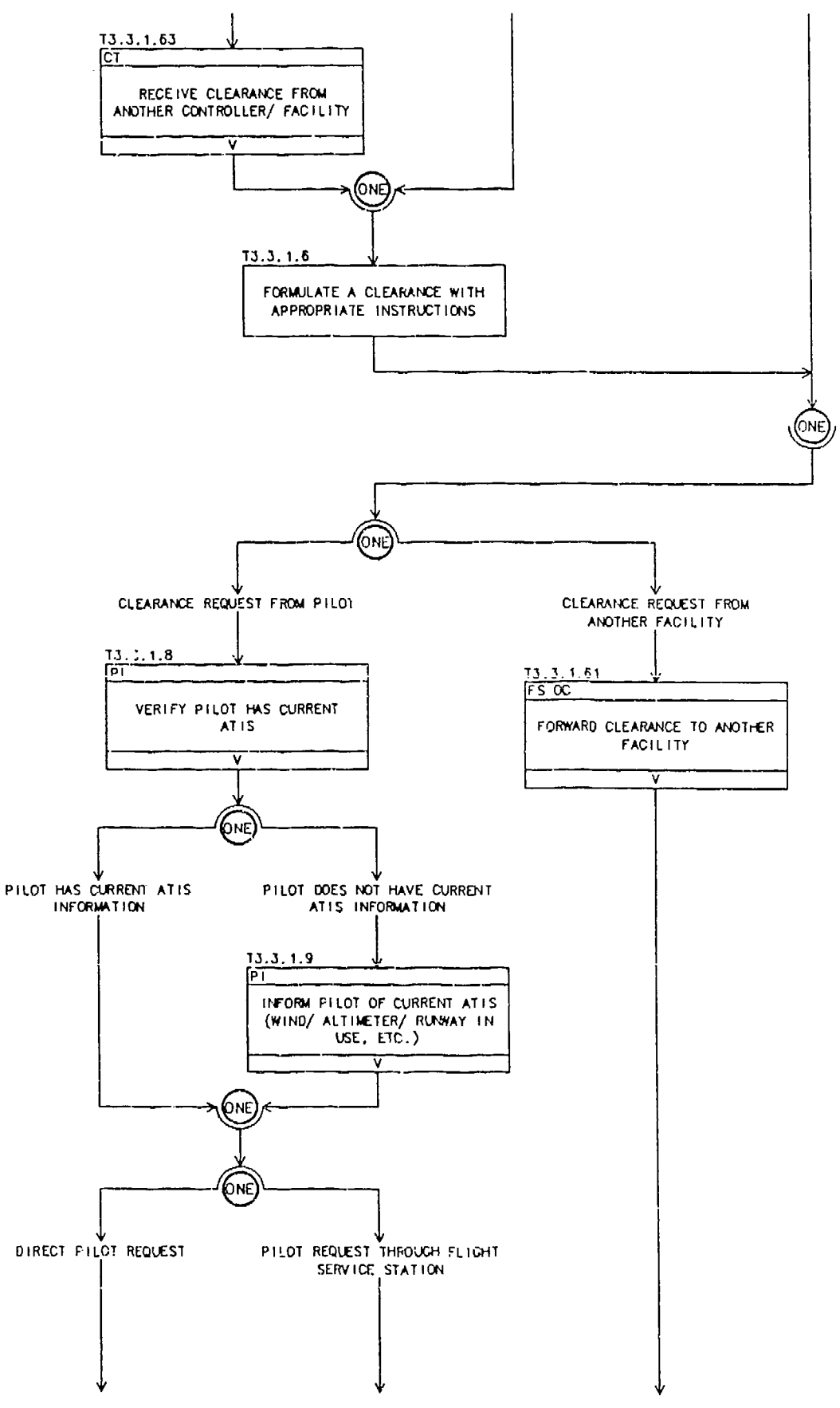


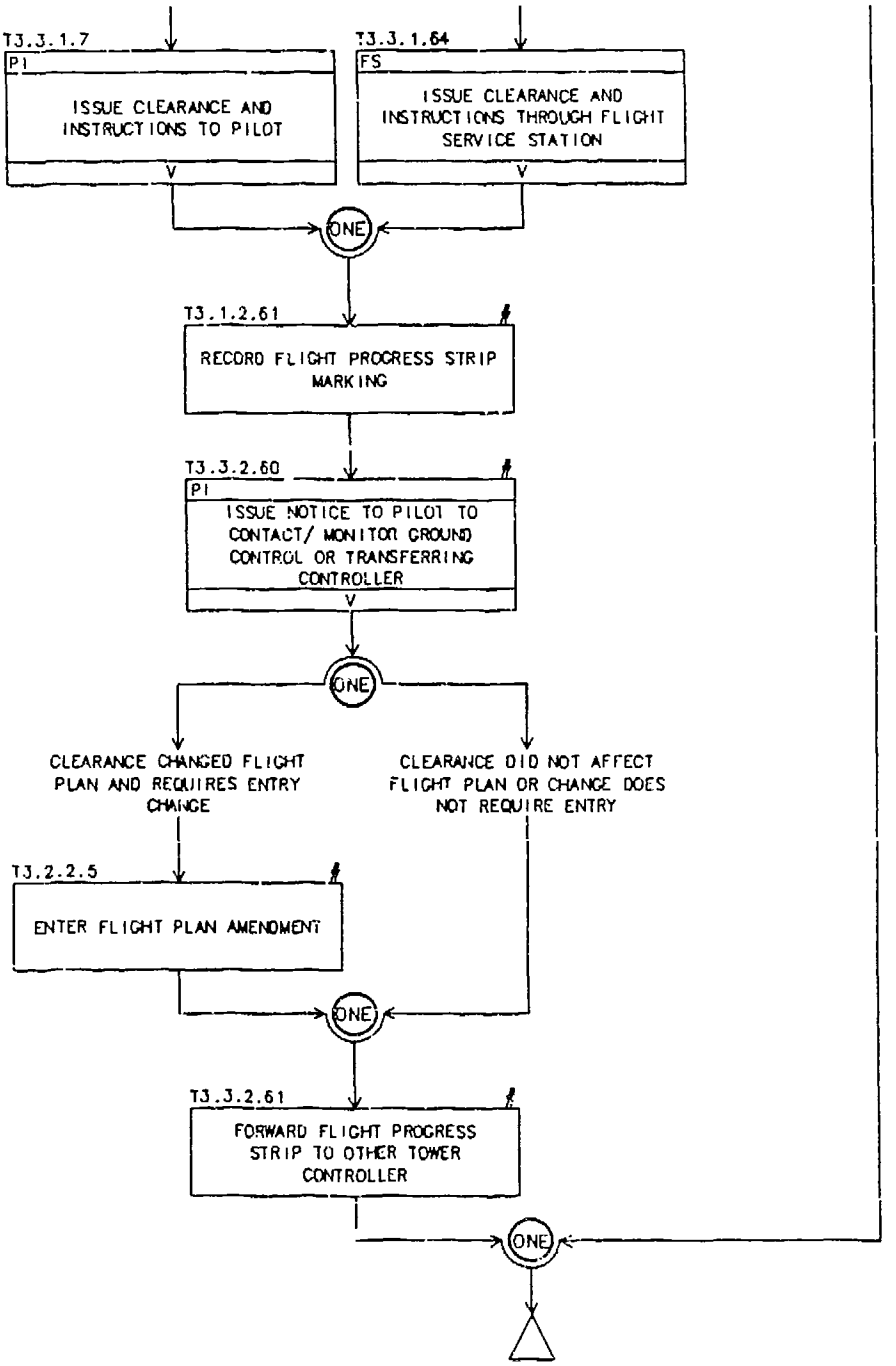
T3.3.1 RECEIVING/ FORMULATING AND ISSUING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS

EVENTS: CLEARANCE REQUEST, CLEARANCE DELIVERY, INITIAL CONTACT



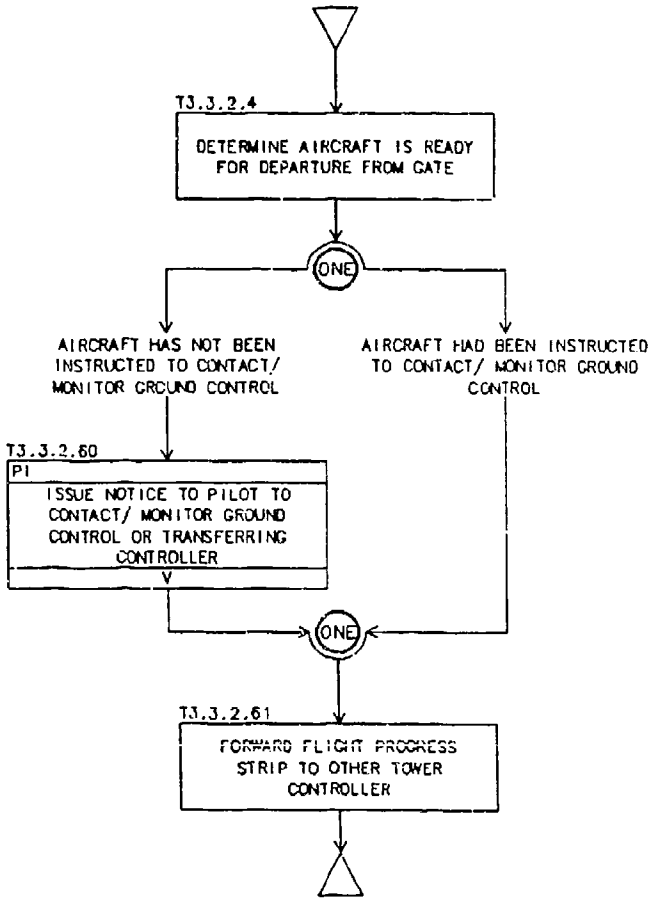

T3.2.3.63
OBTAIN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM PRINTER
T3.2.1.5
TS CT FS AM OC
RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY FORWARDED
V
ONE
T3.2.1.2
REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS
REQUEST CLEARANCE INFORMATION FROM PILOT
T3.3.1.12
PI
REQUEST NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION FROM PILOT
V
T3.2.1.1
PI
RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN FROM PILOT
V
T3.2.1.2
REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS
T3.2.1.60
ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO
ONE
ONE
ATC CLEARANCE REQUIRED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY
NO ATC CLEARANCE REQUIRED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY
T3.3.1.62
CT
REQUEST CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY
V


T3.3.1.63
CT
RECEIVE CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY
ONE
T3.3.1.6
FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS
ONE
ONE
CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM PILOT
CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM ANOTHER FACILITY
T3.3.1.8
PI
VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS
T3.3.1.61
FS OC
FORWARD CLEARANCE TO ANOTHER FACILITY
ONE
PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS INFORMATION
PILOT DOES NOT HAVE CURRENT ATIS INFORMATION
T3.3.1.9
PI
INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)
ONE
ONE
DIRECT PILOT REQUEST
PILOT REQUEST THROUGH FLIGHT SERVICE STATION


T3.3.1.7
PI
ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT
T3.3.1.64
FS
ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS THROUGH FLIGHT SERVICE STATION
ONE
T3.1.2.61
RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING
T3.3.2.60
PI
ISSUE NOTICE TO PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR GROUND CONTROL OR TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER
ONE
CLEARANCE CHANGED FLIGHT PLAN AND REQUIRES ENTRY CHANGE
CLEARANCE DID NOT AFFECT FLIGHT PLAN OR CHANGE DOES NOT REQUIRE ENTRY
T3.2.2.5
ENTER FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT
ONE
T3.3.2.61
FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER
ONE

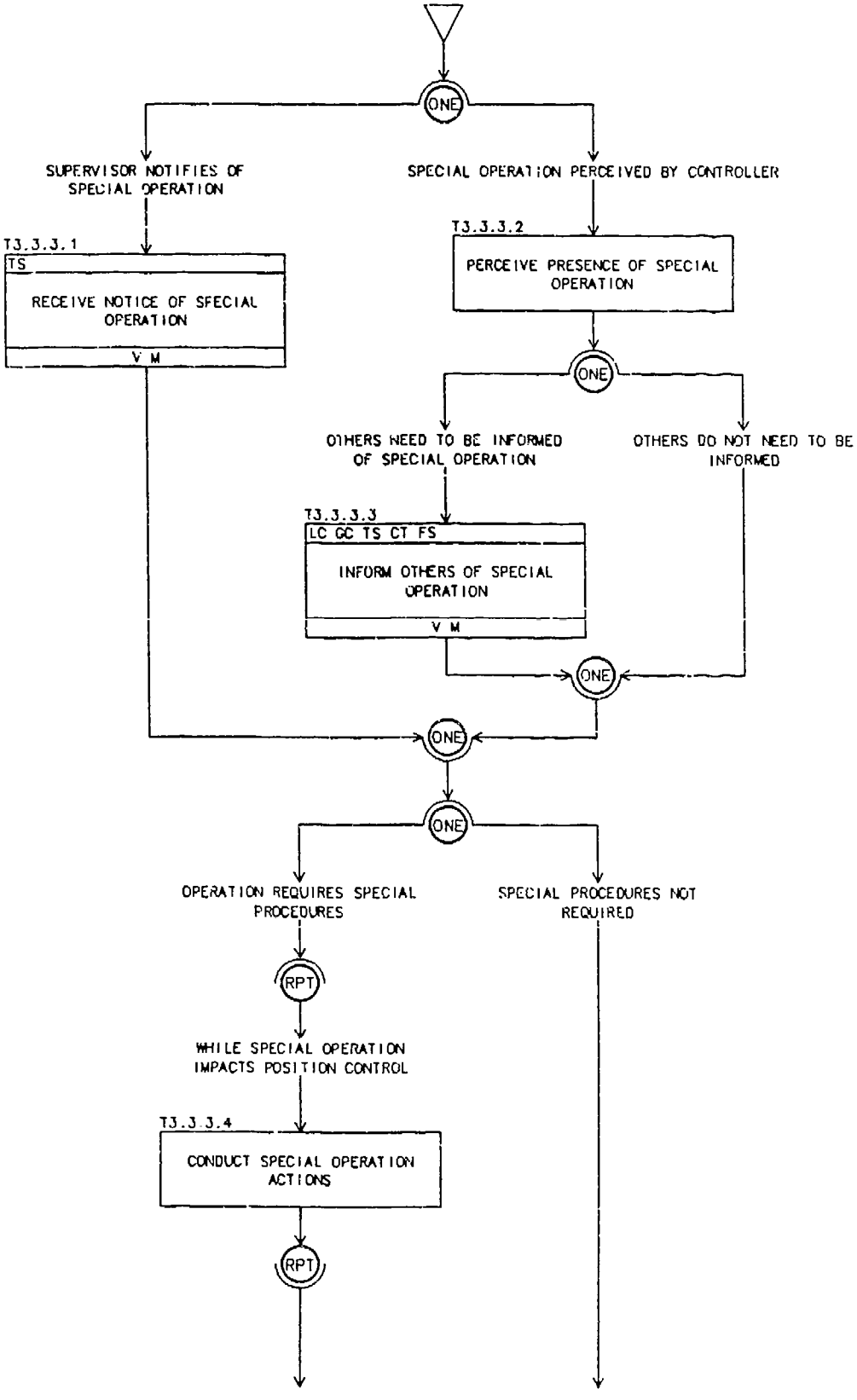
T3.3.2 TRANSFERRING FLIGHT DATA INFORMATION

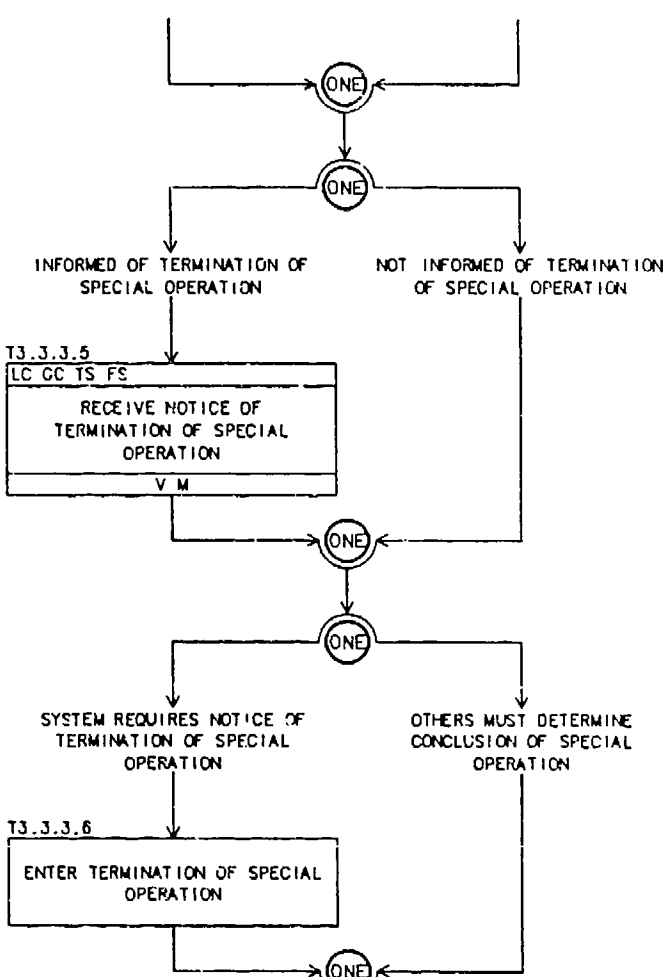
EVENTS: AIRCRAFT ENTERING/ LEAVING AREA OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY



T3.3.3 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS

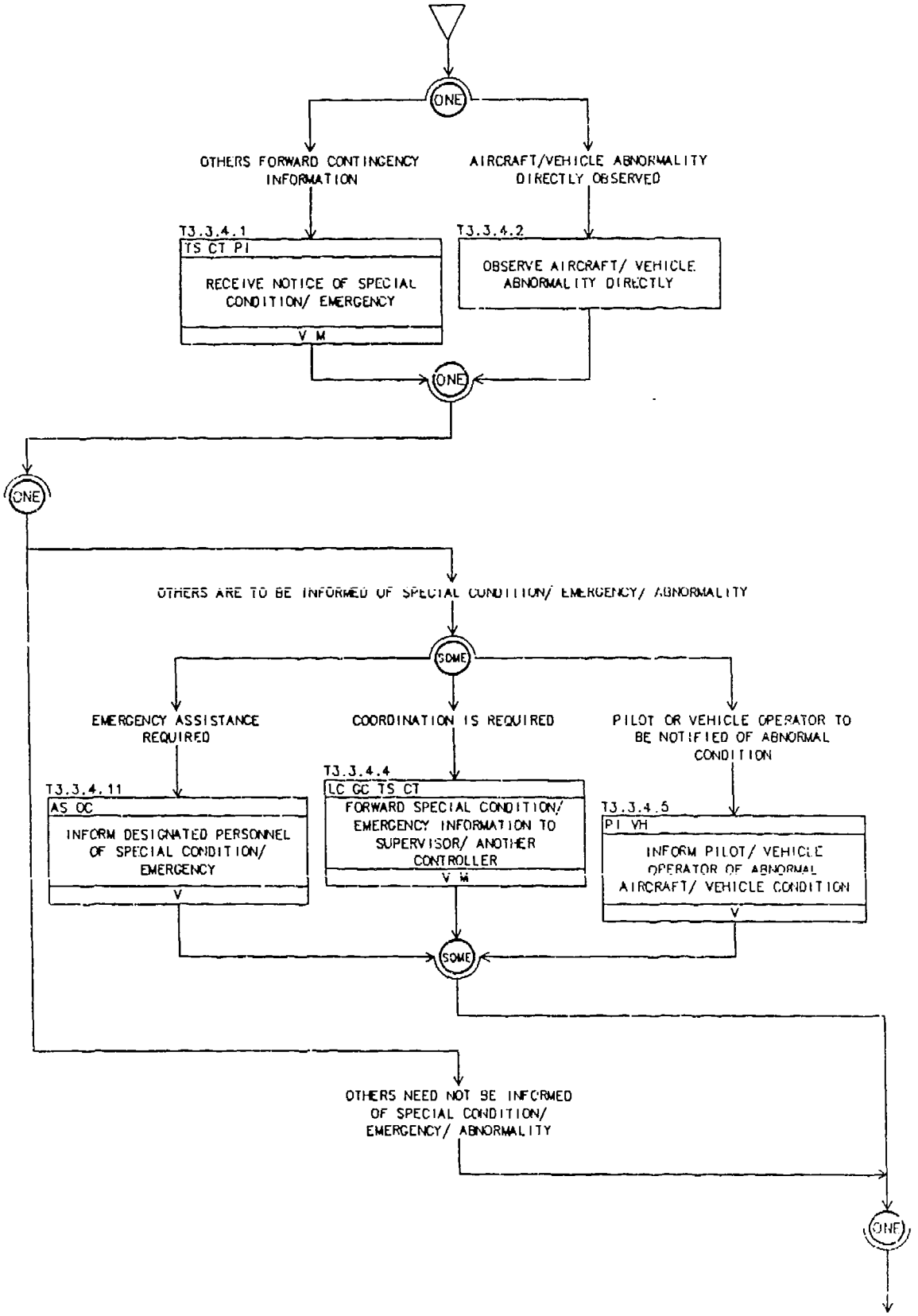
EVENTS: GENERAL INTEREST FLIGHT, EXPERIMENTAL FLIGHT, HAZARDOUS CARGO, HELICOPTER OPERATION, LAW ENFORCEMENT, LIFEGUARD MISSION, MILITARY OPERATION

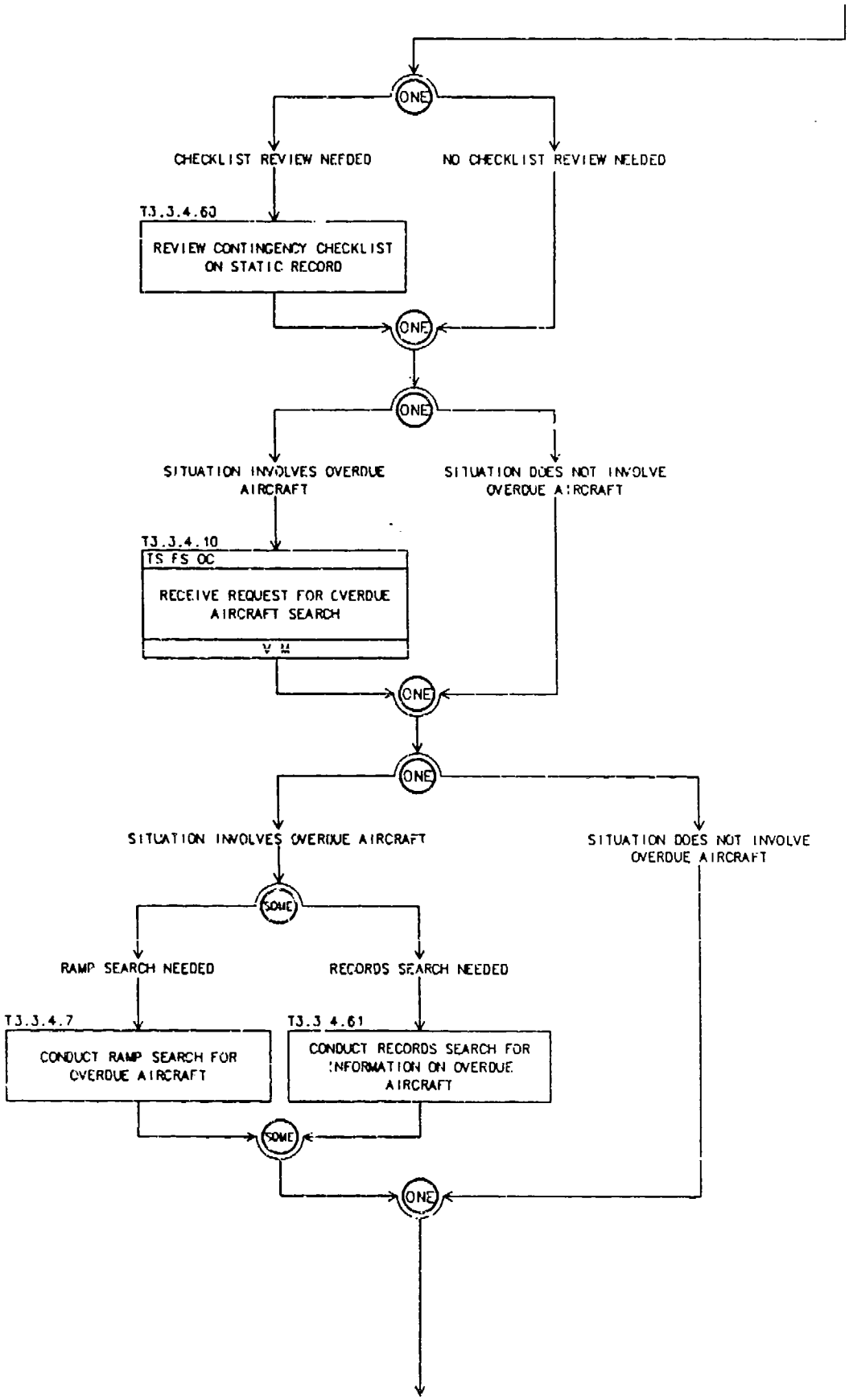


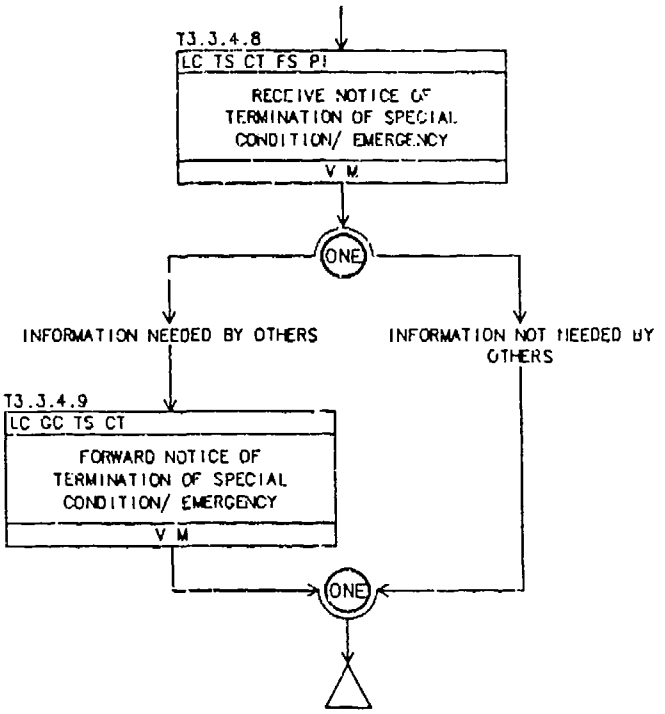

ONE
ONE
INFORMED OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
NOT INFORMED OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
T3.3.3.5
LC GC TS FS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
V M
ONE
ONE
SYSTEM REQUIRES NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
OTHERS MUST DETERMINE CONCLUSION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
T3.3.3.6
ENTER TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION
ONE

T3.3.4 RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES

EVENTS: NO RADIO, AIRCRAFT EMERGENCY/ INCIDENT – GROUND, BOMB THREAT, HIJACK, MEDICAL EMERGENCY

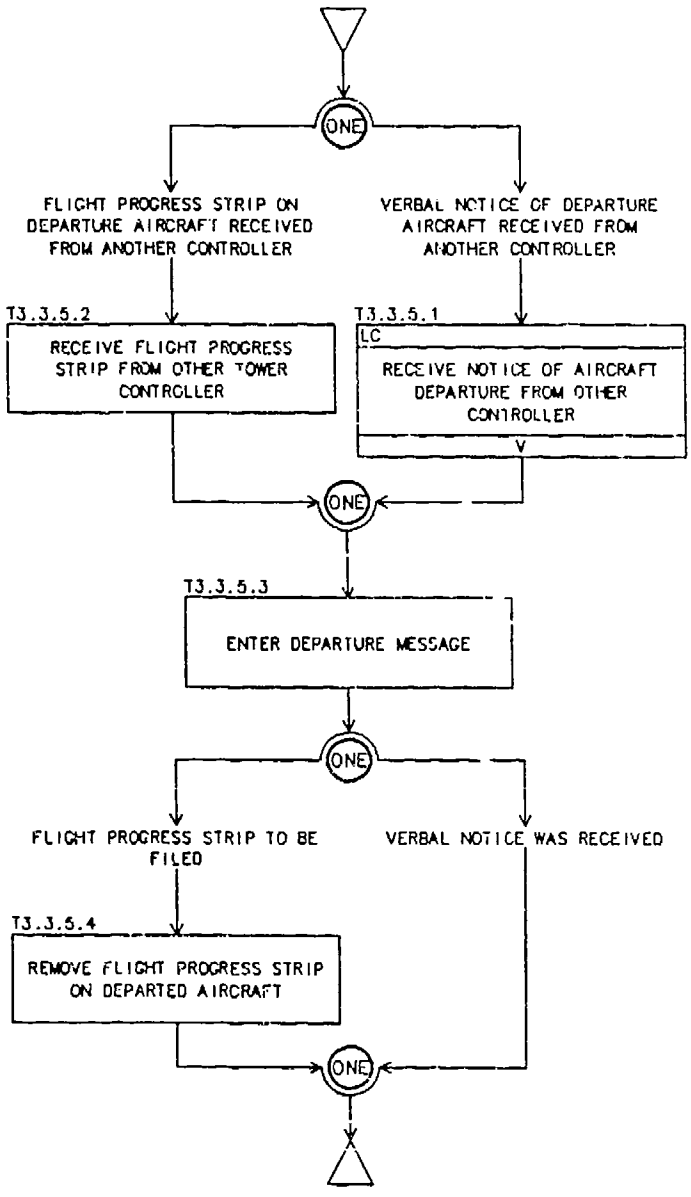



ONE
CHECKLIST REVIEW NEEDED
NO CHECKLIST REVIEW NEEDED
T3.3.4.60
REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD
ONE
ONE
SITUATION INVOLVES OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
SITUATION DOES NOT INVOLVE OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
T3.3.4.10
TS FS OC
RECEIVE REQUEST FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT SEARCH
V M
ONE
ONE
SITUATION INVOLVES OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
SITUATION DOES NOT INVOLVE OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
SOME
RAMP SEARCH NEEDED
RECORDS SEARCH NEEDED
T3.3.4.7
CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
T3.3.4.61
CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR INFORMATION ON OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
SOME
ONE

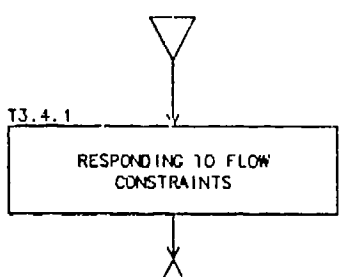

T3.3.4.8
LC TS CT FS PI
RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
V M
ONE
INFORMATION NEEDED BY OTHERS
INFORMATION NOT NEEDED BY OTHERS
T3.3.4.9
LC GC TS CT
FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY
V M
ONE

T3.3.5 PROCESSING DEPARTURE INFORMATION

EVENTS: AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF, DEPARTURE TIME RECEIPT

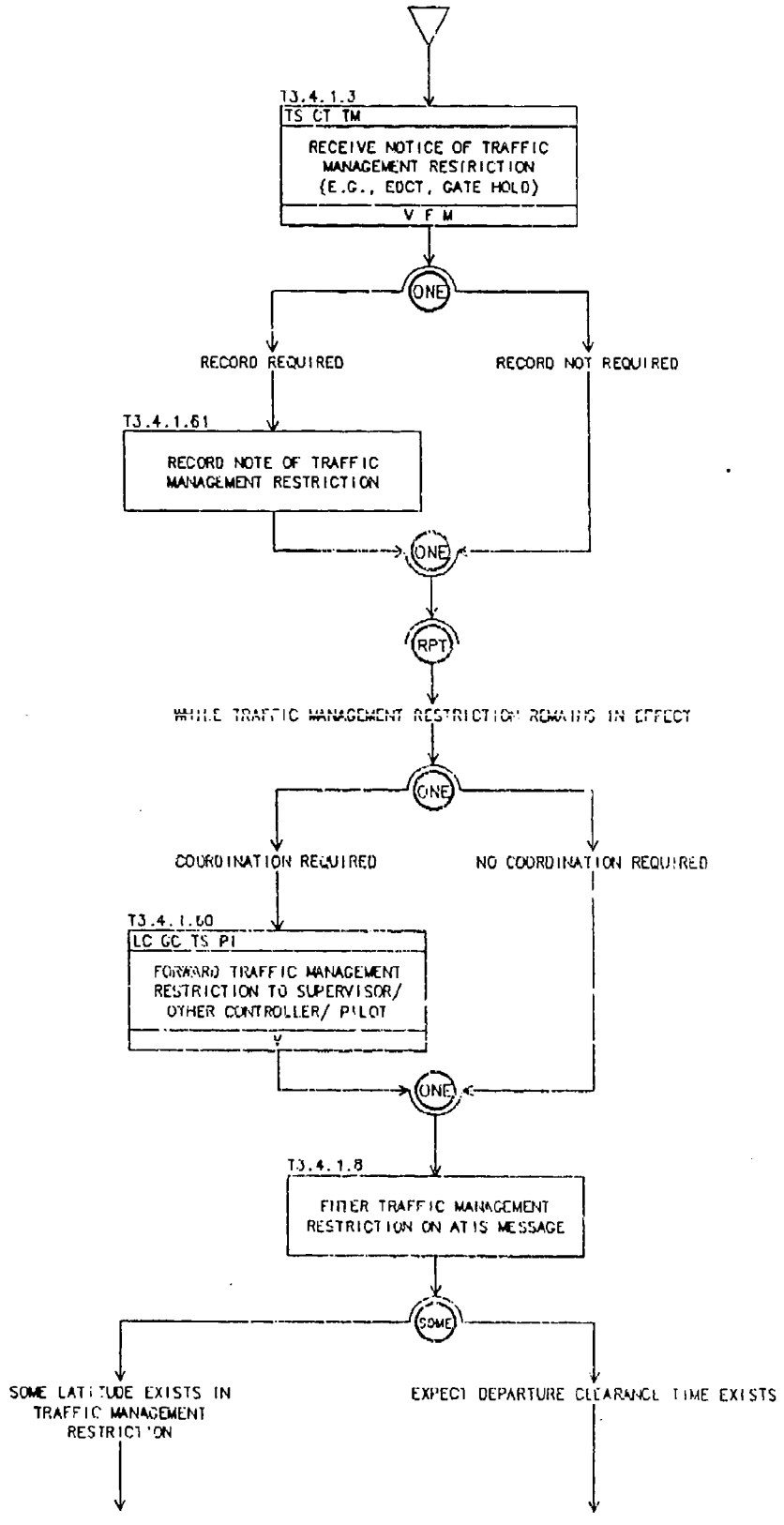


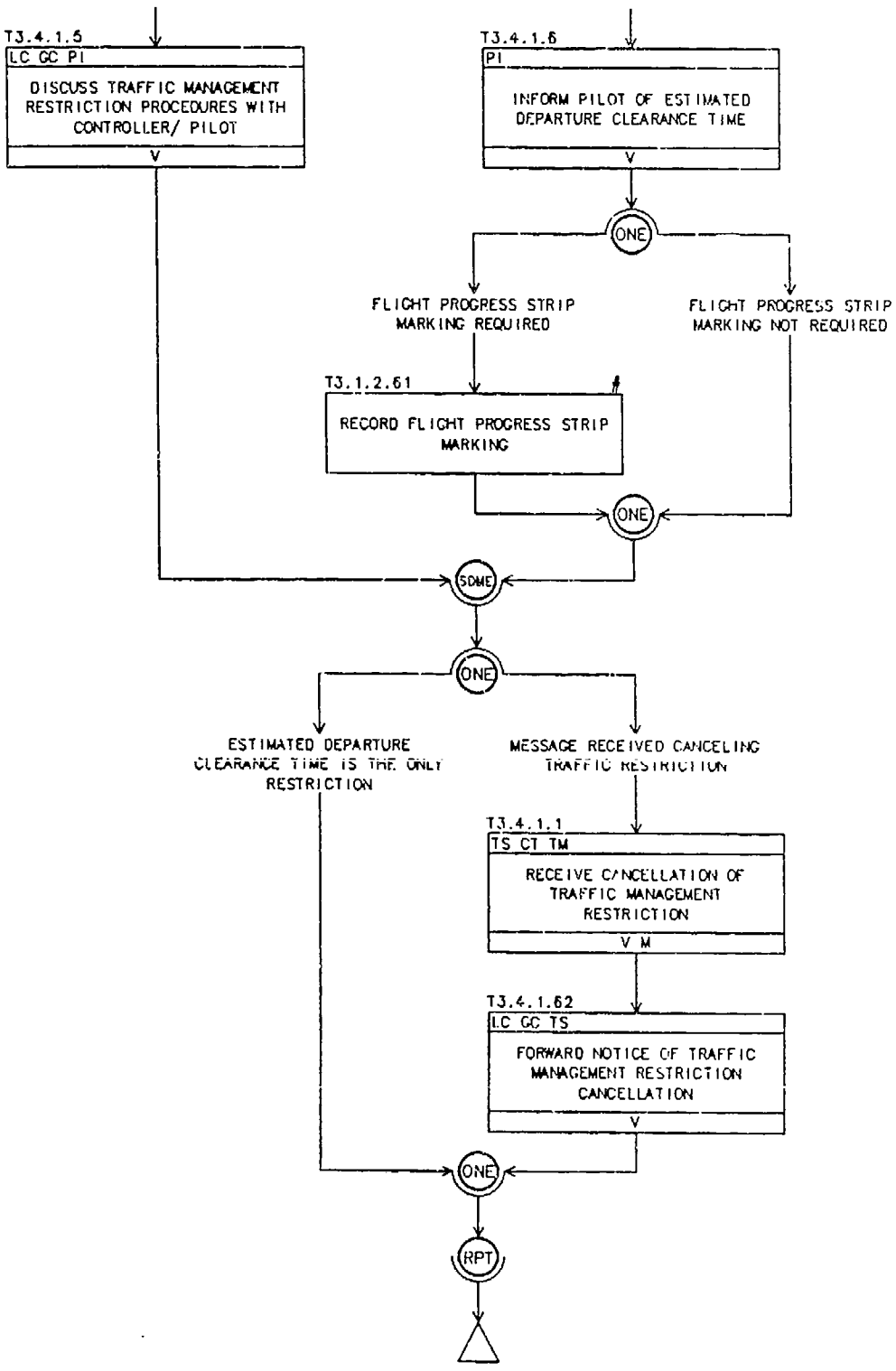
T3.4 RESPOND TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS



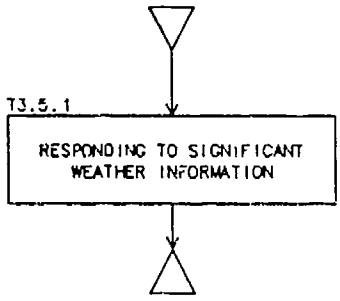
T3.4.1 RESPONDING TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS

EVENTS: CHANGE FLOW PATTERN, FLOW MANAGEMENT



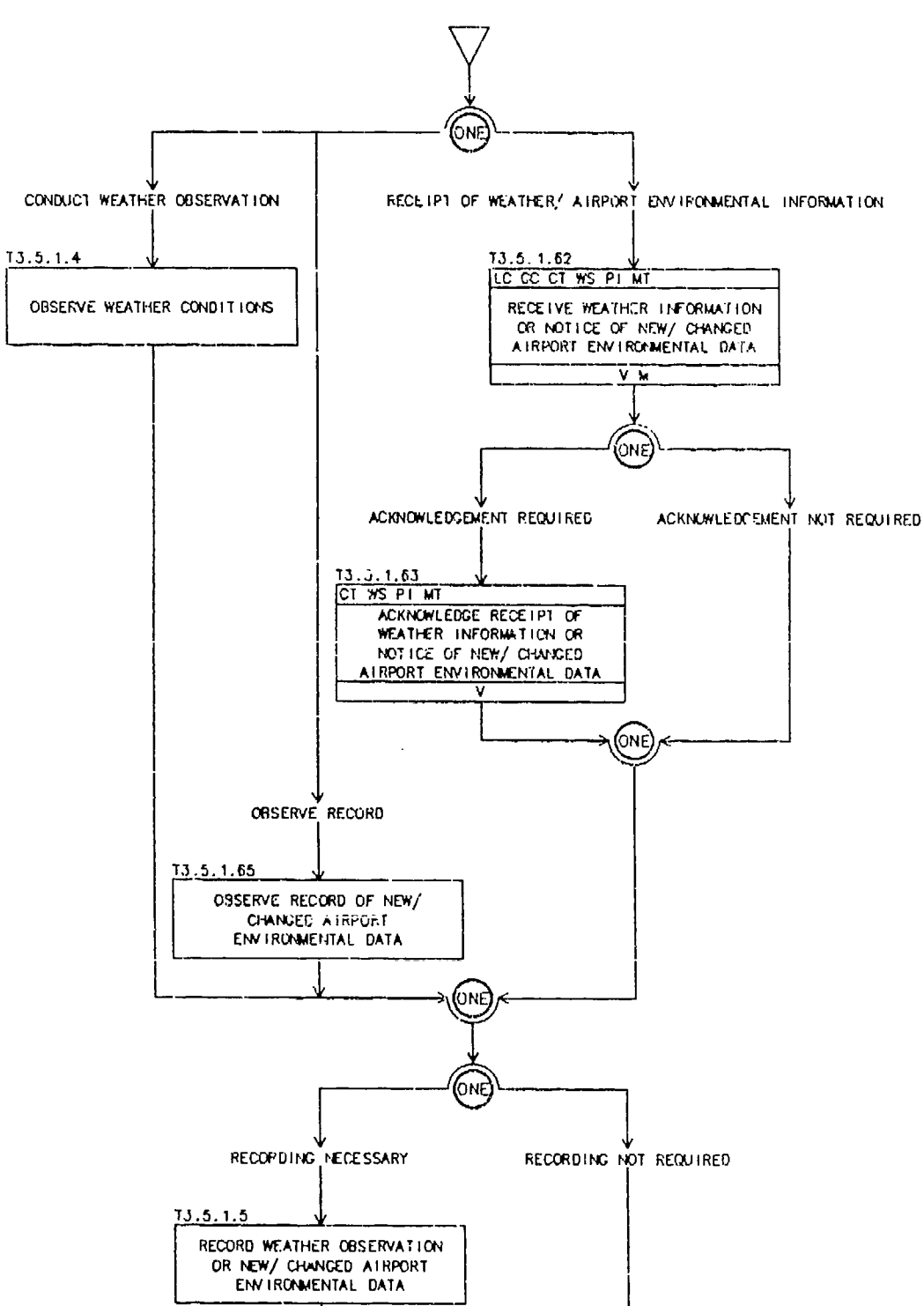

T3.4.1.5
LC GC PI
DISCUSS TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION PROCEDURES WITH CONTROLLER/ PILOT
V
T3.4.1.6
PI
INFORM PILOT OF ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME
V
ONE
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING REQUIRED
FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING NOT REQUIRED
T3.1.2.61
#
RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING
ONE
SOME
ONE
ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME IS THE ONLY RESTRICTION
MESSAGE RECEIVED CANCELING TRAFFIC RESTRICTION
T3.4.1.1
TS CT TM
RECEIVE CANCELLATION OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION
V M
T3.4.1.62
LC GC TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION CANCELLATION
V
ONE
RPT

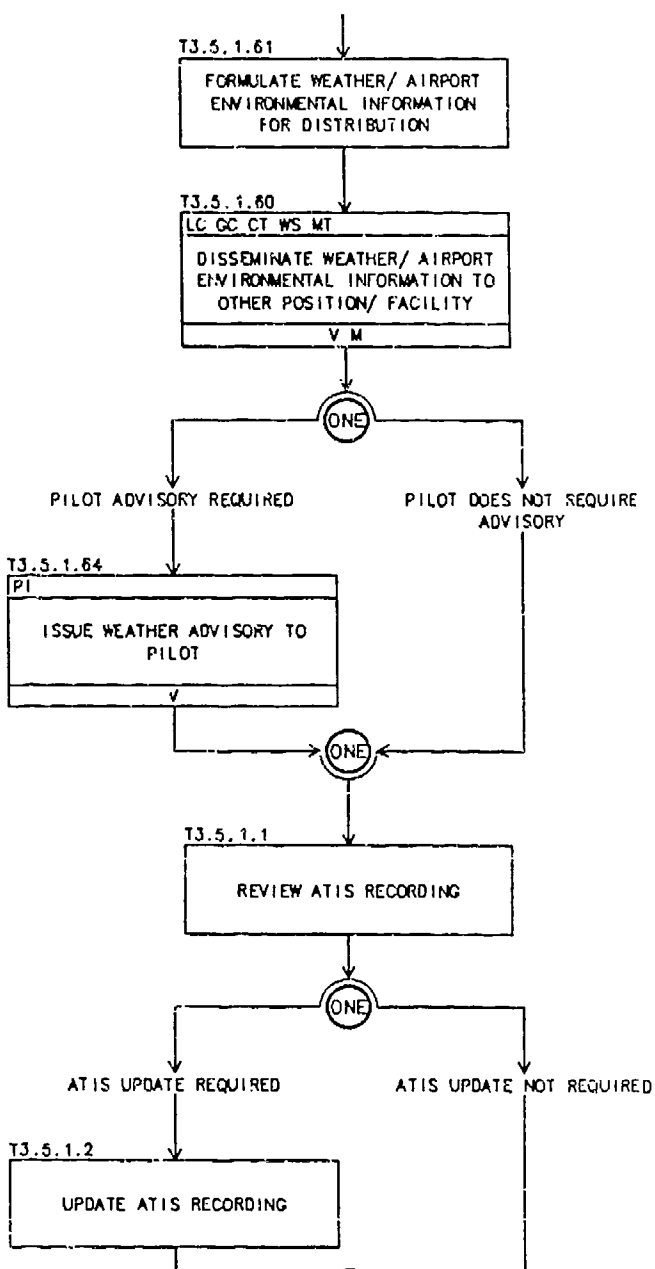
T3.5 ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT



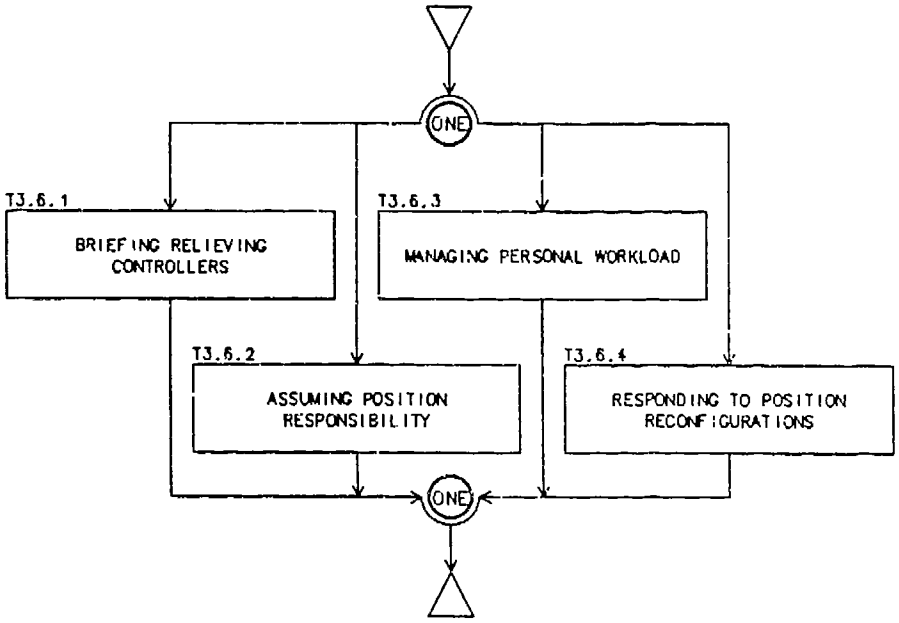
T3.5.1 RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION

EVENTS: SEVERE WEATHER, PRESSURE DISPLAY/ REPORT, CEILING HEIGHT DISPLAY/ REPORT, PIREP, SIGMET/ AIRMET, VISIBILITY REPORT/ OBSERVATION, WIND SHEAR REPORT/ OBSERVATION, WIND SPEED/ DIRECTION REPORT/ OBSERVATION



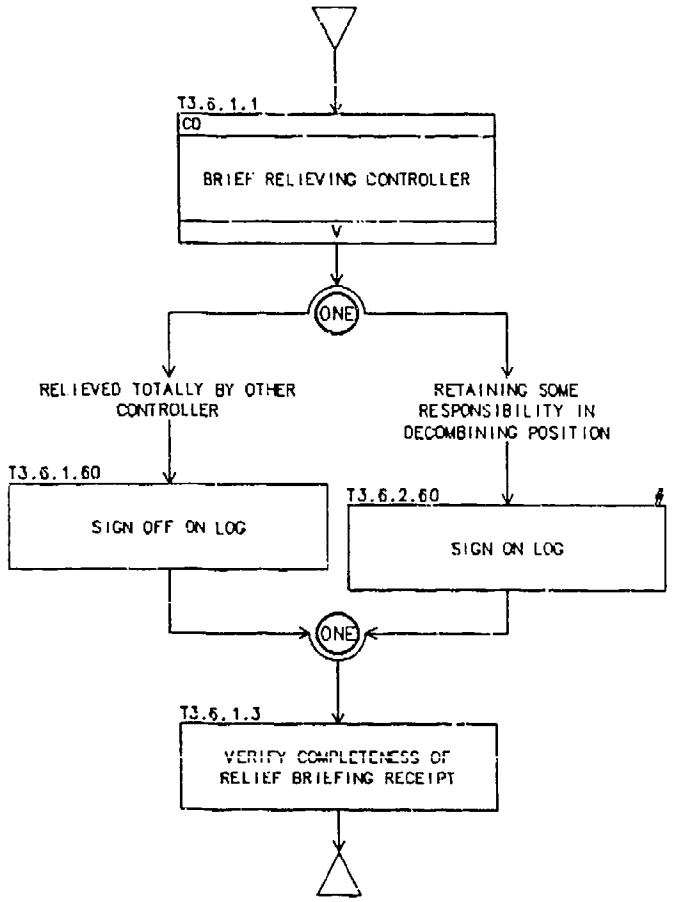

T3.5.1.61
FORMULATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION FOR DISTRIBUTION
T3.5.1.60
LC GC CT WS MT
DISSEMINATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY
V M
ONE
PILOT ADVISORY REQUIRED
PILOT DOES NOT REQUIRE ADVISORY
T3.5.1.64
PI
ISSUE WEATHER ADVISORY TO PILOT
ONE
T3.5.1.1
REVIEW ATIS RECORDING
ONE
ATIS UPDATE REQUIRED
ATIS UPDATE NOT REQUIRED
T3.5.1.2
UPDATE ATIS RECORDING
ONE

T3.6 MANAGE CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES



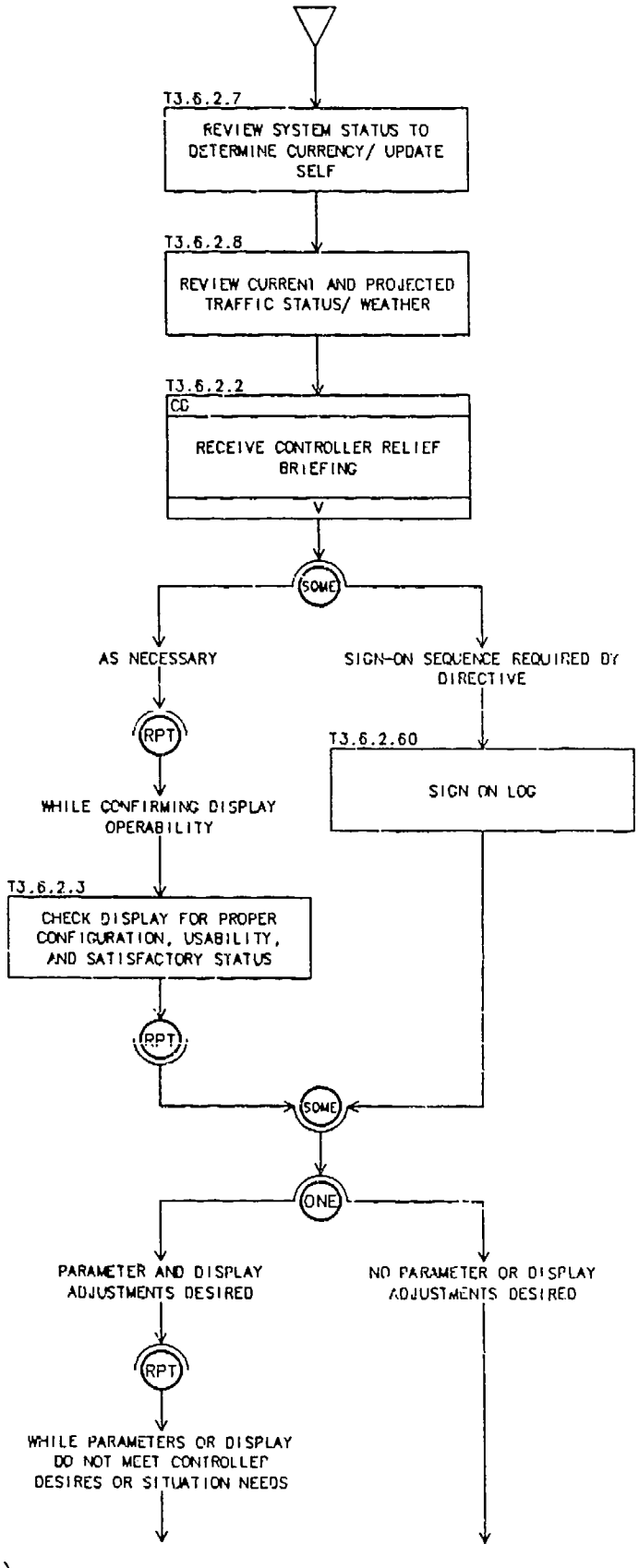
T3.6.1 BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS

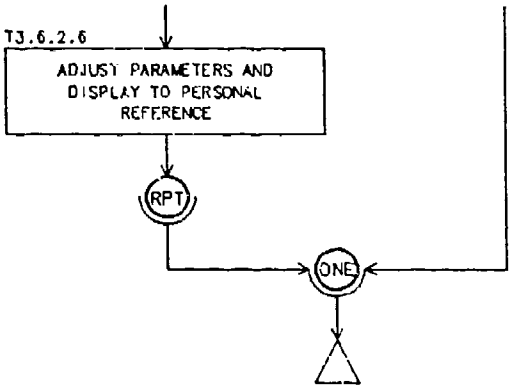
EVENTS: POSITION RELIEF



T3.6.2 ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

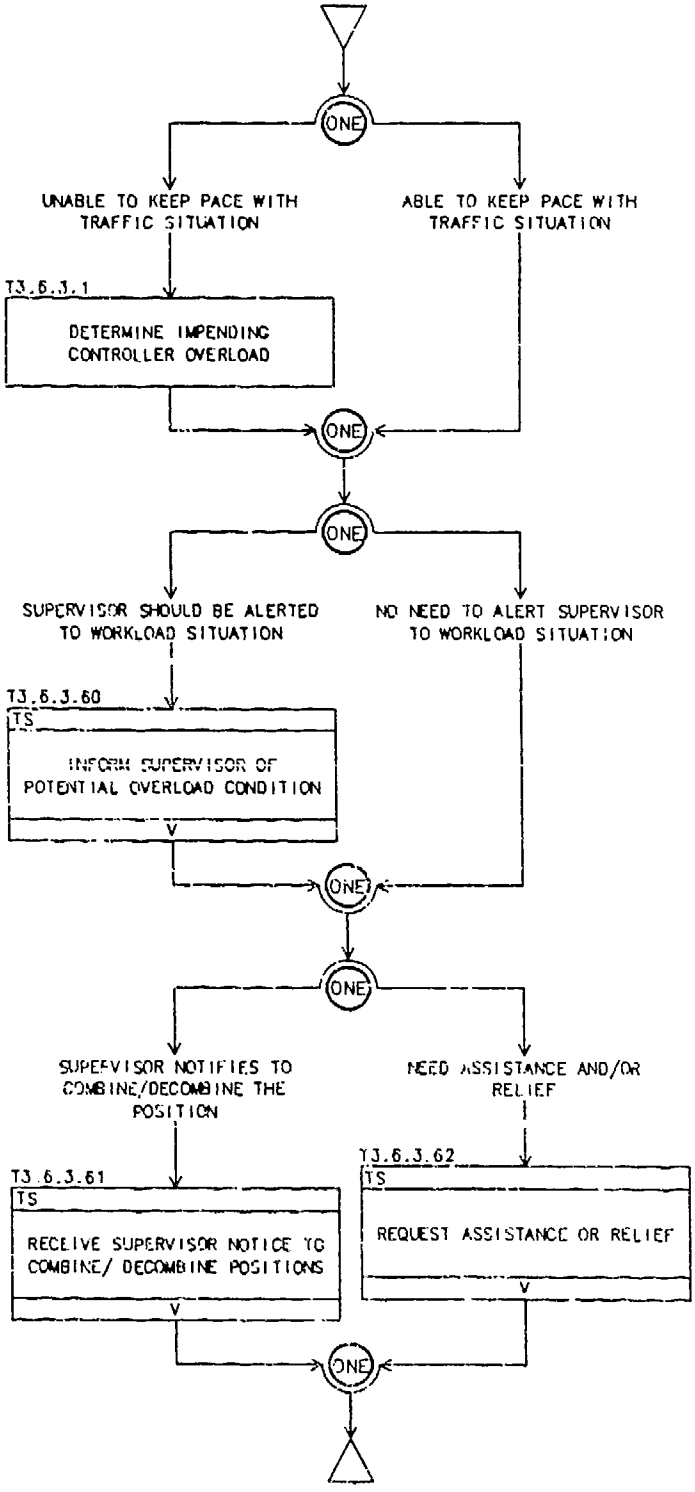
EVENTS: POSITION RELIEF




T3.6.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL REFERENCE
RPT
ONE

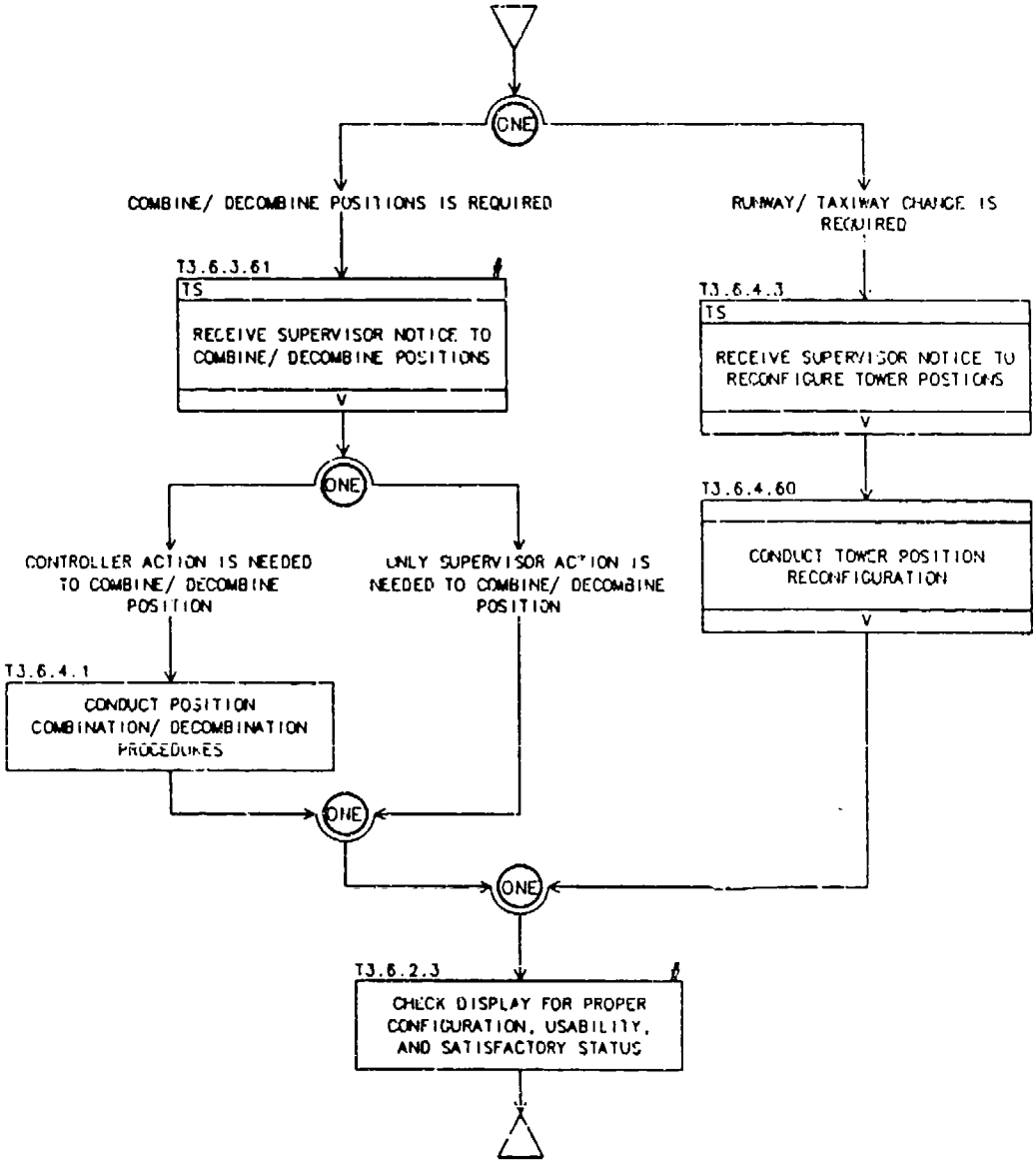
T3.6.3 MANAGING PERSONAL WORKLOAD

EVENTS: CONTROLLER OVERLOAD

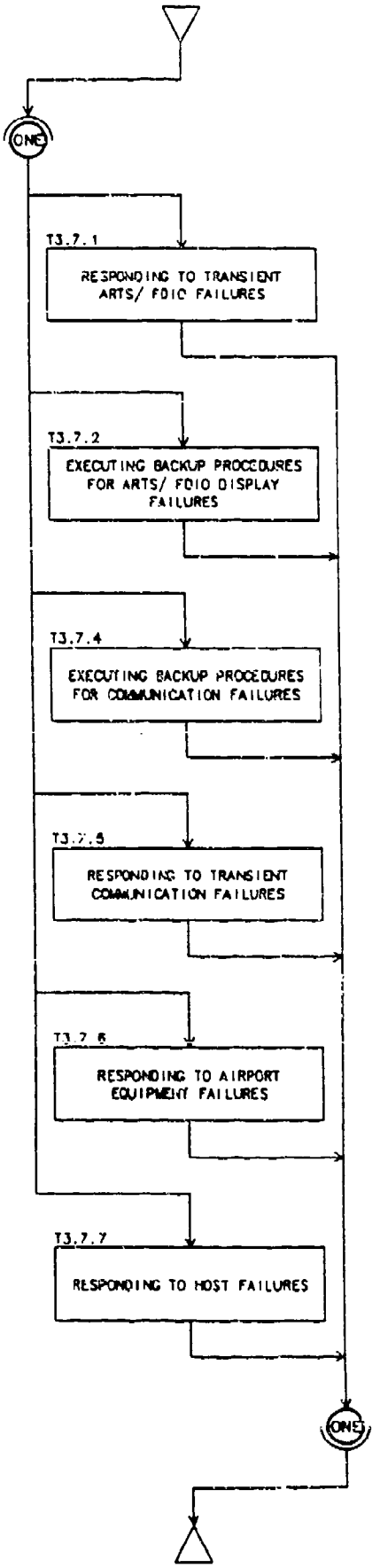


T3.6.4 RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS

EVENTS: POSITION CONSOLIDATION/ DECONSOLIDATION

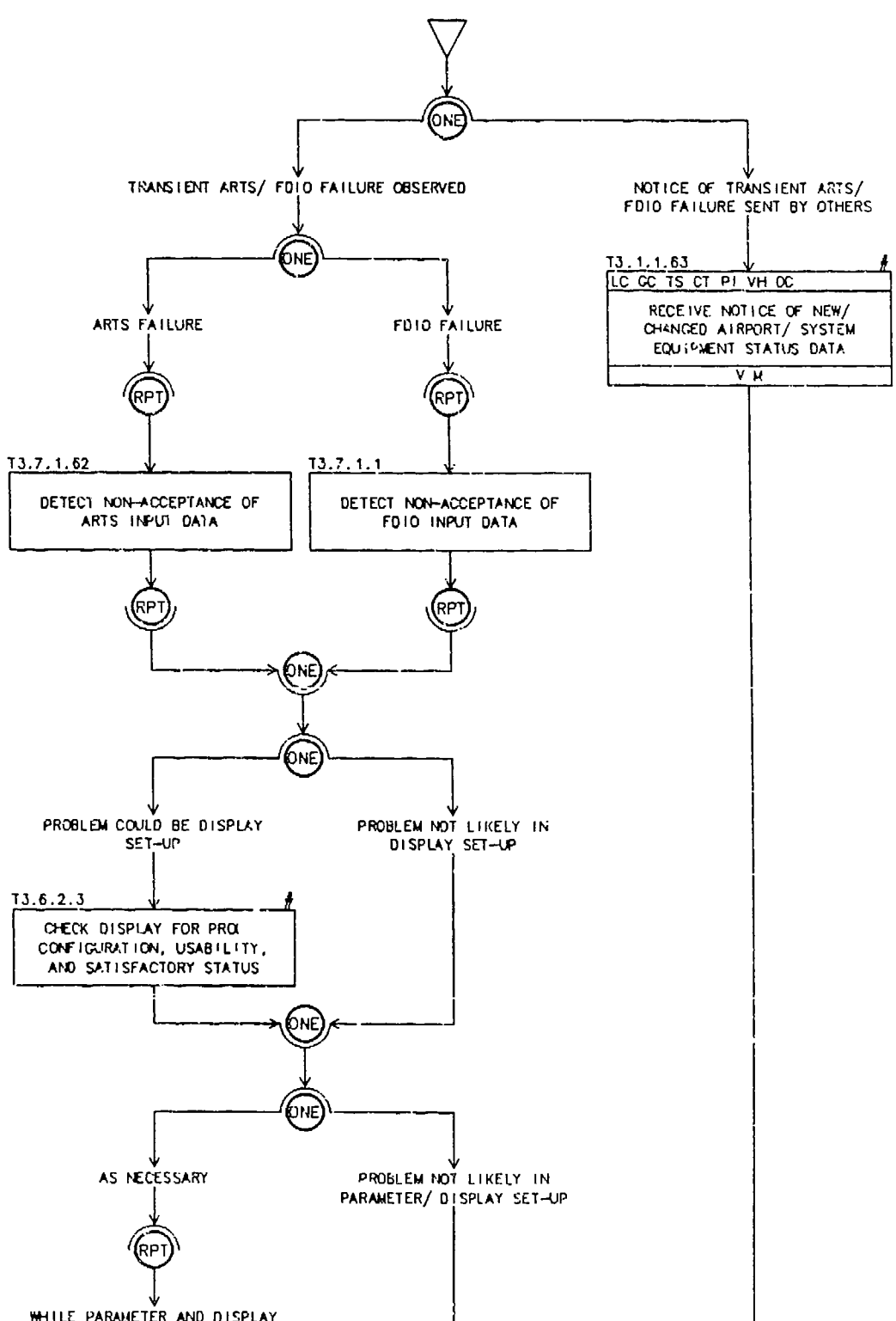


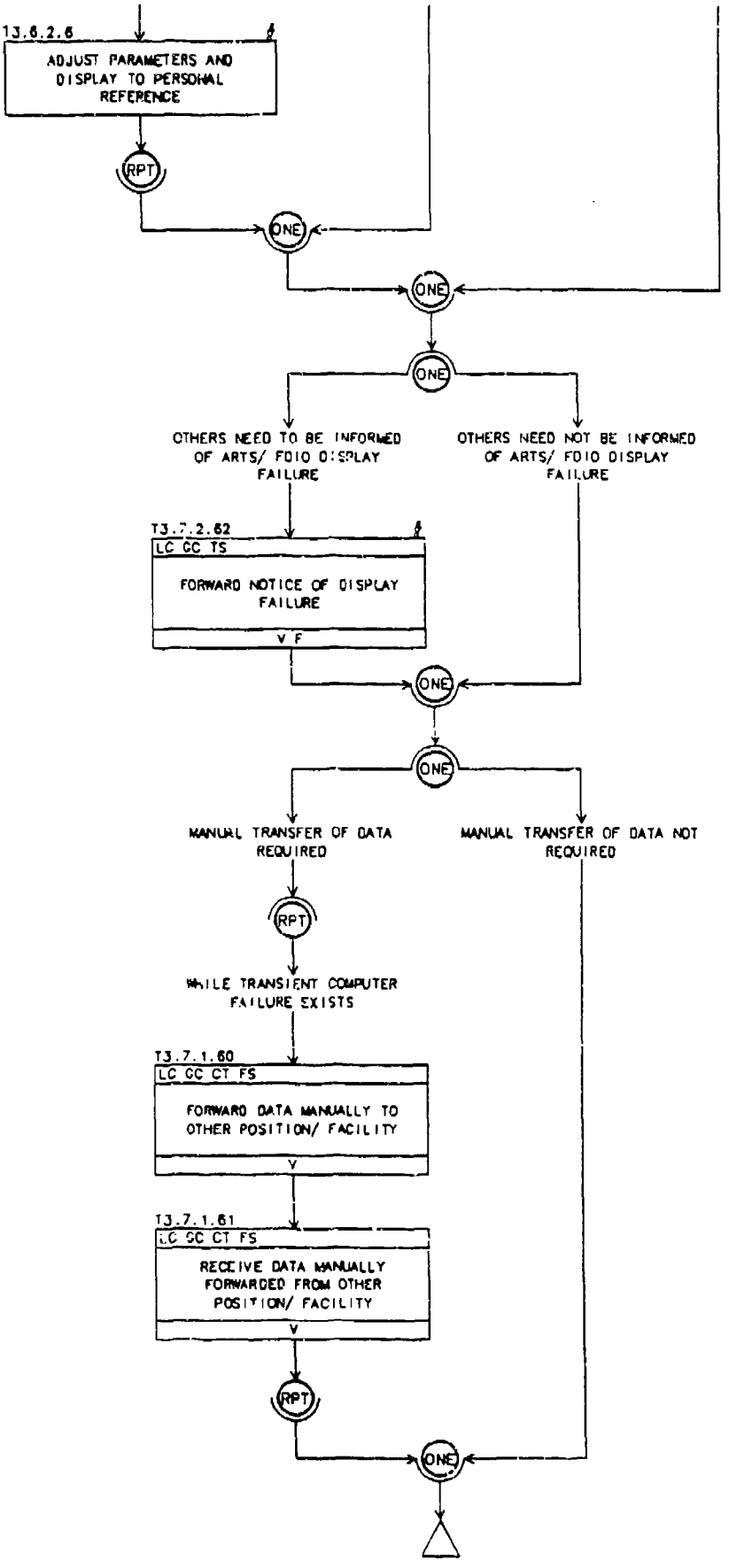
T3.7 RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION



T3.7.1 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS/ FDIO FAILURES

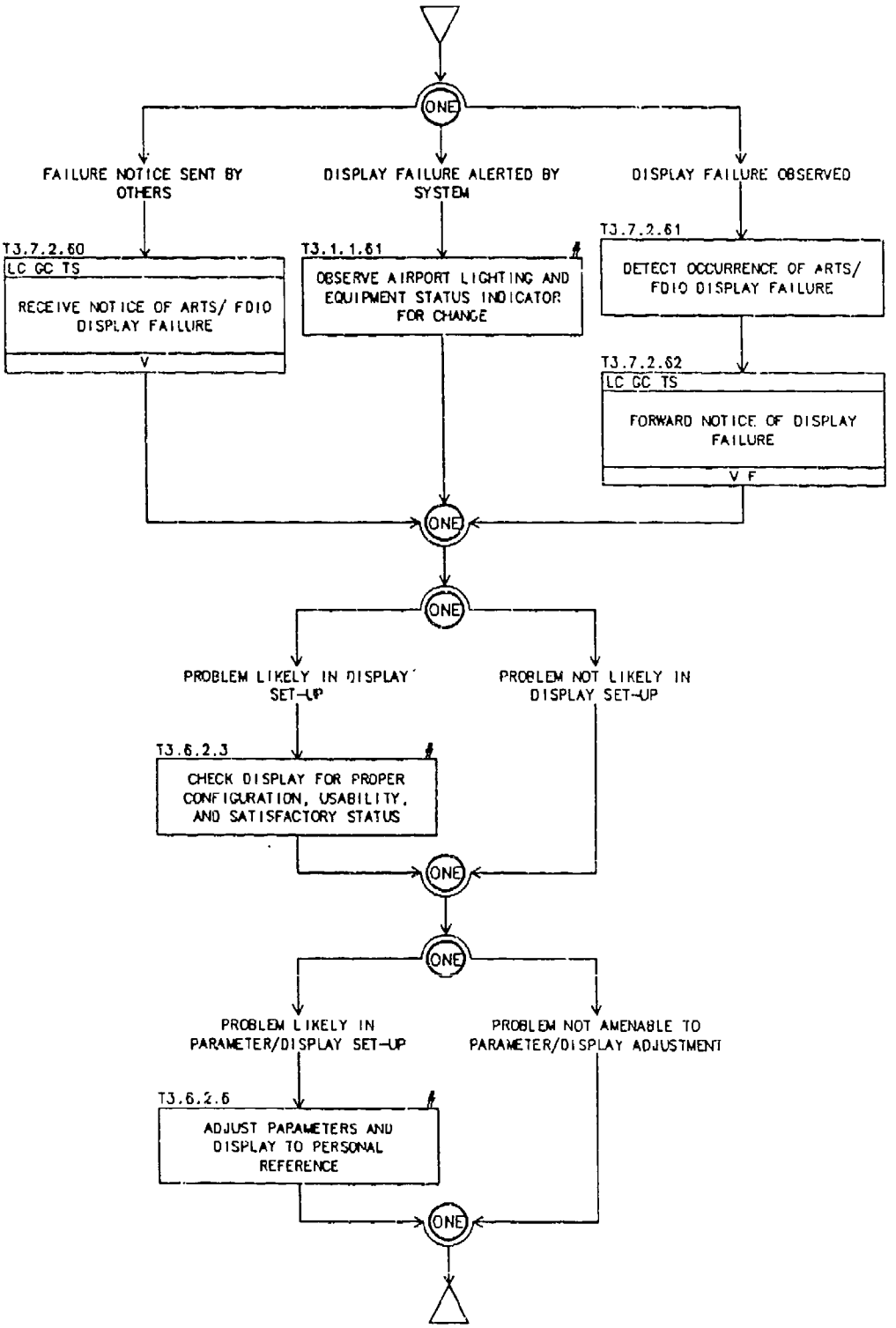
EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE




T3.6.2.6
ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL REFERENCE
RPT
ONE
ONE
ONE
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE
OTHERS NEED NOT BE INFORMED OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE
T3.7.2.62
LC GC TS
FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY FAILURE
V F
ONE
ONE
MANUAL TRANSFER OF DATA REQUIRED
MANUAL TRANSFER OF DATA NOT REQUIRED
RPT
WHILE TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE EXISTS
T3.7.1.60
LC GC CT FS
FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY
V
T3.7.1.61
LC GC CT FS
RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY
V
RPT
ONE

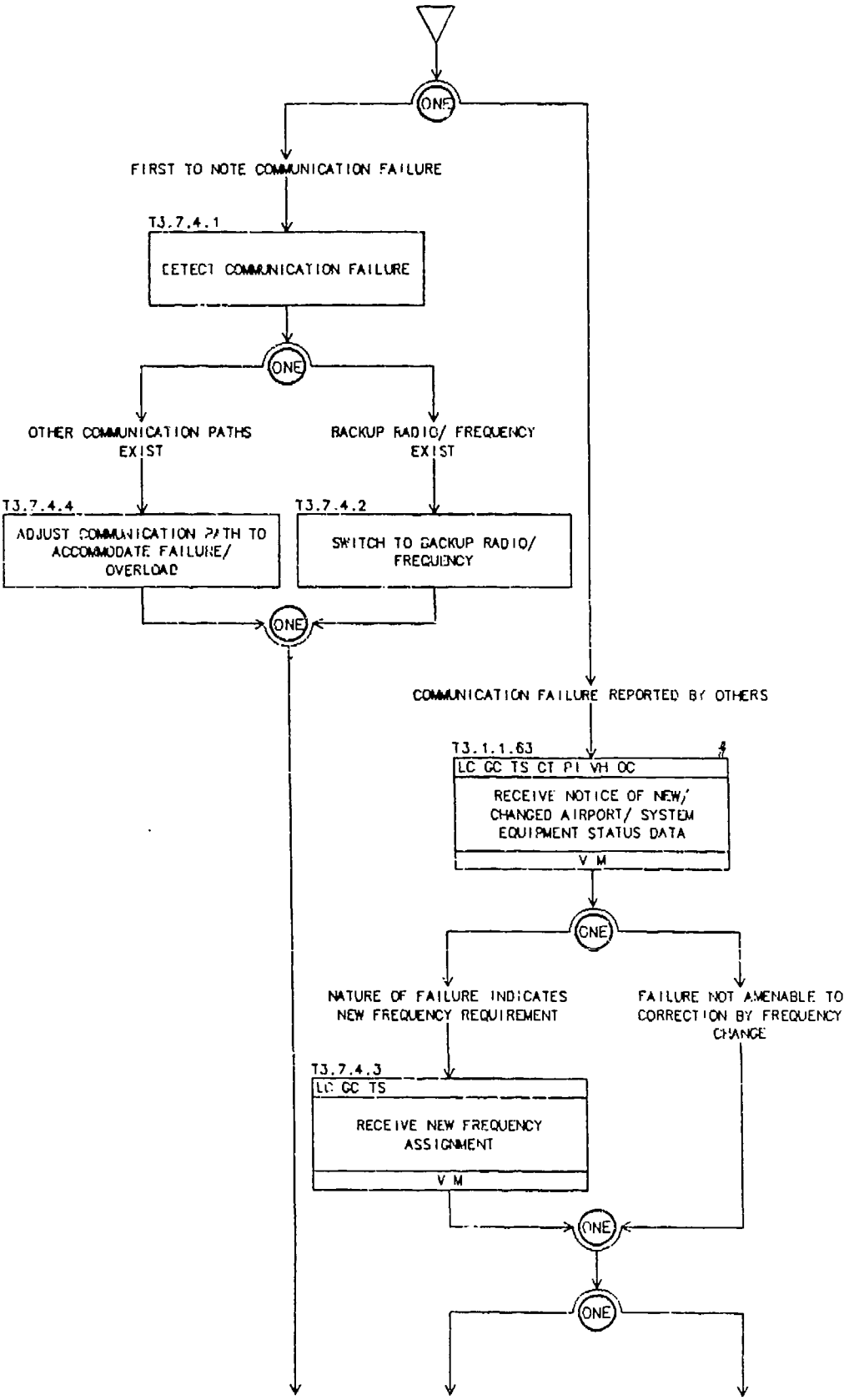
T3.7.2 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES

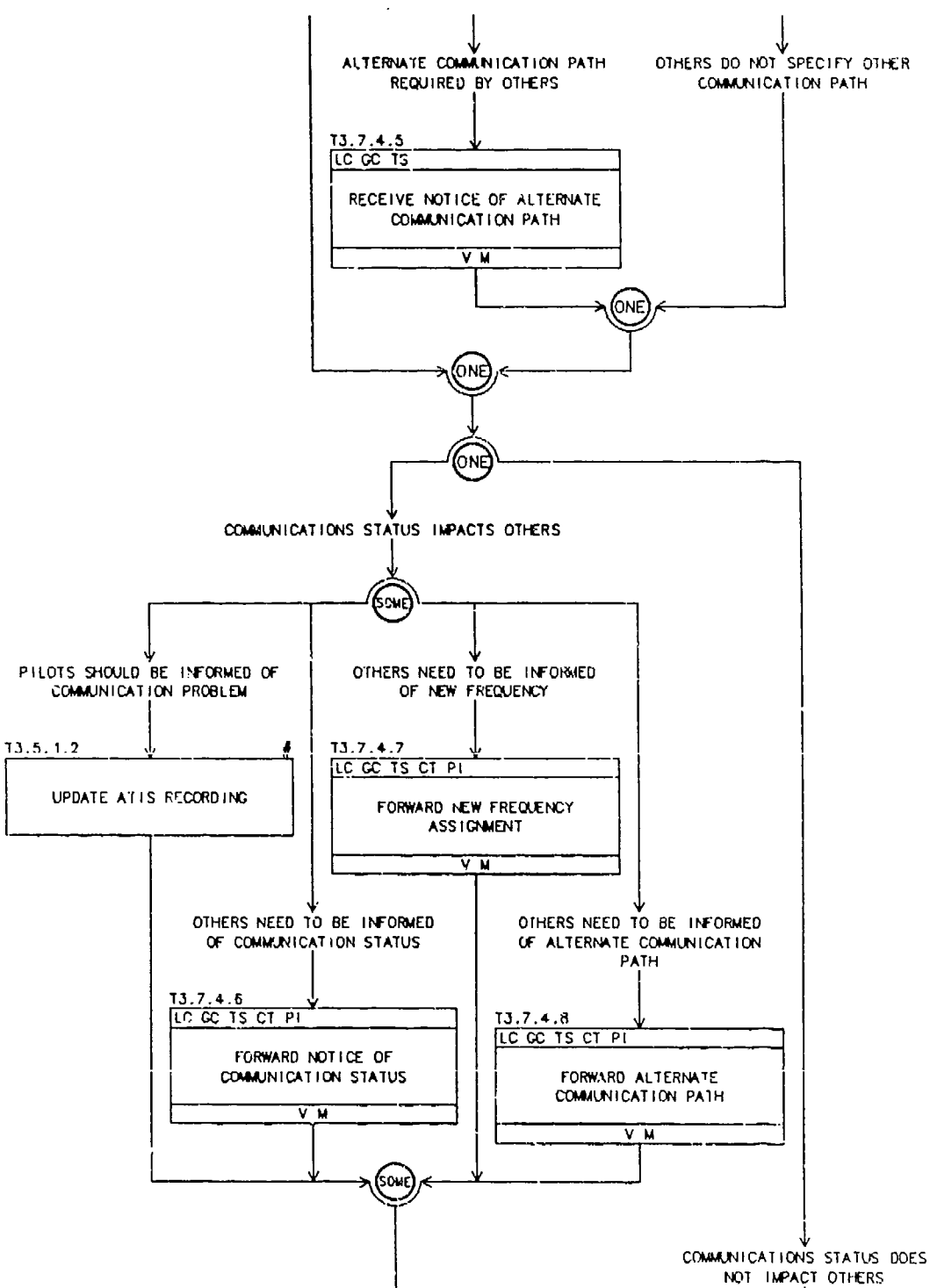
EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMPUTER FAILURE, FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING FAILURE



T3.7.4 EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES

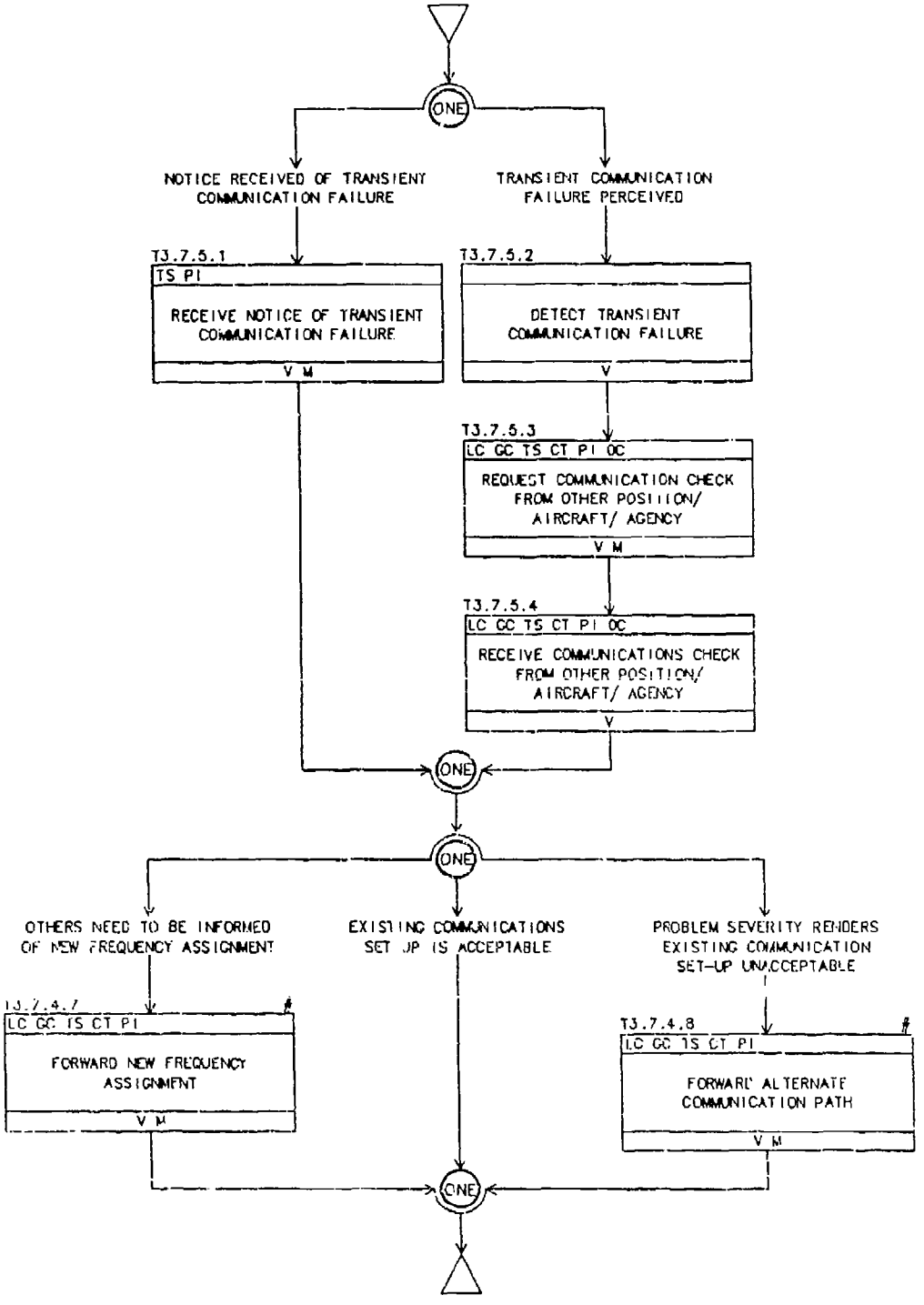
EVENTS: COMMUNICATION FAILURE




ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH REQUIRED BY OTHERS
OTHERS DO NOT SPECIFY OTHER COMMUNICATION PATH
T3.7.4.5
LC GC TS
RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
V M
ONE
ONE
ONE
COMMUNICATIONS STATUS IMPACTS OTHERS
SOME
PILOTS SHOULD BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION PROBLEM
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF NEW FREQUENCY
T3.5.1.2
#
UPDATE ATIS RECORDING
T3.7.4.7
LC GC TS CT PI
FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT
V M
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
OTHERS NEED TO BE INFORMED OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
T3.7.4.6
LC GC TS CT PI
FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS
V M
T3.7.4.8
LC GC TS CT PI
FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH
V M
SOME
COMMUNICATIONS STATUS DOES NOT IMPACT OTHERS
ONE

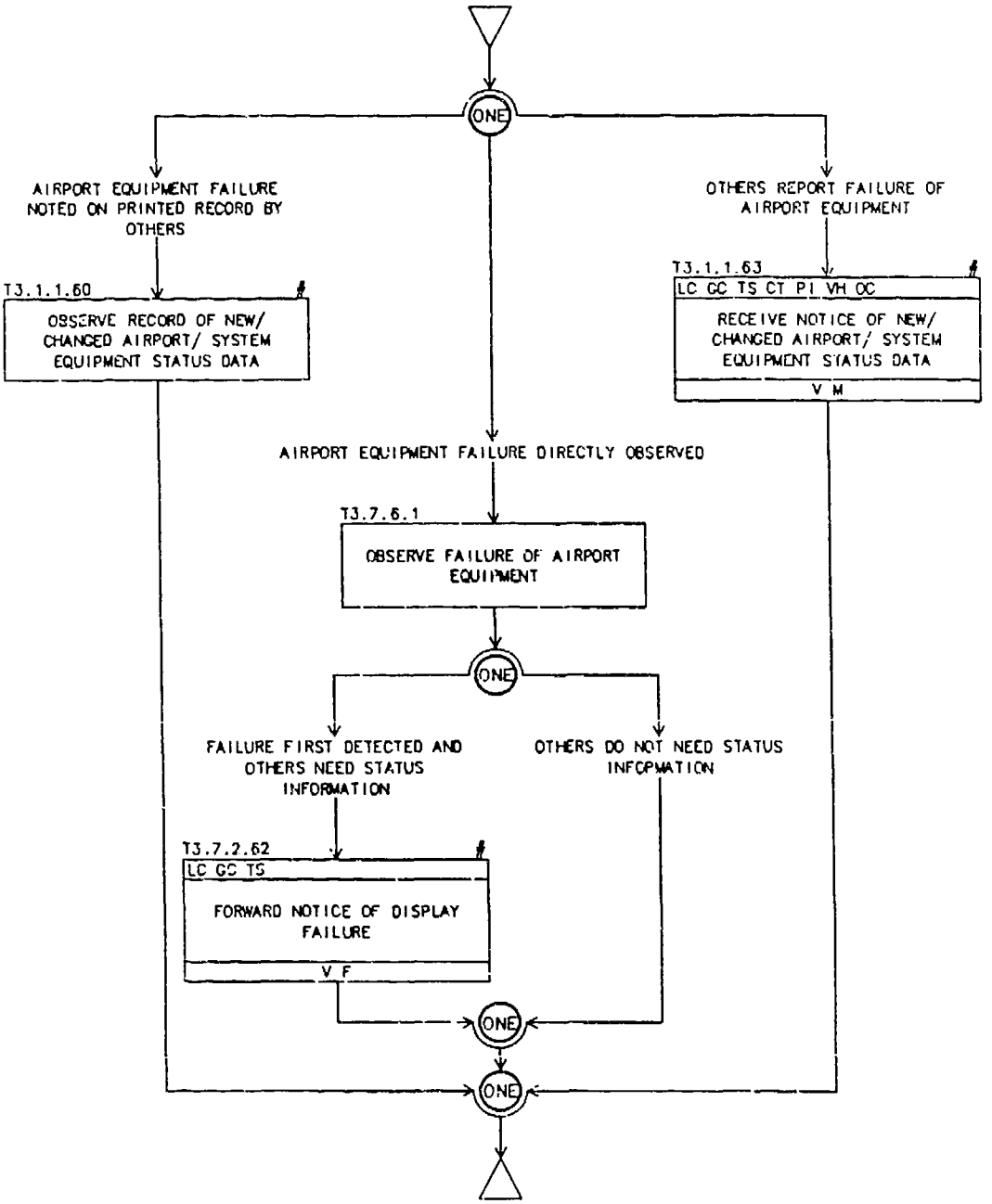
T3.7.5 RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES

EVENTS: TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE



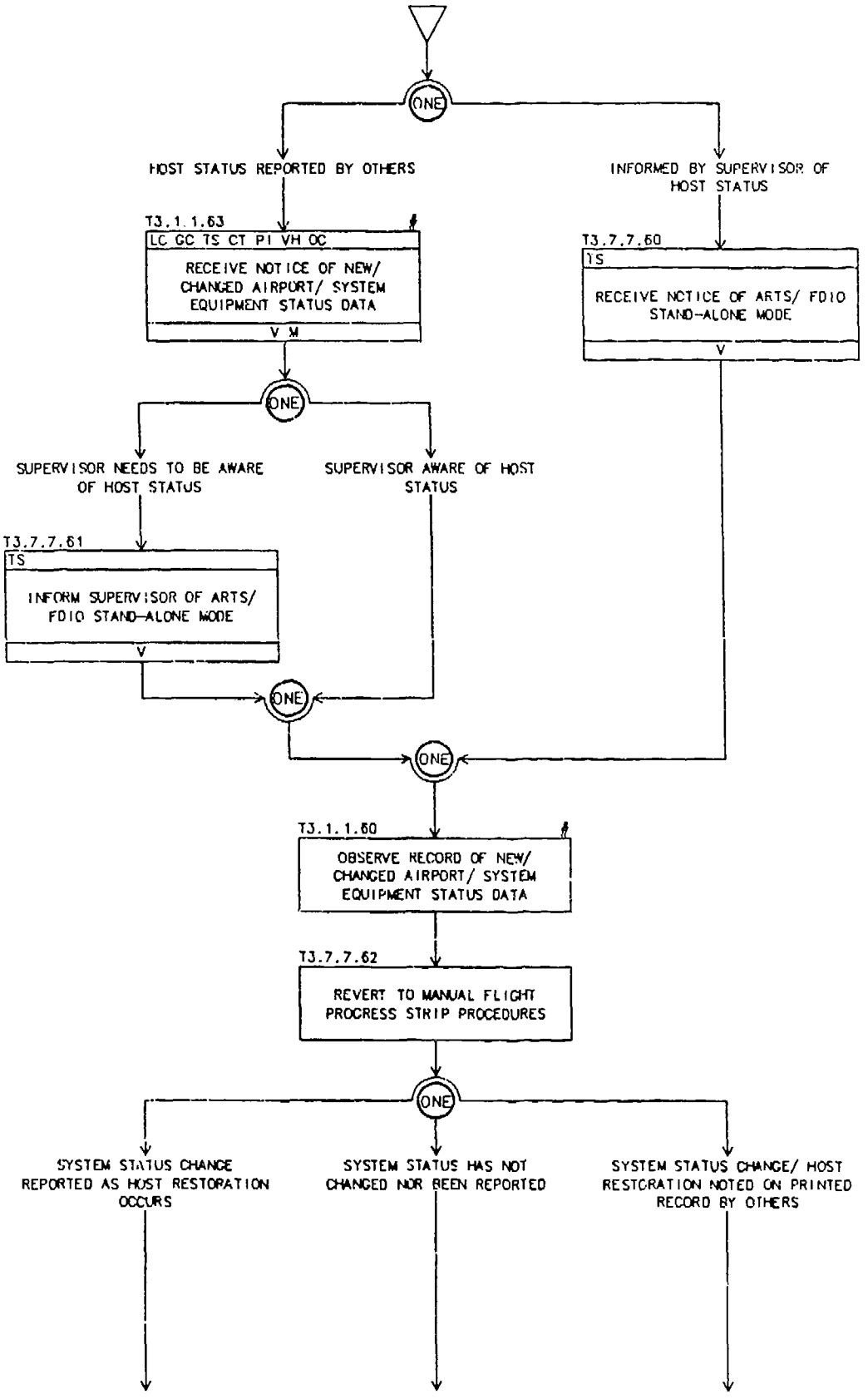
T3.7.6 RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES

EVENTS: AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE

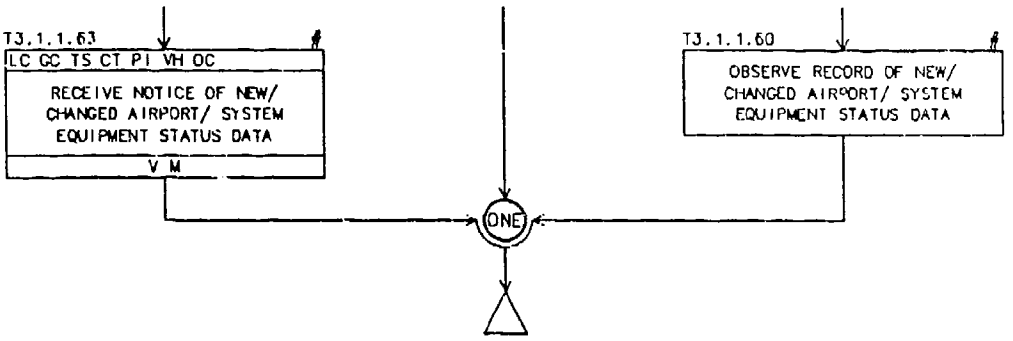


T3.7.7 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES

EVENTS: HOST FAILURE



T3.7.7 RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES (cont.)



Appendix B

Task Statements

APPENDIX B

TASK STATEMENTS

This appendix consists of a table listing ATCT controller Task Statements. The Task Statements are listed separately for each of the three controller positions. Missing task numbers in the listing reflect tasks that apply only to the TCCC and have been omitted from this data base. The following summarizes the components of the Task Statements table:

Task Number - assigned number of each task statement. First two digits of each number indicate the Tower position:

T1	=	Local Controller
T2	=	Ground Controller
T3	=	Clearance Delivery / Flight Data

As discussed in the Foreword and subsection 2.1, Volume V (TCCC) was used as the baseline in developing these analyses. To facilitate comparisons between current controller tasks and TCCC controller tasks, revised TCCC tasks and new tasks pertinent only to current Tower operations are renumbered starting with 60 series numbers after the last decimal (e.g., T1.1.1.60, T2.2.5.61, T3.2.2.67). All tasks common to both TCCC and current Tower operations have the same task number.

Task Statement - concise statement of the task to be performed.

Coordination Media - coordination media may be one of three types: Voice (V), Function (F), and Message (M).

Coordinatees - designates the position/ agency contacted during coordination.

Note. The last two columns of the Task Statements tables have not been used in these analyses.

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | | Coordinatees | | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | | Coordinatees | | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

TASK STATEMENTS

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Medic | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Coordination Media | | | Coordinatees | | |

Appendix C

User Interface Language

APPENDIX C

USER INTERFACE LANGUAGE

The User Interface Language (UIL) includes a data object hierarchy comprising Physical Display Contents (i.e., User Display Language) and Input Messages (i.e., User Input Language). The Physical Display Contents refer to messages output to the controller in the tower cab. These messages are output to the controller in the form of graphical displays, alphanumeric displays, written and printed messages, and alerts / alarms or other signals for controller attention. The Input Messages refer to data and control messages entered by a controller on tower cab equipment, status boards, and other written records. This listing excludes messages not used by the tower controller, and non-operational messages such as those related to training and report preparation (reference Volume I, Section 3.3). NOTE: Tower equipment varies significantly from tower to tower, resulting in varied controller input messages and output displays.

PHYSICAL DISPLAY CONTENTS

Table C-1 presents the Physical Display contents in Towers. The following notations are employed in Table C-1:

=		Is defined as
or	=	Exclusive "or"
and	=	And
( )	=	Message items form a group
{ }	=	Multiple iterations of a message item. Numbers added in the form X{ }Y indicate at least X but not more than Y iterations of the message. By default, X = 0 and Y = no upper limit defined.
[ ]	=	Optional item (displayed or not displayed at controller's choice). NOTE: This symbol will have limited use in this volume due to the wide diversity of tower equipment.
^ ^	=	Mandatory message item if applicable
* *	=	Comment
@	=	References*:

* Includes paragraph number(s) unless otherwise noted. The word "General" indicates no specific paragraph or page reference.

AIM = Airman's Information Manual, Federal Aviation Adminsistration, 20 October 1988.

AC-00-45C = Aviation Weather Services (A Supplement to Aviation Weather, AC-006A), U. S. Department of Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration, Revised 1985.

ARTS IIIA SOM = ARTS III System Operator's Manual, (NASP-2501-03, A3.02), October 1986.

ARTS IIA = National Air Traffic Training Program, Course 55007, ARTS IIA for Air Traffic Control Specialists, FAA Academy, January 1988.

ETG-4-1 = National Air Traffic Training Program, En Route / Terminal User's Guide, Flight Data Input / Output System Training for ATCS, FAA Academy, March 1986.

FAA Order 7110.65E = Air Traffic Control, 9 April 1987 (Change 6, 9 February 1989).

FAA Order 7210.3 = Facility Operation and Administration, February 1989.

FDEP = National Air Traffic Training Program Reference Material, Terminal, Flight Data Entry and Printout Equipment, FAA Academy, August 1984.

MD-639 = ARTS IIIA Computer Program Functional Specification (CPFS), Display Output Processing, A3.02, October 1986.

MD-901 = ARTS II Computer Program Functional Specification (CPFS), A2.05, June 1985.

T-14-13 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Fundamentals of Primary and Secondary Radar, FAA Academy, August 1987.

T-14-15 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Bright Radar Indicator Tower Equipment (BRITE), FAA Academy, March 1988.

T-14-20 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, ATIS, FAA Academy, July 1987.

T-14-26 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Airport Lighting, FAA Academy, August 1987.

T-14-31 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Tower Cab Equipment, FAA Academy, March 1988.

TM-12-0-2 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, TPX-42A, Numeric Beacon Decoder, FAA Academy, July 1974.

TM-14-2 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, Bright Radar Indicator Tower Equipment (BRITE), January 1987.

TM-21-1 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, Control Tower Equipment Manual, FAA Academy, June 1988.

Task Analysis = Derived by task analysis.

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents

```
Data_Display =
          BRITE_Display =  *includes BRITE Alphanumeric Subsystem (BANS),
               Tower Cab Digital Display (TCDD), etc.*
     and  ASDE_Display =  *Airport Surface Detection Eqipment*
     and  FDIO_System =  *Flight Data Input/Output*
     and  FDEP_System =  *Flignt Data Entry and Printout*
     and  Flight_Strip_Bay  *mat, pad, counter*
     and {Airport_Environmental_Instrument}
     and {Airport_Lighting_Equipment}
     and {NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel}
     and {Status_Information_Area}
     and  Controller_Note
     and  Sign_On/Off_Log
     and  PIREP_Form  *used to record pilot report*
     and {Static_Information_Record}
     and  Meteorological_Data_Record
     and  Traffic_Management_Record
     and  Runway_Incursion_Device  *visual/ aural reminder*
     and  24-Hour_Clock
     and  Two/Three_Minute_Timer  *visual and/ or aural indications*
     and {Tower_Communications_Equipment}
     and [Mechanical_Traffic_Counter]
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
BRITE_Display =
          Analog_Radar
     and (ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System  *Automated Radar Terminal System*
     or   ARTS_II_System
     or   TPX-42A_System)
     and  Geographic_Map_Data
     and  Compass_Rose
     and  Range_Mark  *range rings*
     and  Sweep  *antenna strobe*
     and  Display_Offcentering
     @    T-14-15 General, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Analog_Radar =
               Primary_Target  *target radar returns*
          and  Secondary_Radar  *ATC Radar Beacon System*
          and  Other_Radar_Return
          @    T-14-13  General; Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
        Other_Radar_Return =
                  Precipitation
             and  Ground_Clutter
             and  Interference
             and  Jamming
             @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
    ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System=  *IIA & IIIA combined due to similarity
        (NOTE: ARTS IIA does not have primary radar tracking and
        fail soft features)*
            (Data_Block)
        and (Display_List)
        and  System_Data_Area  *system status display*
        and  Preview_Display_Area  *used to view keyboard entries*
        and  Master_Control_Panel
        and [MSAW/CA_Alarm_Panel]  *aural/ visual alarm*
        @    MD-639  Table of Contents;  ARTS IIA  General; Task
             Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
        Data_Block =
                  Full_Data_Block  *FDB*
             or   Partial_Data_Block  *PDB*
             or   Limited_Data_Block  *LDB/ unassociated tracks*
             or   Single_Symbol  *unassociated tracks*
             @    MD-639  Table 3-1;  ARTS IIA  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
             Full_Data_Block =  *all fields in FDB may not be displayed
                  at one time*
                       Target_Position_Symbol
                  and  Leader_Line
                  and  MSAW/CA_Alert
                  and  Aircraft_Identification  *ACID*
                  and  Inhibit_Symbol  *asterisk, triangle, or plus*
                  and  Altitude
                  and  Scratch_Pad
                  and  Altitude_Modifier  *ascending, descending,
                            or assigned*
                  and (Radar_Only
                  or   Ambiguous
                  or   No_ARTS
                  or   Coast)
                  and  Handoff_Symbol  *or asterisk/ space*
                  and  Ground_Speed  *blank if in coast*
                  and  Aircraft_Type
                  and  Special_Designator  *aircraft category/ flight plan
                            status*
                  and (Attention_Indicator)
                  @    MD-639  3.2.1.1; ARTS IIA  General
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Altitude =
          Controller_Entered_Altitude
     or   Mode_C_Altitude
     or   Unreasonable_Mode_C
     or   Invalid_Altitude
     @    MD-639  3.2.1.1 and Figure 3-1
```

```
Attention_Indicator =
          (Blinking_Field)  *coast, ambiguity,
               no ARTS track, etc.*
     and  Blinking_FDB  *handoff status at
               receiving controller position*
     @    MD-639  3.2.1.1;  ARTS IIA  General
```

```
Blinking_Field =
          Handoff
     or   Override
     or   Departure_Message
     or   Emergency_Beacon_Code
     or   Radio_Failure_Beacon_Code
     or   Hijack_Beacon_Code
     or   Special_Position_Indicator
     @    MD-639  3.2.1.1; Task Analysis
```

```
Partial_Data_Block =
          Target_Position_Symbol
     and  Leader_Line
     and (Mode_C_Altitude
     or   Assigned_Altitude
     or   Scratch_Pad)
     and  Handoff_Symbol  *if in handoff*
     and  Aircraft_Category  *flight plan status*
     @    MD-639  3.4.1, Task Analysis
```

```
Aircraft_Category =
          Overflight
     or   VFR
     or   Heavy_Aircraft
     @    Task Analysis
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Limited_Data_Block =
          Target_Position_Symbol
     and  Leader_Line
     and  Special_Condition  *hijack, NORDO, emergency, etc.*
     and (Mode_C_Altitude
     or   Special_Position_Indicator)  *SPI*
     and  Beacon_Code
     and  Speed
     and  Blinking_LDB
     @    MD-639  3.3.1.1; Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------
          Target_Position_Symbol =
               Control_Position_Symbol  *A to Z
          or   Single_Symbol
          @    MD-639  3.3.1.1, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------
               Single_Symbol =
                    Mode_C-Selected_Code  *square*
               or   Mode_C-Nonselected_Code  *asterisk*
               or   Non-Mode_C-Selected_Code  *triangle*
               or   Non-Mode_C-Nonselected_Code  *plus*
               @    MD-639  Figure 3-2, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------
          Blinking_LDB =
               Target_Position_Symbol
          and  Leader_Line  *blinking and offset 90
                    degrees for beacon codes 7500, 7600,
                    7700, or 1236*
          and (Special_Position_Indicator  *ID*
          and [Reported_Beacon_Code])
          and  Ident_Return
          and  Altitude
          and  Speed
          @    MD-639  3.3.1.1, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------
          Target_Position_Symbol =
               Control_Position_Symbol  *A to Z
          or   Single_Symbol
          @    MD-639  3.3.1.1, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

                              Single_Symbol =
                                    Mode_C-Selected_Code  *square*
                                or  Mode_C-Nonselected_Code  *asterisk*
                                or  Non-Mode_C-Selected_Code  *triangle*
                                or  Non-Mode_C-Nonselected_Code  *plus*
                                @   MD-639  Figure 3-2, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

          Display_List =
                    Tabular_Coast/Suspend_Status_List
               and  Landing_Aircraft_List  *BRITE Display Tab List*
               and  Arrival/Departure List
               and  MSAW/CA_Alert_List
               @    MD-639  Table 4-1;  ARTS IIA  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

               Tabular_Coast/Suspend_Status_List =
                         Line_Identifier  *Ø through 9*
                    and  Aircraft_Identification
                    and  Beacon_Code/Track_Status
                    and (COAST_Status
                    or   SUSPEND_Status)
                    @    MD-639  4.2.2;  ARTS IIA General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

               Landing_Aircraft_List =  *BRITE Display Tab List/ BANS
                         Tab List
                    and  Aircraft_Identification
                    and  Aircraft_Type
                    @    MD-639  4.4.1, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

               Arrival/Departure_List =
                         Line_Identifier
                    and  Aircraft_Identification
                    and (Beacon_Code  *blank for no code*
                    and [Keyboard-Entered_Character]
                    and [Duplicate_Code_Character]
                    or   Fix_Designator  *arrival or departure*
                    or   Radar_Only)
                    @    MD-639  4.3.1, Table 4-5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

               MSAW/CA_Alert_List =
                       ((Aircraft_Identification
                    and (Mode_C_Altitude
                    or   Coast)
                    and  Alert_Message))  *LOW ALT*
                    or  (Aircraft_Identification
                    and  Alert_Message)  *CA*
                    and [Control_Position_Identifier]
                    and [Overflow_Message]  *if more than 5 tracks*
                    @    MD-639  4.5.2, Table 4-7
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
          Status_Display_Area =  *system status display*
                    Master Control Panel
               and  Current_Time
               and  Altimeter_Setting
               and (ATIS_Code
               and  General_Information)  *runway in use, etc.*
               and (Selected_Beacon_Code)  *nondiscrete codes*
               and  Special_Condition_Indicator  *hijack, emergency, etc.
                         w/ aural alarm*
               and  Overload_Sensing/Protection
               and  Conflict_Inhibit_List
               and  Conflict_Suppression_Type_I/II
               @    MD-639  5.1-5.12
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
               Master_Control_Panel =
                         Power_Indicator_Light
                    and  Overheat_Indicator_Light
                    @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
ARTS_II_System =
            Data_Block
        and Display_Lists
        and System_Display_Area  *system status display
        and Preview_Display_Area  *used to view keyboard entries*
        @   Task_Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

        Data_Block =
                Full_Data_Block  *FDB*
            and Limited_Data_Block  *LDB*
            or  Single_Symbol  *unassociated tracks*
            @   Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                Full_Data_Block =
                        Control_Position_Symbol
                    and Leader_Line
                    and Aircraft_Identification
                    and Controller_Identification
                    and (Assigned_Altitude
                    or  Unreasonable_Mode_C_Altitude
                    or  Scratch_Pad)  *three character field*
                    and Track_Status
                    and [Handoff_Symbol]  *sending controller*
                    or  [Flashing_FDB]  *handoff - receiving controller)*
                    and (Attention_Indicator)  *time shared*
                    @   Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    Attention_Indicator =
                            (Blinking_Field)  *controller set and/ or
                                facility directive*
                        and [Blinking_FDB]  *handoff*
                        @   Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                            Blinking_Field =
                                    Handoff
                                or  Departure_Message
                                or  Emergency_Beacon_Code
                                or  Radio_Failure_Beacon_Code
                                or  Hijack
                                or  Interfacility
                                or  No_Update_Message
                                or  Aircraft_Category/Flight_Plan_Status
                                @   Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

```
          Limited_Data_Block =
                    Single_Symbol
               and  Leader_Line
               and (Altitude
               or   Mode_C_Altitude)
               and [Ident_Return]
               @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
               Single_Symbol=
                         Mode_C-Selected_Code  *square*
                    or   Mode_C-Nonselected_Code  *asterisk*
                    or   Non-Mode_C-Selected_Code  *triangle*
                    or   Non-Mode_C-Nonselect_Code *plus*
                    or   VFR_Select_Code
                    @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Display_Lists =
               Arrival/Departure_List
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Arrival/Departure_List =  *format spacing differentiates
               arrivals from departures*
                    Aircraft_Identification
               and (Beacon_Code
               or   Fix_Designator)
               @    ARTS II  Lesson 3, page 10
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     System_Display Area =  *system status display*
               Current_Time
          and  Altimeter_Setting
          and (Selected_Beacon_Code)
          and  Overflow_Condition
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
TPX-42A_System =
          Radar_Display_Console
     and  Master_Control_Panel
     and  Decoder_Control_Box
     @    TM-12-Ø-2  pages 1-3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Radar Display Console =
          Target_Position_Symbol  *center mark*
     and  Beacon_Symbol
     and [Track_History]  *Target Trail (one to three dots showing
          direction of movement)*
     and [Bracket_Video]
     and  Special_Position_Identity  *shrinking circle over
          small circle or X*
     and  Emergency/Hijack_Alert
     and  NORDO_Alert
     @    TM-12-Ø-2  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Beacon_Symbol =
               (Beacon_Code
          or   No_Beacon_Code)
          and  Mode_C_Altitude  *if available*
          @    TM-12-Ø-2  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Emergency/Hijack_Alert =  *blinking light/ audible alarm*
               Center_Mark  *X*
          and  Beacon_Code
          and [Altitude]
          @    TM-12-Ø-2  page 6
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Master_Control_Panel =
          Range_Error/OVRD_Switch_Indicctor  *override*
     and  APGU1-APGU2/AZ_Error_Switch_Indicator  *Azimuth Pulse
          Generator Unit*
     and  Defruit_Switch_Indicator
     and  IR/1_IR/2_Switch_Indicator  *interrogator-receiver*
     and  Local/Remote_Switch_Indicator
     and  Target_Load/No Control_Switch_Indicator
     and (Range_Select_Switch
     and  Dimmer)
     @    TM-12-Ø-2  pages 1-3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

TP..-42A (Continued)

```
        Decoder_Control_Box =
                Code_Selection_Switch_Indicator  *10 rows*
            and Upper_Limit_Window  *altitude*
            and Lower_Limit_Window  *altitude*
            and Alt_Flt_Switch_Indicator  *altitude filter*
            and Emergency_Light  *emergency/ hijack condition*
            and Comm_Flr_Light  *communications failure (NORDO) code*
            and Range_Error_Light
            and Interr_Light  *interrogator power*
            and Defruit_Light
            and All_A/C_Posn_Indicator  *position*
            and All_A/C_Code_Indicator
            and All_A/C_Alt_Indicator  *altitude*
            and Brkt_Video_Indicator  *bracket video*
            and Target_Trail
            and Select_Alt  *altitude*
            @    TM-12-10-2  pages 3-6
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
            Code_Selection_Switch_Indicator =
                    (Symbology/Numerics_Switch_Indicator)3  *Position,
                        D, and Code*
                and (Code_Selection_Switch_Indicator)4
                @    TM-12-10-2  pages 3-4
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
  Geographic_Map_Data =
            Video_Map *General*
        and  Emergency_Obstruction_Video_Map  *EOVM, as required*
        and [Minimum_Vector_Altitude_Video_Map]  *MVA, as required*
        @    FAA Order 7210.3  382, 393
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
        Video_Map =  *general*
                (NAVAID/Fix)
            and (Airway/Route)
            and (Airport/Heliport)
            and  Holding_Pattern_Airspace
            and  Runway_Centerline_Extension
            and (Final_Approach_Course)
            and  Published_Approach/Departure_Procedure
            and (Boundary)
            and  Minimum_Vector_Altitude  *MVA, may be separate video map*
            and (Prominent_Geographic_Feature)
            and (Obstruction)
            and  Map_Alignment_Indicator
            and  Range_Accuracy_Mark
            and (Hospital_Emergency_Landing_Area)
            and (Reporting_Point)
            and (Handoff_Point)
            @    FAA Order 7210.3  382
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

TPX-42A (Continued)

```
          Video_Map (Continued) =
               and (Road/Highway)
               and (Arrival/Departure_Gate)
               @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
               Airway/Route =
                         (Airway)
                    and (Route_Segment)
                    and (Military_Route)  *refueling, IFR, VFR, etc*
                    @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
               Boundary =
                         Facility/Airport_Boundary
                    and  Sector/Center_Boundary
                    and  Position_Boundary
                    and  Airspace_Boundary
                    and  Terminal_Control_Area_Boundary
                    and  Coastal/River_Boundary
                    and  VFR_Airport
                    and  Emergency_Airport
                    and  City
                    @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
                    Airspace_Boundary =
                              Special_Use_Airspace
                         and  Controlled_Airspace
                         and  Other_Airspace_Area
                         @    AIM  Section 3, 4, and 5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Emergency_Obstruction_Video_Map =
                    Base_Contour_Line
               and (Highest_Elevation)
               and (Prominent_Man-Made_Obstacle)
               and  Emergency/Satellite_Airport
               and  Minimum_Vector_Altitude
               and  Local_Feature  *as required*
               @    FAA Order 7210.3  393
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
ASDE_Display =  *Airport_Surface_Detection_Equipment
          PPI_Console  *map-like airport presentation*
     and  Power_On_Light
     and  Overheat_Indicator  *PPI overheat*
     and  Cabinet_Overheat
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     PPI_Console =
               ASDE_Radar_Display
          and [Video_Map]
          and (Primary_Target)
          and  Other_Radar_Return  *ground clutter, precipitation, etc.*
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
FDIO_System =  *Flight Data Input/Output*
          FDIO_Monitor  *cathode ray tube (CRT)*
     and  Flight_Strip_Printer   *replacement flight strip printer*
     and  Alphanumeric_Keyboard  *replacement alphanumeric keyboard (RANK)*
     and  Front_Panel_Keypad  *controller and/ or maintenance use*
     @    ETG-4-1  2.2.2, page 26, 29
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Cathode_Ray_Tube_Display =
               Flight_Strip_Area  *incoming flight data w/ visual
                    'pending' message and audible alarm
          and  Weather_Area
          and  General_Information_Area  *w/ visual 'pending' message
          and  Composition_Area  *used to view keyboard entries*
          @    ETG-4-1  3.4, page 29
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Flight_Strip_Printer =
               Power_Indicator
          and  Fault_Code_Display
          and  Online_Indicator
          and  Fault_Condition
          and (Flight_Progress_Strip)  *printer output*
          and  GI_Message  *general information/ traffic management, weather,
                    etc.*
          @    ETG-4-1  3.3,  1-14-31  page 115
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Alphanumeric_Keyboard =
               Message_Waiting_Light  *MWL*
          @    ETG-4-1  3.5, page 28
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Front_Panel_Keypad =
               Warning_Alarm  *for system error conditions*
          @    ETG-4-1  page 26
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
FDEP_System =  *Flight Data Entry And Printout System*
        (Status_Lamp)
     and  Alphanumeric_Keyboard
     and  Flight_Strip_Printer
     @    Task_Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Status_Lamp =
          Power
        and  Request
        and  Proceed
        and  Message_Received
        and  Local_Data_Check
        and  Data_Check
        and  Cancel
        and  Wait
        and  Forms/Cover  *out of strips or cover open*
        @    T-14-31  pages 75 and 76
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
      Flight_Strip_Printer =
          On/Off_Power_Indicator
        and  Ready_Lamp
        and  First_Line_Lamp
        and (Flight_Progress_Strip)  *printer output*
        and  GI_Message  *general information on traffic management,
                 weather, system status, etc.*
        @    FDEP  page 2-6
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Flight_Strip_Bay =  *flight progress board or pad used to hold, sort,
     and flag flight progress strips*
        (Flight_Progress_Strip)
     and [Flight_Strip_Holder]
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Flight_Progress_Strip =  *printer or handwritten*
          (Arrival_Strip)
        and (Departure_Strip)
        and (Overflight_Strip)
        and (Strip_Marking)
        @    FAA Order 7110.65E  2-53
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
          Arrival_Strip =
                    Aircraft_Identification
               and [Revision_Number]
               and  Request_Originator
               and([Number_Of_Aircraft]
               and [Heavy_Aircraft_Indicator]
               and  Type_Of_Aircraft
               and  Aircraft_Equipment_Suffix)
               and [Computer_Identification_Number]
               and  Assigned_Beacon_Code
               and  Previous_Fix
               and  Coordination_Fix
               and  Estimated_Time_Of_Arrival
               and  Altitude
               and [Remark]
               and (Destination_Airport
               and  Pointout_Information
               and  Radar_Vector_Information
               and  Speed_Adjustment_Information)
               and [Facility_Directed_Information]
               @    FAA Order 7110.65E  2-53a
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Departure_Strip =
                    Aircraft_Identification
               and [Revision_Number]
               and  Strip_Request_Originator
               and([Number_Of_Aircraft]
               and [Heavy_Aircraft_Indicator]
               and  Type_Of_Aircraft
               and  Aircraft_Equipment_Suffix)
               and [Computer_Identification_Number]
               and  Assigned_Beacon_Code
               and  Proposed_Departure_Time
               and  Requested_Altitude
               and  Departure_Airport
               and  Route
               and  Destination
               and  Remark
               and (Pointout_Information
               and  Radar_Vector_Information
               and  Speed_Adjustment_Information)
               and [Facility_Directed_Information]
               and  Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time  *EDCT*
               @    FAA Order 7110.65E  2-53b
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
          Overflight_Strip =
                    Aircraft_Identification
               and [Revision_Number]
               and  Strip_Request_Originator
               and([Number_Of_Aircraft]
               and [Heavy_Aircraft_Indicator]
               and  Type_Of_Aircraft
               and  Aircraft_Equipment_Suffix)
               and [Computer_Identification_Number]
               and  Assigned_Beacon_Code
               and  Coordination_Fix
               and  Overflight_Coordination_Indicator
               and  Estimate_Time_Of_Arrival  *at coordination fix*
               and  Altitude
               and  Route_Of_Flight
               and  Radar_Vector_Information
               and  Speed_Adjustment_Information)
               and  Facility_Directed_Information
               @    FAA Order 7110.65E  2-59
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Strip_Marking =  *printer or handwritten*
                    (Control_Information_Symbol)
               and (Clearance_Abbreviation)
               @    FAA Order 7110.65E  2-59
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Airport_Environmental_Instrument =
          Wind_Speed_Indicator
     and  Direction_Indicator
     and (Altimeter_Setting_Indicator  *ASI*
     or   Digital_Altimeter_Setting_Indicator)  *DASI*
     and   Runway_Visibility_Value_Indicator  *RVV, w/ audible alarm*
     and (Runway_Visual_Range_Meter  *RVR*
     or   RVR_Digital_Readout_Indicator)
     and  Low_Level_Wind_Shear_Alert_System  *LLWAS, w/ audible alarm*
     and [Ceilometer_Indicator]
     @    TM-21-1  Section III
     and [Wind_Sock]  *visual wind direction indicator*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Low_Level_Wind_Shear_Alert_System =
               Center_Field_Indicator
          and (Boundary_Field_Indicator)5
          @    TM-21-1  pages 39 and 40
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
Airport_Lighting_Equipment =  *monitor lights/ diagrams showing airport
     lighting status*
         {Runway_Lighting_Panel}
     and {Taxiway_Lighting_Panel}
     and  Approach_Lighting_System_Panel  *ALS, ALSF, MALSR, MALSF, etc.*
     and  Visual_Approach_Slope_Indicator_Panel  *VASI
     and  Runway_Edge/Centerline/Touchdown_Lighting_Panel
     and  Runway_End_Identifier_Light_Panel  *REIL*
     and  In-Runway_Lighting_Panel
     and  Airport_Rotating Beacon  *visual observation*
     and  Visual_Indicators_Panel  *noncontrolled airports*
     @    TM-21-1  Section IV;  T-14-26  General; Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel =  *monitor lights/ aural alarms*
          ILS_Monitor_Panel  *localizer/ glide slope*
     and  VOR_Monitor_Panel
     and  DME_Monitor_Panel  *distance measuring equipment*
     and  NDB_Monitor_Panel  *nondirectional radio beacon*
     and  VORTAC_Monitor_Panel  *VOR portion*
     and  MLS_Monitor_Panel  *microwave landing system*
     @    TM-21-1  Section VI; Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
{Status_Information_Area} =  *manuual/ automated displays of current
     status and operational conditons*
         /Information_Display_System  *Systems Atlanta Infomration
               Display System (SAIDS) or equivalent system*
     and  System_Status_Data_Record
     @    TM-21-1  Section II-G
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
    Information_Display_System = *IDS*
           {Display_Screen_Data}  *multiple pages displayed on Video
                 Display Terminal (VDT) as locally determined*
          and [Alarm] *blinking screen and/ or audio*
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Display_Screen_Data =
                NOTAM
             and  ATIS_Message
             and  Equipment_Status
             and  Airspace_Status
             and  Special_Activity
             and  Training_In_Progress
             and  Traffic_Management_Information
             and  Adapted_Route_Usage
             and  Sectorization_Plan_In_Effect
             and  Weather_Information   *SIGMET/ AIRMET, PIREP, satellite
                       airport weather, AWOS/ASOS, surface observation,
                       etc.*
             and [Airport_Conditions]
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
        Display_Screen_Data (Continued) =
             and [Surveillance_Approach_Minimum_Data]
             and (Airport_Identifier)
             and [UNICOM_Frequencies]  *local airports*
             and [Intersecting_Runway_Operation_Restrictions]  *types of
                       aircraft for holding short distance limitations*
             and [Target_Generator_List_Mockup]
             and [Airport_Environmental_Status]
             and [Phone_List]
             and [Locally_Directed_Information]
             and (General_Remark)
             @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
             Equipment_Status =
                       NAVAID_Status
                  and  NAVAID_Repair_Schedule
                  and  Communication_Channel_Assignment
                  and  Radio_Frequency_Assignment
                  and  Radio_Equipment_Status
                  and  Radio_Equipment_Repair_Schedule
                  and  Radar_Equipment_Status
                  and  Radar_Equipment_Repair_Schedule
                  and  Computer_Outage
                  and  Computer_Repair_Schedule
                  and  Data_Communications_Line_Outage
                  and  Voice_Communications_Line_Outage
                  @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
             Airspace_Status =
                       Controlled_Airspace
                  and  Special_Use_Airspace
                  and (Other_Airspace_Area)
                  @    AIM  Section 3, 4, 5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     System_Status_Data_Record =  *non-computer displays e.g., status
        boards, written or printed records, etc.)*
             Communications_Status
        and  Equipment_Status
        and  Airspace_Status
        and  Special_Activity
        and [Satellite_Airport_Status]
        and  Airport_Environmental_Status
        and  Airport_Conditions
        and  ATIS_Code_Reminder  *letter cards, etc. used as visual
                  reminder of ATIS code*
        and  Movement_Area_Status
        and  Airport_Environmental_Status
        @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
          Airspace_Status =
                    Controlled_Airspace
               and  Special_Use_Airspace
               and (Other_Airspace_Area)
               @    AIM  Section 3, 4, 5
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Airport_Conditions =
                    Movement_Area_Status  *taxiway/ runway, etc.*
               and  Active_Runway_Reminder  *card, sign showing runway(s) in
                         use
               and  Arresting_System_Status
               and  Far_Field_Monitor_Remote_System_Status  *FFM*
               @    FAA Order 7110.65  *3-30 to 3-36
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
Controller_Note =
    (Free_Form_Text_Item)  *grease pencil on a display surface or hand
          written note on blank flight progress strip/ paper*
     @    Task_Analysis
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
Static_Information_Record =  *information varies at each facility*
          Sectional_Aeronautical_Chart
     and  Enroute_High_Altitude_Chart
     and  Enroute_Low_Altitude_Chart
     and  Terminal_MVA_Chart  *minimum vector altitude*
     and  Instrument_Approach_Procedure
     and  STAR/Profile_Descent_Procedure
     and  SID/Departure_Procedure
     and  Substitute_Routing
     and (Checklist)  *daily watch, changeover, emergency, position, etc.*
     and  Airman's_Information_Manual
     and  Sunset/Sunrise_Table
     and  Visibility_Distance_Chart  *day and night landmarks*
     and  Air_Traffic_Control,_FAA_Order_7110.65
     and (Letter_Of_Agreement)
     and (Facility_Directive)
     and  Movement_Area_Diagram  *airport diagram/ field layout*
     and  Airport/Facility_Directory
     and  NAVAID/Radio_Frequency_List
     and  Telephone_Number_List
     and  Controller_Quick_Reference_Card  *ARTS IIA/IIIA/II, FDEP, etc.*
     and  Position_Binder  *airspace, SOPs, fuel dump areas, military
               training routes low level, NORDO, etc.*
     and  Location_Identifiers,_FAA_Order_7350.5
     and  Contractions,_FAA_Order_7340.1
     and  Operational_Position_Standards,_FAA_Order_7220.2  *adapted to
               tower*
     and  Read_And_Initial_Binder
     and  Region_Emergency_Plan
     and  Aircraft_Identification_Listing
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
Static_Information_Record (Continued) =
     and  Aircraft_Accident/Incident_Manual,_FAA_Order_8020.11
     and  Emergency_Procedure_Binder
     and  Emergency_Care_Handbook
     and  Locally_Directed_Information
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Meteorological_Data_Record =  *weather recorded on paper or flight
     progress strip*
         (PIREP)  *routine/ urgent pilot report*
     and (Aviation_Weather_Forecast)  *AWF*
     and (Center_Weather_Advisory)  *CWA*
     and (Surface_Observation)
     and  Hurricane_Advisory
     and  Severe_Weather_Outlook  *narrative*
     and  Severe_Weather_Watch_Bulletin/Alert_Message
     and  Winds_And_Temperatures_Aloft_Forecast
     and  Center_Weather_Service_Product
     @    AC-00-45C  Table Of Contents
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     PIREP =  *urgent PIREP includes severe weather conditions involving
          icing, wind shear, tornados, turbulence, hail, etc.*
               Type_Report  *routine or urgent*
          and  Location
          and  Time_Of_Report
          and  Altitude/Flight_Level
          and  Type_Aircraft
          and [Cloud_Cover]
          and [Flight_Visibilty_And_Weather]
          and [Weather])
          and [Temperature]
          and [Wind_Direction_And_Speed]
          and [Turbulence]
          and [Icing]
          and [Remark]
          @    AC-00-45C  page 3-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Aviation_Weather_Forecast =
               Terminal_Forecast
          and  Domestic_Area_Forecast
          and  Inflight_Advisory
          and  Winds_And_Temperatures_Aloft_Forecast
          and  Special_Flight_Forecast
          @    AC-00-45C  Table of Contents
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
Terminal_Forecast =
          Station_Identifier
     and  Date/Time_Group  *valid period*
     and  Sky_And_Ceiling
     and  Visibility
     and  Obstruction_To_Vision  *with reason for obstruction,
               e.g., fog, smoke.*
     and  Wind
     and  Expected_Changes
     and  Remark
     @    AC-00-45C  page 4-1 to 4-2
-------------------------------------------------------------------
Domestic_Area_Forecast =
          Hazardous/Flight_Precaution
     and  Icing
     and  Turbulence_And_Low_Level_Wind_Shear
     and  Significant_Clouds_And_Weather
     @    AC-00-45C  page 4-10 to 4-11
-------------------------------------------------------------------
Inflight_Advisory =
          Convective_SIGMET
     and  SIGMET
     and  AIRMET
     @    AC-00-45C  page 4-14
-------------------------------------------------------------------
          Convective_SIGMET =
               Advisory_Area
          and  Advisory_DTG  *date/ time group*
          and  Advisory_Number
          and [Severe_Thunderstorms]  *includes hail/ tornados*
          and [Lines_Of_Thunderstorms]
          and [Embedded_Thunderstorms]
          and [Thunderstorms]
          @    AC-00-45C  page 4-14
-------------------------------------------------------------------
          SIGMET =
               Advisory_Area_Addressee
          and  Advisory_Number
          and  Advisory_DTG
          and  Valid_Period
          and  Affected_Area
          and [Severe_Icing]
          and [Severe/Extreme_Turbulence]
          and [Severe_Icing]
          and [Duststorms/Sandstorms/Volcanic_Ash]
          and [Tornados]  *Alaska/Hawaii only*
          and [Lines_Of_Thunderstorms]  *Alaska/Hawaii only*
          and [Embedded_Thunderstorms]  *Alaska/Hawaii only*
          @    AC-00-45C  page 4-17
-------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
AIRMET =
          Advisory_Area_Addressee
     and  Advisory_DTG
     and  Advisory_Number
     and  Valid_Period
     and [Moderate_Icing]
     and [Moderate_Turbulence]
     and [Extensive_Low_Visibility_Areas]
     and [Sustained_Surface_Winds]
     and [Extensive_Mountain_Obscurement]
     @    AC-ØØ-45C 4-17
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Winds_And_Temperatures_Aloft_Forecast =
          Heading
     and  Valid_Period
     and (Forecast_Location)
     and (Wind  *for specified altitudes*
     and  Temperature)
     @    AC-ØØ-45C  page 4-18
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Center_Weather_Service_Product =
          Meteorological_Impact_Statement  *MIS*
     and  Center_Weather_Advisory  *CWA*
     and  Surface_Observation
     and  Hurricane_Advisory
     and  Severe_Weather_Outlook
     and  Severe_Weather_Watch_Bulletin/Alert_Message
     @    AC-ØØ-45C  page 4-19, 4-2Ø
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Meteorological_Impact_Statement =
          MIS_Center_Identifier
     and  Statement_Number
     and  Statement_DTG
     and  Valid_Period
     and  Traffic/Flight_Operations_Forecast
     @    AC-45-ØØC  page 4-19; Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Center_Weather_Advisory =
          CWA_Center_Identifier
     and  Advisory_Number
     and  Valid_Period
     and (Inflight_Flow_Control_Advisory
     or   Air_Traffic_Advisory
     or   Crew_Advisory
     @    AC-45-ØØ  pages 4-19 to 4-2Ø; Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
          Surface_Observation =
                    Station_Identifier
               and  Time  *observation time*
               and  Sky_And_Ceiling
               and  Visibility
               and  Obstruction_To_Vision  *with reason, e.g., snow, smoke*
               and  Sea_Level_Pressure
               and  Temperature_And_Dew_Point
               and  Altimeter_Setting
               and  Remark  *amplifying and additional information
                         including PIREPs*
               @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Hurricane_Advisory =
                    Advisory_Addressee
               and  Advisory_DTG
               and  Storm_Location
               and  Storm_Predicted_Movement
               @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Severe_Weather_Outlook =
                    Advisory_Addressee
               and  Advisory_DTG
               and  Severe_Weather/Thunderstorm_Data
               @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Severe_Weather_Watch_Bulletin/Alert_Message =
                    Bulletin/Message_Addressee
               and  Bulletin/Message_DTG
               and  Bulletin/Watch_Number
               and [Severe_Thunderstorm]
               and [Tornado]
               @    Task Analysis
----------  -------------------------------------------------------------
Traffic_Management_Record =
     Flow_Restriction_Note  *departure release rate for arrival airport(s)*
     @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
24_Hour_Clock =
          Time  *UTC*
     @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
Tower_Communications_Equipment =
          Ground-To-Ground_Communications_Equipment  *telephone/ interphone,
               etc.*
     and  Air-To-Ground_Communications_Equipment  *VHF/ UHF, ATIS, etc.*
     and (Recorder)  *installed on communications equipment*
     @    Task Analysis
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-1. Physical Display Contents (Continued)

```
Ground-To-Ground_Communications_Equipment =
     301_Interphone_System  *other systems used include Integrated
          Communications Switching System (ICSS) and Terminal
               Control Switching System (TCSS)*
     and (Override_Circuit)  *between positions in same facility*
     and (Interphone_Circuit)  *1 to 4 digit dial*
     and (Voice_Call_Circuit)  *hotlines*
     and (Commercial_Telephone)
     and [Closed_Circuit_Television]
     and [Teleautograph]
     and [Electrowriter]
     @    TM-21-1  Section I, B through G
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Air-To-Ground_Communications_Equipment =
          (FAA_Radio)  *VHF, UHF, etc.*
     and (Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver)
     and  ATIS_Control_Panel
     and [Recorder_Monitor_Panel]  *with audio alarm*
     @    TM-21-1  Section I, B.1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          FAA_Radio =
               (Frequency_Channelization)  *assigned frequencies*
          and (Transmit/Receive_Indicator)
          and  Receiver_Output  *audio*
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          ATIS_Control_Panel =
               Transmit_Light  *green*
          and  Record_Light  *red*
          and  Message_Limit_Light  *blue*
          and  Malfunction/Alarm_Light  *yellow*
          and  ATIS_Message_Monitor  *audio/ ATIS message*
          and  ATIS_Message_Record  *hard copy*
          @    T-14-2(  page 28, 29, 30, 31
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
          Recorder_Monitor_Panel =  *with audio alarms*
               (Record_Indicator)
          and (Fail_Indicator)
          and (Safe_Indicator)
          @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

CONTROLLER INPUT MESSAGES

Table C-2 presents the messages input by the Tower controllers, including operational messages (e.g., handoff, status change) and system control messages (e.g., display adjustment). The following notations are used in this table:

=		Is defined as
and	=	And
Or	=	Exclusive "or"
( )	=	Message items form a group
{ }	=	Multiple iterations of a message item. Numbers added in the form X{ }Y indicate at least X but not more than Y iterations of the message. By default, X = 0 and Y = no upper limit defined.
[ ]	=	Optional item
* *	=	Comment
@	=	Reference:

AIM = Airman's Information Manual, Federal Aviation Adminsistration, 20 October 1988.

ARTS IIA = National Air Traffic Training Program, Course 55007, ARTS IIA for Air Traffic Control Specialists, FAA Academy, January 1988.

ETG-4-1 = National Air Traffic Training Program, En Route / Terminal User's Guide, Flight Data Input / Output System Training for ATCS, FAA Academy, March 1986.

FAA Order 7110.65E = Air Traffic Control, 9 April 1987 (Change 6, 9 February 1989).

MD-638 = ARTS IIIA Computer Program Functional Specification (CPFS), Keyboard, A3.02, October 1986.

MD-901 = ARTS II Computer Program Functional Specification (CPFS), A2.05, June 1985.

T-14-20 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, ATIS, FAA Academy, July 1987.

T-14-26 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Airport Lighting, FAA Academy, August 1987.

T-14-21 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Lesson Plan, Tower Cab Equipment, FAA Academy, March 1988.

TEM-17-1 = Weather For Air Traffic Control, FAA Academy, April 1987.

TM-12-0-2 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, TPX-42A, Numeric Beacon Decoder, FAA Academy, July 1974.

TM-14-2 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, Bright Radar Indicator Tower Equipment (BRITE), FAA Academy, September 1986.

TM-21-1 = National Air Traffic Training Program, Terminal Manual, Control Tower Equipment Manual, FAA Academy, June 1988.

Categories of message entry functions:

BRITE DISPLAY CONTROL

BRITE REMOTE CONTROL

ARTS IIA / IIIA - TRACK CONTROL

Transfer of Control
Data Block Manipulation
Separation Assurance Control

ARTS IIA / IIIA - DISPLAY CONTROL

ARTS II - TRACK CONTROL

Transfer of Control
Data Block Manipulation

ARTS II - DISPLAY CONTROL

Radar Console Display Messages
General Display Controls

TPX-42A - MASTER CONTROL

TPX-42A - DECODER CONTROL

ASDE DISPLAY CONTROL

FLIGHT DATA / GI MESSAGE MANIPULATIONS

- FDIO / FDEP Messages
- FDIO Display Control
- FDIO Printer Control
- Flight Progress Strip Manipulations
- Data Record Manipulations

AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL / WEATHER INSTRUMENT MANIPULATIONS

METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD CHANGES

STATUS INFORMATION AREA CHANGES

- Information Display System (IDS)
- System Status Data Record

AIRPORT EQUIPMENT / LIGHTING SYSTEMS CONTROL

NAVAID EQUIPMENT CONTROL

TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT CONTROL

- Ground-to-Ground Communications Equipment
- Air-to Ground Communications Equipment

Table C-2. Input Messages

BRITE DISPLAY CONTROL
Adjust_Focus @ TM-14-2 page 2
Adjust_Intensity @ TM-14-2 page 2
Adjust_Contrast @ TM-14-2 page 2
Select_Local/Remote_Display @ TM-14-2 page 2
BRITE REMOTE CONTROL
Erase_Video_Data @ TM-14-2 page 8
Select_Radar_Range @ TM-14-2 page 8
Adjust_Spare_Video_Gain @ TM-14-2 page 8
Select_Center/Decenter_Sweep_Option @ TM-14-2 page 9
Move_N-S_Sweep_Origin *when Decenter is selected* @ TM-14-2 page 8
Move_E-W_Sweep_Orgin *when Decenter is selected* @ TM-14-2 page 8
Adjust_MTI/Normal_Gate_Distance @ TM-14-2 page 8
Adjust_MTI/Normal_Video_Gain @ TM-14-2 page 8

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

BRITE (Continued)

Adjust_Beacon_Video_Gain
@ TM-14-2 page 8

Adjust_Range_Mark_Intensity
@ TM-14-2 page 8

Adjust_Map_Video_Gain
@ TM-14-2 page 8

Adjust_Background_Video_Gain
@ TM-14-2 page 8

Adjust_Brightness
@ TM-14-2 page 9

Adjust_Contrast
@ TM-14-2 page 9

Adjust_Remote_Control_Panel_Light
@ TM-14-2 page 9

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                        ARTS IIA/IIIA TRACK CONTROL

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

TRANSFER OF CONTROL

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Initiate_Handoff =
          Controller_Identification
     or  (Delta_Key
     and  Aircraft_Identification)
     or  (Delta_Key
     and  Facility_Identification)
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key  *position entry module*
     @    MD-638  Tables 2-1, 2-2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Accept_Handoff =
         (Handoff
     and([OK]
     and  Delta_Key)
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     and  Enter_Key)
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Tables 2-1, 2-2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Retract_Handoff =  *recall*
          Handoff
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     and  Enter_Key)
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Tables 2-1, 2-2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Accept/Retract_Forced_Handoff =
          Handoff
     and  OK
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     and  Enter_Key)
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Force_Handoff =
          Handoff
     and  OK
     and  Delta_Key
     and  Adapted_ARTS_Site  *1-7*
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     and  Enter_Key)
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Suspend_Track =
          Track_Suspend
     and  OK
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier
     and  Enter_Key)
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Track_Auto_Start =
          Track_Start
     and  OK
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier
     or   Scratch_Pad)
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Start_Track_File =
          Track_Start
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Assigned_Beacon_Code
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier
     or   Delta_Key
     or   Scratch_Pad)
     and  Aircraft_Type
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Start_Track =
          Track_Start
     and  OK
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier
     or   Scratch_Pad)
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Tables 2-1, 2-2
```

```
Drop_Track =  *from ARTS*
          Drop_Track
     and  OK
     and  Track_Status
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     and  Beacon_Code
     and  Tabular_Line_Identifier)
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Drop_Track_(All) =  *except flight plans*
          Drop_Track
     and  ALL
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

DATA BLOCK MANIPULATIONS

```
Display/Inhibit_Track =
          Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-2
```

```
Reposition_FDB =
          Track_Reposition
     and [OK]
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code)
     or  (Position_Marker  *current position*
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     and  Position_Marker  *new position*
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Display/Delete_Aircraft_Type_In_FDB =
          Flight_Data
     and [OK]
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Figure 2-1
```

```
Flight_Data_Function_Abbreviated  =  *reserve track file*
         (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code)
     and [Delta_Key]
     and  Controller_Identification
     and  Track_Status  *arrival, departure, en route*
     and (Airport_Identification
     or  [Asterisk])
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Flight_Data_Function =
          Flight_Data
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and (Assigned_Beacon_Code
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Delta_Key)
     and (Controller_Identification
     or   Entry_Fix)
     and (Estimated_Time_Of_Arrival  *ETA*
     or   Proposed_Time_Of_Departure)  *PTD*
     and  Delta_Key
     and [Scratch_Pad]
     and [Aircraft_Type]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Modify_Beacon_Code =
          Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Code
     @    MD-638  Table 2-2
```

```
Inhibit_Blinking_Departure_Message =
          Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Display_Departure_Message =
          Flight_Data
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     or  (Assigned_Beacon_Code
     or   Delta_Key)
     and  Exit_Fix
     and [Proposed_Departure_Time]  *PDT*
     and  Scratch_Pad
     and [Aircraft_Type]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Delete_Scratch_Pad =
          Multi_Function
     and  Y-Character
     and [OK]
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Beacon_Code
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Enter_Scratch_Pad/Assigned_Altitude =  *FDB field two*
          Multi_Function
     and [OK]
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code)
     and1{Character}3
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enter/Inhibit_Specified_Track =
          F11
     and  K_Character
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier)
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Inhibit_Display_Of_Hijack/Emergency/Radio_Failure_In_FDB =
          Multi_Function
     and  E_Character
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code)
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Display/Delete_Aircraft_Category/Type =
          Multi_Function
     and [OK]
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier)
     and [Aircraft_Category]
     and [Aircraft_Type]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

SEPARATION ASSURANCE CONTROL

```
Inhibit_MSAW_Display =
          Multi_Function
     and  Q_Character
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Inhibit_MSAW_For Specific_Track =
          Multi_Function
     and  V-Character
     and (MI_Character  *inhibit*
     or   ME_Character)  *enable*
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Entry_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Inhibit_Conflict_Alert_Processing =
          F11
     and  A_Character
     and (E_Character  *enable*
     or   I_Character)  *inhibit*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict =
          F11
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Inhibit_Consolidation_Of_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm =
          F11
     and  G_Character
     and  E_Character  *enable*
     and  I_Character  *inhibit*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Suppress_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm =  *audible alarm control*
     @    Task Analysis
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Suppress/Clear_Conflict_Alert_Processing-Type I/II_Areas =
          F11
     and  Q_Character  *Type I*
     and  Type_I_Numeric_Character
     and  Type_II_Numeric_Character
     and (S_Character  *suppress*
     or   C_Character  *clear*
     or   Z_Character)  *master clear*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair =  *not in conflict or in conflict
     pairwise inhibit table*
          F11
     and  P_Character
     and [Aircraft_Identification]
     and  Enter_Key
     and (Position_Marker
     or   PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

ARTS IIA/IIIA - DISPLAY CONTROL

```
Override_Interfacility_Display
          Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-2
```

```
Display_Host_Altimeter_Setting =
          Multi_Function
     and  Numeric_Character  *1 to 3*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

```
Enable/Disable_Arrival_Fix_Area =
          Multi_Function
     and  A_Character
     and  Fix_Area
     and [H_Character]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Identify_Track_For_LDB_Readout =  *unassociated track*
          Multi_Function
     and  B_Character
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Display_Track_In_Preview_Area =  *associated track*
          Multi_Function
     and  B_Character
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Display_FDB/LDB_Filter_Limits =
          Multi_Function
     and  F_Character
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_LDB_Filter_Limits =
          Multi_Function
     and  F_Character
     and  Untracked_Altitude_Limit  *6 digits (LDB lower/ upper limits)*
     and [Tracked_Altitude_Filter_Limit]  *6 digits (PDB lower/ upper
          limits*)
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_PDB_Altitude_Limits =
          Multi_Function
     and  F_Character
     and  C_Character
     and  Altitude_Limit  *6 digits (lower/ upper limits)*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Enable_Offset/Display_Of_Store_Tabular_List =
          Multi_Function
     and  K_Character
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Enter/Delete_Selected_Code =
          Multi_Function
     and  B_Character
     and  Beacon_Code  *00 to 77*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select/Erase_FDB_Readout =
          Multi_Function
     and  D_Character
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Display_Track_File_In_Preview_Area =
          Multi_Function
     and (Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     or   Tabular_Line_Identifier)
     and  Controller_Identification
     and  A_Character
     and [P_Character]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Offset_Direction =
          Multi_Function
     and  L_Character
     and  Leader_Direction  *single digit*
     and([Aircraft_Direction]
     or   Beacon_Code])
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Track_Data =
          Multi_Function
     and  M_Character
     and  OK
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     or   Beacon_Code
     and  Data_Entry
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-638   Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Relocate_Brite_Tabs =
          Function
     and  P_Character
     and (1_Numeric_Character
     or   2_Numeric_Character)
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_System_Time =
          Multi_Function
     and  S_Character
     and  Time  *six digits*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Initiate/Modify_ATIS_And_GSI =  *general systems information*
          Multi-Function
     and  S_Character
     and  1_Alpha_Character
     and  GI_Data  *1-12 characters*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_Unique_Altimeter_Setting =  *or Host system*
          Multi_Function
     and  S_Character
     and [Numeric_Character]  *1-3*
     and  Altimeter_Setting  *4 digits*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_Unique_GSI =
          Multi-Function
     and  Numeric_Character   *1-3*
     and  GI_Data  *1-12 characters*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Delete_Unique_GSI =
          Multi_Function
     and  S_Character
     and  Numeric_Character  *1-3*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

```
Enter_System_Date =
          Multi_Function
     and  S_Character
     and  Date  *month, day, year*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Align_Adopted_Beacon_Code_To_Current_System_Input =
          Multi_Function
    and   X_Character
    and   System_Code  *Ø, 1, or 2*
    and   Enter_Key
    @     MD-638  Table 2-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Alphanumeric_Video
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Alphanumeric_Brightness
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Character_Size
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Move_Position_Marker  *display cursor/ using slew entry device*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Activate_Quick_Look_Button  *for up to 5 control positions*
     @    MD-638  1.1.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Activate_Quick_Look_Off_Button
     @    MD-638  1.1.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button  *for up to 3 control positions*
     @    MD-638  1.1.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Off_Button
     @    MD-638  1.1.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Activate_Momentary_BRITE_Quick_Look
     @    MD-638  1.1.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_MTI/Normal_Gate
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

Adjust_MTI/Normal_Video_Gain
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Panel_Illumination
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Compass_Rose_Illumination
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_CRT_Focus
@ Task Analysis

Select_Alarm_Override
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Alpha/Numeric_Gain
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Background_Video_Gain
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Beacon_Video_Gain
@ Task Analysis

Select_Leader_Length
@ Task Analysis

Select_Beacon/Analog_Function
@ Task Analysis

Inhibit/Select_Position_Symbol
@ Task Analysis

Select_Center/Decenter_Sweep_Option
@ Task Analysis

Move_N-S_Sweep_Origin *when decenter is selected*
@ Task Analysis

Move_E-W_Sweep_Origin *when decenter is selected*
@ Task Analysis

Adjust_Sweep_Intensity
@ Task Analysis

Select_Range_Mark_Distance
@ Task Analysis

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS IIA/IIIA (Continued)

Adjust_Range_Mark_Intensity	
@	Task Analysis
Adjust_Keybourd_Illumination	
@	Task Analysis
Select_Character_Size	
@	Task Analysis
Select_Range	
@	Task Analysis
Inhibit/Select_Leader_Line	
@	Task Analysis
Inhibit/Select_Aircraft_Identification	
@	Task Analysis
Inhibit/Select_Altitude_Readout	
@	Task Analysis
Inhibit/Select_Handoff_Symbol	
@	Task Analysis
Inhibit/Select_Ground_Speed	
@	Task Analysis

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II - TRACK CONTROL

TRANSFER OF CONTROL

```
Initiate_Handoff =
        ([Control_Position_Symbol]
     or  [ARTCC_Sector_Number]
     or  [ARTS_Handoff_Character])
     and [Aircraft_Identification]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     and (Position_Marker
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.16
```

```
Accept_Handoff =
          Aircraft_Identification
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.17
```

```
Recall_Handoff =
          Aircraft_Identification
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.18
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

DATA BLOCK MANIPULATIONS

```
Remove_Departure_Message =
          Aircraft_Identification  *ACID*
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     and (Position_Marker
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.19
```

```
Arrival_Code =  *new flight plan*
          Arrival_Code_Key  *ARR*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_Pad])
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and [Fix]
     and [ETA/ETD]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-301  4.2.1
```

```
Departure_Code =  *new flight plan*
          Departure_Code_Key  *DEP*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_Pad])
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and [Fix]
     and [ETA/ETD]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-301  4.2.2
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

```
En_Route_Code =  *new flight plan*
          En_Route_Code_Key  *ENR*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_Pad])
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and [Fix]
     and [ETA/ETD]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-3Ø1  4.2.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
VFR_Code =
          VFR_Code_Key  *DEP*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_Pad])
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and [Fix]
     and [ETA/ETD]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-3Ø1  4.2.3
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Beacon_Code_Identification =
          Special_Symbol_Key  *virgule*
     and  Space_Key
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Status   *arrival, departure, enroute*
     and  Space_Key
     and  Beacon_Code
     and  Space_Key
     and [OK]
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-9Ø1  4.2.21
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Enter_Flight_Plan  *using beacon code*
          Beacon_Code *new*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_pad])
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and [Fix]
     and [ETA/ETD]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-9Ø1  4.2.5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

```
Enter_Flight_Plan =
          Aircraft_Identification
     and([Altitude]
     or  [Scratch_Pad]
     and [Special_Designator_Symbol]
     and [Control_Position_Symbol]
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.6
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Beacon_Code =
          Beacon_Code
     and [OK]
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]  *old*
     and  Enter_Key
     or  (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.7
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Aircraft_Identification =
          Aircraft_Identification  *new*
     and  Aircraft_Identification  *old*
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.8
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_ETA/ETD =  *flight plan inactive file*
          Time
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.9
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Fix =
          Fix
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.10
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
ARTS II (Continued)

Modify_Fix/ETA/ETD =
          Fix
     and  ETA/ETD
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.11
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Scratch_Pad/Assigned_Altitude =
         (Delta_Key
     or   Assigned_Altitude)
     and  Scratch_Pad_Data
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key)
     or ((Delta
     or   Assigned_Altitude)
     and  Scratch_Pad_Data
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.12
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Special_Designator =
          Alphabetic_Key  "H"
     and (Special_Designator
     and([OK]
     or  "OK") "if modifying system special designator"
     and (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or  (Aircraft_Identification
     and [Status]   "arrival, departure, en route"
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.13
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

```
Modify_Control_Position_Symbol =
          Control_Position_Symbol
     and  Status   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [OK]
     and (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or  (Control_Position_Symbol
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.14
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Displayed_Control_Of_Inbound_Flight_Plan =
          OK
     and (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or  (Aircraft_Identification
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.22
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Drop_Data =  *delete flight plan*
          Drop_Data_Key
     and [OK]
     and (Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or   Aircraft_Identification
     and [Status]  *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.15
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Inspect_Inactive_File
          Inspect_Key  *INS*
     and (Record_Designator  *two characters*
     or   Aircraft_Identification)  *ACID*
     and [Status]   *arrival, departure, en route*
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.2.20
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
ARTS II (Continued)

Remove_Unsuccessful_Transmission_Alert =  *interfacility*
         (Position_Marker  *via PEM*
     and [OK]
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or  (Aircraft_Identification
     and [OK]
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.2.23
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    ARTS II - DISPLAY CONTROL

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

RADAR CONSOLE DISPLAY MESSAGES

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Relocate_System_Data_Area =
          System_Key
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Relocate_TAB_Area =
          Tabular_Key
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_System_Time =
          System_Key  *SYS*
     and  Time  *hours, minutes, seconds*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.4
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_System_Altimeter =
          System_Key
     and  Altimeter_Setting
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Add/Delete_Selected_Beacon_Code =
        1(Beacon_Code)10  *00 to 77*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ARTS II (Continued)

```
Modify_Altitude_Filter_Limits =
          Altitude_Limit_Key
     and (Upper_Altitude_Limit  *3 digits*
     and [Lower_Altitude_Limit])  *3 digit*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.7
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Modify_Leader_Line_Offset_Direction =
         (Special_Symbol_Key
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key)
     or  (Arrow_Key
     and  Alphabetic_Key  *L for all FDB*
     and  Enter_Key)
     @    MD-901  4.3.8
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Request/Delete_FDB =
          Readout
     and  Position_Marker
     and  PEM_Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.9
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Resectorization =
          Supervisory_Key
     and  Numeric_Key  *one digit*
     and  Enter_Key
     @    MD-901  4.3.10
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

GENERAL DISPLAY CONTROLS

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Move_Position_Marker  *display cursor/ using slew entry device*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select/Deselect_Quick_Look_Button  *for up to 5 control positions*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

TPX-42A MASTER CONTROL
Select/Deselect_Interrogator_Off @ TPX-42A page 1
Select/Deselect_Range_Error_Override @ TPX-42A page 1
Select_Interrogator-Receiver_1_Or_2 *IR/1 or IR/2* @ TPX-42A page 2
Select_Range @ TPX-42A page 3
Set_Altimeter_Setting @ TPX-42A page 3
TPX-42A DECODER CONTROL
Set/Modify_Beacon_Code *up to ten selections* @ TPX-42A page 3
Select/Deselect_Center_Mark_Symbol *POSN switch* @ TPX-42A page 3
Select/Deselect_Beacon_Code_Readout *CODE switch* @ TPX-42A page 4
Select/Deselect_Symbology/Numerics_For_Discrete_Beacon_Code *D switch* @ TPX-42A page 4
Select/Deselect_Altitude_Numerics_For_Selected_Position *6 SELECT ALT switches* @ TPX-42A page 4
Set/Modify_Upper_Altitude_Limits @ TPX-42A page 4

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

TPX-42A (Continued)

Set/Modify_Lower_Altitude_Limits
@ TPX-42A page 4

Select/Deselect_Alt_Flt_Switch *for independent altitude layer within altitude limits*
@ TPX-42A page 4

Adjust_Bracket/Control_Slash_Video
@ TPX-42A page 4

Adjust_Format/Tag_Video
@ TPX-42A page 4

Adjust_Panel_Illumination
@ TPX-42A page 5

Select_Format/Tag_Position *left, right, above, below, and center*
@ TPX-42A page 5

Select/Deselect_Target_Trail *one to three history dots*
@ TPX-42A page 5

Select/Deselect_Bracket_Video/Beacon_Control_Slash
@ TPX-42A page 5

Select/Deselect_All_Aircraft_Position *ALL A/C POSN/ places small circle center mark for all Mode 3/A repies*
@ TPX-42A page 6

Select/Deselect_All_Aircraft_Code *ALL A/C CODE/ displays beacon codes adjacent to circle center mark*
@ TPX-42A page 6

Select/Deselect_All_Aircraft_Altitude *ALL A/C ALT/ displays altitude readouts from any Mode 3/A target*
@ TPX-42A page 6

Select/Deselect_Mode_Selector
@ TPX-42A page 6

ASDE DISPLAY CONTROL

Select/Deselect_Off_Center_Option
@ Task Analysis

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

ASDE (Continued)

```
Adjust_Off_Centering   *horizontal and vertical*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select_Range
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Intensity
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Focus
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Erase_Video_Data
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Panel_Illumination
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select_Video_Presentation
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select_Video_Map
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

FLIGHT DATA/ GI MESSAGES MANIPULATIONS

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

FDIO/ FDEP MESSAGES

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Flight_Plan_Amendment =
          Type_Message  *AM*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Flight_Plan_Data]  *as required*
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Enter_Altimeter_Data =  *for selected stations*
          Message_Type  *AS*
     and((Location_Identification
     and  Altimeter_Data))
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

FDIO/ FDEP Messages (Continued)

```
Departure_Aircraft =
          Message_Type  *DM*
     and/(Aircraft_Identification
     and [Time]
     and [Altitude]))6
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
```

```
Enter_Proposed_Flight_Plan =
          Message_Type  *FP*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Aircraft_Type
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and  Speed
     and  Fix
     and  Time
     and  Requested_Altitude
     and  Route
     and [Remark]
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
```

```
Enter_Active_Flight_Plan =
          Message_Type  *FP*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Aircraft_Type
     and [Beacon_Code]
     and  Speed
     and  Fix
     and  Time
     and  Altitude
     and  Route
     and [Remark]
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-3,  page 19
```

```
Enter_Stereo_Flight_Plan =
          Message_Type  *SP*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Aircraft_Type]
     and [Speed]
     and  Time
     and [Altitude]
     and [Requested_Altitude]
     and  Route
     and [Remark]
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

FDIO/ FDEP Messages (Continued)

```
Request_Flight_Plan_Readout =
          Message_Type  *FR*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Enter_GI_Message =
          Message_Type  *GI*
     and (Output_Routing)
     and  Remark  *free text*
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Initiate/Modify_Hold =
          Message_Type  *HM*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and [Hold_Data]  *fix, time, etc.*
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_Flight_Plan =
          Message_Type  *PR*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Flight_Progress_Data
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Retransmit_To_ARTS =
          Message_Type  *RB*
     and  Location_Identifier
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Force_Flight_Data_Transfer_To_ARTS =
          Message_Type  *RF*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and  Location_Identifier
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Drop_Flight_Plan =  *remove*
          Message_Type  *RX*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Flight_Progress_Strip_Request =
          Message_Type  *SR*
     and  Aircraft_Identification
     and (Location_Identifier
     or   Strip_Number)
     and  Output_Routing
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

FDIO/ FDEP Messages (Continued)

```
Enter_Weather_Information =
          Message_Type  *WX*
     and((Location_Identifier
     and  Altimeter_Data_Time
     and  Weather_Data))
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-6,  page 19
```

```
Adjust_Keyboard_Illumination
     @    ETG-4-1  page 28
```

```
Acknowledge_FDIO_Transmission/Flight_Strip_Pending_Message
     @    ETG-4-1  3.4, page 28
```

FDIO DISPLAY CONTROL

```
Adjust_CRT_Brightness  *cathode ray tube*
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-3
```

```
Adjust_CRT_Intensity
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-3
```

FDIO PRINTER CONTROL

```
Advance_Paper_To_Tear_Position
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-2
```

```
Advance_Paper  *one line*
     @    ETG-4-1  Figure 3-2
```

```
Advance/Reverse_Paper_Continuously
     @    ETG-4-1
```

FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANIPULATIONS

```
Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS  *place, move in a desired sequence*
     @    Task Analysis
```

```
Remove_Flight_Progress_Strip  *remove from counter, bay, mat, store,
     forward, etc*
     @    Task Analysis
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

Record_Flight_Strip_Entry *control information symbols and clearance abbreviations*
@ FAA Order 7110.65E 2-59

Flag/Unflag_Flight_Progress_Strip *cock strips*
@ Task Analysis

Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip *give to another controller*
@ Task Analysis

DATA RECORD MANIPULATIONS

Record_Controller_Note *any handwritten note*
@ Task Analysis

Manually_Transmit_Paper_Record
@ Task Analysis

Remove_Controller_Note
@ Task Analysis

Remove_Paper_Record
@ Task Analysis

AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL/ WEATHER INSTRUMENT MANIPULATIONS

Set_RVR_Digital_Readout_Alarm_Threshhold
@ TM-21-1 page 38

Adjust_RVR_Digital_Readout_Alarm_Volume
@ TM-21-1 page 38

Adjust_RVR_Digital_Readout_Illumination
@ TM-21-1 page 38

Enable/Inhibit_LLWAS_Center/Boundary *Low Level Wind Shear Alert System*
@ TM-21-1 page 39, 40

Adjust_LLWAS_Volume
@ TM-21-1 page 39, 40

Adjust_LLWAS_Brightness
@ TM-21-1 page 39, 40

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
Adjust_Ceilometer_Indicator_Gain
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Ceilometer_Intensity
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Ceilometer_Illumination
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select/Deselect_Ceilometer_Center/Boundary_Option
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD CHANGES

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Record_Meteorological_Data_Change  *write, post, replace, remove, etc.*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Record_PIREP  *on PIREP form*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Record_Airport_Envrionmental/ Weather_Readout  *instruments/ observations*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    STATUS INFORMATION AREA CHANGES

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM (IDS)

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Enter_IDS_Change =  *Informaton Display System (Systems Atlanta or
     equivalent system)*
          Data_Category
     and  Text
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Data_Category =
               NOTAM
          and  ATIS_Message
          and  Equipment_Status
          and  Airspace_Status
          and  Special_Activity
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
Data_Category (Continued) =

      and  Training_In_Progress
      and  Traffic_Management_Information
      and  Adapted_Route_Usage
      and  Sectorization_Plan In_Effect
      and  Weather_Information   *SIGMET, PIREP, surface observation,
                satellite airport weather, AWOS/ASOS, etc.*
      and [Airport_Information]
      and [Surveillance_Approach_Minimum_Data]
      and [Airport_Identifier]
      and [UNICOM_Frequencies]  *local airports*
      and [Intersecting_Runway_Operation_Restrictions]  *types of
                aircraft for holding short distance limitations*
      and [Target_Generator_List_Mockup]
      and [Airport_Environmental_Data]
      and [Phone_List]
      and [Locally_Directed_Information]
      and (General_Remark)
      @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
      Equipment_Status =
                NAVAID_Status
           and  NAVAID_Repair_Schedule
           and  Communication_Channel_Assignment
           and  Radio_Frequency_Assignment
           and  Radio_Equipment_Status
           and  Radio_Equipment_Repair_Schedule
           and  Radar_Equipment_Status
           and  Radar_Equipment_Repair_Schedule
           and  Computer_Outage
           and  Computer_Repair_Schedule
           and  Data_Communications_Line_Outage
           and  Voice_Communications_Line_Outage
           @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
      Airspace_Status =
                Controller_Airspace
           and  Special_Use_Airspace
           and  Other_Airspace_Area
           @    AIM  Section  3, 4, and 5
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
-----------------------------------------------------------------------

SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD

-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Record_System_Status_Change =  *write, replace, turn on/ off, etc.*
          Communications_Status  *radio, telephone, data lines, etc.*
     and  Equipment_Status  FDIO, ARTS, ARTCC, etc.*
     and  Airport_Environmental_Status
     and  ATIS_Code_Reminder  *written/ ATIS code card used as visual
               reference by controllers*
     and  NAVAID_Status
     and  Airspace_Status  *controlled, special use, etc.*
     and [Satellite_Airport_Status]
     and  Movement_Area_Status_Record  *active runway cards, airport
               diagram, manual/ electronic status board for runway, taxiway,
               arresting gear, etc.*
     and [Active_Runway_Reminder]  *visual card, display, etc.*
     and [Locally_Directed_Status]
     @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Select/Inhibit_Runway_Intrusion_Device
     @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Record_Sign_On/Off_Log_Information
     @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
-----------------------------------------------------------------------

                AIRPORT EQUIPMENT/ LIGHTING SYSTEM CONTOL

-----------------------------------------------------------------------
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_System =  *turn on/ off or vary intensity*
          Lighting_System
     and  Runway_Selection
     and (Intensity_Level)  *usually 5 levels*
     @    T-14-26  General, Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
     Lighting_System =
               Runway_Lighting
          and  Taxiway_Lighting
          and  Approach_Lighting  *ALS, ALSF, MALSR, MALSF, etc.*
          and  Visual_Approach_Slope_Indicator_Lighting
          and  Runway_Edge/Centerline/Touchdown Lighting
          and  Runway_End_Identifier_Lighting
          and  In-Runway_Lighting
          and  Airport_Rotating_Beacon
          @    Task Analysis
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD

```
Record_System_Status_Change =  *write, replace, turn on/ off, etc.*
          Communications_Status  *radio, telephone, data lines, etc.*
     and  Equipment_Status  FDIO, ARTS, ARTCC, etc.*
     and  Airport_Environmental_Status
     and  ATIS_Code_Reminder  *written/ ATIS code card used as visual
               reference by controllers*
     and  NAVAID_Status
     and  Airspace_Status  *controlled, special use, etc.*
     and [Satellite_Airport_Status]
     and  Movement_Area_Status_Record  *active runway cards, airport
               diagram, manual/ electronic status board for runway, taxiway,
               arresting gear, etc.*
     and [Active_Runway_Reminder]  *visual card, display, etc.*
     and [Locally_Directed_Status]
     @    Task Analysis
```

```
Select/Inhibit_Runway_Intrusion_Device
     @    Task Analysis
```

```
Record_Sign_On/Off_Log_Information
     @    Task Analysis
```

AIRPORT EQUIPMENT/ LIGHTING SYSTEM CONTOL

```
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_System =  *turn on/ off or vary intensity*
          Lighting_System
     and  Runway_Selection
     and (Intensity_Level)  *usually 5 levels*
     @    T-14-26  General, Task Analysis
```

```
     Lighting_System =
               Runway_Lighting
          and  Taxiway_Lighting
          and  Approach_Lighting  *ALS, ALSF, MALSR, MALSF, etc.*
          and  Visual_Approach_Slope_Indicator_Lighting
          and  Runway_Edge/Centerline/Touchdown Lighting
          and  Runway_End_Identifier_Lighting
          and  In-Runway_Lighting
          and  Airport_Rotating_Beacon
          @    Task Analysis
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Control_Panel_Illumination
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Buzzer_Volume  *for aural alarm*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Set/Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Timer
     @    T-14-26  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Switch_Airport_Lighting_System_Control =
          Tower_Control
     or   Remote_Control
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Operate_Arresting_Gear =  *raise/ lower*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Operate_2/3_Minute_Time  *used for aircraft spacing*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_Traffic_Count  *mechanical traffic counter, paper record, etc.*
     @    TM-21-1  page 7Ø
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    NAVAID EQUIPMENT CONTROL

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Reset/Restore_NAVAID_Equipment =  *for each NAVAID system*
          NAVAID_System
      @   TM-21-1  page 68
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
      NAVAID_System =
           ILS
          and  VOR
          and  DME
          and  NDB
          and  VORTAC
          and  MLS
          @    TM-21-1  page 68, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Control_Panel_Illumination
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Buzzer_Volume  *for aural alarm*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Set/Adjust_Airport_Lighting_Timer
     @    T-14-26  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Switch_Airport_Lighting_System_Control =
          Tower_Control
     or   Remote_Control
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Operate_Arresting_Gear =  *raise/ lower*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Operate_2/3_Minute_Time  *used for aircraft spacing*
     @    Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Update_Traffic_Count  *mechanical traffic counter, paper record, etc.*
     @    TM-21-1  page 70
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

                    NAVAID EQUIPMENT CONTROL

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Reset/Restore_NAVAID_Equipment =  *for each NAVAID system*
          NAVAID_System
      @   TM-21-1  page 68
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
      NAVAID_System =
           ILS
          and  VOR
          and  DME
          and  NDB
          and  VORTAC
          and  MLS
          @    TM-21-1  page 68, Task Analysis
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT CONTROL

GROUND-TO-GROUND COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Operate_301_Interphone_System
@ Task Analysis

Enter_Message_On_Electrowriter *or similiar device*
@ Task Analysis

Use_Gravity_Tube *drop FPSs to radar room*
@ Task Analysis

Operate_Portable_Light_Gun
@ T-14-31 pages 48-49

AIR-TO-GROUND COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Operate_FAA_Radio *transmit/ receive on UHF, VHF, or other radio*
@ TM-21-1 Section I, B - G

Select_Primary/Backup_FAA_Radio_Option
@ TM-21-1 pages 8-14

Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver
@ TM-21-1 page 15

Select/Inhibit_Runway_Incursion_Device
@ Task Analysis

Record_ATIS_Message = *Automatic Terminal Information Service/ modify, change, etc.*
ATIS_Message
@ T-14-20 General

Table C-2. Input Messages (Continued)

```
ATIS_Message =
          Airport_Tower_Identification
     and  ATIS_Code
     and  Weather_Sequence
     and  Optional_Weather Information
     and  Instrument_Approach_In_Use
     and (Departure_Runway)
     and (NOTAM/PIREP/SIGMET/CWA)
     and  Braking_Action
     and  Optional_Information
     and  Low_Level_Wind_Shear
     and  Termination  *pilot acknowledgement instructions*
     @    T-14-2Ø  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Weather_Sequence =
          Time
     and [Ceiling/Sky_Condition]
     and [Visibilty]
     and [Obstruction_To_Visibilty]
     and  Temperature
     and [Dew_Point]
     and [Density_Altitude]
     and  Wind_Direction
     and  Wind_Velocity
     and  Altimeter
     and [Remark]
     @    T-14-2Ø  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Instrument_Approach_In_Use =
          Instrument
     and  Visual
     and [Landing_Runway]
     @    T-14-2Ø  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Optional_Information =  *locally directed*
          VFR_Arrival_Frequencies
     and  Runway_Friction_Reading/Value
     and  Temporary_Airport_Condition
     and  Traffic_Management_Restriction  *departure release rate
               for arrival airport(s)*
     and  General_Information
     @    T-14-2Ø  General
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Appendix D

Task Characterization Analyses

APPENDIX D

TASK CHARACTERIZATION ANALYSES

Included within this appendix are three separate task characterization analyses for each Tower controller position (reference Volume I, Section 3.4):

1. Task Information Requirements
2. Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes
3. Critical Task Performance Requirements

Task Information Requirements. Task Information Requirements are developed by associating controller tasks with system communication messages, and occasionally by direct observation. Communications messages can be to or from another ATCT controller, a Tower Supervisor, a computer display, or someone outside the Tower, such as an ARTCC sector controller. The available system communication input and output messages for ATCT cab controllers are listed in Appendix C.

Tower equipment messages and information include controller-entered messages which may or may not update the data base, or computer output messages such as data blocks, flight data, or IDS information. Messages between ATCT positions or other facility positions may be communicated by Tower Communications Equipment (TCE), G.I. message, or system function messages (ARTS, FDIO/FDEP).

The following summarizes the components of the Task Information Requirement (reference Section 3.4.1 of Volume I for more discussion):

Task Type: Tasks are categorized as belonging to one or more of four types:

- E (ENTRY) - Entry of data into Host or ARTS by system message (e.g., function key) or by G.I. message (FDIO/FDEP). Manual processing of flight data and other information used in ATC operations that will be subject to system automation in the AAS are considered part of the Host or ARTS systems for the purposes of this analysis.

- R (RECEIPT) - Receipt of information by means other than by voice communication; includes system messages, G.I. message (FDIO/FDEP), printed material, and direct observation, as well as workstation displays.

- A (ANALYTICAL) - Cognitive assessment and evaluation of data, involving no input or output of information unless combined with another task type.

- VC (VOICE COMMUNICATION) - Transfer or exchange of information with another person via TCE or directly.

Information Received by the Controller: Information can be received via BRITE display, printer (including G.I message, FDIO/FDEP), or direct observation. Verbal coordination is not addressed. The topic of G.I. message or object of direct observation is cited in non-UIL message terms.

Information Source: The source of information received can be a specific BRITE display, class of output message, G.I. message, other FDIO/FDEP output, various instrument readouts and indicators, or direct observation.

Information Entered by the Controller: Information is entered by the controller via data inputs to the ARTS system, FDIO/FDEP, control panels, or written records.

Frequency: Tasks are assessed relative to all other controller tasks as having HIGH (HI), MEDIUM (MED), or LOW (LOW) frequency of performance.

Criticality: Tasks are assessed relative to all other controller tasks as having EXTREME (EXT), HIGH (HI), MEDIUM (MED), or LOW (LOW) criticality.

Note. Asterisks (* *) are used in the above "Information" columns of the tables to enclose information not identified in the UIL (Appendix C). In this appendix all BRITE and Flight Data objects are associated with ARTS IIA / IIIA and FDIO systems only.

System input messages, display output messages, and logical displays are stated in the terms provided in the User Interface Language of Appendix C. The context of a task's use in the Composition Graphs of Appendix A determines the extent of secondary task types associated with the primary nature of the task, as implied by the task action verb.

Controller activity and sub-activity statements are included in the table listing, as is the one macro, but their information requirements are not listed.

Of the 340 ATCT/TCCC Local Controller tasks, 187 tasks (55 percent) are rated as having Extreme or High criticality. Medium criticality is assigned to 129 tasks (38 percent). The remaining 24 tasks (7 percent) receive a Low criticality rating. Comparable numbers for the 214 Ground control tasks are 68 rated High (32 percent), 122 rated Medium (57 percent), and 24 rated Low (11 percent). For the 136 Clearance Delivery/Flight Data tasks the numbers are 23 High (17 percent), 96 Medium (71 percent), and 17 Low (12 percent). Criticality ratings do not take into consideration the frequency of task performance. Thus, a number of the tasks involved with system malfunctions receive a High criticality rating because, when they would need to be performed, they would be critical to operations.

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1	LOCAL CONTROLLER						
T1.0.0.0	GENERATE CLEARANCE						
T1.1	PERFORM LOCAL SITUATION MONITORING						
T1.1.1	ESTABLISHING POSITIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION						
T1.1.1.1	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.1.1.3	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T1.1.1.5	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T1.1.1.6	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREAS FOR LOCATION/ MOVEMENT OF SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION/ MOVEMENT*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	M
T1.1.1.7	SEARCH DIRECTLY FOR AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT LOCATION	R/A	*AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION/ MOVEMENT*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	M
T1.1.1.8	SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT	R/A	ANALOG RADAR, DATA BLOCK, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	H	M
T1.1.1.9	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.1.1.10	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.1.1.60	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.1.1.61	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.1.2	CHECKING AND EVALUATING SEPARATION						
T1.1.2.3	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	R/A	*AIRCRAFT POSITION, AIRCRAFT COURSE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.1.2.4	PROJECT MENTALLY AN AIRCRAFT'S FUTURE POSITION/ ALTITUDE/ PATH	R/A	DATA BLOCK, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, VIDEO MAP, OBSTRUCTION, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, WEATHER INFORMATION, SURFACE OBSERVATION, CENTER WEATHER ADV.	BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD	N/A	H	H
T1.1.2.10	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.1.2.12	CONTACT OTHER CONTROLLER TO DETERMINE PILOT INTENTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.1.2.60	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS	R/A	ANALOG RADAR, DATA BLOCK, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, VIDEO MAP, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	M	H
T1.1.2.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS/ RECORDS FOR POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP *ARRIVAL/ DEPARTURE LIST*	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, CONTROLLER NOTE	N/A	M	H
T1.1.2.62	QUICK LOOK FULL DATA BLOCKS TO EXAMINE FLIGHT AND TRACK INFORMATION	E/R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK	BRITE DISPLAY	ACTIVATE/ SELECT QUICK LOOK BUTTON, ACTIVATE BRITE QUICK LOOK BUTTON, ACTIVATE MOMENTARY BRITE QUICK LOOK	L	M
T1.1.3	RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION						
T1.1.3.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	R/A	*EQUIPMENT FAILURE OR DAMAGE TO EQUIPMENT ON AIRPORT SURFACE OR IN TOWER*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.12	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R/A	*STATUS INDICATOR*	AIRPORT LIGHTING EQUIPMENT, NAVAID EQUIPMENT MONITOR PANEL	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R	EQUIPMENT STATUS, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R/VC	*SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS*	CI MESSAGE	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.62	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGES	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IUS CHANGE, RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	M
T1.1.3.63	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.64	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R	STATUS DISPLAY AREA, WARNING ALARM, FAULT CONDITION, G/ G, COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT, A/ G COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT	ARTS IIA/ IIIA SYSTEM, FDIO SYSTEM, TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T1.1.3.65	FORWARD AIRPORT/ EQUIPMENT STATUS RECORD	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT PAPER RECORD	L	M
T1.1.4	HOUSEKEEPING						
T1.1.4.1	OFFSET A DATA BLOCK	E	N/A	N/A	MODIFY OFFSET DIRECTION	L	M
T1.1.4.20	UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT	E	N/A	N/A	UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT	M	L
T1.1.4.60	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER TO DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM	E	N/A	N/A	DROP FLIGHT PLAN, DROP TRACK, DROP TRACK (ALL)	L	L
T1.1.4.61	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T1.1.4.62	DELETE TRACK FROM LOCAL SYSTEM	E	N/A	N/A	DROP TRACK (ARTS), INHIBIT SPECIFIED TRACK	L	L

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.1.4.63	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY ORDER/ SEQUENCE FPS	M	M
T1.1.4.64	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE PAPER RECORD	H	L
T1.1.4.65	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T1.1.4.66	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	M	M
T1.1.4.67	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T1.2	RESOLVE CONFLICT SITUATIONS						
T1 2.1	PERFORMING CONFLICT RESOLUTION						
T1.2.1.2	DETECT AIRCRAFT CONFLICT ALERT INDICATION	R	MSAW/ CA ALERT LIST, MSAW/ CA ALERT, MSAW/ CA ALARM PANEL	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.3	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION DIRECTLY	R/A	*POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT NOTICE OR INDICATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.11	DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	R/A	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, FULL DATA BLOCK, POSITION HISTORY, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.12	INFORM PILOT WHEN CLEAR OF TRAFFIC	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	L
T1.2.1.13	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF TRAFFIC IN SIGHT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.2.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT AT THIS POSITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT TO SUPERVISOR	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.2.2	PERFORMING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE RESOLUTION						

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.2.2.2	DETECT MSAW INDICATION OR ALARM	R	MSAW/ CA ALERT LIST, MSAW/ CA ALERT, MSAW/ CA ALARM PANEL	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.3	DETERMINE POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	R/A	*LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF LOW ALTITUDE NOTICE OR MSAW INDICATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.10	OBSERVE FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN DIRECTLY	R/A	*FIXED OBSTRUCTION TERRAIN LOCATION, HEIGHT, CHANGE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.2.2.11	OBSERVE BRITE DISPLAY FOR FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN THAT MAY INTERFERE WITH AIRCRAFT FLIGHT	R/A	VIDEO MAP, OBSTRUCTION, PROMINENT GEOGRAPHIC FEATURE	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T1.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION AT THIS POSITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF VALID MSAW OR FLIGHT ASSIST TO SUPERVISOR	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.2.3	PERFORMING AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION RESOLUTION						
T1.2.3.1	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION DIRECTLY	R/A	*POTENTIAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.2.3.2	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.3.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.3.6	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.3.7	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRSPACE CONFLICT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.3.8	FORMULATE CONTENT OF CONTROL INSTRUCTION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.2.3.9	ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.2.3.60	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.3.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.2.4	ISSUING UNSAFE CONDITION ADVISORIES						
T1.2.4.1	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY (OPEN BAGGAGE DOOR, SMOKE, ETC)*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT/ CLEARANCE/ CONTROL INSTRUCTION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.3	FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.5	OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE MANEUVER*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF SITUATION RETURNED TO NORMAL	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.2.4.7	RECEIVE REPORT OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.8	ADVISE APPROPRIATE CONTROLLER OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.4.9	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.2.5	SUPPRESSING/ RESTORING ALERTS						
T1.2.5.3	SUPPRESS CONFLICT ALERT FOR PAIRED AIRCRAFT	E	N/A	N/A	INHIBIT SPECIFIED TRACK PAIR IN CONFLICT, INHIBIT TRACK PAIR, INHIBIT MSAW/ CA AURAL ALARM	L	M
T1.2.5.4	SUPPRESS MSAW FUNCTION FOR AN AIRCRAFT	E	N/A	N/A	INHIBIT MSAW FOR SPECIFIC TRACK, INHIBIT MSAW/ CA AURAL ALARM	L	M
T1.2.5.60	DETERMINE VALIDITY/ APPROPRIATENESS OF DISPLAY OF AN ALERT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.2.5.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO SUPPRESS ALERT FUNCTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.2.5.62	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RESTORE ALERT FUNCTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.2.5.63	RESTORE SPECIFIC ALERT FUNCTION TO NORMAL	E	N/A	N/A	ENABLE SPECIFIED TRACK PAIR IN CONFLICT, ENABLE MSAW/ CA AURAL ALARM, ENABLE SPECIFIED TRACK PAIR, ENABLE MSAW FOR SPECIFIED TRACK	L	M
T1.3	MANAGE AIR TRAFFIC SEQUENCES						
T1.3.1	PROCESSING DEVIATIONS						
T1.3.1.1	PERCEIVE AN ALTITUDE/ ROUTE DEVIATION	R/A	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, FULL DATA BLOCK, *ALTITUDE DEVIATION, ROUTE DEVIATION*	BRITE DISPLAY, *DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.4	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY	R/A	*GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.6	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.7	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION, VEHICLE MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.3.1.8	OBSERVE BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE	R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T1.3.1.9	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.11	DETECT UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION	R	FULL DATA BLOCK, UNREASONABLE MODE C	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.12	EVALUATE UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION FOR ACTION NEEDED	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.14	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING	R/VC	ALTIMETER SETTING INDICATOR	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.15	INFORM PILOT TO RESET ALTIMETER/ STOP MODE C SQUAWK	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.1.16	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF GROUND EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.1.17	INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	E	N/A	N/A	INHIBIT ALTITUDE READOUT	L	H
T1.3.1.18	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE DEVIATION SITUATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.61	QUERY PILOT/ OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.1.62	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.1.63	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF AIRBORNE DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.1.64	RECEIVE NOTICE TO INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2	ISSUING DEPARTURE INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS						
T1.3.2.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	R/A	*AIRCRAFT LOCATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	M
T1.3.2.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAKEOFF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T1.3.2.5	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2.6	DISCUSS DEPARTURE SEQUENCING WITH GROUND CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.3.2.7	DETERMINE SEQUENCE FOR DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.2.11	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT TO HOLD SHORT/ TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.2.12	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.2.13	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2.14	ISSUE DEPARTURE INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2.15	ISSUE SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION CONCERNING AIRPORT OPERATIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.2.16	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.2.17	ISSUE AMENDED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2.29	SEARCH DEPARTURE AREA DIRECTLY TO INSURE CONDITIONS ARE SAFE FOR TAKEOFF	R/A	*RUNWAY DEPARTING AREA*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.3.2.30	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T1.3.2.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *DEPARTURE LIST*	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, CONTROLLER NOTE	N/A	H	M
T1.3.2.61	REQUEST RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.2.62	RECEIVE INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD FOR RELEASE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.2.63	RECEIVE RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE AND AMENDED CLEARANCE AS NECESSARY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.2.64	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*OTHER CONTROLLER*	N/A	H	M
T1.3.3	ISSUING ARRIVAL AND LANDING INFORMATION/ INSTRUCTIONS						
T1.3.3.2	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR LANDING INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.5	OBSERVE RADAR TARGET/ DATA BLOCK AND FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R/A	ANALOG RADAR, DATA BLOCK, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.8	DETERMINE SAFENESS FOR LANDING	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.10	ISSUE CLEARANCE FOR AIRCRAFT TO LAND OR CLEARANCE FOR OPTION	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.11	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T1.3.3.12	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/OPTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.16	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT GROUND CONTROL	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.18	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.3.19	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	R/A/VC	ATIS CODE REMINDER, ATIS MESSAGE *ATIS CODE*	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	M	M
T1.3.3.20	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE FOR LANDING/ OPTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.3.21	RECEIVE LANDING SEQUENCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.3.22	EVALUATE LOCAL TRAFFIC SITUATION FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, FULL DATA BLOCK	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.23	EVALUATE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENT FOR EFFECT ON LANDING AIRCRAFT	R/A	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS, AIRPORT CONDITIONS	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.24	DETERMINE LANDING SEQUENCE	R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK, LIMITED DATA BLOCK, *AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION*	BRITE DISPLAY, *DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.25	FORMULATE LANDING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.26	RECEIVE INITIAL CONTACT FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T1.3.3.27	EVALUATE AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION STATUS FOR LANDING SAFENESS	R/A	MOVEMENT AREA STATUS, AIRPORT INFORMATION, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS, AIRPORT CONDITIONS	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.28	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.3.29	ISSUE ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T1.3.3.30	EVALUATE WEATHER CONDITIONS AFFECTING AIRFIELD OPERATIONS	R/A	*AIRPORT WEATHER*, SURFACE OBSERVATION, CENTRAL WEATHER ADVISORY, WEATHER INFORMATION, AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD	N/A	H	H
T1.3.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*OTHER CONTROLLER TRANSIT*	N/A	M	H
T1.3.3.61	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.3.62	RECORD NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN DATA	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	H	M
T1.3.4	MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS						
T1.3.4.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	R/A	*INTRUSION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.3.4.3	OBSERVE ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	R/A	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, AIRSPACE BOUNDARY, FULL DATA BLOCK, VIDEO MAP, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.4.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS DIRECTLY	R/A	*NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT POSITION/ MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.3.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.4.7	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.4.8	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.4.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY A NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.5	RESPONDING TO IMPOSED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTIONS						
T1.3.5.2	DETERMINE IMPACT OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION ON AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS RESTRICTING AIRCRAFT ACTIVITY IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA AFFECTED BY RESTRICTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF IMPOSED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION	R/VC	AIRSPACE STATUS, SPECIAL ACTIVITY, AIRPORT INFORMATION, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.3.6	REQUESTING TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS						
T1.3.6.6	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	M	H
T1.3.6.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.6.61	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	R/VC	AIRSPACE STATUS, SPECIAL ACTIVITY, AIRPORT INFORMATION, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.3.6.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.6.63	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.3.6.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	M	H
T1.3.7	RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS						
T1.3.7.2	DISCUSS RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA WITH SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.7.6	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY	R/A	AIRSPACE STATUS, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS, VIDEO MAP, FULL DATA BLOCK, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	L
T1.3.7.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.7.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.7.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.7.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED	R/VC	AIRSPACE STATUS, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS, AIRPORT INFORMATION	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	L
T1.3.8	RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGES						
T1.3.8.1	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK, LIMITED DATA BLOCK, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	H	H
T1.3.8.2	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.8.3	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.8.4	CHOOSE DESIRED DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.8.5	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.3.8.7	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.3.8.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	R	MOVEMENT AREA STATUS, AIRPORT INFORMATION	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T1.3.8.62	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON SEQUENCE	R/A	FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE, EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME	TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RECORD, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	N/A	L	M
T1.3.8.63	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	H
T1.3.9	MANAGING AIRBORNE DEPARTURES						
T1.3.9.1	OBSERVE TAKEOFF DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T1.3.9.2	OBSERVE TAKEOFF ON BRITE DISPLAY	R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.9.3	ISSUE GO AROUND	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.9.4	RECEIVE NOTICE OF PILOT-INITIATED MISSED APPROACH/ TOUCH-AND-GO	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TAKEOFF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.9.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF DEPARTURE	E/VC	N/A	N/A	USE GRAVITY TUBE *TPS*	L	H
T1.3.9.62	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	H	L
T1.3.9.63	INFORM CONTROLLER OF MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ TOUCH-AND-GO/ STOP-AND-GO	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.10	MANAGING AIRCRAFT TAKEOFF TERMINATION						
T1.3.10.1	DETERMINE NEED TO CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.10.2	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE CANCELLATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.10.3	OBSERVE ABORTED TAKEOFF DIRECTLY	R/A	*ABORTED TAKEOFF*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.3.10.4	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF ABORTED TAKEOFF	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.3.10.5	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF ABORTED TAKEOFF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.3.10.60	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, USE GRAVITY TUBE *FPS*	H	M
T1.4	ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS						
T1.4.1	PLANNING CLEARANCES						
T1.4.1.2	RECEIVE IFR CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.3	RECEIVE SPECIAL VFR REQUEST FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.4	RECEIVE TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA REQUEST FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.4.1.5	REQUEST BEACON CODE	E/R	SELECTED BEACON CODE	BRITE DISPLAY, SYSTEM STATUS DISPLAY	BEACON CODE IDENTIFICATION	L	L
T1.4.1.6	ASSIGN BEACON CODE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.4.1.11	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE	R/A	AIRSPACE, STATUS, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, ARRIVAL/ DEPARTURE LIST, FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T1.4.1.13	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR AIRCRAFT CLEARANCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T1.4.1.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.4.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE REQUEST TO ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL/ CLEARANCE RESTRICTIONS FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.64	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.1.65	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.2	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES						
T1.4.2.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	R/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, BLINKING FIELD, BLINKING LDB, BEACON CODE	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.4.2.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AURALLY	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.4	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.5	CONDUCT VISUAL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION OF NORDO/ OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R/A	*AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION*, FULL DATA BLOCK, BLINKING FIELD, BLINKING LOB	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.11	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.2.13	OBSERVE TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	R/A	*TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITON/ EMERGENCY*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.4.2.14	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	E
T1.4.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	A/VC/R	EMERGENCY PROCEDURE BINDER, CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.62	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.63	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	R/A	EMERGENCY PROCEDURE BINDER, CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.4.2.64	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.4.2.65	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.3	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS						
T1.4.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC	SPECIAL ACTIVITY, REMARK, GI MESSAGE	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, FDIO	N/A	L	M
T1.4.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/A	*SPECIAL OPERATION*, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*, FULL DATA BLOCK	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, ASDE DISPLAY, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T1.4.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	R/A	DATA BLOCK, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, SPECIAL ACTIVITY	BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.4.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC	*TERMINATION OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY*, SPECIAL ACTIVITY	GI MESSAGE, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM, STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.4.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4	PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS						
T1.4.4.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4.6	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4.60	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REMINDER ACTION	E	N/A	N/A	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	M
T1.4.4.61	RECEIVE CONTROLLER ADVICE OF UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4.62	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E	N/A	N/A	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	L
T1.4.4.63	INFORM CONTROLLER UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.4.64	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	L
T1.4.5	RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TRANSFER OF CONTROL						
T1.4.5.1	RECEIVE HANDOFF REQUEST	R/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, ATTENTION INDICATOR, HANDOFF	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.4.5.3	ACCEPT VERBAL HANDOFF/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK	E/R/VC	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, FULL DATA BLOCK	BRITE DISPLAY	ACTIVATE/ SELECT QUICK LOOK BUTTON, ACTIVATE MOMENTARY BRITE QUICK LOOK BUTTON, START TRACK	L	H
T1.4.5.4	ACCEPT AUTOMATIC HANDOFF	E	N/A	N/A	ACCEPT HANDOFF FUNCTION	L	H
T1.4.5.5	RECEIVE INITIAL COMMUNICATIONS FROM PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.4.5.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT ALTITUDE WITH PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL	R/A/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, MODE C ALTITUDE, ASSIGNED ALTITUDE, SCRATCH PAD	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	M	H
T1.4.5.7	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO HANDOFF REQUEST	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.5.60	DENY HANDOFF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.6	INITIATING TRANSFER OF CONTROL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION						
T1.4.6.2	ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.4.6.3	INITIATE HANDOFF FUNCTION	E	N/A	N/A	INITIATE HANDOFF	L	H
T1.4.6.6	RETRACT HANDOFF	E/A/VC	N/A	N/A	RETRACT/ RECALL HANDOFF	L	H
T1.4.6.8	RECEIVE HANDOFF ACCEPTANCE	R/VC	HANDOFF, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, ATTENTION INDICATOR	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.4.6.9	DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.6.10	ISSUE CHANGE TO VFR BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.4.6.11	INITIATE VERBAL HANDOFF	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.6.60	RECEIVE HANDOFF REJECTION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.7	ISSUING POINTOUTS						
T1.4.7.7	DISCUSS POINTOUT WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.7.60	INITIATE POINTOUT	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.7.61	RECEIVE REJECTION OF POINTOUT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.7.62	RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE OF POINTOUT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.8	RESPONDING TO POINTOUTS						
T1.4.8.6	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO POINTOUT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.8.60	RECEIVE POINTOUT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.8.61	DENY POINTOUT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.8.62	ACCEPT VERBAL POINTOUT/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK	E/VC/R	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, FULL DATA BLOCK	BRITE DISPLAY	ACTIVATE MOMEMTARY BRITE QUICK LOOK BUTTON, ACTIVATE BRITE QUICK LOOK BUTTON, ACTIVATE QUICK LOOK BUTTON, START TRACK	L	H
T1.4.9	ISSUING CLEARANCES						
T1.4.9.2	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.4.9.4	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T1.4.9.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE	R/A	FULL DATA BLOCK, VIDEO MAP, TARGET POSITION SYMBOL	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	H	H
T1.4.9.7	QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.9.9	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T1.4.9.60	APPROVE CLEARANCE REQUEST	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T1.4.9.61	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.4.9.62	ISSUE CLEARANCE THROUGH FSS/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ OTHER PILOT FOR RELAY TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.4.9.63	SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.5	ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT						
T1.5.1	RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION						
T1.5.1.4	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T1.5.1.7	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T1.5.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.5.1.61	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE	VC/R	*WEATHER ADVISORY*, WEATHER INFORMATION	GI MESSAGE, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T1.5.1.62	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.5.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.5.1.64	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.5.1.65	OBSERVE WEATHER LINE/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS	R/A	*WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ CEILING/ BASE/ HEIGHT/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS*, PRECIPITATION, *AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	BRITE DISPLAY, AIRPORT ENVRIONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, *DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.5.1.66	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED METEOROLOGICAL DATA	R	AVIATION/ CENTER WEATHER FORECAST, SURFACE OBSERVATION, PIREP, WEATHER INFORMATION	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T1.5.1.67	OBSERVE METEOROLOGICAL INDICATOR CHANGE	R	*AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	L	H
T1.5.2	PROCESSING WEATHER REPORTS						
T1.5.2.1	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T1.5.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE, RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T1.5.2.6	REQUEST PIREP	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.5.2.8	DETERMINE WHETHER RUNWAY CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.5.2.9	DETERMINE WHETHER CONTROL ZONE IS IFR/ VFR	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.5.2.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T1.5.2.61	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE	R/VC/E	WEATHER INFORMATION, SURFACE OBSERVATION, AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE, RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE	L	M
T1.5.2.62	RECEIVE RUNWAY/TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	R/VC	AIRPORT INFORMATION, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.5.2.63	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.5.2.64	RECORD PIREP NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD PIREP *PIREP FORM*	L	M
T1.5.2.65	FORWARD PIREP TO OTHERS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.5.2.66	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	R	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	M	H
T1.5.2.67	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE	R	*AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	L	H
T1.5.2.68	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE	L	M
T1.5.2.69	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.5.2.70	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6	MANAGE LOCAL CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES						
T1.6.1	BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS						
T1.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	R/VC	POSITION BINDER, CHECKLIST, OPERATIONAL POSITION STANDARDS, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *DISPLAY INFORMATION*	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD, BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, STATUS INFORMATION AREA	N/A	L	H
T1.6.1.2	BROADCAST NOTICE OF FACILITY STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.1.4	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	R/A	*CONTENT OF BRIEFING*, *DISPLAYS*, *RECORDS*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T1.6.2	ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY						
T1.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	R/A/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, *SYSTEM STATUS*, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	BRITE DISPLAY, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	R/A	*DISPLAY CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, STATUS*	BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T1.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE	E	N/A	N/A	*CONSOLE ADJUSTMENT FUNCTION*	L	L
T1.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	R/A	CHECKLIST, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, *SYSTEM STATUS*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *TRAFFIC, WEATHER*, TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RECORD, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, FPS, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	M	H
T1.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T1.6.3	MANAGING PERSONAL WORKLOAD						
T1.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.6.3.63	REQUEST CHANGE OF AIRPORT ACCEPTANCE RATE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.4	RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS						
T1.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC	POSITION BINDER, CHECKLIST, OPERATIONAL POSITION STANDARDS	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E	N/A	N/A	*(PHYSICAL) RELOCATION OF PERSON/ EQUIPMENT*	L	M
T1.6.5	OPERATING AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEMS						
T1.6.5.2	DETERMINE NEED TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.5.5	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	E	N/A	N/A	ADJUST AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	L	M
T1.6.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.6.5.61	DENY REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.7	RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION						
T1.7.1	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS FAILURES						
T1.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA	R/A	*NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, ELECTROWRITER, BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T1.7.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION	R	*FLIGHT CONTROL DATA*	*OTHER CONTROLLER TRANSIT*	N/A	L	M
T1.7.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *FLIGHT DATA TRANSIT*	L	M
T1.7.2	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS/ BRITE/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES						
T1.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC/R	*ARTS/FDIO FAILURE*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T1.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A	*BRITE DISPLAY MALFUNCTION, FLIGHT DATA INPUT/ OUTPUT SYSTEM MALFUNCTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.3	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS FAILURES						
T1.7.3.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS FAILURE	VC/R	*ARTS FAILURE*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.7.3.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS FAILURE	R/A	*BRITE DISPLAY FAILURE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T1.7.3.62	REVERT TO ARTS BACKUP PROCEDURES	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.3.63	VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES	E/R/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, *ALL PERTINENT DATA*	BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, ENTER IDS CHANGE	L	H
T1.7.3.64	RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.4	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR NAVAID FAILURES						
T1.7.4.1	DETECT NAVAID FAILURE	R/A	*NAVAID STATUS*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T1.7.4.2	INFORM PILOT OF NAVAID STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.7.4.3	REQUEST ADDITIONAL PILOT REPORT ON NAVAID STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.7.5	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES						

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.7.5.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.5.2	REVERT TO LIGHT GUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES	E/A	N/A	N/A	OPERATE PORTABLE LIGHT GUN	L	M
T1.7.5.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E	N/A	N/A	SELECT BACKUP FAA RADIO OPTION	L	H
T1.7.5.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E	N/A	N/A	OPERATE 301 INTERFACE SYSTEM	L	H
T1.7.5.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC	RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT *NEW FREQUENCY*, GI MESSAGE, COMMUNICATION STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, FDIO SYSTEM, SYSTEM, STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.7.5.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC	*COMMUNICATION PATH*, COMMUNICATION STATUS, RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT, COMMUNICATIONS CHANNEL ASSIGNMENT, GI MESSAGE	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T1.7.5.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.5.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.5.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.6	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURES						
T1.7.6.1	DETECT SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURE	R/A	*OVERLOAD SENSING PROTECTION, TRACK STATUS*	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T1.7.6.2	REVERT TO NON-RADAR PROCEDURES	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.7	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES						
T1.7.7.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/A	*TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE*	TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT, 301 INTERPHONE SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T1.7.7.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC	COMMUNICATIONS STATUS, RADIO EQUIPMENT STATUS, VOICE/ DATA COMMUNICATIONS LINE OUTAGE*	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, CONTROLLER NOTE	N/A	L	M
T1.7.7.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.7.8	RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES						
T1.7.8.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	R/A	*AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T1.7.9	RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES						
T1.7.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	R/VC	RADAR EQUIPMENT STATUS, COMPUTER OUTAGE, EQUIPMENT STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T1.7.9.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T1.7.9.62	REVERT TO ARTS STAND-ALONE MODE AND MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T1.7.9.63	DETECT HOST FAILURE	R/A	*INPUT FAILURE*	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2	GROUND CONTROLLER						
T2.1	PERFORM GROUND SITUATION MONITORING						
T2.1.1	ESTABLISHING/ MAINTAINING FOSITIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION						
T2.1.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.1.1.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE AT REPORTED POSITION	R/A	*AIRCRAFT POSITION, VEHICLE POSITION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T2.1.1.4	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.1.1.5	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION, VEHICLE MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T2.1.1.6	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.1.1.7	PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.1.1.8	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T2.1.1.9	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T2.1.1.60	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.1.1.61	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.1.2	CHECKING AND EVALUATING TRAFFIC MOVEMENT						
T2.1.2.1	DETERMINE IF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT EXISTS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.1.3	RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION						
T2.1.3.10	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	R/A	*EQUIPMENT FAILURE OR DAMAGE TO EQUIPMENT ON AIRPORT SURFACE OR TOWER*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T2.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R	EQUIPMENT STATUS	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.1.3.61	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R	STATUS DISPLAY AREA, WARNING ALARM, FAULT CONDITIONS, G/ G COMMUNICAION, EQUIPMENT, A/ G COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT	ARTS IIA/ IIIA SYSTEM, FDIO SYSTE, TOWER COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T2.1.3.62	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMANT STATUS INDICATOR CHANGE	R/A	*STATUS INDICATOR*	AIRPORT LIGHTING EQUIPMENT, NAVAID EQUIPMENT MONITOR PANEL	N/A	L	M
T2.1.3.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R/VC	*AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGE*	GI MESSAGE	N/A	L	M
T2.1.3.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.1.3.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGE	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IDS CHANGE, RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGES, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	M
T2.1.4	HOUSEKEEPING						
T2.1.4.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T2.1.4.61	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	M	M
T2.1.4.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE PAPER RECORD	H	L
T2.1.4.63	UPDATE/REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T2.1.4.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T2.2	CONTROL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE GROUND MOVEMENT						
T2.2.1	RESPONDING TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS						
T2.2.1.2	CHOOSE DESIRED SEQUENCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.2.1.3	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO EFFECT DESIRED SEQUENCE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.2.1.4	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND HOLD	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.1.5	DISCUSS GROUND DELAY TECHNIQUE WITH PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	L
T2.2.1.60	OBSERVE EDCT IN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R	EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME *EDCT*, DEPARTURE STRIP	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	M	M
T2.2.2	PROCESSING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATIONS						
T2.2.2.1	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY	R/A	*GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.5	DETERMINE NEW POSITION FOR AIRCRAFT IN GROUND TRAFFIC SEQUENCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.2.2.6	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE SEQUENCE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.2.7	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN RESPONSE TO GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.8	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO RECOVER FROM GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.10	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION, VEHICLE MOVEMENT/ DIRECTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T2.2.2.11	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T2.2.2.12	INFORM OTHER GROUND TRAFFIC OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.2.62	QUERY PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.3	MANAGING DEPARTURE TRAFFIC						
T2.2.3.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAXI INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A		M
T2.2.3.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK INSTRUCTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	L
T2.2.3.5	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *TRAFFIC IN MOVEMENT AREA*	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, CONTROLLER NOTE, *DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	M	M
T2.2.3.6	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A	EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME *EDCT*, FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE	TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RECORD, DEPARTURE STRIP	N/A	L	M
T2.2.3.8	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)	R/A/VC	AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST, WEATHER INFORMATION, SURFACE OBSERVATION, *AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T2.2.3.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.3.10	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS	R/A/VC	ATIS MESSAGE, ATIS CODE REMINDER	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.2.3.12	DISCUSS SEQUENCING WITH LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.3.16	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREA FOR GROUND TRAFFIC CONFLICTS	R/A	*AIRCRAFT POSITIONS/ MOVEMENT*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	H
T2.2.3.17	PROJECT GROUND TRAFFIC FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT WITH DEPARTING AIRCRAFT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.2.3.18	FORMULATE GROUND MOVEMENT INSTRUCTIONS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.2.3.19	ISSUE AIRPORT CONDITION INFORMATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T2.2.3.20	ISSUE INFORMATION ON CONFLICTING TRAFFIC	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H
T2.2.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, CONTROLLER NOTE	N/A	H	M
T2.2.3.61	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE SEQUENCE	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	M
T2.2.3.62	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY ORDER/ SEQUENCE FPS	H	L
T2.2.3.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO LOCAL CONTROLLER	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	H	M
T2.2.3.64	RECORD TAXI START TIME	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY	H	L
T2.2.4	RESPONDING TO MOVEMENT AREA CLOSURES/ REOPENING						
T2.2.4.5	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO DIVERT TRAFFIC AROUND CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA CLOSURE/ REOPENING	R/VC	AIRPORT INFORMATION, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	M	M
T2.2.4.61	RECORD MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IDS CHANGE, RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	L	M
T2.2.4.62	REQUEST RELEASE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.4.63	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.4.64	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.4.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE	R	MOVEMENT AREA STATUS, AIRPORT INFORMATION	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T2.2.5	RESPONDING TO GROUND MOVEMENT REQUESTS						
T2.2.5.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR REQUEST FOR MOVEMENT IN/ THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.2.5.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA UNDER OTHER CONTROL	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTION TO HOLD SHORT OF ACTIVE RUNWAY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.2.5.5	DISCUSS RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.5.9	ISSUE APPROVAL/ INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND MOVEMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.2.5.10	DENY GROUND MOVEMENT REQUEST	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.5.12	DETERMINE GROUND MOVEMENT COMPLETED	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T2.2.5.14	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	M	H
T2.2.5.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.5.61	RECEIVE DELAY OF TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.5.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.5.63	RECEIVE APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.5.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	M	H
T2.2.5.65	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED MOVEMENT AREA	E/VC	N/A	N/	*TRANSMIT* CONTROLLER NOTE, GI MESSAGE *CHANGE OF MOVEMENT AREA STATUS*	L	L
T2.2.6	RESPONDING TO REQUESTS FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREAS						
T2.2.6.2	OBSERVE CURRENT TRAFFIC IN MOVEMENT AREA	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION*, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T2.2.6.3	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.6.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.6.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.2.6.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.2.6.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.2.7	RESPONDING TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGES						
T2.2.7.4	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.7.5	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.7.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	R/A	AIRPORT INFORMATION, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T2.2.7.62	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A	TARGET POSITION SYMBOL, DATA BLOCK, VIDEO MAP, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	BRITE DISPLAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T2.2.8	MONITORING NON-CONTROLLED OBJECTS						
T2.2.8.1	OBSERVE DIRECTLY A MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	R/A	*INTRUSION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.4	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY	R/A	*NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT POSITION, MOVEMENT, DIRECTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT ON ASDE DISPLAY	R/A	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.6	RECEIVE REPORT UPDATE OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT MOVEMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.7	REQUEST RESPONSE FROM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.8	INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.8.10	REQUEST ASSISTANCE FROM OTHER SOURCES TO ESTABLISH CONTACT WITH NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.2.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.2.8.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ TRAFFIC OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3	ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS						
T2.3.1	PLANNING AND ISSUING CLEARANCES						
T2.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.3.1.2	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE	R/A	AIRSPACE STATUS, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, ARRIVAL/ DEPARTURE LIST, FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SCREEN, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T2.3.1.4	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.5	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.6	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.7	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.10	INFORM PILOT TO REFILE FLIGHT PLAN	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.3.1.11	REQUEST CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.12	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.13	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.14	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.1.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*OTHER CONTROLLER*	N/A	H	L
T2.3.1.61	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT CLEARANCE DELIVERY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.3.1.62	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.3.1.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	M
T2.3.2	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES						
T2.3.2.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.7	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD/ REROUTE GROUND TRAFFIC CLEAR OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.8	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.9	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AIRCRAFT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.10	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R	*OVERDUE AIRCRAFT PRESENCE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	L

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.3.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	A/R/VC	EMERGENCY PROCEDURE BINDER, CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.62	REQUEST RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.3.2.63	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REQUIRED DEPLOYMENT OF EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.64	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.65	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	R/A	CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER, EMERGENCY PROCEDURE BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.66	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.2.67	OBSERVE POSITION OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R/A	*AIRCRAFT POSTION/ IDENTIFICATION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.68	RECORD NECESSARY EMERGENCY/ SPECIAL INFORMATION	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	H
T2.3.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.3.2.70	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.3.2.71	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.2.72	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *CONTROLLER NOTE*	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	L
T2.3.3	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS						
T2.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC	SPECIAL ACTIVITY, REMARK, GI MESSAGE	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, FDIO	N/A	L	M
T2.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/A	*SPECIAL OPERATION*, FULL DATA BLOCK, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	L	M
T2.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	R/A	DATA BLOCK, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, SPECIAL ACTIVITY	BRITE DISPLAY, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC	*TERMINATION OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY*, SPECIAL ACTIVITY	GI MESSAGE, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T2.3.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.3.4	TRANSFERRING CONTROL RESPONSIBILITIES - DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT						
T2.3.4.1	OBSERVE DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT IN PROPER POSITION IN DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A	*AIRCRAFT POSITION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	M
T2.3.4.2	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR LOCAL CONTROLLER ON FREQUENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T2.3.5	OBSERVING ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT						
T2.3.5.2	OBSERVE AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT DIRECTLY	R	*AIRCRAFT POSITION, COURSE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	H	M
T2.3.5.60	OBSERVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT ON ASDE	R	PRIMARY TARGET *ASDE*	ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T2.3.5.61	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R	ARRIVAL STRIP	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	N/A	H	M
T2.3.5.62	RECEIVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT DATA AS LAST AIRCRAFT TO LAND	R	ARRIVAL STRIP, FULL DATA BLOCK	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	H	M
T2.3.6	PROCESSING FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS						
T2.3.6.1	RECORD/ ENTER FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP INFORMATION	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY	L	M
T2.3.6.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	M
T2.3.6.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REQUIRED INFORMATION	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	M
T2.3.6.62	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP CHANGES	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY	M	M
T2.3.6.63	INFORM AFFECTED POSITION OF FLIGHT DATA CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.3.6.64	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4	ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT						
T2.4.1	RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION						
T2.4.1.3	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.4.1.6	OBSERVE SIGNIFICANT AERONAUTICAL AND METEOROLOGICAL DATA	R	AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST, CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY, WEATHER INFORMATION, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS, *AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	M	M
T2.4.1.8	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.4.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4.1.61	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE	R/VC	*WEATHER ADVISORY*, WEATHER INFORMATION	GI MESSAGE, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T2.4.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4.1.64	OBSERVE WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS	R/A	*WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ CEILING/ BASE/ HEIGHT/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS*, PRECIPITATION	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, BRITE DISPLAY, GI MESSAGE, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	M	H
T2.4.2	PROCESSING WEATHER REPORTS						
T2.4.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE, RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE, RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL/ WEATHER READOUT	L	M
T2.4.2.7	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T2.4.2.8	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.4.2.9	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.4.2.50	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.4.2.61	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T2.4.2.62	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE	R/VC/E	SURFACE OBSERVATION, AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST, WEATHER INFORMATION	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, GI MESSAGE	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE, RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE	L	M
T2.4.2.63	RECEIVE RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	R/VC	AIRPORT INFORMATION, MOVEMENT AREA STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T2.4.2.64	REQUEST PIREP	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4.2.65	RECORD PIREP NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD PIREP *PIREP FORM*	L	L

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.4.2.66	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE	R	*AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	L	H
T2.4.2.67	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	R	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, *AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	M	M
T2.4.2.68	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE	L	M
T2.4.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.4.2.70	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.5	MANAGE GROUND CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES						
T2.5.1	BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS						
T2.5.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	R/VC	POSITION CHECKLIST	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T2.5.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	R/A	*BRIEFING CONTENT*, *DISPLAYS*, *RECORDS*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T2.5.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T2.5.2	ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY						
T2.5.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	R/A/VC	FULL DATA BLOCK, *SYSTEM STATUS*, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	BRITE DISPLAY, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	H
T2.5.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	R/A	*DISPLAY CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, STATUS*	BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, ASDE DISPLAY	N/A	M	M
T2.5.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE	E	N/A	N/A	*CONSOLE ADJUSTMENT FUNCTIONS*	L	L
T2.5.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	R/A	CHECKLIST, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, *SYSTEM STATUS*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T2.5.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *TRAFFIC, WEATHER, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*, FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, TRAFFIC MGT RECORD, IDS	N/A	M	H
T2.5.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T2.5.3	MANAGING PERSONAL WORKLOAD						

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.5.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.5.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.5.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.5.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.5.4	RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS						
T2.5.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC	CHECKLIST BINDER, CHECKLIST, OPERATIONAL POSITION STANDARDS	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	M
T2.5.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.5.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E	N/A	N/A	*(PHYSICAL) RELOCATION OF PERSON/ EQUIPMENT*	L	M
T2.5.5	OPERATING TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEMS						
T2.5.5.2	PERCEIVE NEED TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM	R/A	*TAXIWAY LIGHTING*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T2.5.5.3	SWITCH TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	E	N/A	N/A	ADJUST LIGHTING SYSTEM	L	M
T2.5.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.6	RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION						
T2.6.1	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS FAILURES						
T2.6.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA	R/A	*NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA*	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, ELECTROWRITER, BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T2.6.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION	R	*FLIGHT CONTROL DATA*	*OTHER CONTROLLER TRANSIT*	N/A	L	M
T2.6.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *FLIGHT DATA TRANSIT*	L	M
T2.6.2	RESPONDING TO BRITE/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES						
T2.6.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.6.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A	*BRITE DISPLAY MALFUNCTION, FLIGHT DATA INPUT/ OUTPUT SYSTEM MALFUNCTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T2.6.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF EQUIPMENT STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.6.4	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES						
T2.6.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	VC/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.6.4.2	REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES	A/E	N/A	N/A	OPERATE PORTABLE LIGHT GUN	L	M
T2.6.4.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E	N/A	N/A	SELECT BACKUP FAA RADIO OPTION	L	H
T2.6.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E	N/A	N/A	OPERATE 301 INTERPHONE SYSTEM	L	M
T2.6.4.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC	RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT *NEW FREQUENCY*, COMMUNICATIONS STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, GI MESSAGE, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T2.6.4.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC	*COMMUNICATION PATH*, COMMUNICATION STATUS, RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT, COMMUNICATIONS CHANNEL ASSIGNMENT, GI MESSAGE	INFORMATION DATA SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T2.6.4.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.6.4.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.6.4.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.6.5	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES						
T2.6.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/R	*TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE*	TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT, 301 INTERPHONE SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T2.6.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.6.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC	COMMUNICATIONS STATUS, RADIO EQUIPMENT STATUS, VOICE/ DATA COMMUNICATIONS LINE OUTAGE	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, CONTROLLER NOTE	N/A	L	M
T2.6.5.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T2.6.6	RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES						
T2.6.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	R/A	*AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T2.6.7	RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES						
T2.6.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	R/VC	RADAR EQUIPMENT STATUS, COMPUTER OUTAGE, EQUIPMENT STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T2.6.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T2.6.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3	CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA						
T3.1	PERFORM CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA SITUATION MONITORING						
T3.1.1	RECEIVING AIRPORT AND SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INFORMATION						
T3.1.1.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	R/A	*EQUIPMENT FAILURE OR DAMAGE TO EQUIPMENT ON AIRPORT SURFACE OR IN TOWER*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T3.1.1.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM	N/A	M	M
T3.1.1.61	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATOR FOR CHANGE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.1.1.62	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R	AIRPORT CONDITIONS, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	M	M
T3.1.1.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R/VC	EQUIPMENT STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE	N/A	M	M
T3.1.1.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.1.1.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY, RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	M
T3.1.1.66	ENTER AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE MESSAGE	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IDS CHANGE, GI MESSAGE *ENTER*, RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE	M	M
T3.1.2	HOUSEKEEPING						
T3.1.2.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORED CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T3.1.2.61	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY	M	M
T3.1.2.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE PAPER RECORD	L	L
T3.1.2.63	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T3.1.2.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE CONTROLLER NOTE	L	L
T3.1.2.65	DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM	E	N/A	N/A	DROP FLIGHT PLAN	L	M
T3.2	ROUTE OR PLAN FLIGHTS						
T3.2.1	PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION						
T3.2.1.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.2.1.2	REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	H
T3.2.1.3	QUERY PILOT ABOUT FLIGHT PLAN	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.1.5	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY FORWARDED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.1.8	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.1.11	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN DATA TO ANOTHER FACILITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.1.60	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER PROPOSED FLIGHT PLAN, ENTER STEREO FLIGHT PLAN, ENTER ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN	L	M
T3.2.1.61	RECORD NEW FLIGHT PLAN ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY *FLIGHT PLAN DATA*	M	M
T3.2.2	PROCESSING FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENTS						
T3.2.2.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T3.2.2.3	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T3.2.2.5	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	E	N/A	N/A	FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	L	M
T3.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.2.61	QUERY PILOT/ CONTROLLER ON FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.2.62	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*OTHER CONTROLLER*	N/A	L	M
T3.2.2.63	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP POSTING FOR REMINDER ACTION	E	N/A	N/A	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	M
T3.2.2.64	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E	N/A	N/A	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	M
T3.2.2.65	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.2.66	RECORD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY *AMENDED FLIGHT PLAN*	H	M
T3.2.2.67	RECEIVE AMENDED FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM FDIO	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	L	M
T3.2.3	REVIEWING NEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS						
T3.2.3.2	REQUEST FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT	E	N/A	N/A	REQUEST FLIGHT PLAN READOUT	H	M
T3.2.3.3	OBSERVE FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FDIO SYSTEM, FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	H	H

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.2.3.6	QUERY THE RELAYER OF A FLIGHT PLAN	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.2.3.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR ERRORS	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	H	M
T3.2.3.61	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANUALLY	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY ORDER/ SEQUENCE FPS	H	L
T3.2.3.62	OBSERVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON PRINTER	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	H	L
T3.2.3.63	OBTAIN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM PRINTER	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	H	L
T3.3	MANAGE AIR TRAFFIC SEQUENCES						
T3.3.1	RECEIVING/ FORMULATING AND ISSUING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS						
T3.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.6	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T3.3.1.7	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	H
T3.3 1.8	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS	R/A/VC	ATIS MESSAGE, ATIS CODE REMINDER	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	H
T3.3.1.9	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)	R/A/VC	AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST, WEATHER INFORMATION, SURFACE OBSERVATION, *AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL*	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, AIRPORT ENVRIONMENTAL INSTRUMENT	N/A	H	M
T3.3.1.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE FROM OTHER FACILITY/ CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.12	REQUEST NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION FROM PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.13	INFORM PILOT TO FILE/ REFILE FLIGHT PLAN	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T3.3.1.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	H	M
T3.3.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE TO ANOTHER FACILITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.1.64	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS THROUGH FLIGHT SERVICE STATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.3.1.65	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	E	N/A	N/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP REQUEST	L	L
T3.3.1.66	REQUEST FLIGHT PLAN DATA VERBALLY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T3.3.2	TRANSFERRING FLIGHT DATA INFORMATION						
T3.3.2.4	DETERMINE AIRCRAFT IS READY FOR DEPARTURE FROM GATE	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	L
T3.3.2.60	ISSUE NOTICE TO PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR GROUND CONTROL OR TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T3.3.2.61	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	H	M
T3.3.3	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL OPERATIONS						
T3.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC	SPECIAL ACTIVITY, REMARK, GI MESSAGE	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, FDIO	N/A	L	M
T3.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/A	*SPECIAL OPERATION*, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	M
T3.3.3.3	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	E/VC	N/A	N/A	GI MESSAGE	L	M
T3.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	R	CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.3.6	ENTER TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IDS CHANGE, RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, DROP FLIGHT PLAN	L	M
T3.3.4	RESPONDING TO SPECIAL CONDITIONS/ EMERGENCIES						
T3.3.4.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T3.3.4.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	R/A	*AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T3.3.4.4	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	E/VC	N/A	N/A	GI MESSAGE, RECORD FLIGHT STRIP ENTRY *SPECIAL ACTIVITY*, MANUALLY TRANSMIT PAPER RECORD	L	H
T3.3.4.5	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.3.4.7	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R	*OVERDUE AIRCRAFT PRESENCE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	L
T3.3.4.8	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.4.9	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	E/VC	N/A	N/A	GI MESSAGE	L	M
T3.3.4.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT SEARCH	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	L
T3.3.4.11	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T3.3.4.60	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	R/A	EMERGENCY PROCEDURE BINEER, CHECKLIST, POSITION BINDER	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	H
T3.3.4.61	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR INFORMATION ON OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *CONTROLLER NOTE*	FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	L
T3.3.5	PROCESSING DEPARTURE INFORMATION						
T3.3.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT DEPARTURE FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.3.5.2	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER	R	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	*OTHER CONTROLLER*	N/A	M	M
T3.3.5.3	ENTER DEPARTURE MESSAGE	E	N/A	N/A	DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT, USE GRAVITY TUBE	L	H
T3.3.5.4	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTED AIRCRAFT	E	N/A	N/A	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	L	H
T3.4	RESPOND TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS						
T3.4.1	RESPONDING TO FLOW CONSTRAINTS						
T3.4.1.1	RECEIVE CANCELLATION OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION	R/VC	FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE, TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT INFORMATION	GI MESSAGE, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.4.1.3	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION (E.G., EDCT, GATE HOLD)	R/VC	FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE, TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT INFORMATION, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP *EDCT*	GI MESSAGE, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RECORD, FLIGHT STRIP PRINTER	N/A	H	M
T3.4.1.5	DISCUSS TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION PROCEDURES WITH CONTROLLER/ PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T3.4.1.6	INFORM PILOT OF ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	H	M
T3.4.1.9	ENTER TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION ON ATIS MESSAGE	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD ATIS MESSAGE *FOR BROADCAST*	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.4.1.60	FORWARD TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ PILOT	VC/E	N/A	N/A	GI MESSAGE, CONTROLLER NOTE	L	M
T3.4.1.61	RECORD NOTE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION	E	N/A	N/A	CONTROLLER NOTE	L	M
T3.4.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION CANCELLATION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.5	ASSESS WEATHER IMPACT						
T3.5.1	RESPONDING TO SIGNIFICANT WEATHER INFORMATION						
T3.5.1.1	REVIEW ATIS RECORDING	R/A	ATIS MESSAGE	ATIS CONTROL PANEL	N/A	M	H
T3.5.1.2	UPDATE ATIS RECORDING	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD ATIS MESSAGE *VOICE UPDATE VIA TCE*	M	H
T3.5.1.4	OBSERVE WEATHER CONDITIONS	R/A	*AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUTWEATHER/ WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ CEILING/ BASE/ HEIGHT/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS*	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, *DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	M	M
T3.5.1.5	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION OR NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE, RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE, RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL/ WEATHER READOUT	M	M
T3.5.1.60	DISSEMINATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	E	N/A	N/A	ENTER IDS CHANGE, RECORD METEOROLOGICAL DATA CHANGE, GI MESSAGE	M	M
T3.5.1.61	FORMULATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION FOR DISTRIBUTION	R/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T3.5.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	R/VC	SURFACE OBSERVATION, AVIATION WEATHER FORECAST, PIREP, WEATHER INFORMATION	METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, GI MESSAGE	N/A	M	M
T3.5.1.63	ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT OF WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.5.1.64	ISSUE WEATHER ADVISORY TO PILOT	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	M	M
T3.5.1.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	R	AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL STATUS, AIRPORT CONDITIONS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.6	MANAGE CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA CONTROLLER POSITION RESOURCES						
T3.6.1	BRIEFING RELIEVING CONTROLLERS						

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	R/VC	POSITION BINDER, CHECKLIST, OPERATIONAL POSITION STANDARDS, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *DISPLAY INFORMATION*	STATIC INFORMATON RECORD, FLIGHT STRIP BAY, STATUS INFORMATION AREA	N/A	L	H
T3.6.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	R/A	*APPROPRIATENESS OF RELIEVING CONTROLLER ACTIONS AFTER RECEIVING BRIEFING*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T3.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T3.6.2	ASSUMING POSITION RESPONSIBILITY						
T3.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	A/R/VC	*SYSTEM STATUS*, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, INFORMATON DISPLAY SYSTEM, FLIGHT STRIP BAY	N/A	L	H
T3.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAY FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	R/A	*DISPLAY CONFIGURATION, USABILITY*	BRITE DISPLAY, FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	M	M
T3.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL REFERENCE	E	N/A	N/A	*MODIFY DISPLAY FUNCTION*	L	L
T3.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	R/A	*SYSTEM STATUS*, DISPLAY SCREEN DATA	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	R/A	FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *TRAFFIC, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL READOUT*, FLOW RESTRICTION NOTE	FLIGHT STRIP BAY, IDS, AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INSTRUMENT, METEOROLOGICAL DATA RECORD, TM RECORD	N/A	M	H
T3.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	E	N/A	N/A	RECORD SIGN-ON/ OFF LOG INFORMATION	L	L
T3.6.3	MANAGING PERSONAL WORKLOAD						
T3.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	H
T3.6.4	RESPONDING TO POSITION RECONFIGURATIONS						
T3.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC	POSITION BINDER, CHECKLIST, OPERATIONAL POSITION STANDARD	STATIC INFORMATION RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSTIONS	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E	N/A	N/A	*(PHYSICAL) RELOCATION OF PERSON/ EQUIPMENT*	L	M
T3.7	RESPOND TO SYSTEM/ EQUIPMENT DEGRADATION						
T3.7.1	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT ARTS/ FDIO FAILURES						
T3.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF FDIO INPUT DATA	R/A	*NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA*	FDIO SYSTEM	N/A	L	H
T3.7.1.60	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	E	N/A	N/A	MANUALLY TRANSMIT FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP, *FLIGHT DATA TRANSMIT*	L	M
T3.7.1.61	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	R	*FLIGHT CONTROL DATA*	*OTHER CONTROLLER TRANSIT*	N/A	L	M
T3.7.1.62	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF ARTS INPUT DATA	R/A	*NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA*	BRITE DISPLAY	N/A	L	H
T3.7.2	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURES						
T3.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A	*BRITE DISPLAY MALFUNCTION, FLIGHT DATA INPUT/ OUTPUT SYSTEM MALFUNCTION*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	H
T3.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY FAILURE	E/VC	N/A	N/A	GI MESSAGE	L	H
T3.7.4	EXECUTING BACKUP PROCEDURES FOR COMMUNICATION FAILURES						
T3.7.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.4.2	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E	N/A	N/A	SELECT BACKUP FAA RADIO OPTION	L	M
T3.7.4.3	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC	RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT *NEW FREQUENCY*, COMMUNICATION STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, GI MESSAGE, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD	N/A	L	M
T3.7.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E	N/A	N/A	OPERATE 301 INTERPHONE SYSTEM	L	M
T3.7.4.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC	*COMMUNICATION PATH*, COMMUNICATION STATUS	INFORMATION DISPLAY SYSTEM, SYSTEM STATUS DATA RECORD, GI MESSAGE	N/A	L	M
T3.7.4.6	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	E/VC	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, ENTER IDS CHANGE, GI MESSAGE *ENTER*, MANUALLY TRANSMIT PAPER RECORD	L	M
T3.7.4.7	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	E/VC	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, ENTER IDS CHANGE, GI MESSAGE *ENTER*, MANUALLY TRANSMIT PAPER RECORD	L	M

Task Information Requirements

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type	Information Received	Information Source	Information Entered	Freq	Crit
T3.7.4.8	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	E/VC	N/A	N/A	RECORD SYSTEM STATUS CHANGE, ENTER IDS CHANGE, GI MESSAGE *ENTER*, MANUALLY TRANSMIT PAPER RECORD	L	M
T3.7.5	RESPONDING TO TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURES						
T3.7.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC	*TRANSIENT COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE*	TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT	N/A	L	M
T3.7.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/VC	*TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE*	TOWER COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT, 301 INTERPHONE SYSTEM	N/A	L	M
T3.7.5.3	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.6	RESPONDING TO AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURES						
T3.7.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	R/A	*AIRPORT EQUIPMENT FAILURE*	*DIRECT OBSERVATION*	N/A	L	M
T3.7.7	RESPONDING TO HOST FAILURES						
T3.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M
T3.7.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A	N/A	N/A	N/A	L	M

Critical Task Cognitive / Sensory Attributes. This section provides a characterization of EXTREME and HIGH criticality tasks in terms of key cognitive and sensory human attributes involved in the performance of the tasks. These are the human abilities required to perform a task.

Fourteen cognitive and sensory attributes are relevant to the tasks inherent in Air Traffic Control. Definitions of each attribute and ATC examples of each attribute are provided in Section 3.4.2 (Table 3.4-1) of Volume I. The 14 attributes are grouped by type of task, as previously identified in the Task Information Requirements tables of this appendix:

Associated With ENTRY (E) Tasks

- Coding

Associated With RECEIPT (R) Tasks

- Movement Detection
- Spatial Scanning
- Filtering
- Image/Pattern Recognition
- Decoding

Associated With ANALYTICAL (A) Tasks

- Visualization
- Short-Term Memory
- Long-Term Memory
- Deductive Reasoning
- Inductive Reasoning
- Mathematical/Probabilistic Reasoning
- Prioritizing

Associated With VERBAL COMMUNICATION (VC) Tasks

- Verbal Filtering

Analytical attributes predominate as key requirements of critical controller tasks, along with message filtering and decoding. The frequency of attribute association with the critical tasks is as follows:

	Local	Ground	CD/FD	
Coding	7	1	4	Tasks
Movement Detection	24	11	1	Tasks
Spatial Scanning	27	13	2	Tasks
Filtering	47	15	5	Tasks
Image/Pattern Recognition	20	9	3	Tasks
Decoding	34	10	7	Tasks

Visualization	57	19	4	Tasks
Short-Term Memory	48	16	5	Tasks
Long-Term Memory	11	4	3	Tasks
Deductive Reasoning	45	9	6	Tasks
Inductive Reasoning	40	16	5	Tasks
Mathematical/Probabilistic Reasoning	42	8	2	Tasks
Prioritizing	28	6	2	Tasks
Verbal Filtering	45	15	4	Tasks

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

Task Number	Task Statement	Attributes
		Coding Movement Detection Spatial Scanning Filtering I/P Recognition Decoding Visualization Short Term Memory Long Term Memory Deduct Reasoning Induct Reasoning M/P Reasoning Prioritizing Filtering
T1.1.1.9	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION	V D
T1.1.1.10	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	V D
T1.1.2.3	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	M S F V I
T1.1.2.4	PROJECT MENTALLY AN AIRCRAFT'S FUTURE POSITION/ ALTITUDE/ PATH	M S I D V S I
T1.1.2.10	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	D M
T1.1.2.60	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS	M S F V I M
T1.1.2.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS/ RECORDS FOR POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	D V S I M
T1.2.1.2	DETECT AIRCRAFT CONFLICT ALERT INDICATION	F D
T1.2.1.3	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION DIRECTLY	M S F I V I
T1.2.1.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT NOTICE OR INDICATION	D M
T1.2.1.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION	S I P
T1.2.1.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	F
T1.2.1.11	DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	M F D V S I
T1.2.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT AT THIS POSITION	F
T1.2.1.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT	
T1.2.2.2	DETECT MSAW INDICATION OR ALARM	F D
T1.2.2.3	DETERMINE POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	M S F I V D M
T1.2.2.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF LOW ALTITUDE NOTICE OR MSAW INDICATION	V I M
T1.2.2.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	V I M P
T1.2.2.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	
T1.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION AT THIS POSITION	F
T1.2.2.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	
T1.2.3.1	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION DIRECTLY	M S F I V S D M
T1.2.3.2	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	V S D M P

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Cognitive/Sensory Attributes

| Task Number | Task Statement | Attributes | | |

Critical Task Performance Requirements. The HIGH criticality controller tasks identified in the Task Information Requirements tables require expeditious and accurate performance for effective control of aircraft. Particularly important performance characteristics for these tasks are identified in this section. An entry in the accompanying Task Performance Criteria table for a task indicates a performance criterion that is considered important to effective task accomplishment.

Different performance criteria apply to different task types. Refer to Section 3.4.3 (Table 3.4-2) of Volume I for the definitions and ATC examples of each performance criterion. The criteria that can apply to each task type are as follows:

Associated With ENTRY (E) Tasks

- Accuracy of Receipt
- Implementation Time

Associated With RECEIPT (R) Tasks

- Accuracy of Receipt
- Recognition Time

Associated With ANALYTICAL (A) Tasks

- Planning Time
- Accuracy of Time Estimates
- Accuracy of Spatial Estimates
- Accuracy of Probability Estimates
- Appropriateness of Action
- Appropriateness of Timing

Associated With VERBAL COMMUNICATION (VC) Tasks

- Implementation Time
- Accuracy of Communication

Accuracy of verbal communications is the predominant performance criterion for these critical tasks. Accuracy of information entry and receipt via workstation displays, along with recognition time for system information, also are frequently associated with these tasks. For analytical tasks, the predominant performance criteria are the accuracies of estimates of spatial matters and of situation probabilities. The frequency of performance criteria association with the critical tasks is as follows:

	Local	Ground	CD/FD	
Accuracy of Entry	2	1	3	Tasks
Implementation Time	11	3	4	Tasks

Accuracy of Receipt	33	18	7	Tasks
Recognition Time	40	10	4	Tasks
Planning Time	32	8	4	Tasks
Accuracy of Time Estimates	18	7	1	Tasks
Accuracy of Spatial Estimates	36	13	1	Tasks
Accuracy of Probability Estimates	51	17	5	Tasks
Appropriateness of Action	30	3	2	Tasks
Appropriateness of Timing	28	10	2	Tasks
Implementation Time	45	24	5	Tasks
Accuracy of Communication	56	29	8	Tasks

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Task Number	Task Statement	Criteria
		Entry Accuracy / Implementn Time; Receipt Accuracy / Recognition Time; Planning Time / Time Est Accurcy / Space Est Accrcy / Prob Est Accurcy / Action Appropnss / Timing Appropnss; Implementn Time / Commun Accuracy
T1.2.3.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	I A
T1.2.3.6	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	
T1.2.3.7	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRSPACE CONFLICT	
T1.2.3.8	FORMULATE CONTENT OF CONTROL INSTRUCTION	P A T
T1.2.3.9	ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT	I A
T1.2.3.30	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	A
T1.2.4.1	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	A P T
T1.2.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT/ CLEARANCE/ CONTROL INSTRUCTION	P T S P T
T1.2.4.3	FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT	P A T
T1.2.4.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	I A
T1.2.4.5	OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	A S
T1.2.4.7	RECEIVE REPORT OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY	
T1.2.4.8	ADVISE APPROPRIATE CONTROLLER OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	I
T1.2.5.30	DETERMINE VALIDITY/ APPROPRIATENESS OF DISPLAY OF AN ALERT	P
T1.3.1.1	PERCEIVE AN ALTITUDE/ ROUTE DEVIATION	A R T S P
T1.3.1.4	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY	A R S
T1.3.1.6	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO DEVIATION	I A
T1.3.1.9	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	A R S
T1.3.1.11	DETECT UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION	R
T1.3.1.12	EVALUATE UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION FOR ACTION NEEDED	S P A
T1.3.1.14	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING	A A
T1.3.1.17	INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	I
T1.3.1.18	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE DEVIATION SITUATION	T S A T
T1.3.1.30	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE DEVIATION	
T1.3.1.32	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	A
T1.3.1.33	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF AIRBORNE DEVIATION	I
T1.3.1.34	RECEIVE NOTICE TO INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	
T1.3.2.5	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION	A

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

Task Number	Task Statement	Criteria: Entry Accuracy	Implementn Time	Receipt Accuracy	Recognition Time	Planning Time	Time Est Accuracy	Space Est Accrcy	Prob Est Accurcy	Action Appropnss	Timing Appropnss	Implementn Time	Commun Accuracy
T1.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE				R				P				
T1.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS											I	A
T1.7.3.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS FAILURE												
T1.7.3.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS FAILURE				R				P				
T1.7.3.62	REVERT TO ARTS BACKUP PROCEDURES									A			
T1.7.3.63	VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES	A		A									A
T1.7.3.64	RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES												A
T1.7.5.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE								P			I	
T1.7.5.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY		I										
T1.7.5.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD		I										
T1.7.5.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT			A									A
T1.7.5.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH			A									A
T1.7.5.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS											I	A
T1.7.5.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT											I	A
T1.7.5.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH											I	A
T1.7.6.1	DETECT SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURE				R				P				
T1.7.6.2	REVERT TO NON-RADAR PROCEDURES					P	T	S	P	A	T		
T1.7.8.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT				R				P				
T1.7.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE				R								
T1.7.9.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE											I	
T1.7.9.63	DETECT HOST FAILURE				R				P				

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Critical Task Performance Criteria

| Task Number | Task Statement | Criteria | | |

Appendix E

Task Element Statements

APPENDIX E

TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS

The tables presented in this appendix for the three Tower control positions are actually composites of sub-tables, each of which is devoted to the decomposition of a single controller task. Each sub-table contains an identifying Task Number (from Appendix B), Task Statement (from Appendix B), Task Type (from Appendix D), Coordination Media (from Appendix B), Task Frequency and Criticality (from Appendix D), and four columns of information:

1. Element Number
2. Task Element Statement
3. Object(s)
4. Number of Objects

Element Number is an expansion of the Task Number to reflect a logical ordering or likely sequence of the element steps. The element number is unique, although the contents of a given element may be found in more than one task. O (for "Or"), A (for "And"), or A/O (for "And/Or") between elements indicates the end of a sequence of elements comprising such an alternate mode. This convention is needed in particular to denote where two or more entirely different processes may be employed, as in communication tasks which may be performed either via G.I. message (FDIO/FDEP) or Tower Communications Equipment (TCE).

A **Task Element Statement** is presented in the structured form:

Verb – (modifier) – Object – (modifier) – (*descriptive information*)

Verb and Object portions are always present, the other portions being used as needed. Nomenclature for data objects follows the User Interface Language of Appendix C where possible. Tower cab equipment data objects or controller input messages are emphasized by underlines preceding and between words of the object name. An asterisk (*) preceding the Task Element verb indicates that the particular element may not always be performed.

Objects is a summation of the specific User Interface Language (Appendix C) data objects cited in the Task Element Statement. NOTE - In this appendix all BRITE and Flight Data objects are associated with ARTS IIA / IIIA and FDIO systems only.

Number of Objects projects how many instances or representations of each UIL data object a controller generally would deal with in performing the Task Element. Again, a generalized facility and time scenario is assumed. The numbers represent normal situations rather than worst-case scenarios or system limits.

For data objects, no general assumption is made. Quantity of objects is assigned on a case-by-case basis to represent a "normal" situation.

Task Element Report

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.1.1	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *position report*		
T1.1.1.3	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *position report*		
T1.1.1.5	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.5.1	*SEARCH _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Display for likely location of target	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	5 1
T1.1.1.5.2	IDENTIFY _Primary_Target possibly representing location of aircraft/ vehicle of interest	Primary_Target	5
T1.1.1.5.3	ANALYZE positions of _Primary_Target to determine location of aircraft/ vehicle of interest	Primary_Target	5
T1.1.1.5.4	DECIDE which _Primary_Target represents aircraft/ vehicle of interest	Primary_Target	1
T1.1.1.6	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREAS FOR LOCATION/ MOVEMENT OF SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.6.1	*SCAN movement area to determine which of several aircraft/ vehicles may be aircraft/ vehicle of interest		
T1.1.1.6.2	SEARCH portion of movement area to determine which of several aircraft/ vehicles is object of interest		
T1.1.1.6.3	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle of interest by direct observation by aircraft type, markings, movement, position, etc.		
T1.1.1.7	SEARCH DIRECTLY FOR AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT LOCATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.7.1	*SCAN tower airspace for aircraft of interest		
T1.1.1.7.2	SEARCH portion of tower airspace for aircraft of interest		
T1.1.1.7.3	ANALYZE locations and movement of several aircraft in portion of tower airspace to identify aircraft of interest		
T1.1.1.7.4	IDENTIFY aircraft of interest among several aircraft in portion of tower airspace		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.1.8	SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.8.1	SEARCH _Target_Position_Symbol and _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for movement/ location of aircraft of interest	Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	5 5 1
T1.1.1.8.2	IDENTIFY _Aircraft_Identification and _Target_Position_Symbol in _Full_Data_Block representing position of aircraft of interest	Aircraft_Identification Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block	1 1 1
T1.1.1.9	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.1.9.1	COMPARE pilot/ operator-reported position to aircraft/ vehicle position determined by controller		
T1.1.1.9.2	DECIDE aircraft/ vehicle is at reported position		
T1.1.1.10	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.1.10.1	COMPARE location of _Target_Position_Symbol on _BRITE_Dislay to expected/ reported aircraft position	Target_Position_Symbol BRITE_Dislay	1 1
T1.1.1.10.2	DECIDE if expected/ reported aircraft position correlates with location of _Target_Position_Symbol A/D	Target_Position_Symbol	1
T1.1.1.10.3	COMPARE reported location of aircraft to observed location of aircraft		
T1.1.1.10.4	DECIDE if reported aircraft position correlates with location of _Target_Position_Symbol	Target_Position_Symbol	1
T1.1.1.60	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft/ position*		
T1.1.1.61	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle position*		
T1.1.2.3	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.2.3.1	SCAN airspace directly for aircraft routes of flight		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.2.3	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T1.1.2.3.2	SCAN movement areas by direct observation for routes of ground traffic		
T1.1.2.3.3	IDENTIFY projected travel routes providing adequate travel safety		
T1.1.2.3.4	ANALYZE apparent travel paths for potential violation of separation standards		
T1.1.2.3.5	DECIDE if aircraft separation is or will be less than minimum		
T1.1.2.4	PROJECT MENTALLY AN AIRCRAFT'S FUTURE POSITION/ ALTITUDE/ PATH		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.2.4.1	ACQUIRE _BRITE_Display for _Target_Position_Symbol, _Full_Data_Block, _Video_Map *general*, and _Precipitation to project future path	BRITE_Display Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block Video_Map Precipitation	1 1 1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.1.2.4.2	EXTRACT _Flight_Progress_Strip data in _Flight_Strip_Bay and _Time on _Systems_Data_Area on _BRITE_Display or _24-Hour_Clock	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay Time Systems_Data_Area BRITE_Display 24-Hour_Clock	1 1 1 1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.1.2.4.3	EXTRACT _Weather_Information on _Information_Display_System in System Information Area	Weather_Information Information_Display_System	1 1
	A/O		
T1.1.2.4.4	SEARCH _Meteorological_Data_Record for _Surface_Observation, _Center_Weather_Advisory, and _Aviation_Weather_Forecast	Meteorological_Data_Record Surface_Observation Center_Weather_Advisory Aviation_Weather_Forecast	1 1 1 1
T1.1.2.4.5	ACQUIRE observed location of aircraft to project future position		
T1.1.2.4.6	SYNTHESIZE time, location, route, speed, and altitude on specified aircraft into mental picture of future position, altitude, and or path		
T1.1.2.4.7	PROJECT future location, altitude, and or path of aircraft, with possible regard to proximity to other aircraft, obstructions, special use airspace, and weather		
T1.1.2.10	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.2.10.1	EVALUATE current and projected mental traffic picture to determine potential situations of less than standard separation using time, position, aircraft and speed information		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.2.10	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.1.2.10.2	DECIDE if aircraft separation is or will be less than minimum		
T1.1.2.12	CONTACT OTHER CONTROLLER TO DETERMINE PILOT INTENTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.2.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *pilot intentions*		
T1.1.2.60	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.2.60.1	ACQUIRE _Full_Data_Block, _Position_Symbol, _Video_Map, _Airspace_Boundary, _Obstruction, and _Airway/Route for potential violation of separation standards	Full_Data_Block Position_Symbol Video_Map Airspace_Boundary Obstruction Airway/Route	27 27 1 1 1 1
	A/D		
T1.1.2.60.2	ACQUIRE _Arrival/Departure_List and _Landing_Aircraft_List on _BRITE_Display for potential violation of separation standards	Arrival/Departure_List Landing_Aircraft_List BRITE_Display	1 1 1
	A/D		
T1.1.2.60.3	ACQUIRE _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Display for potential violation of separation standards	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	1 1
T1.1.2.60.4	SYNTHESIZE altitude, speed, time, range, and aircraft position into a mental traffic picture with regard to potential violation of separation standards		
T1.1.2.60.5	DECIDE if aircraft separation is or will be less than minimum		
T1.1.2.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS/ RECORDS FOR POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT SEPARATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.1.2.61.1	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for potential violation of separation standards	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
	A/D		
T1.1.2.61.2	SEARCH _Arrival/Departure_Record *GI Message, notepad, etc.* for potential violation of separation standards	Arrival/Departure_Record	1
T1.1.2.61.3	SYNTHESIZE altitude, speed, range, and aircraft position into a mental traffic picture with regard to potential violation of separation standards		
T1.1.2.61.4	DECIDE if aircraft separation is or will be less than minimum		
T1.1.2.62	QUICK LOOK FULL DATA BLOCKS TO EXAMINE FLIGHT AND TRACK INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.2.62.1	INITIATE _Activate_Quick_Look_Button	Activate_Quick_Look_Button	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.2.62	QUICK LOOK FULL DATA BLOCKS TO EXAMINE FLIGHT AND TRACK INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.1.2.62.2	EXECUTE _Activate_Quick_Look_Button O	Activate_Quick_Look_Button	1
T1.1.2.62.3	INITIATE _Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Butt on O	Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button	1
T1.1.2.62.4	INITIATE _Momentary_BRITE_Quick_Look	Momentary_BRITE_Quick_Look	1
T1.1.2.62.5	DETECT _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for flight and track information	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	27 1
T1.1.2.62.6	SYNTHESIZE flight and track information into mental traffic picture		
T1.1.3.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: V/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.11.1	SCAN airport surface for overall equipment status O		
T1.1.3.11.2	SCAN tower equipment for status of specific equipment item		
T1.1.3.11.3	RECOGNIZE failure or damage to equipment on airport surface or in tower cab		
T1.1.3.12	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.12.1	SCAN _Airport_Lighting_Equipment for change in status A/O	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	9
T1.1.3.12.2	SCAN _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel for change in NAVAID status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	6
T1.1.3.12.3	RECOGNIZE changes in airport lighting and equipment status		
T1.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.60.1	ACQUIRE equipment status change on _Display_Screen_Data on Information_Display_System in Status Information Area O	Display_Screen_Data Information_Display_System	1 1
T1.1.3.60.2	ACQUIRE _Equipment_Status change in _System_Status_Data_Record of Status Information Area	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.1.3.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications "equipment status"		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.3.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	0		
T1.1.3.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *equipment status*		
	0		
T1.1.3.61.3	DETECT _Equipment_Status change on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
	0		
T1.1.3.61.4	RECEIVE equipment status change via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1
T1.1.3.62	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.62.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Change or_Enter_IDS_Change for _Equipment_Status change	Record_System_Status_Change Enter_IDS_Change Equipment_Status	1 1 1
T1.1.3.63	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *system status change*		
	0		
T1.1.3.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *system status change*		
T1.1.3.64	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.64.1	DETECT changes in _ASDE_Display, _FDIO_System, _Information_Display_System, and _Tower_Communications_Equipment	ASDE_Display FDIO_System Information_Display_System Tower_Communications_Equipment	1 1 1 1
T1.1.3.65	FORWARD AIRPORT/ EQUIPMENT STATUS RECORD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.3.65.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Paper_Record *equipment status*	Manually_Transmit_Paper_Record	1
T1.1.4.1	OFFSET A DATA BLOCK		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.4.1.1	DECIDE preferred offset for _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.1.4.1.2	INITIATE _Reposition_FDB	Reposition_FDB	1
T1.1.4.1.3	EXECUTE _Reposition_FDB	Reposition_FDB	1
	0		
T1.1.4.1.4	INITIATE _Modify_Offset_Direction	Modify_Offset_Direction	1
T1.1.4.1.5	EXECUTE _Modify_Offset_Direction	Modify_Offset_Direction	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.1.4.1	OFFSET A DATA BLOCK		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.1.4.1.6	DETECT movem of _Data_Block on _BRITE_Display	Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.1.4.20	UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.20.1	TABULATE _Update_Traffic_Count	Update_Traffic_Count	1
T1.1.4.60	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER TO DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request to drop track from system*		
T1.1.4.61	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.61.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T1.1.4.62	DELETE TRACK FROM LOCAL SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.62.1	INITIATE _Drop_Track *from ARTS*	Drop_Track	1
T1.1.4.62.2	EXECUTE _Drop_Track	Drop_Track	1
T1.1.4.63	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.4.63.1	TRANSFORM _Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS	Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS	1
T1.1.4.64	REMOVE DEAD-WOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.64.1	INITIATE _Remove_Paper_Record	Remove_Paper_Record	1
T1.1.4.65	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.65.1	INITIATE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T1.1.4.66	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.1.4.65.1	INITIATE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry on _Flight_Progress_Strip or other nonowritten record	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T1.1.4.67	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.1.4.67.1	INITIATE _Remove_Controller_Note	Remove_Controller_Note	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.1.2	DETECT AIRCRAFT CONFLICT ALERT INDICATION		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.2.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for conflict alert indication	BRITE_Display	1
T1.2.1.2.2	DETECT _MSAW/CA_Alert in _Full_Data_Block on BRITE Display *w/ aural alarm*	MSAW/CA_Alert Full_Data_Block	1 2
	A/O		
T1.2.1.2.3	DETECT _MSAW/CA_Alert and _Aircraft_Identification on _BRITE_Display *w/ aural alarm*	MSAW/CA_Alert Aircraft_Identification BRITE_Display	1 2 1
T1.2.1.3	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.3.1	*SCAN Tower airspace or movement area visually for potential conflict		
T1.2.1.3.2	SYNTHESIZE position/ movement of airborne aircraft or aircraft/ vehicles on ground into mental traffic picture		
T1.2.1.3.3	RECOGNIZE potential aircraft/ aircraft or aircraft/ vehicle conflict		
T1.2.1.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT NOTICE OR INDICATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.4.1	INTEGRATE position, direction, and speed information with regard to the current/ projected proximity of the aircraft/ aircraft or aircraft/ vehicle involved		
T1.2.1.4.2	INTEGRATE known pilot intentions		
	A/O		
T1.2.1.4.3	COMPARE _Aircraft/Vehicle_Radar_Data and _Airport_Video_Map information on _ASDE with current/ projected proximity of aircraft/ vehicle	Aircraft/Vehicle_Radar_Data Airport_Video_Map ASDE	1 1 1
T1.2.1.4.4	ASSESS validity of conflict notice or indication		
T1.2.1.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.5.1	EVALUATE current and projected mental traffic picture to determine potential conflict situation		
T1.2.1.5.2	ASSESS aircraft/ vehicle conflict in consideration of the mental traffic picture		
T1.2.1.5.3	FORMULATE control options for resolving conflict situation		
T1.2.1.5.4	DECIDE appropriate control action required to resolve conflict		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.1.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *advisory/ safety alert*		
T1.2.1.11	DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.11.1	SEARCH _Target_Position_Symbol and _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for information pertaining to aircraft maneuvering in response to advisory/ safety alert	Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1 1
T1.2.1.11.2	DETECT changes in movement of _Target_Position_Symbol and _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display O	Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1 1
T1.2.1.11.3	DETECT changes in _Mode_C_Altitude in _Full_Data_Block on BRITE Display A/O	Mode_C_Altitude Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.2.1.11.4	SEARCH _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Display for information pertaining to aircraft ground maneuvering in response to advisory/ safety alert	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	1 1
T1.2.1.11.5	COMPARE _Target_Position_Symbol movement or _Mode_C_Altitude in _Full_Data_Block to contents of advisory or safety alert O	Target_Position_Symbol Mode_C_Altitude Full_Data_Block	1 1 1
T1.2.1.11.6	COMPARE _Primary_Target to contents of advisory or safety alert	Primary_Target	1
T1.2.1.11.7	RECOGNIZE pilot compliance with advisory or safety alert		
T1.2.1.12	INFORM PILOT WHEN CLEAR OF TRAFFIC		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.2.1.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *traffic report*		
T1.2.1.13	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF TRAFFIC IN SIGHT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.1.13.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-Ground *traffic report*		
T1.2.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT AT THIS POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle conflict*		
T1.2.1.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle conflict*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT TO SUPERVISOR		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle conflict*		
T1.2.2.2	DETECT MSAW INDICATION OR ALARM		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.2.1	DETECT _MSAW/CA_Alert *with aural alarm* in _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display	MSAW/CA_Alert Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.2.2.2.2	DETECT _Alert_Message *low altitude* and _Aircraft_Identification in _MSAW/CA_Alert_List	Alert_Message Aircraft_Identification MSAW/CA_Alert_List	1 1 1
T1.2.2.2.3	EXTRACT MSAW information from appropriate display		
T1.2.2.3	DETERMINE POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.3.1	SCAN airspace and movement areas for fixed obstructions/ terrain		
T1.2.2.3.2	SCAN _BRITE_Display for obstructions of potential conflict with aircraft flight path	BRITE_Display	1
T1.2.2.3.3	PROJECT future location, altitude, and/ or path of aircraft, with possible regard to proximity to other aircraft, obstructions, airspace, and weather		
T1.2.2.3.4	INTEGRATE flight of low flying aircraft with ground obstruction, terrain or unsafe altitude		
T1.2.2.3.5	DECIDE potential unsafe low altitude situation exists		
T1.2.2.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF LOW ALTITUDE NOTICE OR MSAW INDICATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.4.1	INTEGRATE MSAW data into mental traffic picture		
	A/O		
T1.2.2.4.2	INTEGRATE directly observed position and movement of aircraft into mental traffic picture		
T1.2.2.4.3	ASSESS validity of relayed MSAW/ low altitude notice or minimum safe altitude warning		
T1.2.2.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.5.1	INTEGRATE aircraft and MSAW information into mental traffic picture		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.2.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T1.2.2.5.2	INTEGRATE directly observed aircraft position and movement into mental traffic picture		
T1.2.2.5.3	FORMULATE control options for resolving low altitude situation		
T1.2.2.5.4	DECIDE appropriate control action for resolving low altitude situation		
T1.2.2.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.7.1	PERFORM TCS, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *low altitude advisory*		
T1.2.2.10	OBSERVE FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.2.10.1	SCAN airspace and movement areas for fixed obstructions/ terrain		
T1.2.2.10.2	DETECT obstructions in airspace/ movement area		
T1.2.2.10.3	ASSESS traffic hazard posed by obstructions in airspace/ movement area		
T1.2.2.11	OBSERVE BRITE DISPLAY FOR FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN THAT MAY INTERFERE WITH AIRCRAFT FLIGHT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.2.11.1	SCAN _BRITE_Display for obstructions of potential conflict with aircraft flight path	BRITE_Display	1
T1.2.2.11.2	DETECT _Obstruction and _Prominent_Geographic_Feature in _Geographic_Map_Data on BRITE Display	Obstruction Prominent_Geographic_Feature Geographic_Map_Data	3 3 1
T1.2.2.11.3	ASSESS traffic hazard posed by obstruction(s) in airspace area		
T1.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION AT THIS POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.60.1	PERFORM TCS, Receiving G/G Communications *potential low altitude notice*		
T1.2.2.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.2.61.1	PERFORM TCS, Initiating G/G Communications *potential low altitude situation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF VALID MSAW OR FLIGHT ASSIST TO SUPERVISOR		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *MSAW/ flight assist*		
T1.2.3.1	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.1.1	SCAN tower airspace directly for aircraft routes of flight		
	O		
T1.2.3.1.2	SCAN movement area directly for routes of ground travel		
T1.2.3.1.3	INTEGRATE aircraft routes of flight, aircraft position and movement area in tower airspace, and aircraft/ vehicle ground travel into mental traffic picture		
T1.2.3.1.4	RECOGNIZE potential movement area violation		
	O		
T1.2.3.1.5	RECOGNIZE potential mvoement area violation		
T1.2.3.2	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.2.1	INTEGRATE aircraft routes of flight, aircraft position in movement area, tower airspace, and aircraft/ vehicle travel into mental traffic picture		
T1.2.3.2.2	DETERMINE possible courses of action to resolve airspace/ movement area violation		
T1.2.3.2.3	DECIDE best course of action to resolve airspace/ movement area violation		
T1.2.3.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *advisory*		
T1.2.3.6	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ground deviation*		
T1.2.3.7	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRSPACE CONFLICT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communicatons *potential airspace conflict*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.3.8	FORMULATE CONTENT OF CONTROL INSTRUCTION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.8.1	SYNTHESIZE movement area routes, aircraft/ vehicle position, and aircraft/ vehicle movement into mental picture with regard to movement area violation		
T1.2.3.8.2	DECIDE on appropriate action to resolve movement area violation		
T1.2.3.8.3	FORMULATE instructions to issue to aircraft and/ or vehicle		
T1.2.3.9	ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ground movement instruction*		
T1.2.3.60	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *potential airspace/ movement area violation*		
T1.2.3.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *potential/ actual airspace/ movement area violation*		
T1.2.4.1	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.1.1	SCAN specific aircraft/ vehicle for abnormal condition		
T1.2.4.1.2	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle abnormal condition		
T1.2.4.1.3	ASSESS seriousness of observed aircraft or vehicle abnormality		
T1.2.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT/ CLEARANCE/ CONTROL INSTRUCTION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.2.1	DECIDE need for traffic advisory, safety alert, clearance, or control instruction		
T1.2.4.3	FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.3.1	FORMULATE advisory/ safety alert		

Task Element Report

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.4.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *unsafe condition advisory*		
T1.2.4.5	OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA. FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.5.1	SCAN tower airspace/ movement area for aircraft/ vehicle response to advisory/ safety alert		
T1.2.4.5.2	DETECT aircraft/ vehicle of interest maneuver in response to advisory/ safety alert		
T1.2.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ OPER.. OR OF SITUATION RETURNED TO NORMAL		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.4.6.1	PERFORM TCF, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft/ vehicle situation back to normal*		
T1.2.4.7	RECEIVE REPORT OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle abnormality*		
	0		
T1.2.4.7.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft/ vehicle abnormality*		
T1.2.4.8	ADVISE APPROPRIATE CONTROLLER OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.4.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *unsafe aircraft/ vehicle condition*		
T1.2.4.9	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.4.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *unsafe aircraft/ vehicle condition*		
T1.2.5.3	SUPPRESS CONFLICT ALERT FOR PAIRED AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.5.3.1	INITIATE _Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict	Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict	1
T1.2.5.3.2	INDICATE _Flight_Identification	Flight_Identification	2

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.5.3	SUPPRESS CONFLICT ALERT FOR PAIRED AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.2.5.3.3	EXECUTE _Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair_In _Conflict	Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict	1
	O		
T1.2.5.3.4	INITIATE _Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair	Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair	1
T1.2.5.3.5	INDICATE _Aircraft_Identification	Aircraft_Identification	2
T1.2.5.3.6	EXECUTE _Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair	Inhibit_Specified_Track_Pair	1
	A/O		
T1.2.5.3.7	INITIATE _Suppress_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm	Suppress_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm	1
T1.2.5.4	SUPPRESS MSAW FUNCTION FOR AN AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.5.4.1	INITIATE _Inhibit_MSAW_For_Specified_Tra ck	Inhibit_MSAW_For_Specified_Track	1
T1.2.5.4.2	INDICATE _Flight_Identification	Flight_Identification	1
T1.2.5.4.3	EXECUTE _Inhibit_MSAW_For_Specified_Trac k	Inhibit_MSAW_For_Specified_Track	1
	A/O		
T1.2.5.4.4	INITIATE _Suppress_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm	Suppress_MSAW/CA_Aural_Alarm	1
T1.2.5.60	DETERMINE VALIDITY/ APPROPRIATENESS OF DISPLAY OF AN ALERT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.2.5.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO SUPPRESS ALERT FUNCTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.2.5.61.1	PERFORM ICE, Receiving G/G Communications *alert function*		
T1.2.5.62	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RESTORE ALERT FUNCTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.5.62.1	PERFORM ICE, Receiving G/G Communications *alert function*		
T1.2.5.63	RESTORE SPECIFIC ALERT FUNCTION TO NORMAL		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.2.5.63.1	INITIATE _Enable_Specified_Track_Pair_In _Conflict	Enable_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict	1
T1.2.5.63.2	EXECUTE _Enable_Specified_Track_Pair_In_ Conflict	Enable_Specified_Track_Pair_In_Conflict	1
	O		
T1.2.5.63.3	INITIATE _Enable_Conflict_Alert_Processi ng	Enable_Conflict_Alert_Processing	1
T1.2.5.63.4	EXECUTE _Enable_Conflict_Alert_Processin g	Enable_Conflict_Alert_Processing	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.2.5.63	RESTORE SPECIFIC ALERT FUNCTION TO NORMAL		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.2.5.63.5	0 INITIATE _Enable_Specified_Track_Pair	Enable_Specified_Track_Pair	1
T1.2.5.63.6	EXECUTE _Enable_Specified_Track_Pair	Enable_Specified_Track_Pair	1
T1.2.5.63.7	0 INITIATE _Clear_Conflict_Alert_Processin g_Type_I/II_Areas	Clear_Conflict_Alert_Processing_Type_I/II_Are	1
T1.2.5.63.8	EXECUTE _Clear_Conflict_Alert_Processing _Type_I/II_Areas	Clear_Conflict_Alert_Processing_Type_I/II_Are	1
T1.2.5.63.9	0 INITIATE _Enable_MSAW_For_Specified_Trac k	Enable_MSAW_For_Specified_Track	1
T1.2.5.63.10	EXECUTE _Enable_MSAW_For_Specified_Track	Enable_MSAW_For_Specified_Track	1
T1.2.5.63.11	DETECT restoration of alert function		
T1.3.1.1	PERCEIVE AN ALTITUDE/ ROUTE DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.1.1	COMPARE expected aircraft position, altitude, and movement observed aircraft position, altitude, and movement		
T1.3.1.1.2	RECOGNIZE deviation from approved flight plan		
T1.3.1.4	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.4.1	COMPARE position and movement of aircraft/ vehicle with cleared position and movement		
T1.3.1.4.2	RECOGNIZE ground traffic deviation		
T1.3.1.6	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *deviation advisory/ alert*		
T1.3.1.7	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.1.7.1	SCAN movement area for aircraft/ vehicle movement		
T1.3.1.7.2	0 SCAN airspace for aircraft movement		
T1.3.1.7.3	COMPARE aircraft/ vehicle position and motion with cleared position and motion		
T1.3.1.7.4	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle resuming conformance		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.1.8	OBSERVE BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.1.8.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for _Full_Data_Block and _Aircraft_Identification and _Target_Position_Symbol for aircraft interest	BRITE_Display Full_Data_Block Aircraft_Identification Target_Position_Symbol	1 15 1 15
T1.3.1.8.2	DETECT _Full_Data_Block and _Target_Position_Symbol representing aircraft of interest	Full_Data_Block Target_Position_Symbol	1 1
	A/O		
T1.3.1.8.3	SCAN _ASDE_Display for _Primary_Target aircraft/ vehicle of interest	ASDE_Display Primary_Target	1 5
T1.3.1.8.4	DETECT _Primary_Target representing aircraft/ vehicle of interest	Primary_Target	1
T1.3.1.8.5	COMPARE actual position and movement of target with cleared position and movement		
T1.3.1.8.6	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle resuming conformance		
T1.3.1.9	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.9.1	COMPARE position and movement of target on _ASDE_Display with cleared position and movement	ASDE_Display	1
T1.3.1.9.2	RECOGNIZE ground traffic deviation		
T1.3.1.11	DETECT UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.11.1	SEARCH _Full_Data_Block on BRITE Display for _Unreasonable_Mode_C indication	Full_Data_Block Unreasonable_Mode_C	15 1
T1.3.1.11.2	DETECT _Unreasonable_Mode_C in _Full_Data_Block of BRITE Display	Unreasonable_Mode_C Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.3.1.12	EVALUATE UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION FOR ACTION NEEDED		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.12.1	SYNTHESIZE _Unreasonable_Mode_C, _Flight_Progress_Strip, and pilot reported altitude into mental traffic picture	Unreasonable_Mode_C Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T1.3.1.12.2	DECIDE if _Unreasonable_Mode_C is valid	Unreasonable_Mode_C	1
T1.3.1.14	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.14.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *altitude/ altimeter setting*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.1.14	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.3.1.14.2	ACQUIRE current altimeter setting on _Altimeter_Setting_Indicator in _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Altimeter_Setting_Indicator Airport_Environmental_Instrument	1 1
T1.3.1.14.3	COMPARE reported altitude/ altimeter setting indications on _BRITE_Display and _Altimeter_Setting_Indicator	BRITE_Display Altimeter_Setting_Indicator	1 1
T1.3.1.14.4	DECIDE if _Unreasonable_Mode_C indication is valid	Unreasonable_Mode_C	1
T1.3.1.15	INFORM PILOT TO RESET ALTIMETER/ STOP MODE C SQUAWK		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.1.15.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *altimeter/ Mode C setting*		
	O		
T1.3.1.15.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *Mode C equipment*		
T1.3.1.16	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF GROUND EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.1.16.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *equipment malfunction*		
T1.3.1.17	INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.17.1	INITIATE _Inhibit_Altitude_Readout *Mode C*	Inhibit_Altitude_Readout	1
T1.3.1.18	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE DEVIATION SITUATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.18.1	INTEGRATE _Full_Data_Block, _Geographic_Map_Data, and or aircraft/ vehicle direct observation into mental traffic pictuure	Full_Data_Block Geographic_Map_Data	1 1
T1.3.1.18.2	DECIDE appropriate action to resolve deviation		
T1.3.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft/ vehicle deviation*		
	O		
T1.3.1.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft/ vehicle deviation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.1.61	QUERY PILOT/ OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ask about deviation*		
	O		
T1.3.1.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ask about deviation*		
T1.3.1.62	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ground deviation*		
T1.3.1.63	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF AIRBORNE DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airborne deviation*		
T1.3.1.64	RECEIVE NOTICE TO INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *Mode C request*		
T1.3.2.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.2.1	*SCAN runway/ taxiway for aircraft awaiting takeoff clearance	.	
T1.3.2.2.2	IDENTIFY aircraft awaiting takeoff clearance		
T1.3.2.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAKEOFF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *initial contact*		
T1.3.2.5	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *departure information*		
T1.3.2.6	DISCUSS DEPARTURE SEQUENCING WITH GROUND CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communication *sequencing*		
	A		
T1.3.2.6.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *sequencing*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.2.7	DETERMINE SEQUENCE FOR DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.7.1	INTEGRATE planned route of flight, destination, and traffic management restrictions into mental traffic picture		
T1.3.2.7.2	DECIDE optimal sequence for departure aircraft		
T1.3.2.11	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT TO HOLD SHORT/ TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *taxi instructions*		
T1.3.2.12	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.12.1	INTEGRATE flight data, directly observed position and movementt of departure aircraft, and/ or ASDE information into mental traffic picture		
T1.3.2.12.2	DECIDE appropriate interval/ distance for departure		
T1.3.2.13	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.13.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip for amended clearance	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.3.2.13.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *amended clearance/ instructions*		
T1.3.2.14	ISSUE DEPARTURE INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.14.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *RVR/ RVV, braking action, wake turbulence, weather, etc.*		
T1.3.2.15	ISSUE SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION CONCERNING AIRPORT OPERATIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.15.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *traffic/ wake turbulence advisory*		
T1.3.2.16	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.16.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *takeoff clearance*		
T1.3.2.17	ISSUE AMENDED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.17.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip for changes in clearance information	Flight_Progress_Strip	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.2.17	ISSUE AMENDED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.3.2.17.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *amended takeoff clearance*		
T1.3.2.29	SEARCH DEPARTURE AREA DIRECTLY TO INSURE CONDITIONS ARE SAFE FOR TAKEOFF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.29.1	SCAN departure area for conflicting traffic		
T1.3.2.29.2	DETERMINE departure area clear for departing traffic		
T1.3.2.30	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.30.1	SEARCH _ASDE_Display for _Primary_Target awaiting takeoff	ASDE_Display Primary_Target	1 8
T1.3.2.30.2	IDENTIFY aircraft awaiting takeoff clearance		
T1.3.2.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: ? COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.60.1	SEARCH _Flight_Strip_Bay for pertinent departure information on _Flight_Progress_Strip	Flight_Strip_Bay Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T1.3.2.60.2	EXTRACT pertinent departure information from _Flight_Progress_Strip	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.3.2.60.3	EVALUATE new _Departure_Strip for pertinent departure information	Departure_Strip	1
T1.3.2.61	REQUEST RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *departure coordination*		
	A		
T1.3.2.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *departure coordination*		
T1.3.2.62	RECEIVE INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD FOR RELEASE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *departure hold*		
T1.3.2.63	RECEIVE RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE AND AMENDED CLEARANCE AS NECESSARY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.2.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *departure release/ amended clearance*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.2.64	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.2.64.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from other controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.3.3.2	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR LANDING INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot request*		
T1.3.3.5	OBSERVE RADAR TARGET/ DATA BLOCK AND FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.5.1	EXTRACT _Full_Data_Block and _Track_Position_Symbol from on BRITE Display *approaching landing aircraft*	Full_Data_Block Track_Position_Symbol	1 1
T1.3.3.5.2	EXTRACT _Flight_Progress_Strip on _Flight_Data_Display *approaching landing aircraft*	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Data_Display	1 1
T1.3.3.5.3	INTEGRATE into mental picture aircraft information pertinent to landing instructions		
T1.3.3.8	DETERMINE SAFENESS FOR LANDING		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.8.1	RECOGNIZE presence of factors potentially influencing landing safety		
T1.3.3.8.2	ASSESS factors potentially influencing landing safety		
T1.3.3.8.3	DECIDE safeness for aircraft landing		
T1.3.3.10	ISSUE CLEARANCE FOR AIRCRAFT TO LAND OR CLEARANCE FOR OPTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.10.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip for flight/ clearance information	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.3.3.10.2	FORMULATE landing clearance		
T1.3.3.10.3	FORMULATE clearance for landing option		
T1.3.3.10.4	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *landing/ option clearance*		
T1.3.3.11	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot report*		
T1.3.3.12	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.12.1	RECOGNIZE aircraft execution of approved landing option *direct observation*		

Task Element Report

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.3.16	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT GROUND CONTROL		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.16.1	RECOGNIZE pilot has landed		
T1.3.3.16.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot instruction*		
T1.3.3.18	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.18.1	RECOGNIZE _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Target *aircraft position and movement*	Primary_Target ASDE_Target	1 1
T1.3.3.19	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.19.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ATIS*		
T1.3.3.19.2	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Code_Reminder in _System_Status_Data_Record	ATIS_Code_Reminder System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.3.3.19.3	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Message on _Information_Display_System	ATIS_Message Information_Display_System	1 1
T1.3.3.19.4	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Code on _Status_Display_Area on BRITE Display	ATIS_Code Status_Display_Area	1 1
T1.3.3.19.5	DECIDE pilot has current ATIS information		
T1.3.3.20	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE FOR LANDING/ OPTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.20.1	FORMULATE amended clearance *for landing or for a landing option*		
T1.3.3.20.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *amended landing/ option clearance*		
T1.3.3.21	RECEIVE LANDING SEQUENCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.21.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *landing sequence*		
T1.3.3.22	EVALUATE LOCAL TRAFFIC SITUATION FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.22.1	SEARCH _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for potential conflict	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	15 1
T1.3.3.22.2	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for potential conflict	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.3.22	EVALUATE LOCAL TRAFFIC SITUATION FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.3.3.22.3	INTEGRATE extracted traffic information into mental picture		
T1.3.3.22.4	DECIDE if potential conflict exists		
T1.3.3.23	EVALUATE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENT FOR EFFECT ON LANDING AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.23.1	ACQUIRE airport envrionmental information from _Airport_Environmental_ Instrument A/O	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	1
T1.3.3.23.2	SEARCH _Airport_Environmental_Status on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area for impact on landing aircraft O	Airport_Environmental_Status Information_Display_System	1 1
T1.3.3.23.3	SEARCH _Airport_Conditions on _System_Status_Data_Record for conditions affecting landing aircraft	Airport_Conditions System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.3.3.23.4	DECIDE if environmental conditions exist which affect landing traffic		
T1.3.3.24	DETERMINE LANDING SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.24.1	ACQUIRE _Full_Data_Block and _Aircraft_Identification on _BRITE_Display for positions and locations of landing aircraft	Full_Data_Block Aircraft_Identification BRITE_Display	15 15 1
T1.3.3.24.2	SCAN tower airspace directly to identify positions and locations of landing aircraft		
T1.3.3.24.3	ASSESS aircraft characteristics, size, type, and special operation needs		
T1.3.3.24.4	INTEGRATE position and location of all landing aircraft into mental traffic picture		
T1.3.3.24.5	DECIDE landing sequence based on mental traffic picture		
T1.3.3.25	FORMULATE LANDING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.25.1	FORMULATE landing clearance/ instructions based on mental traffic picture, weather, and airport environmental conditions		
T1.3.3.26	RECEIVE INITIAL CONTACT FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.26.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot contact*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.3.27	EVALUATE AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION STATUS FOR LANDING SAFENESS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.27.1	ACQUIRE _Movement_Area_Status, _Airport_Information, _Equipment_Status, and _Airport_Environmental_Status on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Movement_Area_Status Airport_Information Equipment_Status Airport_Environmental_Status Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.3.3.27.2	ACQUIRE airport environmental information from _Airport_Environmental_ Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	1
	A/O		
T1.3.3.27.3	ACUIRE _Equipment_Status and _Airport Conditions in _System_Status_Data_Area in Status Information Area	Equipment_Status Airport_Conditions System_Status_Data_Area	1 1 1
T1.3.3.27.4	DECIDE what data may affect landing safeness		
T1.3.3.28	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.28.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *confirm pilot has current ATIS and/ or issue current ATIS/ arrival information*		
T1.3.3.29	ISSUE ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.29.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *arrival instructions*		
T1.3.3.30	EVALUATE WEATHER CONDITIONS AFFECTING AIRFIELD OPERATIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.30.1	ACQUIRE _Weather_Information on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Weather_Information Information_Display_System	1 1
	A/O		
T1.3.3.30.2	ACQUIRE weather information from _Meteorological_Data_Record	Meteorological_Data_Record	1
	A/O		
T1.3.3.30.3	SEARCH _Airport_Environmental_Instrument for indications affecting airfield conditions	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	1
	A/O		
T1.3.3.30.4	SCAN tower airspace for weather affecting airfield conditions		
	A/O		
T1.3.3.30.5	SYNTHESIZE weather inputs into mental weather picture regarding airfield conditions		
T1.3.3.30.6	DECIDE impact of weather on airfield conditions		
T1.3.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.3.60.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.3.61	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight progress strip from another controller*		
T1.3.3.62	RECORD NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN DATA		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.3.62.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry O	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
T1.3.3.62.2	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T1.3.4.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.2.1	SCAN tower airspace		
T1.3.4.2.2	PERCEIVE non-controlled object intruding into controlled airspace O		
T1.3.4.2.3	SCAN visible airport surface		
T1.3.4.2.4	PERCEIVE non-controlled object *vehicle, animal, debris, etc.* intruding onto movement area		
T1.3.4.3	OBSERVE ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.3.1	ACQUIRE _Target_Position_Symbol *non-controlled object* intruding into controlled airspace O	Target_Position_Symbol	1
T1.3.4.3.2	ACQUIRE _Primary_Target and _Video_Map on _ASDE_Display showing intrusion of non-controlled object into controlled movement area	Primary_Target Video_Map ASDE_Display	1 1 1
T1.3.4.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.5.1	SCAN airspace for non-controlled object		
T1.3.4.5.2	DETECT progress of non-controlled object		
T1.3.4.5.3	EVALUATE relationship of directly observed aircraft/ vehicles to path of non-controlled object		
T1.3.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.4.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *non-controlled object*		
T1.3.4.7	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *non-controlled object*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.4.8	'ORM SUPERVISOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.4.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *notice regarding non-controlled object*		
T1.3.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area intrusion*		
	O		
T1.3.4.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *airspace/ movement area instrusion*		
T1.3.4.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY A NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.4.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *non-controlled object*		
T1.3.5.2	DETERMINE IMPACT OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION ON AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.5.2.1	IDENTIFY available alternative routes avoiding restricted airspace or movement area		
T1.3.5.2.2	ASSESS likely traffic needs during time of airspace or movement area restriction		
T1.3.5.2.3	ASSESS adequacy of alternative traffic routes for period of airspace or movement area restriction		
T1.3.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS RESTRICTING AIRCRAFT ACTIVITY IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA AFFECTED BY RESTRICTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.5.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *airspace/ movement area restriction*		
T1.3.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF IMPOSED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area restriction*		
	O		
T1.3.5.60.2	RECEIVE notice of _Airspace_Status or _Airport_Information change or _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Airport_Information Special_Activity Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
	O		
T1.3.5.60.3	RECEIVE _Airspace_Status or _Airport_Conditions change on _System_Status_Data_Display in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Airport_Conditions System_Status_Data_Display	1 1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.6.6	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.6.6.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Change for movement area release	Record_System_Status_Change	1
T1.3.6.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.6.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airspace / movement area release*		
T1.3.6.61	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.6.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area release*		
	O		
T1.3.6.61.2	ACQUIRE _Airspace_Status, _Airport_Information or _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Airport_Information Special_Activity Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
	O		
T1.3.6.61.3	ACQUIRE _Airspace_Status or _Movement_Area_Status on _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Movement_Area_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T1.3.6.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.6.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airpsace/ movement area*		
T1.3.6.63	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.3.6.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area use*		
T1.3.6.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.6.64.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Change for _Movement_Area_Status	Record_System_Status_Change Movement_Area_Status	1 1
	O		
T1.3.6.64.2	INTRODUCE _Enter_IDS_Change for movement area release in _Airport_Information	Enter_IDS_Change Airport_Information	1 1
T1.3.7.2	DISCUSS RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA WITH SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.7.2.1	DECIDE need to discuss airspace or movement area release		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.7.2	DISCUSS RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA WITH SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.3.7.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area*		
	A		
T1.3.7.2.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *temporary release of airspace or movement area*		
T1.3.7.6	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.3.7.6.1	ACQUIRE _Full_Data_Block and _Airspace_Boundary on _BRITE_Display for information pertaining to airspace	Full_Data_Block Airspace_Boundary BRITE_Display	15 1 1
	A/O		
T1.3.7.6.2	ACQUIRE _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Data_Display for information pertaining to release of airspace	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Data_Display	32 1
	A/O		
T1.3.7.6.3	ACQUIRE _Airspace_Status or _Movement_Area_Status on _Status_Information_Area in Status Information Area for airspace and movement area status	Airspace_Status Movement_Area_Status Status_Information_Area	1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.3.7.6.4	ACQUIRE _Airspace_Status or _Movement_Area_Status on _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area for airspace and movement area status	Airspace_Status Movement_Area_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T1.3.7.6.5	SYNTHESIZE aircraft and airspace information into a mental traffic picture with regard to approving release of airspace/ movement area		
T1.3.7.6.6	DECIDE feasibility of temporarily releasing airspace/ movement area to another controller		
T1.3.7.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.7.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area release*		
T1.3.7.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.7.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area use*		
T1.3.7.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.7.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area use*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.7.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.3.7.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *airspace/ movement area*		
	O		
T1.3.7.63.2	ACQUIRE change of _Airspace_Status, _Airport_Information, or _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Airport_Information Special_Activity Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
	O		
T1.3.7.63.3	ACQUIRE change of _Airspace_Status or _Movement_Area in _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Airspace_Status Movement_Area System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T1.3.8.1	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.1.1	SEARCH _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for information relating to departure sequence	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	15 1
	A/O		
T1.3.8.1.2	SEARCH _ASDE_Display for _Primary_Target for information to departure aircraft	ASDE_Display Primary_Target	1 15
T1.3.8.1.3	SYNTHESIZE departure information from _BRITE_Display and _ASDE_Display into mental picture regarding departure situation	BRITE_Display ASDE_Display	1 1
T1.3.8.2	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
	A		
T1.3.8.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
T1.3.8.2.3	ASSESS impact of runway/ taxiway change		
T1.3.8.2.4	DECIDE actions required in response to runway/ taxiway change		
T1.3.8.3	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.3.1	DETECT _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Display for progress through movement area	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	15 1
T1.3.8.4	CHOOSE DESIRED DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.4.1	FORMULATE options for departure sequence		
T1.3.8.4.2	DECIDE on best departure sequence		
T1.3.8.5	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.5.1	FORMULATE options in aircraft movement to achieve desired departure sequence		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.8.5	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.3.8.5.2	DECIDE on best option to achieve departure sequence		
T1.3.8.7	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.7.1	SYNTHESIZE _Full_Data_Block, _Geographic_Map_Data, aircraft/ vehicle position and movement, and _Movement_Area_Diagram into mental traffic picture	Full_Data_Block Geographic_Map_Data Movement_Area_Diagram	1 1 1
T1.3.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.8.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ change*		
T1.3.8.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.8.61.1	DETECT change in runway/ taxiway change in _Movement_Area_Status	Movement_Area_Status	1
T1.3.8.62	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.8.62.1	DETECT _Flow_Restriction_Note change in _Traffic_Management_Record	Flow_Restriction_Note Traffic_Management_Record	1 1
T1.3.8.62.2	ASSESS _Flow_Restriction_Note change impact on traffic sequence	Flow_Restriction_Note	1
T1.3.8.63	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.8.63.1	ASSESS _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for information pertaining to departure sequence	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T1.3.9.1	OBSERVE TAKEOFF DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.1.1	DETECT aircraft takeoff visually		
T1.3.9.2	OBSERVE TAKEOFF ON BRITE DISPLAY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.2.1	DETECT _Full_Data_Block of departing aircraft on _BRITE_Display	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.3.9.3	ISSUE GO AROUND		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *go around instructions*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.9.4	RECEIVE NOTICE OF PILOT-INITIATED MISSED APPROACH/ TOUCH-AND-GO		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *notice of missed approach/ go around*		
T1.3.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TAKEOFF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft takeoff*		
T1.3.9.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF DEPARTURE		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft takeoff*		
	0		
T1.3.9.61.2	EXECUTE _Use_Gravity_Tube to forward _Flight_Progress_Strip to TRACON controller	Use_Gravity_Tube Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
	0		
T1.3.9.61.3	INITIATE _Departure_Aircraft message on _FDIO_System on departing aircraft	Departure_Aircraft FDIO_System	1 1
T1.3.9.61.4	INTRODUCE _Aircraft_Identification for departing aircraft	Aircraft_Identification	1
T1.3.9.61.5	EXECUTE _Departure_Aircraft message	Departure_Aircraft	1
T1.3.9.62	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1 3.9.62.1	INITIATE _Remove_Flight_Progress from _Flight_Strip_Bay	Remove_Flight_Progress Flight_Strip_Bay	1 1
T1.3.9.63	INFORM CONTROLLER OF MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ TOUCH-AND-GO/ STOP-AND-GO		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.9.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *notice of missed approach, go around, touch-and-go, or stop-and-go*		
T1.3.10.1	DETERMINE NEED TO CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.10.1.1	INTEGRATE aircraft/ vencile/ obstructin, direct observation, and/ or _ASDE_Display into mental traffic picture	ASDE_Display	1
T1.3.10.1.2	DECIDE aircraft tadeoff is not safe and clearance must be revoked		
T1.3.10.2	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE CANCELLATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.10.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *takeoff clearance*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.3.10.3	OBSERVE ABORTED TAKEOFF DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.10.3.1	DETECT aircraft aborting takeoff visually		
T1.3.10.4	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF ABORTED TAKEOFF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.10.4.1	DETECT _Primary_Target aborting takeoff on _ASDE_Display	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	1 1
T1.3.10.5	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF ABORTED TAKEOFF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.3.10.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aborted takeoff*		
T1.3.10.60	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.3.10.60.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip to other controller	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.4.1.2	RECEIVE IFR CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *IFR clearance request*		
T1.4.1.3	RECEIVE SPECIAL VFR REQUEST FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *Special VFR clearance*		
T1.4.1.4	RECEIVE TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA REQUEST FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.1.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA clearance*		
T1.4.1.5	REQUEST BEACON CODE		
	TASK TYPE: E/R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.1.5.1	INITIATE _Enter_Selected_Beacon_Code	Enter_Selected_Beacon_Code	1
T1.4.1.5.2	INDICATE _Beacon_Code_Identification or _Aircraft_Identification	Beacon_Code_Identification Aircraft_Identification	1 1
T1.4.1.5.3	EXECUTE _Enter_Selected_Beacon_Code	Enter_Selected_Beacon_Code	1
T1.4.1.5.4	DETECT _Selected_Beacon_Code on _BRITE_Display or on _FDIO_System	Selected_Beacon_Code BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.1.6	ASSIGN BEACON CODE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.1.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *beacon code assignment*		
T1.4.1.11	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.11.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for terrain, airspace, or other obstacles in the way of proposed trajectory	BRITE_Display	1
	A/D		
T1.4.1.11.2	*SEARCH _Flight_Strip_Bay, _Special_List, _System_Status_Data_Record, or _Information_Display_System *for potential flight impediments*	Flight_Strip_Bay Special_List System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
T1.4.1.11.3	ASSESS projected impacts on proposed flight plan		
T1.4.1.13	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR AIRCRAFT CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.13.1	FORMULATE potential action for aircraft clearance		
T1.4.1.13.2	ASSESS impact of potential clearance on traffic flow		
T1.4.1.13.3	*FORMULATE another aircraft clearance avoiding undue impact on traffic flow		
T1.4.1.13.4	DECIDE on aircraft clearance to issue		
T1.4.1.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance/ approval*		
T1.4.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE REQUEST TO ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance*		
T1.4.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance request/ approval*		
T1.4.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL/ CLEARANCE RESTRICTIONS FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *approval/ clearance restrictions*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.1.64	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance*		
T1.4.1.65	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.1.65.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *alternate clearance/ approval*		
T1.4.2.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft problem*		
	O		
T1.4.2.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft problem*		
	A/O		
T1.4.2.1.3	DETECT _Blinking_Field *emergency, hijack, etc* in _Full_Data_Block or _Blinking_LDB on _BRITE_Display *indicating special condition or emergency*	Blinking_Field Full_Data_Block Blinking_LDB BRITE_Display	1 1 1 1
T1.4.2.1.4	INTEGRATE information regarding special condition or emergency		
T1.4.2.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AURALLY		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *erratic pilot communication behavior*		
T1.4.2.4	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *contingency information to pilot or ground vehicle operator having problem*		
T1.4.2.5	CONDUCT VISUAL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION OF NORDO/ OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.5.1	ACQUIRE _Blinking_Field in _Full_Data_Block or _Blinking_LDB on _BRITE_Display	Blinking_Field Full_Data_Block Blinking_LDB BRITE_Display	1 1 1 1
	A/O		
T1.4.2.5.2	SCAN tower airspace directly for NORDO/ overdue aircraft		
T1.4.2.5.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *radio request for identification response*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.2.5	CONDUCT VISUAL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION OF NORDO/ OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T1.4.2.5.4	PERFORM TCE, Guard Air-To-Ground Communications *radio/ transponder/ maneuver request*		
	A/O		
T1.4.2.5.5	*DETECT aircraft response to identification request on _BRITE_Display	BRITE_Display	1
T1.4.2.5.6	DECIDE aircraft status *overdue, NORDO, presence*		
T1.4.2.11	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.2.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency*		
	O		
T1.4.2.11.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special condition/ emergency*		
T1.4.2.13	OBSERVE TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.2.13.1	RECOGNIZE termination of special condition/ emergency via direct observation		
T1.4.2.14	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: EXT		
T1.4.2.14.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft emergency*		
T1.4.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC/R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft emergency*		
T1.4.2.60.2	INITIATE actions using _Checklist, _Emergency_Procedure_Binder, and/ or _Position_Binder in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Emergency_Procedure_Binder Position_Binder Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T1.4.2.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *aircraft emergency*		
T1.4.2.62	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *emergency/ special condition*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.2.63	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.2.63.1	SEARCH _Checklist, _Emergency_Procedure_Binder, and/ or _Position_Binder in _Static_Information_Record for appropriate actions*	Checklist Emergency_Procedure_Binder Position_Binder Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T1.4.2.64	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.2.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency information*		
T1.4.2.65	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.2.65.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency*		
	O		
T1.4.2.65.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *terminaton of special condition/ emergency*		
T1.4.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.3.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation*		
	O		
T1.4.3.1.2	ACQUIRE _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Special_Activity Information_Display_System	1 1
	O		
T1.4.3.1.3	ACQUIRE _Special_Activity in _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Special_Activity System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
	O		
T1.4.3.1.4	RECEIVE notice of special activity by _GI_Message on _FDIO_System	GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T1.4.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.3.2.1	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* in _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1 1
	O		
T1.4.3.2.2	DETECT _Full_Data_Block or _Limited_Data_Block *or multiple* aircraft present within _Special_Use_Airspace on _BRITE_Display	Full_Data_Block Limited_Data_Block Special_Use_Airspace BRITE_Display	1 1 1 1
	O		
T1.4.3.2.3	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* on _Flight_Progress_Strip in Flight Strip Bay associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T1.4.3.2.4	DETECT aircraft visually normally associated with special operation		
T1.4.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.3.4.1	INTEGRATE _Flight_Progress_Strip and special operation activities into mental traffic picture	Flight_Progress_Strip	27
T1.4.3.4.2	*CROSS-REFERENCE special operation directive in _Static_Information_Record	Static_Information_Record	1
T1.4.3.4.3	DECIDE special operations actions required		
T1.4.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.3.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation termination*		
	O/A		
T1.4.3.5.2	DETECT termination of special operation on _Information_Display_System	Information_Display_System	1
	O		
T1.4.3.5.3	DETECT termination of special operation on _System_Status_Data_Record	System_Status_Data_Record	1
	O		
T1.4.3.5.4	RECEIVE termination of special operation via _GI_Message	GI_Message	1
T1.4.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special operation*		
T1.4.4.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T1.4.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.2.1	ASSESS flight path of aircraft		
	O		
T1.4.4.2.2	ASSESS application of preferential route		
	O		
T1.4.4.2.3	ASSESS traffic management restrictions		
T1.4.4.2.4	DECIDE need for flight plan amendment		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.4.6	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T1.4.4.60	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REMINDER ACTION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.60.1	INITIATE _Flag_Flight_Progress_Strip	Flag_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.4.4.61	RECEIVE CONTROLLER ADVICE OF UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan*		
T1.4.4.62	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.4.62.1	INITIATE _Unflag_Flight_Progress_Strip	Unflag_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.4.4.63	INFORM CONTROLLER UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.4.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T1.4.4.64	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.4.4.64.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.4.5.1	RECEIVE HANDOFF REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *handoff initiation receipt*		
	O		
T1.4.5.1.2	DETECT _Blinking_FDB on _BRITE_Display	Blinking_FDB BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.4.5.1.3	RECOGNIZE _Target_Position_Symbol *aircraft for handoff*	Target_Position_Symbol	1
T1.4.5.3	ACCEPT VERBAL HANDOFF/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.3.1	ACQUIRE _Target_Position_Symbol on _BRITE_Display to determine response to a handoff request	Target_Position_Symbol BRITE_Display	15 1
	A/O		
T1.4.5.3.2	ACQUIRE _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for information concerning whether to accept handoff or not	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.5.3	ACCEPT VERBAL HANDOFF/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.4.5.3.3	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *accept handoff*		
T1.4.5.3.4	INITIATE _Track message *start*	Track	1
T1.4.5.3.5	EXECUTE _Track message	Track	1
T1.4.5.3.6	DETECT _Track_Position_Symbol on _Situation_Display	Track_Position_Symbol Situation_Display	1 1
T1.4.5.3.7	SYNTHESIZE flight and track information into mental traffic picture		
T1.4.5.4	ACCEPT AUTOMATIC HANDOFF		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.4.1	INITIATE _Accept_Handoff message	Accept_Handoff	1
T1.4.5.4.2	EXECUTE _Accept_Handoff message	Accept_Handoff	1
T1.4.5.4.3	RECOGNIZE transformed _Blinking_FDB to _Full_Data_Block	Blinking_FDB Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.4.5.5	RECEIVE INITIAL COMMUNICATIONS FROM PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *verify pilot communications*		
T1.4.5.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT ALTITUDE WITH PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.6.1	SEARCH _Full_Data_Block for _Mode_C_Altitude	Full_Data_Block Mode_C_Altitude	1 1
T1.4.5.6.2	EXTRACT _Mode_C_Altitude from _Full_Data_Block	Mode_C_Altitude Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.4.5.6.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot-reported altitude*		
T1.4.5.6.4	*CROSS-REFERENCE field elevation		
T1.4.5.6.5	COMPARE _Mode_C_Altitude on _BRITE_Display with pilot reported altitude	Mode_C_Altitude BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.4.5.6.6	DECIDE altitude verification		
T1.4.5.7	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO HANDOFF REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.7.1	ACQUIRE _Target_Position_Symbol on _BRITE_Display to determine response to a handoff request	Target_Position_Symbol BRITE_Display	15 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.5.7	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO HANDOFF REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.4.5.7.2	ACQUIRE _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for information concerning whether to accept handoff	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T1.4.5.7.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _Time on _24-Hour_Clock	Time 24-Hour_Clock	1 1
T1.4.5.7.4	SYNTHESIZE aircraft and time information into a mental traffic picture with regard to accepting a handoff		
T1.4.5.7.5	DECIDE whether or not to accept handoff based upon mental traffic picture		
T1.4.5.60	DENY HANDOFF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiate G/G Communications *handoff		
T1.4.6.2	ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.2.1	*SEARCH _System_Status_Data_Record for _Communications_Status	System_Status_Data_Record Communications_Status	1 1
T1.4.6.2.2	*SEARCH _Radio_Frequency_Assignment on _Information_Display_System	Radio_Frequency_Assignment Information_Display_System	1 1
T1.4.6.2.3	*EXTRACT _Radio_Frequency *for issuance to pilot*	Radio_Frequency	1
T1.4.6.2.4	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *frequency change*		
T1.4.6.3	INITIATE HANDOFF FUNCTION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.3.1	INITIATE _Initiate_Handoff message	Initiate_Handoff	1
T1.4.6.3.2	EXECUTE _Initiate_Handoff message	Initiate_Handoff	1
T1.4.6.3.3	DETECT _Handoff_Symbol in _Full_Data_Block on BRITE Display	Handoff_Symbol Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.4.6.6	RETRACT HANDOFF		
	TASK TYPE: E/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.6.1	DECIDE need for handoff retraction		
T1.4.6.6.2	INITIATE _Retract_Handoff message	Retract_Handoff	1
T1.4.6.6.3	EXECUTE _Retract_Handoff message	Retract_Handoff	1
T1.4.6.6.4	RECOGNIZE absence of _Handoff_Symbol in _Full_Data_Block *handoff retracted*	Handoff_Symbol Full_Data_Block	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.6.6	RETRACT HANDOFF		
	TASK TYPE: E/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	O		
T1.4.6.6.5	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *handoff retracted*		
T1.4.6.8	RECEIVE HANDOFF ACCEPTANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.8.1	SEARCH _Handoff_Symbol for handoff response	Handoff_Symbol	1
T1.4.6.8.2	RECOGNIZE transformed _Handoff_Symbol *handoff accepted*	Handoff_Symbol	1
	O		
T1.4.6.8.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *handoff*		
T1.4.6.9	DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.9.1	DECIDE need to confer on transfer of control		
T1.4.6.9.2	ASSESS handoff situation		
T1.4.6.9.3	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight plan data and transfer of control*		
	A		
T1.4.6.9.4	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan data and transfer of control*		
T1.4.6.10	ISSUE CHANGE TO VFR BEACON CODE ASSIGNMEN		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.4.6.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *termination of service, change to 1200 beacon code, as on pilot cancellation of IFR clearance within the airport traffic area*		
T1.4.6.11	INITIATE VERBAL HANDOFF		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verbal handoff*		
T1.4.6.60	RECEIVE HANDOFF REJECTION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.6.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *handoff rejection*		
T1.4.7.7	DISCUSS POINTOUT WITH OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.7.7.1	DECIDE need to confer on a pointout		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.7.7	DISCUSS POINTOUT WITH OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.4.7.7.2	ASSESS pointout situation		
T1.4.7.7.3	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *pointout* A		
T1.4.7.7.4	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *pointout*		
T1.4.7.60	INITIATE POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.7.60.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for _Target_Position_Symbol and _Full_Data_Block near _Position_Boundary	BRITE_Display Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block Position_Boundary	1 1 1 1
T1.4.7.60.2	INTEGRATE _Target_Position_Symbol and _Position_Boundary into mental traffic picture with regard to aircraft entering into another controller's airspace	Target_Position_Symbol Position_Boundary	1 1
T1.4.7.60.3	DECIDE need to issue pointout		
T1.4.7.60.4	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *traffic*		
T1.4.7.61	RECEIVE REJECTION OF POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.7.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *pointout*		
T1.4.7.62	RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE OF POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.7.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *pointout acceptance*		
T1.4.8.6	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.8.6.1	SEARCH _Target_Position_Symbol on _BRITE_Display to determine response to a pointout request A/O	Target_Position_Symbol BRITE_Display	15 1
T1.4.8.6.2	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay and _Time on _24-Hour_Clock for information concerning whether or not to accept pointout	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay Time 24-Hour_Clock	32 1 1 1
T1.4.8.6.3	SYNTHESIZE aircraft and time information into a mental traffic picture with regard to accepting a pointout		
T1.4.8.6.4	DECIDE whether or not to accept pointout based upon mental traffic picture		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.8.60	RECEIVE POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.8.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *pointout*		
T1.4.8.61	DENY POINTOUT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.8.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *pointout*		
T1.4.8.62	ACCEPT VERBAL POINTOUT/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC/R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.8.62.1	DETECT _Target_Position_Symbol and _Full_Data_Block of aircraft of interest	Target_Position_Symbol Full_Data_Block	1 1
T1.4.8.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *pointout*		
T1.4.8.62.3	*INITIATE _Quick_Look_Button or _Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button	Quick_Look_Button Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button	1 1
T1.4.8.62.4	*EXECUTE _Quick_Look_Button or _Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button	Quick_Look_Button Activate_BRITE_Quick_Look_Button	1 1
T1.4.8.62.5	INITIATE _Track message on aircraft of interest	Track	1
T1.4.8.62.6	EXECUTE _Track message *start*	Track	1
T1.4.8.62.7	DETECT acceptance of _Track message	Track	1
T1.4.9.2	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.2.1	INTEGRATE mental traffic picture with constraints and conditions		
T1.4.9.2.2	DECIDE clearance needed *for issuance*		
T1.4.9.2.3	FORMULATE elements of appropriate clearance, including necessary instructions		
T1.4.9.4	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *current clearance and instructions*		
T1.4.9.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.6.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for _Target_Position_Symbol movement	BRITE_Display Target_Position_Symbol	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND) TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.9.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.4.9.6.2	EXTRACT _Target_Position_Symbol and _Flight_Identification	Target_Position_Symbol Flight_Identification	1 1
T1.4.9.6.3	COMPARE _Full_Data_Block data with clearance	Full_Data_Block	1
	A/O		
T1.4.9.6.4	RECOGNIZE absence/ presence of _Unreasonable_Mode_C indicator	Unreasonable_Mode_C	1
T1.4.9.6.5	DECIDE if aircraft is in compliance with clearance		
T1.4.9.7	QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance non-compliance query*		
T1.4.9.9	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.9.1	INTEGRATE mental traffic picture with possible clearance alternatives		
T1.4.9.9.2	FORMULATE clearance alternative		
T1.4.9.9.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground * clearance alternative*		
T1.4.9.60	APPROVE CLEARANCE REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.60.0	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance*		
	O		
T1.4.9.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance*		
T1.4.9.61	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *deny clearance*		
	o		
T1.4.9.61.0	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance*		
T1.4.9.62	ISSUE CLEARANCE THROUGH FSS/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ OTHER PILOT FOR RELAY TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4.9.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance*		
	O		
T1.4.9.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.4.9.63	SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.4 9.63.1	FORMULATE clearance alternative(s)		
T1.4.9.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance*		
T1.5.1.4	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.1.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *weather PIREP*		
T1.5.1.4.2	INTEGRATE PIREP information into mental weather picture		
T1.5.1.7	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.1.7.1	DECIDE need for weather advisory to other controller		
	O		
T1.5.1.7.2	DECIDE need for weather advisory to pilot		
T1.5.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather request*		
	O		
T1.5.1.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *PIREP*		
T1.5.1.61	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/R COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.1.61.1	ACQUIRE weather information on _Meteorological_Data_Record, _Information_Display_System, or _GI_Message	Meteorological_Data_Record Information_Display_System GI_Message	1 1 1
	O		
T1.5.1.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather information*		
T1.5.1.62	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *weather/ advisory*		
	O		
T1.5.1.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *weather/ advisory*		
T1.5.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communicatons *weather information*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.5.1.64	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *urgent PIREP*		
	A/O		
T1.5.1.64.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *urgent PIREP*		
T1.5.1.65	OBSERVE WEATHER LINE/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.1.65.1	*DETECT _Precipitation *and associated weather* on _BRITE_Display	Precipitation BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.5.1.65.2	*DETECT winds, ceiling, and visibility on _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T1.5.1.65.3	DETECT weather areas, precipitation, ceiling, weather movement, winds and visibility by direct observation		
T1.5 1.65.4	INTEGRATE weather observations into mental weather picture		
T1.5.2.1	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
	A		
T1.5.2.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
T1.5.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.5.2.4.1	INITIATE _Record_Airport_Environmental/Weather_Readout	Record_Airport_Environmental/Weather_Readout	1
	A/O		
T1.5.2.4.2	INITIATE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Record	Record_Meteorological_Data_Record	1
T1.5.2.6	REQUEST PIREP		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *PIREP*		
T1.5.2.8	DETERMINE WHETHER RUNWAY CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.8.1	*DETECT _Precipitaton *and associated weather* on _BRITE_Display	Precipitaton BRITE_Display	1 1
T1.5.2.8.2	*DETECT winds, ceiling, and visibility on _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T1.5.2.8.3	DETECT weather areas, precipitation, ceiling, weather movement, winds and visibility by direct observation		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.5.2.8	DETERMINE WHETHER RUNWAY CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.5.2.8.4	INTEGRATE weather observations into mental weather picture		
T1.5.2.9	DETERMINE WHETHER CONTROL ZONE IS IFR/ VFR		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.9.1	ASSESS visibility and ceiling from _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	1
T1.5.2.9.2	DETECT weather areas, precipitation, ceiling, weather movement, and visibility by direct observation		
T1.5.2.9.3	DECIDE whether control zone is IFR or VFR		
T1.5.2.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.5.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *PIREP request		
T1.5.2.61	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC/E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather report*		
	O		
T1.5.2.61.2	ACQUIRE weather report/ update on _Meteorological_Data_Record or Information_Display_System	Meteorological_Data_Record Display_System	1 1
	O		
T1.5.2.61.3	*DETECT weather report/ update on _Electrowriter or _Teleoutograph	Electrowriter Teleoutograph	1 1
T1.5.2.61.4	*INITIATE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	1
T1.5.2.62	RECEIVE RUNWAY/TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
	O		
T1.5.2.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *runway/ taxiway condition*		
T1.5.2.62.3	ACQUIRE runway/ taxiway change in _Airport_Information on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Airport_Information Information_Display_System	1 1
	O		
T1.5.2.62.4	DETECT runway/ taxiway change in _Airport_Conditions in _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Airport_Conditions System_Status_Data_Record	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.5.2.63	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway condition*		
T1.5.2.64	RECORD PIREP NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.64.1	INITIATE _Record_PIREP	Record_PIREP	1
T1.5.2.65	FORWARD PIREP TO OTHERS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.65.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *PIREP*		
T1.5.2.66	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.66.1	ACQUIRE change in _Airport_Environmental _Status in _Information_Display_system or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Airport_Environmental_Status Information_Display_system System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T1.5.2.66.2	ACQUIRE change in airport environmental conditions on _Electrowriter or _Teleautograph	Electrowriter Teleautograph	1 1
T1.5.2.67	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.5.2.67.1	DETECT change in airport environmental readout on _Airport_Environmental_Instru ment	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T1.5.2.68	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.68.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Ch ange	Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	1
T1.5.2.69	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.69.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *new/ changed environmental data* A/O		
T1.5.2.69.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *new/ changed airport environmental data*		
T1.5.2.70	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.5.2.70.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new/ changed airport environmental data*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.1.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
	A		
T1.6.1.1.2	CROSS_REFERENCE display information on _BRITE_Display, _System_Status_Data_Record or _Information_Display_System, and _Meteorological_Data_Record	BRITE_Display System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System Meteorological_Data_Record	1 1 1 1
	A		
T1.6.1.1.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T1.6.1.1.4	INFORM relieving controller traffic and weather picture, systems status, priority text messages, and display status		
T1.6.1.2	BROADCAST NOTICE OF FACILITY STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.1.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Broadcasting ATIS Voice Recordings *facility opening/ closure*		
	A		
T1.6.1.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *facility opening/ closure*		
T1.6.1.4	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.1.4.1	ASSESS briefing provided to relieving controller for its coverage of all significant matters		
T1.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.6.1.60.1	INITIATE _Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T1.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.2.2.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
	A		
T1.6.2.2.2	SEARCH _Data_Display for weather, traffic, and system information	Data_Display	10
	A		
T1.6.2.2.3	RECEIVE briefing on traffic, weather, and system status		
	A		
T1.6.2.2.4	*PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *other controller*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.6.2.2.5	INTEGRATE traffic, weather, and system information into mental traffic, weather and system picture		
T1.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.2.3.1	SEARCH _Data_Display *weather, traffic, and system*	Data_Display	10
T1.6.2.3.2	ASSESS display/ control adequacy		
T1.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.6.2.6.1	ASSESS need for parameter adjustment on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T1.6.2.6.2	INITIATE console adjustment functions as needed		
T1.6.2.6.3	RECOGNIZE adjustment results on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T1.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.2.7.1	ACQUIRE _System_Status_Data_Record or _Information_Display_System for information pertinent to assuming control of position	System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System	1 1
T1.6.2.7.2	A ACQUIRE _Airport_Lighting_Equipment status	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	5
T1.6.2.7.3	A ACQUIRE _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	3
T1.6.2.7.4	A ACQUIRE _Tower_Communications_Equipment status	Tower_Communications_Equipment	2
T1.6.2.7.5	A ACQUIRE _Airport_Environmental_Instrumen t status	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T1.6.2.7.6	SYNTHESIZE extracted information with regard to assuming position responsibility		
T1.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.2.8.1	ACQUIRE _Data_Display to determine current and projected traffic/ weather	Data_Display	10
T1.6.2.8.2	SYNTHESIZE extracted information into a mental traffic picture of current and projected traffic and weather status		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T1.6.2.60.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T1.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.3.1.1	COMPARE current mental traffic picture to anticipated future traffic picture		
T1.6.3.1.2	DECIDE subjective workload estimate		
T1.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *overload condition*		
T1.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *combine/ decombine position*		
T1.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.6.3.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request relief/ assistance*		
T1.6.3.63	REQUEST CHANGE OF AIRPORT ACCEPTANCE RATE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.3.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *acceptance rate for airport/ runway*		
T1.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: R/C COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.4.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T1.6.4.1.2	*PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verbal coordination A		
T1.6.4.1.3	*PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *verbal coordination*		
T1.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.4.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *reconfiguration*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.4.60.1	INITIATE *physical* relocation of person/ equipment		
T1.6.5.2	DETERMINE NEED TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.5.2.1	RECOGNIZE present visibility conditions		
	O		
T1.6.5.2.2	COMPARE lighting request to traffic needs		
T1.6.5.2.3	DECIDE appropriateness of lighting change		
T1.6.5.5	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.5.5.1	TRANSFORM airport lighting system intensity *via manual switch*		
T1.6.5.5.2	*RECOGNIZE transformed lighting system intensity		
T1.6.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground adjust lighting*		
	O		
T1.6.5.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *adjust lighting*		
T1.6.5.61	DENY REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.6.5.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *airport lighting*		
	O		
T1.6.5.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *deny lighting change request*		
T1.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.1.1.1	DETECT data entry response feedback on _BRITE_Dispay and/ or _FDIO_System *data rejection*	BRITE_Dispay FDIO_System	1 1
T1.7.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.1.60.1	RECEIVE flight data from other controller		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.1.61.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progr ess_Strip	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T1.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO display failure*		
	O		
T1.7.2.60.2	DETECT _GI_Message on _FDIO_System indicating failure of ARTS*	GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T1.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.2.61.1	DETECT directly display failure of _BRITE_Display or FDIO_System	BRITE_Display System	1 1
T1.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *display equipment status*		
T1.7.3.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS failure*		
	O		
T1.7.3.60.2	RECEIVE notice of ARTS failure via _GI_Message	GI_Message	1
T1.7.3.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.3.61.1	DETECT _BRITE_Display failure directly	BRITE_Display	1
T1.7.3.62	REVERT TO ARTS BACKUP PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.3.62.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record for appropriate action	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T1.7.3.62.2	DECIDE on required backup procedures		
T1.7.3.63	VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.3.63.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display or _FDIO_System for operation during transition	BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.3.63	VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES		
	TASK TYPE: E/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T1.7.3.63.2	*INITIATE ARTS or FDIO entries to verify operation		
T1.7.3.63.3	*PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verify computer operation*		
T1.7.3.64	RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.3.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *computer action*		
T1.7.4.1	DETECT NAVAID FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.4.1.1	DETECT failure of NAVAID by observing _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	3
T1.7.4.1.2	*DETECT NAVAID failure in _Equipment_Status on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T1.7.4.2	INFORM PILOT OF NAVAID STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.4.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *NAVAID status*		
T1.7.4.3	REQUEST ADDITIONAL PILOT REPORT ON NAVAID STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.4.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *NAVAID status request*		
T1.7.5.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		
T1.7.5.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		
T1.7.5.1.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *apparent communications failure*		
T1.7.5.1.4	RECOGNIZE abnormality during voice transmission and/ or reception		
T1.7.5.2	REVERT TO LIGHT GUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: E/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.5.2.1	*CROSS-REFERENCE Order 7110.65 on visual signals		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.5.2	REVERT TO LIGHT GUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: E/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T1.7.5.2.2	INITIATE _Operate_Portable_Light_Gun	Operate_Portable_Light_Gun	1
T1.7.5.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.3.1	INITIATE _Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	1
	0		
T1.7.5.3.2	INITIATE _Operate_FAA_Radio *change frequency*	Operate_FAA_Radio	1
T1.7.5.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.4.1	INITIATE _Operate_301_Interphone_System *alternate communications path options*	Operate_301_Interphone_System	1
	0		
T1.7.5.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *alternate communications*		
	0		
T1.7.5.4.3	INITIATE _Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Tranceiver	Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Tranceiver	1
T1.7.5.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new frequency*		
	0		
T1.7.5.60.2	DETECT new frequency on _Radio_Frequency_Assignment on _Equipment_Status in Information Display System	Radio_Frequency_Assignment Equipment_Status	1 1
	0		
T1.7.5.60.3	DETECT new frequency on _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.7.5.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new communications path*		
	0		
T1.7.5.61.2	DETECT new communications path in _Equipment_Status on _Information_Display_System	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System	1 1
	0		
T1.7.5.61.3	DETECT new communications path in _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.7.5.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *communications status*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.5.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T1.7.5.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications status*		
T1.7.5.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *new frequency*		
	A/O		
T1.7.5.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *new frequency*		
T1.7.5.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.5.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *alternate communications path*		
	A/O		
T1.7.5.64.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *alternate communications path*		
T1.7.6.1	DETECT SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.6.1.1	DETECT incorrect or unusual track status on _BRITE_Display	BRITE_Display	1
	O		
T1.7.6.1.2	DETECT _Overload_Sensing/Protection in _System_Status_Display on BRITE Display	Overload_Sensing/Protection System_Status_Display	1 1
T1.7.6.1.3	SYNTHESIZE observed abnormality as sensor failure		
T1.7.6.2	REVERT TO NON-RADAR PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.6.2.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Informaton_Record for non-radar procedures	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Informaton_Record	1 1 1 1
T1.7.7.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.7.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *transmission problem*		
	O		
T1.7.7.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *reception problem*		
	O		
T1.7.7.2.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transmission or reception problem*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.7.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T1.7.7.2.4	ASSESS impact of unreliable communication channel or frequency		
T1.7.7.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.7.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *communications check*		
	O		
T1.7.7.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check*		
T1.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.7.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T1.7.7.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T1.7.7.60.3	DETECT change in _Radio_Equipment_Status or _Voice_Communications_Status in _Equipment_Status on Information Display System	Radio_Equipment_Status Voice_Communications_Status Equipment_Status	1 1 1
	O		
T1.7.7.60.4	DETECT change in _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.7.7.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.7.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check*		
	A/O		
T1.7.7.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *communications check*		
T1.7.8.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.8.1.1	DETECT airport equipment failure *directly observe damage or faulty operation*		
T1.7.8.1.2	EVALUATE impact of airport equipment failure on traffic operations		
T1.7.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.9.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO stand-alone*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T1.7.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	0		
T1.7.9.60.2	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Computer_Status, _Radar_Equipment_Status, or _Data_Communications_Line_Outage on _Information_Display_System	Computer_Status Radar_Equipment_Status Data_Communications_Line_Outage Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
	0		
T1.7.9.60.3	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Equipment_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T1.7.9.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.9.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO stand-alone*		
T1.7.9.62	REVERT TO ARTS STAND-ALONE MODE AND MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T1.7.9.62.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Positional_Standards for ARTS stand-alone and manual flight progress strip procedures	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Positional_Standards	1 1 1
T1.7.9.62.2	DECIDE on actions to take during the ARTS stand-alone and manual flight progress strip operation		
T1.7.9.63	DETECT HOST FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T1.7.9.63.1	DETECT failure of host computer via _BRITE_Display and/ or _FDIO_System	BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.1.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *position report*		
T2.1.1.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE AT REPORTED POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.1.1.2.1	SCAN location reported by aircraft/ vehicle *directly*		
T2.1.1.2.2	DETECT aircraft/ vehicle is at reported position		
T2.1.1.4	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.1.1.4.1	COMPARE pilot/ operator-reported position to aircraft/ vehicle position determined by controller		
T2.1.1.4.2	DETECT aircraft of interest by aircraft type and markings		
T2.1.1.4.3	DECIDE aircraft/ vehicle is at reported position		
T2.1.1.5	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.1.1.5.1	SCAN movement area for position/ movement of specified aircraft/ vehicle		
T2.1.1.5.2	RECOGNIZE position and direction of movement of aircraft/ vehicle in movement area		
T2.1.1.5.3	INTEGRATE observed position/ movement of specified aircraft/ vehicle through movement area		
T2.1.1.6	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request position report*		
T2.1.1.7	PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.7.1	INTEGRATE aircraft/ vehicle present position and movement		
T2.1.1.7.2	EXTRAPOLATE planned aircraft/ vehicle movement		
T2.1.1.8	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.8.1	*SEARCH likely locations of _Primary_Target on _ASDE_Display	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	5 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.1.1.8	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.1.1.8.2	IDENTIFY targets possibly representing location of aircraft/ vehicle of interest		
T2.1.1.8.3	ANALYZE position of targets on _ASDE_Display to determine location of aircraft/ vehicle of interest	ASDE_Display	1
T2.1.1.8.4	DECIDE which target represents location of aircraft/ vehicle of interest		
T2.1.1.9	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.1.1.9.1	*SEARCH _ASDE_Display for position/ movement of _Primary_Target representing specified aircraft/ vehicle	ASDE_Display Primary_Target	1 1
T2.1.1.9.2	INTEGRATE observed position/ movement of _Primary_Target representing specified aircraft/ vehicle on _ASDE_Display	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	1 1
T2.1.1.60	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *position report*		
T2.1.1.61	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *position report*		
T2.1.2.1	DETERMINE IF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT EXISTS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.1.2.1.1	INTEGRATE position and movement of ground traffic in movement area with mental traffic picture		
T2.1.2.1.2	EVALUATE mental traffic picture to identify potential aircraft/ vehicle conflicts		
T2.1.2.1.3	DECIDE whether potential aircraft/ vehicle conflict exists		
T2.1.3.10	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.10.1	SCAN airport surface for overall equipment status		
T2.1.3.10.2	SEARCH airport surface/ tower equipment for status of specific equipment item		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.1.3.10	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.1.3.10.3	RECOGNIZE failure or damage to equipment on airport surface or in tower cab		
T2.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.60.1	ACQUIRE equipment status change in _Display_Screen_Data on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Display_Screen_Data Information_Display_System	1 1
T2.1.3.60.2	ACQUIRE _Equipment_Status change in _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T2.1.3.61	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.61.1	DETECT changes in _ASDE_Display, _FDIO_System, _Information_Display_System, and _Tower_Communications_Equipment	ASDE_Display FDIO_System Information_Display_System Tower_Communications_Equipment	1 1 1 1
T2.1.3.62	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMANT STATUS INDICATOR CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.62.1	SCAN _Airport_Lighting_Equipment for change in status O	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	9
T2.1.3.62.2	SCAN _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel for change in NAVAID status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	6
T2.1.3.62.3	RECOGNIZE changes in airport lighting and equipment status		
T2.1.3.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *equipment status* O		
T2.1.3.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *equipment status* O		
T2.1.3.63.3	DETECT _Equipment_Status change on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in System Information Area O	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T2.1.3.63.4	RECEIVE equipment status change via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1
T2.1.3.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.64.1	PERFORM TCE. Initiating G/G Communications *system status change*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.1.3.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	0		
T2.1.3.64.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *system status change*		
T2.1.3.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.3.65.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Data_Change or _Enter_IDS_Change for _Equipment_Status change	Record_System_Status_Data_Change Enter_IDS_Change Equipment_Status	1 1 1
T2.1.4.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.1.4.60.1	INITIATE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T2.1.4.61	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.1.4.61.1	INITIATE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry on _Flight_Progress_Strip or other handwritten record	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T2.1.4.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.1.4.62.1	INITIATE _Remove_Paper_Record	Remove_Paper_Record	1
T2.1.4.63	UPDATE/REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.1.4.63.1	INITIATE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T2.1.4.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.1.4.64.1	INITIATE _Remove_Controller_Note	Remove_Controller_Note	1
T2.2.1.2	CHOOSE DESIRED SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.1.2.1	INTEGRATE planned route of flight, destination, and traffic management restrictions into mental traffic picture		
T2.2.1.2.2	DECIDE optimal sequence for departure aircraft		
T2.2.1.3	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO EFFECT DESIRED SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.1.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *taxi instructions*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.1.4	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND HOLD		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.1.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ground hold instructions*		
T2.2.1.5	DISCUSS GROUND DELAY TECHNIQUE WITH PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.1.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *discussion of ground delay technique*		
T2.2.1.60	OBSERVE EDCT IN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.1.60.1	ACQUIRE _Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time from _Departure_Strip in Flight Strip Bay	Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time Departure_Strip	1 1
T2.2.2.1	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.1.1	COMPARE position and movement of aircraft/ vehicle with cleared position and movement		
T2.2.2.1.2	RECOGNIZE ground traffic deviation		
T2.2.2.5	DETERMINE NEW POSITION FOR AIRCRAFT IN GROUND TRAFFIC SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.2.5.1	INTEGRATE current departure sequence, planned route of flight, destination, and traffic management restrictions applicable to specified aircraft into mental traffic picture		
T2.2.2.5.2	DECIDE new position in departure sequence for specified aircraft		
T2.2.2.6	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.2.6.1	INTEGRATE current position of specified aircraft and current runway/ taxiway usage with intended position in departure sequence		
T2.2.2.6.2	DECIDE aircraft maneuver to establish/ restore sequence		
T2.2.2.7	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN RESPONSE TO GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.7.1	INTEGRATE position and movement of deviating aircraft/ vehicle and position(s) and movement of other ground traffic into mental traffic picture		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.2.7	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN RESPONSE TO GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T2.2.2.7.2	DECIDE action to be taken in response to ground traffic deviation		
T2.2.2.8	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.8.1	COMPARE position and movement of target on _ASDE_Display with cleared position and movement	ASDE_Display	1
T2.2.2.8.2	RECOGNIZE ground traffic deviation		
T2.2.2.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO RECOVER FROM GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *deviation advisory*		
T2.2.2.10	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.2.10.1	SCAN movement area for aircraft/ vehicle movement		
T2.2.2.10.2	COMPARE aircraft/ vehicle position and movement with cleared position and movement		
T2.2.2.10.3	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle resuming conformance		
T2.2.2.11	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.2.11.1	COMPARE position and movement of target on _ASDE_Display with cleared position and motion	ASDE_Display	1
T2.2.2.11.2	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle resuming conformance		
T2.2.2.12	INFORM OTHER GROUND TRAFFIC OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *notice of deviation*		
T2.2.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ground traffic deviation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	O		
T2.2.2.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ground traffic deviation*		
T2.2.2.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ground traffic deviation notice*		
T2.2.2.62	QUERY PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ground traffic deviation query*		
	O		
T2.2.2.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ground traffic deviation query*		
T2.2.3.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAXI INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request for taxi instructions*		
T2.2.3.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.3.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request pushback/ powerback instructions*		
T2.2.3.5	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.5.1	SCAN _Flight_Progress_Strip for potential impediment to proposed taxi clearance	Flight_Progress_Strip	27
	A/O		
T2.2.3.5.2	SCAN _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record for information presenting potential impediment to proposed taxi clearance	Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
	A/O		
T2.2.3.5.3	SCAN airport traffic for potential impediment to proposed taxi clearance		
T2.2.3.5.4	INTEGRATE proposed taxi clearance and potential impediments with mental traffic picture		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.3.5	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.2.3.5.5	ASSESS impact of impediments on proposed taxi clearance		
T2.2.3.6	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.6.1	ACQUIRE _Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time from _Flight_Progress_Strip which may affect departure sequence	Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time Flight_Progress_Strip	10 27
	A/O		
T2.2.3.6.2	SEARCH _Traffic_Management_Record for _Flow_Restriction_Note which may affect departure sequence	Traffic_Management_Record Flow_Restriction_Note	1 1
T2.2.3.6.3	EXTRACT _Flow_Restriction_Note which may affect departure sequence	Flow_Restriction_Note	1
T2.2.3.6.4	INTEGRATE _Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time and/ or _Flow_Restriction_Note into mental traffic picture	Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time Flow_Restriction_Note	10 1
T2.2.3.6.5	ASSESS effect of _Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time and/ or _Flow_Restriction_Note on departure sequence	Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time Flow_Restriction_Note	10 1
T2.2.3.8	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.8.1	ACQUIRE current ATIS information from _Information_Display_System or _ATIS_Message_Record	Information_Display_System ATIS_Message_Record	1 1
T2.2.3.8.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ATIS data*		
T2.2.3.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: v FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pushback/ powerback instructions*		
T2.2.3.10	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.10.1	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS code with _ATIS_Message on _Information_Display_System, _ATIS_Code_Reminder, or _ATIS_Message_Record	ATIS_Message Information_Display_System ATIS_Code_Reminder ATIS_Message_Record	1 1 1 1
	A/O		
T2.2.3.10.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *latest ATIS code received by pilot*		
T2.2.3.10.3	DECIDE pilot has current ATIS information		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.3.12	DISCUSS SEQUENCING WITH LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *discuss sequencing* A		
T2.2.3.12.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *discuss sequencing*		
T2.2.3.16	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREA FOR GROUND TRAFFIC CONFLICTS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.16.1	SCAN movement area for aircraft/ vehicle position and movement		
T2.2.3.16.2	RECOGNIZE potential movement area conflicts		
T2.2.3.17	PROJECT GROUND TRAFFIC FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT WITH DEPARTING AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.17.1	SCAN movement area for routes of ground travel and position/ movement of departing aircraft		
T2.2.3.17.2	INTEGRATE ground movement routes, aircraft position and movement, and projected positions into mental ground traffic picture		
T2.2.3.17.3	RECOGNIZE potential conflicts with departing aircraft		
T2.2.3.18	FORMULATE GROUND MOVEMENT INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.18.1	DETERMINE possible courses of action for ground movement		
T2.2.3.18.2	DECIDE best ground movement option		
T2.2.3.18.3	FORMULATE ground movement instructions		
T2.2.3.19	ISSUE AIRPORT CONDITION INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.19.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *airport conditions*		
T2.2.3.20	ISSUE INFORMATION ON CONFLICTING TRAFFIC		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.3.20.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *conflicting traffic*		
T2.2.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.60.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from other controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.2.3.60.2	ASSESS impact of new departure on other departing aircraft		
T2.2.3.61	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.61.1	SCAN _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay to determine changes in sequence	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T2.2.3.62	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.3.62.1	INITIATE _Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS to controller preference	Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS	1
T2.2.3.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.3.63.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip to Local Controller	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.2.3.64	RECORD TAXI START TIME		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.3.64.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
T2.2.4.5	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO DIVERT TRAFFIC AROUND CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *divert traffic around closed movement area*		
T2.2.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA CLOSURE/ REOPENING		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *movement area closure/ opening*		
	O		
T2.2.4.60.2	DETECT _Movement_Area_Status change on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Movement_Area_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T2.2.4.61	RECORD MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.61.1	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change or _Record_System_Status_Change for movement area closure/ opening	Enter_IDS_Change Record_System_Status_Change	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.4.62	REQUEST RELEASE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request release of closed movement area*		
T2.2.4.63	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *approval of closed movement area use*		
T2.2.4.64	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *denial of closed movement area use*		
T2.2.4.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.4.65.1	ACQUIRE change of _Movement_Area_Status on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record	Movement_Area_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T2.2.5.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR REQUEST FOR MOVEMENT IN/ THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request movement through movement area*		
T2.2.5.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA UNDER OTHER CONTROL		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.2.1	INTEGRATE requested aircraft/ vehicle movement with own/other controllers' responsibilities for portions of movement area		
T2.2.5.2.2	DECIDE need for temporary use of portion of movement area under other control		
T2.2.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTION TO HOLD SHORT OF ACTIVE RUNWAY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.5.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *hold short of active runway*		
T2.2.5.5	DISCUSS RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA WITH OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.5.1	DECIDE need to discuss movement area release*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.5.5	DISCUSS RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA WITH OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.2.5.5.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *temporary release of movement area* A		
T2.2.5.5.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *temporary release of movement area*		
T2.2.5.9	ISSUE APPROVAL/ INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND MOVEMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.5.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ground movement instructions*		
T2.2.5.10	DENY GROUND MOVEMENT REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *movement request denied*		
T2.2.5.12	DETERMINE GROUND MOVEMENT COMPLETED		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.5.12.1	INTEGRATE current aircraft/ vehicle position with planned movement		
T2.2.5.12.2	DECIDE ground movement complete		
T2.2.5.14	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.5.14.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Change for movement area release	Record_System_Status_Change	1
T2.2.5.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *temporary release of movement area*		
T2.2.5.61	RECEIVE DELAY OF TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *delay of temporary movement area release*		
T2.2.5.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *denial of temporary movement area release*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.5.63	RECEIVE APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.5.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *temporary movement area approval*		
T2.2.5.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.5.64.1	INITIATE _Record_System_Status_Change	Record_System_Status_Change	1
T2 2.5.65	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.5.65.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *return of movement area use*		
	O		
T2.2.5.65.2	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Paper_Record *controller note, GI Message, etc.*	Manually_Transmit_Paper_Record	1
T2.2.6.2	OBSERVE CURRENT TRAFFIC IN MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.6.2.1	SCAN movement area		
T2.2.6.2.2	EXTRACT aircraft/vehicle locations in movement area		
T2.2.6.3	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.6.3.1	SYNTHESIZE aircraft/ vehicle information into a mental traffic picture with regard to approving release of movement area		
T2.2.6.3.2	DECIDE movement area can or cannot be released as requested		
T2.2.6.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.6.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *movement area release request*		
T2.2.6.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.6.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *temporary movement area approval*		
T2.2.6.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.6.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *movement area use denial*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.6.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.2.6.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *movement area return*		
T2.2.7.4	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.7.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *response to runway/taxiway change*		
	A		
T2.2.7.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *response to runway/taxiway change*		
T2.2.7.5	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.7.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
T2.2.7.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.7.61.1	DETECT change in runway/ taxiway status in _Movement_Area_Status	Movement_Area_Status	1
T2.2.7.62	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.7.62.1	SEARCH _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display for information relating to departure sequence	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	15 1
	A/O		
T2.2.7.62.2	SEARCH _ASDE_Display for _Primary_Target for information on departure aircraft	ASDE_Display Primary_Target	1 15
T2.2.7.62.3	SYNTHESIZE departure information from BRITE Display and ASDE Display into mental picture regarding departure situation	BRITE_Display ASDE_Display	1 1
T2.2.8.1	OBSERVE DIRECTLY A MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.1.1	SCAN airport movement area		
T2.2.8.1.2	PERCEIVE non-controlled object *vehicle, animal, debris, etc.* intruding onto movement area		
T2.2.8.4	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.4.1	SCAN movement area for non-controlled object		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.8.4	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T2.2.8.4.2	DETECT non-controlled object		
T2.2.8.4.3	EVALUATE relationship of directly observed aircraft/ vehicles to path of non-controlled object		
T2.2.8.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT ON ASDE DISPLAY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.5.1	SEARCH _ASDE_Display	ASDE_Display	1
T2.2.8.5.2	DETECT _Primary_Target and _Video_Map on _ASDE_Display showing intrusion of non-controlled object into controlled movement area	Primary_Target Video_Map ASDE_Display	1 1 1
T2.2.8.6	RECEIVE REPORT UPDATE OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT MOVEMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *non-controlled object movement*		
T2.2.8.7	REQUEST RESPONSE FROM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *attempt communication*		
T2.2.8.8	INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.8.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *advising aircraft/ vehicle clear of non-controlled object*		
T2.2.8.10	REQUEST ASSISTANCE FROM OTHER SOURCES TO ESTABLISH CONTACT WITH NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.2.8.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Requesting G/G Communications *assistance request in contacting non-controlled object*		
T2.2.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *notice of non-controlled object intrusion*		
T2.2.8.60.0	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *notice of non-controlled object intrusion*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.2.8.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ TRAFFIC OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.2.8.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *inform of non-controlled object intrusion*		
	O		
T2.2.8.61.0	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *inform of non-controlled object intrusion*		
T2.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance request*		
T2.3.1.2	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.2.1	SEARCH _BRITE_Display for terrain, airspace, or other obstacles in the way of proposed trajectory	BRITE_Display	1
	A/O		
T2.3.1.2.2	*SEARCH _Flight_Strip_Bay, _Special_List, _System_Status_Data_Record, or _Information_Display_System for potential flight impediments	Flight_Strip_Bay Special_List System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
T2.3.1.2.3	ASSESS projected impacts on proposed flight plan		
T2.3.1.4	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.4.1	INTEGRATE mental traffic picture with constraints and conditions		
T2.3.1.4.2	DECIDE clearance needed *for issuance*		
T2.3.1.4.3	FORMULATE elements of appropriate clearance, including necessary instructions		
T2.3.1.5	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance denial*		
T2.3.1.6	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *current clearance and instructions*		
T2.3.1.7	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.7.1	INTEGRATE mental traffic picture with possible clearance alternatives		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.1.7	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.3.1.7.2	FORMULATE clearance alternative		
T2.3.1.7.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance alternative*		
T2.3.1.10	INFORM PILOT TO REFILE FLIGHT PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.1.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *inform pilot to refile*		
T2.3.1.11	REQUEST CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request clearance approval*		
T2.3.1.12	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance approval*		
T2.3.1.13	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.13.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance disapproval*		
T2.3.1.14	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.14.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *alternate clearance suggestion*		
T2.3.1.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.1.60.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.3.1.61	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT CLEARANCE DELIVERY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *direct pilot to Clearance Delivery*		
T2.3.1.62	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *amended clearance*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.1.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.1.63.1	INTIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.3.2.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.2.1	SCAN specific aircraft/ vehicle for abnormal condition		
T2.3.2.2.2	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle abnormal condition		
T2.3.2.2.3	ASSESS seriousness of observed aircaft or vehicle abnormality		
T2.3.2.7	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD/ REROUTE GROUND TRAFFIC CLEAR OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.7 1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *taxi instructions*		
T2.3.2.8	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *contingency information to pilot or ground vehicle operator having problem*		
T2.3.2.9	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *taxi instructions*		
T2.3.2.10	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.2 10.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ramp search via radio* A/O		
T2.3.2.10.2	SEARCH ramp area for aircraft of type and markings of overdue aircraft		
T2.3.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: A/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft emergency* A/O		
T2.3.2.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *aircraft emergency*		
T2.3.2.60.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and/or _Emergency_Procedure_Binder for pertinent contingency actions	Checklist Position_Binder Emergency_Procedure_Binder	1 1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN TASK TYPE: A/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T2.3.2.60.4	EXECUTE contingency actions as required		
T2.3.2.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *aircraft emergency declared*		
T2.3.2.62	REQUEST RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ramp search request*		
T2.3.2.63	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REQUIRED DEPLOYMENT OF EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *emergency equipment instructions*		
	A/O		
T2.3.2.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *emergency equipment instructions*		
T2.3.2.64	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency notification*		
T2.3.2.65	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.65.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Emergency_Procedures_Binder, and/or _Position_Binder in _Static_Information_Record for contingency actions	Checklist Emergency_Procedures_Binder Position_Binder Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T2.3.2.66	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.2.66.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special conditon/ emergency termination*		
	A/O		
T2.3.2.66.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special condition/ emergency termination*		
T2.3.2.67	OBSERVE POSITION OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.67.1	SCAN airspace		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.2.67	OBSERVE POSITION OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T2.3.2.67.2	DETECT position of arrival aircraft		
T2.3.2.67.3	INTEGRATE aircraft information into mental traffic picture with regard to arrival aircraft		
T2.3.2.68	RECORD NECESSARY EMERGENCY/ SPECIAL INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.68.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
	A/O		
T2.3.2.68.2	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T2.3.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.3.2.69.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special condition/ emergency*		
	A/O		
T2.3.2.69.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency*		
T2.3.2.70	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.2.70.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *notice of special condition/ emergency*		
T2.3.2.71	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.2.71.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency termination*		
	A/O		
T2.3.2.71.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special condition/ emergency termination*		
T2.3.2.72	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.3.2.72.1	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for overdue aircraft information	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
	A		
T2.3.2.72.2	SEARCH filed/ inactive flight progress strips for overdue aircraft information		
T2.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.3.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T2.3.3.1.2	ACQUIRE _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Special_Activity Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
	O		
T2.3.3.1.3	RECEIVE notice of special activity by _GI_Message on _FDIO_System	GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T2.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.3.2.1	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* in _Full_Data_Block on BRITE Display associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Full_Data_Block	1 1
	O		
T2.3.3.2.2	DETECT _Full_Data_Block or _Limited_Data_Block *or multiple* of aircraft present within _Special_Use_Airspace or _Controlled_Airspace on BRITE Display	Full_Data_Block Limited_Data_Block Special_Use_Airspace Controlled_Airspace	1 1 1 1
	O		
T2.3.3.2.3	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* on _Flight_Progress_Strip in Flight Strip Bay associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
	O		
T2.3.3.2.4	DETECT aircraft normally associated with special operation		
T2.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.3.4.1	INTEGRATE _Flight_Progress_Strip and special operation activities into mental traffic picture	Flight_Progress_Strip	27
T2.3.3.4.2	*CROSS-REFERENCE special operation directive in _Static_Information_Record	Static_Information_Record	1
T2.3.3.4.3	DECIDE special operations actions required		
T2.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.3.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communication *special operation*		
	A/O		
T2.3.3.5.2	DETECT termination of special operation on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record	Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
	O		
T2.3.3.5.3	RECEIVE termination of special operation via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1
T2.3.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *notice of special operation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.4.1	OBSERVE DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT IN PROPER POSITION IN DEPARTURE SEQUENCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.3.4.1.1	*SEARCH departure portion(s) of movement area for particular departure aircraft		
T2.3.4.1.2	RECOGNIZE particular departure aircraft		
T2.3.4.1.3	INTEGRATE position of aircraft of interest with position(s) of other aircraft in departure sequence		
T2.3.4.1.4	DECIDE aircraft properly positioned in departure sequence		
T2.3.4.2	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR LOCAL CONTROLLER ON FREQUENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.4.2.1	DECIDE appropriate time for transferring control responsibilities for departure aircraft		
T2.3.4.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *contact or monitor Local Controller*		
T2.3.5.2	OBSERVE AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.5.2.1	*SCAN tower airspace for aircraft of interest		
T2.3.5.2.2	SEARCH portion of tower airspace for aircraft of interest		
T2.3.5.2.3	ANALYZE locations and movement of aircraft in portion of tower airspace to identify aircraft of interest		
T2.3.5.2.4	IDENTIFY aircraft of interest among aircraft in portion of tower airspace		
T2.3.5.60	OBSERVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT ON ASDE		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.5.60.1	DETECT _Primary_Target *arrival aircraft* on _ASDE_Display	Primary_Target ASDE_Display	15 1
T2.3.5.61	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.5.61.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from other controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.3.5.62	RECEIVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT DATA AS LAST AIRCRAFT TO LAND		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.5.62.1	RECEIVE aircraft data on _Arrival_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay	Arrival_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.3.5.62	RECEIVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT DATA AS LAST AIRCRAFT TO LAND		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	0		
T2.3.5.62.2	ACQUIRE arrival data in _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display	Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1
T2.3.6.1	RECORD/ ENTER FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.1.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
T2.3.6.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.60.1	SCAN _Flight_Strip_Bay for particular flight progress strip	Flight_Strip_Bay	1
T2.3.6.60.0	DETECT _Flight_Progress_Strip of interest	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.3.6.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REQUIRED INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.61.1	COMPARE flight plan contents received from pilot with required flight plan contents		
T2.3.6.61.0	DECIDE flight plan completeness		
T2.3.6.62	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.62.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
T2.3.6.63	INFORM AFFECTED POSITION OF FLIGHT DATA CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight data change*		
T2.3.6.64	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.3.6.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight strip request*		
T2.4.1.3	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.1.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *PIREP*		
	0		
T2.4.1.3.0	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *PIREP*		
T2.4.1.3.2	INTEGRATE PIREP information into mental weather picture		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.4.1.6	OBSERVE SIGNIFICANT AERONAUTICAL AND METEOROLOGICAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.1.6.1	ACQUIRE change in _Airport_Environmental _Status in _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Airport_Environmental_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
	A		
T2.4.1.6.2	DETECT significant change in _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
	A		
T2.4.1.6.3	ACQUIRE significant changes in _Meteorological_Data_Record	Meteorological_Data_Record	1
T2.4.1.6.4	INTEGRATE information into mental weather picture		
T2.4.1.8	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.1.8.1	DECIDE need for weather advisory to other controller		
	O		
T2.4.1.8.2	DECIDE need for weather advisory to pilot		
T2.4.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.1.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request weather information*		
T2.4.1.61	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *weather update*		
	A/O		
T2.4.1.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *weather update*		
T2.4.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather advisory*		
T2.4.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *weather information*		
T2.4.1.64	OBSERVE WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.1.64.1	*DETECT _Precipitation *and associated weather* on _BRITE_Display	Precipitation BRITE_Display	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.4.1.64	OBSERVE WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T2.4.1.64.2	*DETECT winds, ceiling, and visibility on _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T2.4.1.64.3	DETECT weather areas, precipitation, ceiling, weather movement, winds, and visibility by direct observation		
T2.4.1.64.4	INTEGRATE weather observations into mental weather picture		
T2.4.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.4.1	INITIATE _Record_Airport_Environmental/Weather_Readout A/O	Record_Airport_Environmental/Weather_Readout	1
T2.4.2.4.2	INITIATE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	1
T2.4.2.7	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *response to runway/ taxiway change* A		
T2.4.2.7.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *response to runway/ taxiway change*		
T2.4.2.8	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.4.2.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *urgent PIREP* A/O		
T2.4.2.8.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *urgent PIREP*		
T2.4.2.9	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.4.2.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *PIREP notice* O		
T2.4.2.9.0	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *PIREP notice*		
T2.4.2.60	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *runway/ taxiway condition*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.4.2.60	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T2 4.2.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway condition*		
T2.4.2.61	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.4.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *PIREP request*		
T2.4.2.62	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC/E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather report*		
	O		
T2.4.2.62.2	ACQUIRE weather report/ update on _Meteorological_Data_Record and/ or _Information_Display_System	Meteorological_Data_Record Information_Display_System	1 1
	O		
T2.4.2.62.3	*DETECT weather report update on _Electrowriter or _Teleautograph	Electrowriter Teleautograph	1 1
T2.4.2.62.4	*INITIATE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	1
T2.4.2.63	RECEIVE RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.2.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *runway/ taxiway change*		
	O		
T2.4.2.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air_To_Ground *runway/ taxiway condition*	To_Ground	1
T2.4.2.63.3	ACQUIRE runway/ taxiway change in _Movement_Area_Status on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record	Movement_Area_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T2.4.2.64	REQUEST PIREP		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *PIREP request*		
	O		
T2.4.2.64.0	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *PIREP request*		
T2.4.2.65	RECORD PIREP NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.4.2.65.1	INTRODUCE _Record_PIREP	Record_PIREP	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.4.2.66	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.4.2.66.1	DETECT change in airport environmental readout on _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T2.4.2.67	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.67.1	ACQUIRE change in _Airport_Environmental_Status on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Airport_Environmental_Status Information_Display_System	1 1
T2.4.2.67.2	ACQUIRE change in airport environmental conditions on _Electrowriter or _Teleautograph	Electrowriter Teleautograph	1 1
T2.4.2.68	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.68.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	Record_Meteorological_Data_Change	1
T2.4.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.69.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *change in airport environmental conditions* A/C		
T2.4.2.69.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *change in airport environmental conditions*		
T2.4.2.70	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.4.2.70.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *change in airport environmental conditions*		
T2.5.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.1.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record A	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T2.5.1.1.2	CROSS-REFERENCE display information on _BRITE_Display, _System_Status_Data_Record or _Information_Display_System, and _Meteorological_Data_Record A	BRITE_Display System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System Meteorological_Data_Record	1 1 1 1
T2.5.1.1.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T2.5.1.1.4	INFORM relieving controller traffic and weather picture, systems status, priority text messages, and display status		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.5.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.5.1.3.1	ASSESS briefing provided to relieving controller for its coverage of all significant matters		
T2.5.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.5.1.60.1	INITIATE _Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T2.5.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.2.2.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
	A		
T2.5.2.2.2	SEARCH _Data_Display for weather, traffic, and system information	Data_Display	10
	A		
T2.5.2.2.3	RECEIVE briefing on traffic, weather, and system status		
	O		
T2.5.2.2.4	*PERFORM TCS, Receiving TCS G/G Communications *other controller*		
T2.5.2.2.5	INTEGRATE traffic, weather, and systems status into mental traffic and systems picture		
T2.5.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.2.3.1	SEARCH _Data_Display *weather, traffic, and system*	Data_Display	10
T2.5.2.3.2	ASSESS display/ control adequacy		
T2.5.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.5.2.6.1	ASSESS need for parameter adjustment on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T2.5.2.6.2	INITIATE console adjustment functions as needed		
T2.5.2.6.3	RECOGNIZE adjustment results on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T2.5.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.2.7.1	ACQUIRE _System_Status_Data_Display or _Information_Display_System for information pertinent to assuming control of position	System_Status_Data_Display Information_Display_System	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.5.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.5.2.7.2	A ACQUIRE _Airport_Lighting_Equipment status	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	5
T2.5.2.7.3	A ACQUIRE _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	3
T2.5.2.7.4	A ACQUIRE _Tower_Communications_Equipment status	Tower_Communications_Equipment	2
T2.5.2.7.5	A ACQUIRE _Airport_Environmental_Instrumen t status	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T2.5.2.7.	SYNTHESIZE extracted information with regard to assuming position responsibility		
T2.5.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.2.8.1	ACQUIRE _Data_Display to determine current and projcted traffic/ weather	Data_Display	10
T2.5.2.8.2	SYNTHESIZE extracted information into a mental traffic picture of current and projected traffic and weather status		
T2.5.2.60	SIGN ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T2.5.2.60.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Inform ation	Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T2.5.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.3.1.1	COMPARE current mental traffic picture to anticipated future traffic picture		
T2.5.3.1.2	DECIDE subjective workload estimate		
T2.5.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *potential controller overload*		
T2.5.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *combine/ decombine instructions*		
T2.5.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.5.3.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request for assistance/ relief*		

Task Element Report

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.5.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.4.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and/or _Operational_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T2.5.4.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verbal coordination*		
	A		
T2.5.4.1.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *verbal corodination*		
T2.5.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.4.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *notice of tower reconfiguration*		
T2.5.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.4.60.1	INITIATE physical relocation of controllers and equipment		
T2.5.5.2	PERCEIVE NEED TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.5.2.1	RECOGNIZE present visibility conditions		
	O		
T2.5.5.2.2	COMPARE lighting request to traffic needs		
T2.5.5.2.3	DECIDE appropriateness of taxiway lighting intensities		
T2.5.5.3	SWITCH TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.5.3.1	TRANSFORM taxiway lighting system intensity		
T2.5.5.3.2	*RECOGNIZE transformed lighting system intensity		
T2.5.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.5.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *request for lighting adjustment*		
	O		
T2.5.5.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request for lighting adjustment*		
T2.6.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.1.1.1	DETECT data entry response feedback on _BRITE_Display or _FDIO_System *data rejection*	BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.6.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T2.6.1.60.1	RECEIVE flight data from other controller		
T2.6.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.1.61.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T2.6.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO failure*		
T2.6.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.2.61.1	DETECT directly display failure of _BRITE_Display or _FDIO_System	BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1
T2.6.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF EQUIPMENT STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *display equipment failure*		
T2.6.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/A COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		
	O		
T2.6.4.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		
	O		
T2.6.4.1.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *apparent communications failure*		
T2.6.4.1.4	RECOGNIZE abnormality during voice transmission and/ or reception		
T2.6.4.2	REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A/E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.4.2.1	*CROSS-REFERENCE Order 7110.65 on visual signals		
T2.6.4.2.2	INITIATE _Operate_Portable_Light_Gun	Operate_Portable_Light_Gun	1
T2.6.4.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.3.1	INITIATE _Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.6.4.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	O		
T2.6.4.3.2	INITIATE _Operate_FAA_Radio *change frequency*	Operate_FAA_Radio	1
T2.6.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.4.4.1	INITIATE _Operate_301_Interphone_System *alternate communications path options*	Operate_301_Interphone_System	1
	O		
T2.6.4.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *alternate communications*		
	O		
T2.6.4.4.3	INITIATE _Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver	Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver	1
T2.6.4.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new frequency*		
	O		
T2.6.4.60.2	DETECT new frequency on _Radio_Frequency_Assignment in _Equipment_Status on Information Display System	Radio_Frequency_Assignment Equipment_Status	1 1
	O		
T2.6.4.60.3	DETECT new frequency on _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T2.6.4.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new communications path*		
	O		
T2.6.4.61.2	DETECT new communications path in _Equipment_Status on _Information_Display_System	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System	1 1
	O		
T2.6.4.61.3	DETECT new communications path in _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T2.6.4.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *communications status*		
	A/O		
T2.6.4.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications status*		
T2.6.4.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *new frequency*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.6.4.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A/O		
T2.6.4.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *new frequency*		
T2.6.4.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.4.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *alternate communications path*		
	A/O		
T2.6.4.64.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *alternate communications path*		
T2.6.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: A/R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.5.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *transmission problem*		
	O		
T2.6.5.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *reception problem*		
	O		
T2.6.5.2.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transmission or reception problem*		
T2.6.5.2.4	ASSESS impact of unreliable communication channel or frequency		
T2.6.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.5.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *communications check response*		
	O		
T2.6.5.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check*		
T2.6.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.5.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T2.6.5.60.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T2.6.5.60.3	DETECT change in _Radio_Equipment_Status in _Equipment_Status on Information Display System	Radio_Equipment_Status Equipment_Status	1 1
	O		
T2.6.5.60.4	DETECT change in _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T2.6.5.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.5.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check*		
	A/O		
T2.6.5.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *communications check*		
T2.6.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.6.1.1	DETECT airport equipment failure *directly observe damage or faulty operation*		
T2.6.6.1.2	EVALUATE impact of airport equipment failure on traffic operations		
T2.6.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.7.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO stand-alone*		
	O		
T2.6.7.60.2	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Computer_Status, _Radar_Equipment_Status, or _Data_Communications_Line_Outage on _Information_Display_System	Computer_Status Radar_Equipment_Status Data_Communications_Line_Outage Information_Display_System	1 1 1 1
	O		
T2.6.7.60.3	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Equipment_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T2.6.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T2.6.7.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO stand-alone		
T2.6.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T2.6.7.62.1	*CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and/or _Operational_Position_Standards for manual flight progress strip procedures	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards	1 1 1
T2.6.7.62.2	DECIDE on actions to take during manual flight progress strip operation		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.1.1.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.11.1	SCAN airport surface for overall equipment status O		
T3.1.1.11.2	SCAN tower equipment for status of specific equipment item		
T3.1.1.11.3	RECOGNIZE failure or damage to equipment on airport surface or in tower cab		
T3.1.1.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.60.1	ACQUIRE equipment status change on _Display_Screen_Data on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area O	Display_Screen_Data Information_Display_System	1 1
T3.1.1.60.2	ACQUIRE _Equipment_Status change in _System_Status_Data_Record of Status Information Area	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.1.1.61	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATOR FOR CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.61.1	SCAN _Airport_Lighting_Equipment for change in status A/O	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	9
T3.1.1.61.2	SCAN _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel for change in NAVAID status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	6
T3.1.1.61.3	RECOGNIZE changes in airport lighting and equipment status		
T3.1.1.62	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.62.1	DETECT changes in _ASDE_Display, _FDIO_System, _Information_Display_System, and/ or _Tower_Communications_Equipment	ASDE_Display FDIO_System Information_Display_System Tower_Communications_Equipment	1 1 1 1
T3.1.1.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *equipment status* O		
T3.1.1.63.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *equipment status* O		
T3.1.1.63.3	DETECT _Equipment_Status change on _Information_Display_System or _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area O	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record	1 1 1
T3.1.1.63.4	RECEIVE equipment status change via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.1.1.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *system status change*		
	0		
T3.1.1.64.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *system status change*		
T3.1.1.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.65.1	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Data_Cha nge or _Enter_IDS_Change for _Equipment_Status change	Record_System_Status_Data_Change Enter_IDS_Change Equipment_Status	1 1 1
T3.1.1.66	ENTER AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE MESSAGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.1.66.1	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.1.1.66.2	INDICATE _Data_Category	Data_Category	1
T3.1.1.66.3	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.1.2.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.1.2.60.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T3.1.2.61	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.2.61.1	INTRODUCE _Flight_Strip_Entry on _Flight_Progress_Strip or other handwritten record	Flight_Strip_Entry Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T3.1.2.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.1.2.62.1	INITIATE _Remove_Paper_Record	Remove_Paper_Record	1
T3.1.2.63	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.1.2.63.1	INITIATE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T3.1.2.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.1.2.64.1	INITIATE _Reomve_Controller_Note	Reomve_Controller_Note	1
T3.1.2.65	DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.1.2.65.1	INITIATE _Drop_Flight_Plan	Drop_Flight_Plan	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.1.2.65	DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T3.1.2.65.2	INTRODUCE _Aircraft_Identification	Aircraft_Identification	1
T3.1.2.65.3	EXECUTE _Drop_Flight_Plan	Drop_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *pilot flight plan*		
T3.2.1.2	REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.2.1.2.1	COMPARE flight plan contents received from pilot with required flight plan contents		
T3.2.1.2.2	DECIDE if flight plan is complete		
T3.2.1.3	QUERY PILOT ABOUT FLIGHT PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground * flight plan query*		
T3.2.1.5	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY FORWARDED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan*		
T3.2.1.8	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *forward flight plan*		
T3.2.1.11	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN DATA TO ANOTHER FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *forward flight plan*		
T3.2.1.60	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.60.1	INITIATE _Enter_Proposed_Flight_Plan	Enter_Proposed_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.60.2	EXECUTE _Enter_Proposed_Flight_Plan	Enter_Proposed_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.60.3	INITIATE _Enter_Active_Flight_Plan	Enter_Active_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.60.4	EXECUTE _Enter_Active_Flight_Plan	Enter_Active_Flight_Plan	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.2.1.60	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T3.2.1.60.5	INITIATE _Enter_Stereo_Flight_Plan	Enter_Stereo_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.60.6	EXECUTE _Enter_Stereo_Flight_Plan	Enter_Stereo_Flight_Plan	1
T3.2.1.61	RECORD NEW FLIGHT PLAN ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.1.61.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry on _Flight_Progress_Strip	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T3.2.2.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *flight plan amendment*		
T3.2.2.3	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.3.1	ASSESS flight path of aircraft		
	O		
T3.2.2.3.2	ASSESS application of preferential route		
	O		
T3.2.2.3.3	ASSESS traffic management restrictions		
T3.2.2.3.4	DECIDE need for flight plan amendment		
T3.2.2.5	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.5.1	INITIATE _Flight_Data_Amendment message *for amendment of flight plan*	Flight_Data_Amendment	1
T3.2.2.5.2	EXECUTE _Flight_Data_Amendment message	Flight_Data_Amendment	1
T3.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T3.2.2.61	QUERY PILOT/ CONTROLLER ON FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *flight plan amendment*		
	O		
T3.2.2.61.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T3.2.2.62	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.62.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.2.2.63	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP POSTING FOR REMINDER ACTION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.63.1	INITIATE _Flag_Flight_Progress_Strip	Flag_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.2.2.64	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.64.1	INITIATE _Unflag_Flight_Progress_Strip	Unflag_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.2.2.65	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.65.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *flight plan amendment* A/O		
T3.2.2.65.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flight plan amendment*		
T3.2.2.66	RECORD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.66.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	Record_Flight_Strip_Entry	1
T3.2.2.67	RECEIVE AMENDED FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM FDIO		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.2.67.1	ACQUIRE _Flight_Progress_Strip from _FDIO_System	Flight_Progress_Strip FDIO_System	1 1
T3.2.3.2	REQUEST FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.3.2.1	INITIATE _Request_Flight_Plan_Readout message	Request_Flight_Plan_Readout	1
T3.2.3.2.2	INTICATE _Aircraft_Identification	Aircraft_Identification	1
T3.2.3.2.3	EXECUTE _Request_Flight_Plan_Readout message	Request_Flight_Plan_Readout	1
T3.2.3.2.4	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip on _Flight_Strip_Printer on FDIO System for flight plan requested	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Printer	1 1
T3.2.3.3	OBSERVE FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.2.3.3.1	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip on flight plan of interest	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.2.3.3.2	EXTRACT flight plan data from _Flight_Progress_Strip	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.2.3.6	QUERY THE RELAYER OF A FLIGHT PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.3.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flight plan query*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.2.3.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR ERRORS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.2.3.60.1	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip for errors in each field	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.2.3.61	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANUALLY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.2.3.61.1	TRANSFORM _Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS	Manually_Order/Sequence_FPS	1
T3.2.3.62	OBSERVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON PRINTER		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.2.3.62.1	SCAN _Flight_Strip_Printer for new _Flight_Strip_Printer	Flight_Strip_Printer Flight_Strip_Printer	1 1
T3.2.3.63	OBTAIN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM PRINTER		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.2.3.63.1	REMOVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from _Flight_Strip_Printer	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Printer	1 1
T3.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance request*		
T3.3.1.6	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.1.6.1	INTEGRATE mental traffic picture with constraints and conditions		
T3.3.1.6.2	DECIDE clearance needed *for issuance*		
T3.3.1.6.3	FORMULATE elements of appropriate clearance, including necessary instructions		
T3.3.1.7	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.1.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *clearance and instructions*		
T3.3.1.8	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.1.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ATIS*		
T3.3.1.8.2	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Code_Reminder in _System_Status_Data_Record	ATIS_Code_Reminder System_Status_Data_Record	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.1.8	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	0		
T3.3.1.8.3	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Message on _Information_Display_System	ATIS_Message Information_Display_System	1 1
	0		
T3.3.1.8.4	COMPARE pilot reported ATIS Code with _ATIS_Code on _Status_Display_Area on _BRITE_Display	ATIS_Code Status_Display_Area BRITE_Display	1 1 1
T3.3.1.8.5	DECIDE pilot has current ATIS information		
T3.3.1.9	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)		
	TASK TYPE: R/A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.9.1	ACQUIRE current ATIS information from _Information_Display_System or _ATIS_Message_Record	Information_Display_System ATIS_Message_Record	1 1
T3.3.1.9.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ATIS data*		
T3.3.1.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE FROM OTHER FACILITY/ CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance receipt*		
T3.3.1.12	REQUEST NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION FROM PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.12.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *flight plan request*		
T3.3.1.13	INFORM PILOT TO FILE/ REFILE FLIGHT PLAN		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.1.13.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *request pilot to file/ refile*		
T3.3.1.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.60.1	SCAN _Flight_Strip_Bay for appropriate _Flight_Progress_Strip	Flight_Strip_Bay Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
T3.3.1.60.2	ASSESS _Flight_Progress_Strip for information relating to flight plan	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.3.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE TO ANOTHER FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating C/G Communications *forward clearance*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Clearance *clearance request*		
T3.3.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *clearance receipt*		
T3.3.1.64	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS THROUGH FLIGHT SERVICE STATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *clearance relay via flight service*		
T3.3.1.65	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.1.65.1	INITIATE _Flight_Progress_Strip_Request	Flight_Progress_Strip_Request	1
T3.3.1.65.2	EXECUTE _Flight_Progress_Strip_Request	Flight_Progress_Strip_Request	1
T3.3.1.66	REQUEST FLIGHT PLAN DATA VERBALLY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.1.66.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verbal flight data request*		
T3.3.2.4	DETERMINE AIRCRAFT IS READY FOR DEPARTURE FROM GATE		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.2.4.1	ASSESS aircraft and gate activity for preparation to depart gate area		
T3.3.2.60	ISSUE NOTICE TO PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR GROUND CONTROL OR TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *frequency change to ground control/ controller*		
T3.3.2.61	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.2.61.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress Strip to other controller	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	0		
T3.3.3.1.2	ACQUIRE _Special_Activity on _Information_Display_System in Status Information Area	Special_Activity Information_Display_System	1 1
	0		
T3.3.3.1.3	ACQUIRE _Special_Activity in _System_Status_Data_Record in Status Information Area	Special_Activity System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
	0		
T3.3.3.1.4	RECEIVE notice of special activity by _GI_Message on _FDIO_System	GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T3.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA. FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3 2.1	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* in _Full_Data_Block on _BRITE_Display associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Full_Data_Block BRITE_Display	1 1 1
	0		
T3.3.3.2.2	DETECT _Full_Data_Block or _Limited_Data_Block *or multiple* aircraft present within _Special_Use_Airspace on _BRITE_Display	Full_Data_Block Limited_Data_Block Special_Use_Airspace BRITE_Display	1 1 1 1
	0		
T3.3.3.2.3	DETECT _Aircraft_Identification *or multiple* on _Flight_Progress_Strip in Flight Strip Bay associated with special operation	Aircraft_Identification Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
	0		
T3.3.3.2.4	DETECT visually an aircraft normally associated with special operation		
T3.3.3.3	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3.3.1	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message regarding special operation	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.3.3.3.2	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
	0		
T3.3.3.3.3	PERFORM TCS, Initiating G/G Communications *special operations notice*		
T3.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3.4.1	INTEGRATE _Flight_Progress_Strip and special activities into mental traffic picture	Flight_Progress_Strip	27
T3.3.3.4.2	*CROSS-REFERENCE special operation directive in _Static_Information_Record	Static_Information_Record	1
T3.3.3.4.3	DECIDE special operations actions required		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation* A/O		
T3.3.3.5.2	DETECT termination of special operation on _Information_Display_System O	Information_Display_System	1
T3.3.3.5.3	DETECT termination of special operation on _System_Status_Data_Record O	System_Status_Data_Record	1
T3.3.3.5.4	RECEIVE termination of special operation via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1
T3.3.3.6	ENTER TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.3.6.1	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.3.3.6.2	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change O	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.3.3.6.3	INTRODUCE _System_Status_Data_Change to _System_Status_Data_Record	System_Status_Data_Change System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.3.3.6.4	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message on _FDIO_System	Enter_GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T3.3.3.6.5	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.3.4.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special operation/ emergency* A/O		
T3.3.4.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special operation/ emergency status		
T3.3.4.1.3	DETECT special operation/ emergency status on _Infomation_Display_System O	Infomation_Display_System	1
T3.3.4.1.4	DETECT special operation/ emergency status on _System_Status_Data_Record O	System_Status_Data_Record	1
T3.3.4.1.5	RECEIVE special operation/ emergency status via _GI_Message or _Controller_Note	GI_Message Controller_Note	1 1
T3.3.4.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.2.1	SCAN specific aircraft/ vehicle for abnormal condition		
T3.3.4.2.2	RECOGNIZE aircraft/ vehicle abnormal condition		
T3.3.4.2.3	ASSESS seriousness of observed aircraft or vehicle abnormality		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.4.4	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.4.1	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message regarding emergency/ special condition	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.3.4.4.2	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
	O		
T3.3.4.4.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *contingency information*		
T3.3.4.5	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *contingency information to pilot or ground vehicle operator having problem*		
T3.3.4.7	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.4.7.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *ramp search via radio*		
	A/O		
T3.3.4.7.2	SEARCH ramp area for aircraft of type and markings of overdue aircraft		
T3.3.4.8	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.4.8.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency termination*		
	A/O		
T3.3.4.8.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *special condition/ emergency termination*		
T3.3.4.9	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.4.9.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special contidion/ emergency termination*		
T3.3.4.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT SEARCH		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.4.10.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *request for overdue aircraft search*		
T3.3.4.11	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.11.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *special condition/ emergency notification*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.3.4.60	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.4.60.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T3.3.4.61	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR INFORMATION ON OVERDUE AIRCRAFT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.3.4.61.1	SEARCH _Flight_Progress_Strip in _Flight_Strip_Bay for overdue aircraft information	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
	A		
T3.3.4.61.2	SEARCH filed/ inactive flight progress strips for overdue aircraft information		
T3.3.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT DEPARTURE FROM OTHER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.5.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications "aircraft departure"		
T3.3.5.2	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.3.5.2.1	RECEIVE _Flight_Progress_Strip from controller	Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.3.5.3	ENTER DEPARTURE MESSAGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.3.5.3.1	EXECUTE _Use_Gravity_Tube to forward _Flight_Progress_Strip to TRACON controller	Use_Gravity_Tube Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1
	O		
T3.3.5.3.2	INITIATE _Departure_Aircraft message on _FDIO_System on departing aircraft	Departure_Aircraft FDIO_System	1 1
T3.3.5.3.3	INTRODUCE _Aircraft_Identification for departing aircraft	Aircraft_Identification	1
T3.3.5.3.4	EXECUTE _Departure_Aircraft message	Departure_Aircraft	1
T3.4.1.1	RECEIVE CANCELLATION OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.1.1	SCAN _Flight_Strip_Printer for _Traffic_Management_Record or _Flow_Restriction_Note	Flight_Strip_Printer Traffic_Management_Record Flow_Restriction_Note	1 1 1
T3.4.1.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications "traffic management/ flow restriction notice"		
T3.4.1.3	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION (E.G., EDCT, GATE HOLD)		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/E/M FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.3.1	SCAN _Flight_Strip_Printer for _GI_Message and/ or _Flight_Progress_Strip containing traffic management information	Flight_Strip_Printer GI_Message Flight_Progress_Strip	1 1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.4.1.3	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION (E.G., EDCT, GATE HOLD)		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F/M FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T3.4.1.3.2	DETECT _GI_Message and/ or _Flight_Progress_Strip with traffic management information and/ or _Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time	GI_Message Flight_Progress_Strip Expect_Departure_Clearance_Time	1 1 1
T3.4.1.3.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *traffic management information*		
T3.4.1.5	DISCUSS TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION PROCEDURES WITH CONTROLLER/ PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *flow restriction* A		
T3.4.1.5.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *flow restriction* A/O		
T3.4.1.5.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *traffic management restriction*		
T3.4.1.6	INFORM PILOT OF ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: HI CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.6.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *EDCT*		
T3.4.1.8	ENTER TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION ON ATIS MESSAGE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.8.1	INITIATE _Record_ATIS_Message to add traffic management information	Record_ATIS_Message	1
T3.4.1.8.2	EXECUTE _Record_ATIS_Message	Record_ATIS_Message	1
T3.4.1.60	FORWARD TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC/E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.60.1	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change for _Information_Display_System update	Enter_IDS_Change Information_Display_System	1 1
T3.4.1.60.2	INDICATE traffic management information		
T3.4.1.60.3	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change A/O	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.4.1.60.4	INTRODUCE _Record_System_Status_Change on _System_Status_Data_Record A/O	Record_System_Status_Change System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.4.1.60.5	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *traffic managment information* A/O		
T3.4.1.60.6	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *traffic management information*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.4.1.61	RECORD NOTE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.61.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T3.4.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION CANCELLATION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.4.1.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *traffic managment restriction cancellation* A/O		
T3.4.1.62.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *traffic management restriction cancellation*		
T3.5.1.1	REVIEW ATIS RECORDING		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.5.1.1.1	ACTIVATE _ATIS_Message_Monitor	ATIS_Message_Monitor	1
T3.5.1.1.2	EVALUATE _ATIS_Message for content C	ATIS_Message	1
T3.5.1.1.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _ATIS_Message_Record for message content	ATIS_Message_Record	1
T3.5.1.1.4	DECIDE currency and completeness of ATIS recording data		
T3.5.1.2	UPDATE ATIS RECORDING		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.5.1.2.1	INITIATE _Record_ATIS_Message to update _ATIS_Message	Record_ATIS_Message ATIS_Message	1 1
T3.5.1.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *validate ATIS message content with controller*		
T3.5.1.2.3	EXECUTE _Record_ATIS_Message	Record_ATIS_Message	1
T3.5.1.2.4	INTRODUCE appropriate changes to _Information_Display_System, _System_Status_Data_Record, and _System_Display_Area on _ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System	Information_Display_System System_Status_Data_Record System_Display_Area ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System	1 1 1 1
T3.5.1.4	OBSERVE WEATHER CONDITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.4.1	*DETECT Precipitation *and associated weather* on _Brite_Display	Precipitation Brite_Display	1 1
T3.5.1.4.2	*DETECT winds, ceiling, and visibility on _Airport_Environmental_Instrument	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
.5.1.4.3	DETECT weather areas, precipitation, ceiling, weather movement, winds, and visicility by direct observation		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.5.1.4	OBSERVE WEATHER CONDITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
T3.5.1.4.4	INTEGRATE weather observation into mental weather picture		
T3.5.1.5	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION OR NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.5.1	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change for weather changes	Enter_IDS_Change	1
	O		
T3.5.1.5.2	INTRODUCE changes to _Meteorological_Data_Record	Meteorological_Data_Record	1
	O		
T3.5.1.5.3	INTRODUCE _Record_Controller_Note	Record_Controller_Note	1
T3.5.1.60	DISSEMINATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.60.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Airport_Enviornmental/ Weather_Readout	Record_Airport_Enviornmental/Weather_Readout	1
	O		
T3.5.1.60.2	INITATE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.5.1.60.3	INDICATE appropriate weather information		
T3.5.1.60.4	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.5.1.61	FORMULATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION FOR DISTRIBUTION		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.61.1	ACQUIRE weather information on _Meteorological_Dat_ Record, _Information_Display_System, _Controller_Note, _Teleautograph or _Electrowriter	Meteorological_Dat_ Information_Display_System Controller_Note Teleautograph Electrowriter	1 1 1 1 1
T3.5.1.61.2	ASSESS weather information for changes affecting traffic		
T3.5.1.61.3	DECIDE what weather information needs to be distributed to other controllers		
T3.5.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.62.1	DETECT _GI_Message on _Flight_Strip_Printer with weather or airport environmental information	GI_Message Flight_Strip_Printer	1 1
	O		
T3.5.1.62.2	DETECT weather/ airport environmental changes on _Electrowriter or _Teleautograph	Electrowriter Teleautograph	1 1
	O		
T3.5.1.62.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *weather/ airport environmental information*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.5.1.63	ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT OF WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.63.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *acknowledgement of weather/ airport environmental data*		
T3.5.1.64	ISSUE WEATHER ADVISORY TO PILOT		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.64.1	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *weather advisory*		
T3.5.1.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.5.1.65.1	DETECT changes in _Airport_Enviornmental _Instrument	Airport_Enviornmental_Instrument	5
T3.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.6.1.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T3.6.1.1.2	CROSS-REFERENCE display information on _BRITE_Display, _System_Status_Data_Record or _Information_Display_System, and _Meteorological_Data_Record	BRITE_Display System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System Meteorological_Data_Record	1 1 1 1
T3.6.1.1.3	CROSS-REFERENCE _Flight_Progress_Strip on _Flight_Strip_Bay	Flight_Progress_Strip Flight_Strip_Bay	27 1
T3.6.1.1.4	INFORM relieving controller traffic and weather picture, systems status, priority text messages, and display status		
T3.6.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.1.3.1	ASSESS briefing provided to relieving controller for its coverage of all significant matters		
T3.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.6.1.60.1	INITIATE _Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	Enter_Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T3.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING		
	TASK TYPE: A/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.6.2.2.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING		
	TASK TYPE: A/R/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
	A		
T3.6.2.2.2	SEARCH _Data_Display for traffic, weather, and system information	Data_Display	10
	A		
T3.6.2.2.3	RECEIVE controller briefing on traffic, weather, and system status		
	O		
T3.6.2.2.4	PERFORM TCE, Receiving TCS G/G Communications *other controller*		
T3.6.2.2.5	INTEGRATE traffic, weather, and system information into mental traffic, weather, and system capabilities picture		
T3.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAY FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.2.3.1	SEARCH _Data_Display functionality	Data_Display	10
T3.6.2.3.2	ASSESS display/ control adequacy		
T3.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL REFERENCE		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.6.2.6.1	ASSESS need for parameter adjustment on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T3.6.2.6.2	INITIATE console adjustment functions as needed		
	A/O		
T3.6.2.6.3	RECOGNIZE adjustment results on _Data_Display	Data_Display	3
T3.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.2.7.1	ACQUIRE _System_Status_Data_Record or _Information_Display_System for information pertinent to assuming control of position	System_Status_Data_Record Information_Display_System	1 1
	A		
T3.6.2.7.2	ACQUIRE _Airport_Lighting_Equipment status	Airport_Lighting_Equipment	5
	A		
T3.6.2.7.3	ACQUIRE _NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel status	NAVAID_Equipment_Monitor_Panel	3
	A		
T3.6.2.7.4	ACQUIRE _Tower_Communications_Equipment status	Tower_Communications_Equipment	2
	A		
T3.6.2.7.5	ACQUIRE _Airport_Environmental_Instrument status	Airport_Environmental_Instrument	5
T3.6.2.7.6	SYNTHESIZE extracted information with regard to assuming position responsibility		
T3.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.6.2.8.1	ACQUIRE _Data_Display to determine current and projected traffic/ weather	Data_Display	10

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: MED CRITICALITY: HI (Continued)		
T3.6.2.8.2	SYNTHESIZE extracted information into a mental traffic picture of current and projected traffic and weather status		
T3.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: LOW		
T3.6.2.60.1	INTRODUCE _Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	Record_Sign-On/Off_Log_Information	1
T3.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.3.1.1	COMPARE current mental traffic picture to anticipated future traffic picture		
T3.6.3.1.2	DECIDE subjective workload estimate		
T3.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.3.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *overload condition*		
T3.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.3.61.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *notice to combine/ decombine positions*		
T3.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.6.3.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *request relief/ assistance*		
T3.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.4.1.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T3.6.4.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *verbal coordination*		
T3.6.4.1.3	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *verbal coordination*		
T3.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.4.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *notice to reconfigure tower positions*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.6.4.60.1	INITIATE *physical* relocation of person/ equipment		
T3.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF FDIO INPUT DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.7.1.1.1	DETECT data entry response feedback *data rejected*		
T3.7.1.60	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.1.60.1	INITIATE _Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progr ess_Strip	Manually_Transmit_Flight_Progress_Strip	1
T3.7.1.61	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY		
	TASK TYPE: R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.1.61.1	RECEIVE flight data from other controller		
T3.7.1.62	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF ARTS INPUT DATA		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.7.1.62.1	DETECT data entry repsonse feedback on _BRITE_Display or _ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System	BRITE_Display ARTS_IIA/IIIA_System	1 1
T3.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: VC/R COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.2.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO failure* O		
T3.7.2.60.2	ACQUIRE _GI_Message on _FDIO_System indicating failure of ARTS*	GI_Message FDIO_System	1 1
T3.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.7.2.61.1	DETECT directly display failure of _BRITE_Display or _FDIO_System	BRITE_Display FDIO_System	1 1
T3.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/F FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: HI		
T3.7.2.62.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *display equipment status*		
T3.7.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4 1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO OF OBJECTS
T3.7.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	0		
T3.7.4.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Initioting G/G Communications *apparent communications failure*		
T3.7.4.1.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *apparent communications failure*		
T3.7.4.1.4	RECOGNIZE abnormality occurrence during voice transmission and/ or reception		
T3.7.4.2	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.2.1	INITIATE _Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	Select_Backup_FAA_Radio_Option	1
	0		
T3.7.4.2.2	INITIATE _Operate_FAA_Radio *frequency change*	Operate_FAA_Radio	1
T3.7.4.3	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *new frequency*		
	0		
T3.7.4.3.2	DETECT new frewuency on _Radio_Frequency_Assignment on _Equipment_Status in Information Display System	Radio_Frequency_Assignment Equipment_Status	1 1
	0		
T3.7.4.3.3	DETECT new frequency on _Communications_Status in _Systems_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status Systems_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.7.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD		
	TASK TYPE: E COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.4.1	INITIATE _Operate_301_Interphone_System *alternate communications path options*	Operate_301_Interphone_System	1
	0		
T3.7.4.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *alternate communications*		
	0		
T3.7.4.4.3	INITIATE _Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver	Operate_Emergency_Battery-Powered_Transceiver	1
T3.7.4.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.5.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communicatoins *new communications path*		
	0		
T3.7.4.5.2	DETECT new communications path in _Equipment_Status on _Information_Display_System	Equipment_Status Information_Display_System	1 1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.7.4.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T3.7.4.5.3	DETECT new communications path in _Communications_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Communications_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.7.4.6	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.6.1	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.7.4.6.2	INDICATE communications status information		
T3.7.4.6.3	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
	O		
T3.7.4.6.4	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change for communications status change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.7.4.6.5	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
	O		
T3.7.4.6.6	INTRODUCE update to _System_Status_Data_Record	System_Status_Data_Record	1
T3.7.4.7	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.7.1	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.7.4.7.2	INDICATE communications status information		
T3.7.4.7.3	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
	O		
T3.7.4.7.4	INITIATE Enter_IDS_Change	IDS_Change	1
T3.7.4.7.5	INDICATE new assignment of radio frequency		
T3.7.4.7.6	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1
	O		
T3.7.4.7.7	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *frequency change*		
T3.7.4.8	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.4.8.1	INITIATE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
T3.7.4.8.2	INDICATE alternate communications information*		
T3.7.4.8.3	EXECUTE _Enter_GI_Message	Enter_GI_Message	1
	O		
T3.7.4.8.4	INITIATE _Enter_IDS_Change for alternate communications path	Enter_IDS_Change	1
T3.7.4.8.5	EXECUTE _Enter_IDS_Change	Enter_IDS_Change	1

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.7.4.8	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH		
	TASK TYPE: E/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED (Continued)		
	O		
T3.7.4.8.6	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *alternate communications path*		
T3.7.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: R/VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.5.1.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T3.7.5.1.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transient communications failure*		
	O		
T3.7.5.1.3	DETECT change in _Radio_Equipment_Status or _Voice_Communications_Status in _Equipment_Status on Information Display System	Radio_Equipment_Status Voice_Communications_Status Equipment_Status	1 1 1
T3.7.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE		
	TASK TYPE: A/VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.5.2.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *transmission problem*		
	O		
T3.7.5.2.2	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *reception problem*		
	O		
T3.7.5.2.3	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *transmission or reception problem*		
	O		
T3.7.5.2.4	ASSESS impact of unreliable communication channel or frequency		
T3.7.5.3	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V/M FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.5.3.1	PERFORM TCE, Initiating G/G Communications *communications check query*		
	A/O		
T3.7.5.3.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check query*		
T3.7.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.5.4.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *communcations check response*		
	O		
T3.7.5.4.2	PERFORM TCE, Communicating Normally Air-To-Ground *communications check response*		

TASK NUMBER / ELEMENT NUMBER	TASK STATEMENTS / DATA AND TASK ELEMENT STATEMENTS	OBJECTS	NO. OF OBJECTS
T3.7.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT		
	TASK TYPE: R/A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.6.1.1	DETECT airport equipment failure *directly observe damage or faulty operation*		
T3.7.6.1.2	EVALUATE impact of airport equipment failure on traffic operations		
T3.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.7.60.1	PERFORM TCE, Receiving G/G Communications *ARTS/ FDIO stand-alone* O		
T3.7.7.60.2	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Computer_Status, _Radar_Equipment_Status, or _Data_Communications_Line_Outage on _ O	Computer_Status Radar_Equipment_Status Data_Communications_Line_Outage	1 1 1 1
T3.7.7.60.3	DETECT stand-alone notice in _Equipment_Status in _System_Status_Data_Record	Equipment_Status System_Status_Data_Record	1 1
T3.7.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE		
	TASK TYPE: VC COORD MEDIA: V FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		
T3.7.7.61.1	CROSS-REFERENCE _Checklist, _Position_Binder, and _Operational_Position_Standards in _Static_Information_Record for manual flight progress strip procedures	Checklist Position_Binder Operational_Position_Standards Static_Information_Record	1 1 1 1
T3.7.7.61.2	DECIDE on actions to take during manual flight progress strip operation		
T3.7.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES		
	TASK TYPE: A COORD MEDIA: FREQUENCY: LOW CRITICALITY: MED		

Appendix F

Traceability Tables

APPENDIX F

TRACEABILITY TABLES

Traceability of ATCT Controller tasks to procedural requirements of FAA Orders 7110.65 [18] and 7210.3 [19] shows that requirements exist to support the task. (Note: 7110.65E, Change 6, and 7210.3I, both dated 9 February 1989, were used.) Helicopter, Sea Lane, and Approach Control operations are included; however, the following areas of 7110.65 are not included in this analysis:

Military airfield operations
Appendices
Nomenclature definitions
Notes and References
Examples and parenthetical information
Preparation of written reports and forms
Phraseology sections (unless needed to clarify the procedures requirement)
Items not involving controller action
Paragraphs preceded by the single word "En Route"
ICAO and international procedures
Information content of a message; merely the FAA Order is referenced for the information
Radio and interphone procedures and formats not involving tactical control actions
Detailed numerical standards (such as all the various separation minima); merely the FAA Order is referenced for the information
Statements indicating controller should take no action
Listings of conditions underwhich an action may or should be taken
Procedures for conducting equipment checks

The task to ATC procedures traceability tables in this appendix each contain five columns of information:

Task Number

Task Statement

Paragraph Number in the pertinent document. Paragraph numbers are preceded by ATC or FOA to denote FAA Orders 7110.65 and 7210.3 respectively. Following each paragraph number is a hyphen and two-digit number. This number is an arbitrary number assigned to a procedures statement within the paragraph and used only for constructing and retrieving the computer-stored data base.

Procedures Statement extracting the pertinent ATC procedures text. When a procedures statement is too lengthy to include in the data base, the statement ends with the parenthetical expression "(See 7110.65)" or "(See 7210.3)".

Page Number of the requirement location in the pertinent document

Of the 340 ATCT Local Controller tasks, 214 Ground Controller tasks, and 136 Clearance Delivery / Flight Data tasks, 59 percent, 47 percent, and 3 percent respectively were associated with procedures. Those tasks not containing any reference to the FAA Orders are designated "orphan" tasks. Following the presentation of all tasks for each ATCT position, these "orphan" tasks are listed. "Orphan" tasks are of such a nature as to preclude their direct association with the specific ATC procedural requirements within the two FAA Orders referenced.

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.1	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	ATC 4- 5- 00	FIX USE	4- 2
		ATC 4- 5- 01	Request aircraft position reports only over fixes shown on charts used for the altitude being flown, except as follows: (See 7110.65).	4- 2
		ATC 5- 12- 00	POSITION REPORTING	5- 3
		ATC 5- 12- 01	a. If necessary, you may request an aircraft to provide an estimate or report over a specific fix.	5- 3
		ATC 6- 2- 00	NONRECEIPT OF POSITION REPORT	6- 1
		ATC 6- 2- 01	When a position report affecting separation is not received, take action to obtain the report no later than 5 minutes after the aircraft was estimated over the fix.	6- 1
T1.1.1.3	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	ATC 3-128- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION	3-29
		ATC 3-128- 01	When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.	3-29
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 04	c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.	8-16
		ATC 9- 28- 00	EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K-9 TEAMS	9- 7
		ATC 9- 28- 02	a. Obtain the aircraft identification and position and advise your supervisor of the pilot request.	9- 7
T1.1.1.5	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 01	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.5 (cont'd)	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 01	a. Use ASDE-derived information to determine that the runway is clear of aircraft and vehicles prior to a landing or departure.	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 00	IDENTIFICTION	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 01	To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following; pilot's report, controller's visual observation, or an identified target observed on the ASR bright display.	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 01	a. Approved radar systems may be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 09	b. Approved terminal radar systems may also be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 11	(2) Ensuring that runways observable on ASDE are clear of traffic/ vehicles prior to issuing landing or departure clearances.	3-13
T1.1.1.6	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREAS FOR LOCATION/ MOVEMENT OF SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE	ATC 3- 7- 00	POSITION DETERMINATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 02	The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 72- 00	IDENTIFICTION	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 01	To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following; pilot's report, controller's visual observation, or an identified target observed on the ASR bright display.	3-13
T1.1.1.7	SEARCH DIRECTLY FOR AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT LOCATION	ATC 7- 73- 00	IDENTIFICATION	7-12
		ATC 7- 73- 01	Identify the aircraft before taking action to position it in the approach sequence.	7-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.8	SEARCH BRITE DISPLAY FOR TARGET LOCATION/ MOVEMENT	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 01	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 7- 73- 00	IDENTIFICATION	7-12
		ATC 7- 73- 01	Identify the aircraft before taking action to position it in the approach sequence.	7-12
		ATC 7- 77- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	7-12
		ATC 7- 77- 03	b. Where the approach control ARTS track data is being displayed on the tower's BRITE display, the aircraft is tagged by ARTS, and a facility directive specifies change of communications and control jurisdiction points, instruct the pilot to contact the tower at the appropriate point.	7-12
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 03	b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.	8-16
		FOA 2- 212- 00	AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS	2- 4
		FOA 2- 212- 02	b. Towers equipped with certified tower radar displays may be authorized to provide separation services in accordance with paragraph 1242.	2- 4
T1.1.1.9	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION	ATC 3- 7- 00	POSITION DETERMINATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 01	a. Determine the position of an aircraft before issuing taxi instructions or takeoff clearance.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 02	The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 03	a. Use ASDE-derived information to confirm pilot reported positions.	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 00	IDENTIFICTION	3-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1 * 1.9 (cont'd)	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION	ATC 3- 72- 01	To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following: pilot's report, controller's visual observation, or an identified target observed on the ASR bright display.	3-13
		ATC 3-128- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION	3-29
		ATC 3-128- 01	When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.	3-29
		ATC 5- 50- 00	APPLICATION	5-11
		ATC 5- 50- 01	Before your provide radar service, establish and maintain radar identification of the aircraft involved, except as provided in 5-70b(2) and 5-70b(3).	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 00	PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 01	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods: Observing a departing aircraft target within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 02	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by usng one of the following methods: Observing a target whose position with respect to a fix corresponds with a direct position report received from an aircraft, and the observed track is consistent with the reported heading or route of flight.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 03	If a TACAN/ VORTAC is located within 6,000 feet of the radar antenna, the TACAN/ VORTAC may be used as a reference fix for radar identification without being displayed on the video map or map overlay.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 04	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods: Observing a target make an identifying turn or turns of 30 degrees or more, provided the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	5-11
		ATC 5- 53- 00	ARTS/ PIDP IDENTIFICATION METHODS	5-12
		ATC 5- 53- 01	a. Consider an auto-acquired aircraft as identified when the data block is displayed and is visible to you, and one of the following conditions exist: (See 7110.65).	5-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.9 (cont'd)	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE IS AT REPORTED POSITION	ATC 5- 53- 02	b. Use the ARTS/PIDP data block to maintain target identity unless it is in a coast status or displaced from the appropriate target.	5-12
		ATC 5- 53- 03	c. Displaced data block shall be updated at all times.	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 00	POSITION INFORMATION	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 01	Inform an aircraft of its position whenever radar identification is established by means of identifying turns or by any of the beacon identification methods outlined in paragraph 5-52.	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 02	Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-12
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 05	The receiving controller shall: After accepting a handoff from another controller, confirm the identity of primary target by advising the aircraft of its position, and of a beacon target by observing a code change, an "Ident" reply, or a "standby" squawk unless one of these was ... (See 7110.65).	5-14
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 05	a. You may apply visual separation between aircraft under your facility's control within the terminal area, provided:	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 07	(2) You see the aircraft and maintain visual separation between them.	7- 2
		ATC 7- 73- 00	IDENTIFICATION	7-12
		ATC 7- 73- 01	Identify the aircraft before taking action to position it in the approach sequence.	7-12
T1.1.1.10	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	ATC 3- 7- 00	POSITION DETERMINATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 01	a. Determine the position of an aircraft before issuing taxi instructions or takeoff clearance.	3- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	ATC 3- 7- 02	The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 03	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide a direction or suggested headings to VFR aircraft as a method for radar identification or as an advisory aid to navigation.	3- 3
		ATC 5- 50- 00	APPLICATION	5-11
		ATC 5- 50- 01	Before your provide radar service, establish and maintain radar identification of the aircraft involved, except as provided in 5-70b(2) and 5-70b(3).	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 00	PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 01	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods: Observing a departing aircraft target within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 02	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods: Observing a target whose position with respect to a fix corresponds with a direct position report received from an aircraft, and the observed track is consistent with the reported heading or route of flight.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 03	If a TACAN/ VORTAC is located within 6,000 feet of the radar antenna, the TACAN/ VORTAC may be used as a reference fix for radar identification without being displayed on the video map or map overlay.	5-11
		ATC 5- 51- 04	Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods: Observing a target make an identifying turn or turns of 30 degrees or more, provided the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	5-11
		ATC 5- 53- 00	ARTS/ PIDP IDENTIFICATION METHODS	5-12
		ATC 5- 53- 01	a. Consider an auto-acquired aircraft as identified when the data block is displayed and is visible to you, and one of the following conditions exist: (See 7110.65).	5-12
		ATC 5- 53- 02	b. Use the ARTS/PIDP data block to maintain target identity unless it is in a coast status or displaced from the appropriate target.	5-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	ATC 5- 53- 03	c. Displaced data block shall be updated at all times.	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 00	POSITION INFORMATION	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 01	Inform an aircraft of its position whenever radar identification is established by means of identifying turns or by any of the beacon identification methods outlined in paragraph 5-52.	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- 02	Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-12
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 08	The transferring controller shall: Ensure that the data block is associated with the appropriate target.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 10	Transferring controller shall: Initiate verbal coordination before transferring control of a track when "CST," "FAIL," "NONE," "NB," "NX," "IF," or "NT" is displayed in the data block.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 01	The receiving controller shall: Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an appropriate association between an automated data block and the target being transferred before accepting an handoff.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 07	The receiving controller shall: When using appropriate equipment, consider a discrete beacon target's identity to be confirmed when: (See 7110.65).	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 05	b. The receiving controller shall: Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.	5-15
		FOA 12-1242- 00	FUNCTIONAL USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	12- 9

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.1.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE CORRELATION OF EXPECTED/ REPORTED POSITION WITH TARGET	FOA 12-1242- 02	b. At towers combined with full radar approach control facilities where controllers do not rotate between the approach control and the tower, or at towers not combined with full radar approach control facilities, certified tower radar displays may be used by local controllers:	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 05	(3) To provide a direction or suggested heading to VFR aircraft as a method for radar identification or as an advisory aid to navigation.	12- 9
T1.1.1.60	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 06	c. When the runways in use for landing/ departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.	3- 1
T1.1.1.61	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 06	c. When the runways in use for landing/ departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.	3- 1
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 04	c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.	9-16
T1.1.2.3	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 05	a. You may apply visual separation between aircraft under your facility's control within the terminal area, provided:	7- 2

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.3 (cont'd)	SEARCH AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREAS TO ASSESS AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	ATC 7- 10- 07	(2) You see the aircraft and maintain visual separation between them.	7- 2
T1.1.2.4	PROJECT MENTALLY AN AIRCRAFT'S FUTURE POSITION/ ALTITUDE/ PATH	ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 05	a. You may apply visual separation between aircraft under your facility's control within the terminal area, provided:	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 07	(2) You see the aircraft and maintain visual separation between them.	7- 2
		ATC 8- 71- 00	CERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 03	b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.	8-16
		FOA 2- 212- 00	AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS	2- 4
		FOA 2- 212- 01	a. Nonapproach control towers, not equipped with a tower radar display, may be authorized to provide appropriate separation between consecutive departures based upon time or diverging courses, and between arrivals and departures, provided: (See 7210.3).	2- 4
T1.1.2.10	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	ATC 2- 19- 00	WAKE TURBULENCE	2- 6
		ATC 2- 19- 01	a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.	2- 6
		ATC 3- 92- 00	SIMULTANEOUS SAME DIRECTION OPERATION	3-17
		ATC 3- 92- 01	Authorize simultaneous, same direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when: (See 7110.65).	3-17
		ATC 3- 93- 00	SIMULTANEOUS OPPOSITE DIRECTION OPERATION	3-18
		ATC 3- 93- 01	Authorize simultaneous opposite direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when: (See 7110.65).	3-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	ATC 3-104- 00	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-104- 01	Takeoff clearance need not be withheld until prescribed separation exists if there is a reasonable assurance it will exist when the aircraft starts takeoff roll.	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 01	Separate a departing aircraft from a preceding departing or arriving aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that is does not begin takeoff roll until: (See 7110.65).	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 03	i. Separate a small aircraft behind a large aircraft taking off or making a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs on the same runway by 3 minutes unless a pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the 3-minute interval.	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 00	INTERSECTION TAKEOFF	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 01	Handle intersection takeoffs as follows:	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 02	a. You may initiate an intersection takeoff.	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 03	b. You may authorize an intersection takeoff if the pilot requests it.	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 05	WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION d. Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding departing large aircraft by ensuring that it does not start ... (See 7110.65).	3-22
		ATC 3-107- 06	d. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3-minute interval.	3-22
		ATC 3-107- 07	e. The 3-minute interval is not required when: (See 7110.65).	3-22
		ATC 3-107- 09	(3) When applying paragraph 3-107e(1) or (2), issue a clearance to permit the trailing aircraft to deviate from course enough to avoid the flight path of the preceding large departure.	3-22

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	ATC 3-107- 10	g. Separate an aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, by ensuring that it does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after a heavy jet has taken off.	3-22
		ATC 3-108- 00	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-22
		ATC 3-108- 01	Separate departing aircraft from an aircraft using an intersecting runway, or nonintersecting runways when the flight paths intersect, by insuring that the departure does not begin takeoff roll until one of the following exists: (See 7110.65).	3-22
		ATC 3-108- 02	e. USAF NOT APPLICABLE. If the pilot of a departing IFR/ VFR aircraft has initiated a request to deviate from the 2-minute interval, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.	3-23
		ATC 3-122- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-25
		ATC 3-122- 01	a. Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in paragraph 3-131: (See 7110.65).	3-25
		ATC 3-123- 00	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 01	a. Separate an arriving aircraft using one runway from another aircraft using an intersecting runway or a nonintersecting runway when the flight paths intersect by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold or flight path of the other aircraft... (See 7110.65).	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 02	USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE. Where approved, you may authorize an aircraft to takeoff from one runway and another aircraft to land simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft to land on one runway and another aircraft to land simultaneously on an intersecting runway, ...(See 7110.65).	3-27
		ATC 3-123- 04	c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure - 2 minutes or the appropriate radar separation minima.	3-28
		ATC 3-131- 00	ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH	3-29

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	ATC 3-131- 01	A low approach with an altitude restriction of not less than 500 feet above the airport may be authorized except over an aircraft in takeoff position or a departure aircraft.	3-29
		ATC 3-140- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-32
		ATC 3-140- 04	d. Avoid clearances which require small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.	3-32
		ATC 3-142- 00	HELICOPTER DEPARTURE SEPARATION	3-33
		ATC 3-142- 01	Separate a departing helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not takeoff until one of the following conditions exists: (See 7110.65).	3-33
		ATC 3-143- 00	HELICOPTER ARRIVAL SEPARATION	3-33
		ATC 3-143- 01	Separate an arriving helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not land until one of the following conditions exists: (See 7110.65).	3-33
		ATC 3-144- 00	SIMULTANEOUS LANDINGS OR TAKEOFFS	3-33
		ATC 3-144- 01	Authorize helicopters to conduct simultaneous landings or takeoffs if the distance between the landing or takeoff points is at least 200 feet and the courses to be flown do not conflict.	3-33
		ATC 3-144- 02	Refer to surface markings to determine the 200-foot minimum, or instruct a helicopter to remain at least 200 feet from another helicopter.	3-33
		ATC 3-152- 00	ARRIVAL SEPARATION	3-35
		ATC 3-152- 01	Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same sea lane by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists: (See 7110.65).	3-35
		ATC 5- 8- 00	MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES	5- 3
		ATC 5- 8- 01	a. Except while they are established in a holding pattern, apply merging target procedures to all radar identified aircraft at 10,000 feet and above, turbojet aircraft regardless of altitude, and Presidential aircraft regardless of altitude.	5- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.10 (cont'd)	DETERMINE WHETHER AIRCRAFT WILL BE SEPARATED BY LESS THAN PRESCRIBED MINIMA	ATC 7- 42- 00	SEPARATION	7- 7
		ATC 7- 42- 01	Apply approved separation between: a. Special VFR aircraft. b. Special VFR aircraft and IFR aircraft.	7- 7
		ATC 8- 70- 00	APPLICATION	8-15
		ATC 8- 70- 04	c. With pilot concurrence, provide separation between aircraft and balloons when you are satisified that the balloon information is sufficiently reliable to provide the service.	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 03	b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.	8-16
		FOA 2- 212- 00	AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS	2- 4
		FOA 2- 212- 01	a. Nonapproach control towers, not equipped with a tower radar display, may be authorized to provide appropriate separation between consecutive departures based upon time or diverging courses, and between arrivals and departures, provided: (See 7210.3).	2- 4
		FOA 12-1242- 00	FUNCTIONAL USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 02	b. At towers combined with full radar approach control facilities where controllers do not rotate between the approach control and the tower, or at towers not combined with full radar approach control facilities, certified tower radar displays may be used by local controllers:	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 07	(5) To ensure separation between successive departures, between arrivals and departures, and between overflights and departures within the airport traffic area provided: (See 7210.3).	12- 9
T1.1.2.60	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS	ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.60 (cont'd)	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS	ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 01	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 02	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide aircraft with radar traffic advisories.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 01	a. Use ASDE-derived information to determine that the runway is clear of aircraft and vehicles prior to a landing or departure.	3-13
		FOA 2- 212- 00	AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS	2- 4
		FOA 2- 212- 02	b. Towers equipped with certified tower radar displays may be authorized to provide separation services in accordance with paragraph 1242.	2- 4
		FOA 12-1241- 00	RADAR DISPLAY INDICATORS	12- 9
		FOA 12-1241- 01	a. Radar approach and departure control functions will normally be conducted from a TRACON. Either direct view or bright display indicators may be used.	12- 9
		FOA 12-1241- 02	These functions may be performed from the tower cab if: (See 7210.3).	12- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.2.60 (cont'd)	REVIEW BRITE/ ARDE DISPLAY FOR POTENTIAL VIOLATION OF SEPARATION STANDARDS	FOA 12-1242- 00	FUNCTIONAL USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 02	b. At towers combined with full radar approach control facilities where controllers do not rotate between the approach control and the tower, or at towers not combined with full radar approach control facilities, certified tower radar displays may be used by local controllers:	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 07	(5) To ensure separation between successive departures, between arrivals and departures, and between overflights and departures within the airport traffic area provided: (See 7210.3).	12- 9
T1.1.2.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS/ RECORDS FOR POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT SEPARATION	ATC 3- 92- 00	SIMULTANEOUS SAME DIRECTION OPERATION	3-17
		ATC 3- 92- 01	Authorize simultaneous, same direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when: (See 7110.65).	3-17
		ATC 3- 93- 00	SIMULTANEOUS OPPOSITE DIRECTION OPERATION	3-18
		ATC 3- 93- 01	Authorize simultaneous opposite direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when: (See 7110.65).	3-18
T1.1.2.62	QUICK LOOK FULL DATA BLOCKS TO EXAMINE FLIGHT AND TRACK INFORMATION	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 4- 71- 00	ARRIVAL INFORMATION BY APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES	4-23
		ATC 4- 71- 03	c. Where the collocated or satellite tower has ARTS data displayed on its BRITE, the ARTS modify or quick look functions may be used to forward arrival data provided that a facility directive at the collocated tower or a letter of agreement ... (See 7110.65).	4-23
T1.1.3.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 36- 00	FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	3- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.3.11 (cont'd)	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 36- 04	(3) When the remote status unit indicates that the localizer FFM is in alarm (aural warning following the preset delay) and the aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM), check for encroachment those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower.	3- 7
T1.1.3.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	ATC 3- 30- 00	LANDING AREA CONDITION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 30- 02	b. If you observe or are informed of any condition which affects the safe use of a landing area, copy verbatim any information received and record the name of the person submitting it.	3- 5
T1.1.3.63	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- 01	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
		ATC 2- 10- 00	NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 10- 03	b. If the second aircraft reports normal operations, continue use and inform the first aircraft.	2- 3
		ATC 5- 6- 00	SERVICE LIMITATIONS	5- 2
		ATC 5- 6- 04	c. Report radar malfunctions immediately for corrective action and for dispatch of a Notice to Airmen. Advise adjacent ATC facilities when appropriate.	5- 2
		ATC 5-213- 00	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	5-46
		ATC 5-213- 03	b. Inform other interfaced facilities of scheduled and unscheduled shutdowns.	5-46
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 01	AT personnel shall report all actual or suspect RVV/RVR malfunctions to AF personnel.	2-16
		FOA 2- 281- 00	WIND INDICATOR CROSS CHECK	2-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.3.63 (cont'd)	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	FOA 2- 281- 04	b. Notify AF personnel of all outages.	2-18
		FOA 3- 372- 00	ATC RADAR BEACON SYSTEM DECODER CONTROL BOX CHECKS	3-13
		FOA 3- 372- 02	a. Notify the AM if a malfunction is observed.	3-13
		FOA 12-1254- 00	VASI SYSTEMS	12-13
		FOA 12-1254- 04	d. At locations where a VASI remote status indicator is installed, specialists shall notify AF when a malfunction is indicated or reported.	12-14
		FOA 13-1320- 00	OPERATIONAL USE	13- 4
		FOA 13-1320- 02	c. Advise effected facilities when ARTS equipment will not be operational at normal startup time, when it fails, is shut down, resumes operation, or when interfacility mode is lost/ regained.	13- 4
T1.1.4.20	UPDATE TRAFFIC COUNT	FOA 14- 0- 00	FACILITY STATISTICAL DATA, REPORTS, AND FORMS	14- 1
		FOA 14-1401- 00	USE OF AUTOMATED COUNTS	14- 1
		FOA 14-1401- 01	A facility may also elect to use a combination of manual and automated procedures to meet the traffic count requirements.	14- 1
T1.1.4.61	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	ATC 3- 30- 00	LANDING AREA CONDITION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 30- 02	b. If you observe or are informed of any condition which affects the safe use of a landing area, copy verbatim any information received and record the name of the person submitting it.	3- 5
T1.1.4.62	DELETE TRACK FROM LOCAL SYSTEM	ATC 5-217- 00	TRACK SUSPEND FUNCTION	5-47
		ATC 5-217- 01	Use the track suspend function only when data block overlap in holding patterns or in proximity of the final approach create an unworkable situation.	5-47
		ATC 5-217- 02	If necessary to suspend tracks, those which are not displaying automatic altitude readouts shall be suspended.	5-47

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.4.62 (cont'd)	DELETE TRACK FROM LOCAL SYSTEM	ATC 5-217- 03	If the condition still exists, those displaying automatic altitude readouts may then be suspended.	5-47
T1.1.4.64	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T1.1.4.66	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD	ATC 2- 35- 00	IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- 03	Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 04	c. Forward any amending control information and record the action on the appropriate flight progress strip.	2-11
		ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 01	Use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services.	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 03	a. Enter on the appropriate strip without delay the estimated times, clearance information, position reports, and any other IFR flight data received over any communications channel.	2-13
		ATC 2- 57- 00	AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX	2-17
		ATC 2- 57- 01	a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or RNAV capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant as follows: (See 7110.65).	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 00	CLEARANCE STATUS	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 01	Use the appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (-) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft.	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 00	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	2-17

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.1.4.66 (cont'd)	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD	ATC 2- 59- 01	Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions.	2-17
T1.1.4.67	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T1.2.1.2	DETECT AIRCRAFT CONFLICT ALERT INDICATION	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 01	a. When a Conflict Alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the Alert without delay and take appropriate action.	5-46
T1.2.1.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT NOTICE OR INDICATION	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 01	a. When a Conflict Alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the Alert without delay and take appropriate action.	5-46
T1.2.1.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 01	a. When a Conflict Alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the Alert without delay and take appropriate action.	5-46
T1.2.1.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 01	Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in your judgement, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 05	b. Aircraft Conflict Alert - Immediately issue/ initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware of another aircraft at an altitude which you believe places them in unsafe proximity.	2- 3

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	ATC 2- 13- 00	FORMATION FLIGHTS	2- 4
		ATC 2- 13- 02	When individual control is requested, issue advisory information which will assist the pilots in attaining separation.	2- 4
		ATC 2- 21- 00	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	2- 6
		ATC 2- 21- 01	Unless an aircraft is operating within the Positive Controlled Area or omission is requested by the pilot, issue traffic advisories to all aircraft (IFR or VFR) on your frequency when in your judgement their proximity may diminish to less than the applicable separation minima.	2- 6
		ATC 2- 21- 02	Where no separation minima applies, issue traffic advisories to those aircraft on your frequency when in your juogement their proximity warrants it.	2- 6
		ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 21- 00	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4
		ATC 3- 21- 01	a. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when aircraft are converging and a collision hazard exists.	3- 4
		ATC 3-103- 00	TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD	3-20
		ATC 3-103- 02	a. Issue traffic information to any aircraft so authorized. You may omit traffic information when the traffic is another aircraft which has landed on or is taking off on the same runway and is clearly visible to the holding aircraft.	3-20
		ATC 3-103- 05	e. USAF: When an aircraft is authorized to taxi into takeoff position to hold, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the aircraft taxiing into position.	3-20
		ATC 3-105- 00	TRAFFIC INFORMATION - DEPARTING AIRCRAFT	3-20

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	ATC 3-105- 01	When an aircraft is cleared for takeoff, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway.	3-20
		ATC 3-105- 02	If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the departing aircraft.	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 04	i. In the latter case, issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the airport for takeoff.	3-21
		ATC 3-123- 00	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 05	d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to: (See 7110.65).	3-28
		ATC 3-127- 00	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	3-29
		ATC 3-127- 02	Issue traffic information to the succeeding aircraft.	3-29
		ATC 5- 8- 00	MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES	5- 3
		ATC 5- 8- 02	b. Issue traffic information to those aircraft listed in a. whose targets appear likely to merge unless the aircraft are separated by more than the appropriate vertical separation minima.	5- 3
		ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 01	a. When a Conflict Alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the Alert without delay and take appropriate action.	5-46
		ATC 7- 4- 00	VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT	7- 1
		ATC 7- 4- 03	b. Issue traffic information to aircraft cleared to hold at the same fix.	7- 1
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 00	(3) A pilot sees another aircraft and you instruct him to maintain visual separation from it as follows: (a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention. (b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot...(See 7110.65).	7- 2

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO AIRCRAFT CONFLICT	ATC 7- 93- 00	HELICOPTER TRAFFIC	7-14
		ATC 7- 93- 01	Helicopters need not be separated from other helicopters. Traffic information shall be exchanged, as necessary.	7-14
		ATC 8- 70- 00	APPLICATION	8-15
		ATC 8- 70- 05	d. Provide traffic advisories to all affected aircraft during initiol contact specifying the balloon's known or estimated position, direction of movement, and altitude as "unknown" or "reported," as appropriate.	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 02	a. In the case of a moored balloon which has slipped its moorings, issue traffic advisories.	8-16
		FOA 12-1242- 00	FUNCTIONAL USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 02	b. At towers combined with full radar approach control facilities where controllers do not rotate between the approach control and the tower, or at towers not combined with full radar approach control facilities, certified tower radar displays may be used by local controllers:	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 04	(2) To provide aircraft with radar traffic advisories.	12- 9
T1.2.1.11	DETECT AIRCRAFT MANEUVER ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 01	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T1.2.1.12	INFORM PILOT WHEN CLEAR OF TRAFFIC	ATC 2- 21- 00	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	2- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.1.12 (cont'd)	INFORM PILOT WHEN CLEAR OF TRAFFIC	ATC 2- 21- 05	(8) If the pilot informs you he does not see the traffic you have issued, inform him when the traffic is no longer a factor.	2- 7
T1.2.1.13	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF TRAFFIC IN SIGHT	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 02	Once the pilot informs you action is being taken to resolve the situation, you may discontinue the issuance of further alerts.	2- 2
		ATC 3-103- 00	TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD	3-20
		ATC 3-103- 02	a. Issue traffic information to any aircraft so authorized. You may omit traffic information when the traffic is another aircraft which has landed on or is taking off on the same runway and is clearly visible to the holding aircraft.	3-20
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 08	(3) A pilot sees another aircraft and you instruct him to maintain visual separation from it as follows: (a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention. (b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot...(See 7110.65).	7- 2
T1.2.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT AT THIS POSITION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 03	Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.	2- 2
		ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 02	b. If another controller is involved in the Alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.	5-46
T1.2.1.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 03	Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.	2- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.1.61 (cont'd)	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 02	b. If another controller is involved in the Alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.	5-46
T1.2.2.5	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 07	If the aircraft is below the minimum safe altitude and sufficiently accurate position information has been received or radar identification is established, furnish a heading or radial on which to climb to reach the minimum safe altitude.	9- 5
T1.2.2.7	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 04	a. Terrain/ Obstruction Alert - Immediately issue/ initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in your judgement, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain/ obstructions.	2- 2
		ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 06	(3) If the aircraft has already encountered IFR conditions, inform the pilot of the minimum safe altitude.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 50- 00	ACTIONS REQUIRED	9-10
		ATC 9- 50- 02	When providing DF services to an aircraft in emergency status: if the aircraft is operating in IFR weather conditions, inform the pilot of the minimum safe altitude.	9-10
T1.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION AT THIS POSITION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 03	Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.	2- 2
T1.2.2.61	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.2.61 (cont'd)	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	ATC 2- 6- 03	Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.	2- 2
T1.2.3.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	ATC 3- 6- 00	TRAFFIC INFORMATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 01	a. Describe vehicles, equipment, or personnel on or near the movement area in a manner which will assist pilots in recognizing them.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 02	b. Describe the relative position of traffic in an easy to understand manner.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 03	c. When using a certified tower radar display, you may issue traffic advisories using the standard radar phraseology prescribed in paragraph 2-21.	3- 2
T1.2.3.8	FORMULATE CONTENT OF CONTROL INSTRUCTION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 01	Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in your judgement, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft.	2- 2
T1.2.5.3	SUPPRESS CONFLICT ALERT FOR PAIRED AIRCRAFT	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 03	c. Suppressing/ Inhibiting Conflict Alert. (1) The suppress function may be used to suppress the display of a specific Conflict Alert.	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 05	(3) Computer entry of a message suppressing a Conflict Alert constitutes acknowledgement for the Alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.	5-46
T1.2.5.4	SUPPRESS MSAW FUNCTION FOR AN AIRCRAFT	ATC 5-216- 00	INHIBITING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)	5-47
		ATC 5-216- 02	a. Inhibit MSAW processing for an aircraft which has canceled its IFR flight plan but has not requested MSAW processing.	5-47
		ATC 5-216- 03	b. A low altitude alert may be suppressed from the control position.	5-47

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.2.5.60	DETERMINE VALIDITY/ APPROPRIATENESS OF DISPLAY OF AN ALERT	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 04	(2) The inhibit function shall only be used to inhibit the display of Conflict Alert for aircraft routinely engaged in operations where standard separation criteria do not apply.	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 05	(3) Computer entry of a message suppressing a Conflict Alert constitutes acknowledgement for the Alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.	5-46
T1.2.5.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO SUPPRESS ALERT FUNCTION	ATC 5-215- 00	CONFLICT ALERT	5-46
		ATC 5-215- 03	c. Suppressing/ Inhibiting Conflict Alert. (1) The suppress function may be used to suppress the display of a specific Conflict Alert.	5-46
T1.3.1.1	PERCEIVE AN ALTITUDE/ ROUTE DEVIATION	ATC 5- 9- 00	HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE	5- 3
		ATC 5- 9- 02	Attempt to detect any that stray outside the area. If you detect an aircraft straying outside the area, assist it to return to the assigned airspace.	5- 3
		ATC 5-121- 00	FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION	5-27
		ATC 5-121- 03	b. If deviations from the final approach course are observed after initial course interception, apply the following inside the approach gate: Inform the pilot of the aircraft's position and ask intentions.	5-27
		ATC 7- 21- 00	ALTITUDE FOR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT	7- 3
		ATC 7- 21- 01	Inform an aircraft maintaining "VFR-on-top" when a report indicates the pilot is not complying with FAR 91.109.	7- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 00	CONTROLLED AREA INTRUSIONS	5- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 01	Air Traffic managers shall provide guidance in facility directives for the tracking and the identification of aircraft that enter airport traffic areas, airport radar service areas, or terminal control areas without authorization. Include in these directives provisions for ... See (7210.3).	5- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 02	When these aircraft can be identified, comply with the provisions of paragraph 505.	5- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.1.6	ISSUE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT IN REGARD TO DEVIATION	ATC 5- 10- 00	DEVIATION ADVISORIES	5- 3
		ATC 5- 10- 01	Inform an aircraft when it is observed in a position and on a track which will obviously cause the aircraft to deviate from its protected airspace area.	5- 3
T1.3.1.8	OBSERVE BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 01	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T1.3.1.9	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T1.3.1.11	DETECT UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION	ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 01	Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/ suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 02	For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 04	a. Consider an altitude readout valid when it varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or you receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or you have correlated the altitude... (See 7110.65).	5- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.1.11 (cont'd)	DETECT UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION	ATC 5- 37- 06	c. Whenever you observe an invalid readout confirm that the pilot is using the correct altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 37- 07	c. If the altimeter setting and the altitude are correct and the discrepancy still exists, instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude reporting part of his transponder and include the reason.	5- 9
T1.3.1.12	EVALUATE UNREASONABLE MODE C INDICATION FOR ACTION NEEDED	ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 01	Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/ suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 02	For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 04	a. Consider an altitude readout valid when it varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or you receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or you have correlated the altitude... (See 7110.65).	5- 9
		ATC 5- 37- 06	c. Whenever you observe an invalid readout confirm that the pilot is using the correct altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 37- 07	c If the altimeter setting and the altitude are correct and the discrepancy still exists, instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude reporting part of his transponder and include the reason.	5- 9
T1.3.1.14	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING	ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 01	Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/ suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 02	For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification.	5- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3 1.14 (cont'd)	VERIFY ALTITUDE/ ALTIMETER SETTING	ATC 5- 37- Ø4	a. Consider an altitude readout valid when it varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or you receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or you have correlated the altitude... (See 7110.65).	5- 9
		ATC 5- 37- Ø6	c. Whenever you observe an invalid readout confirm that the pilot is using the correct altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 38- Ø0	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION - MODE C	5- 9
		ATC 5- 38- Ø1	Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless: (See 7110.65).	5- 9
		ATC 5- 39- Ø0	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION - NONMODE C	5- 9
		ATC 5- 39- Ø1	a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless: (See 7110.65).	5- 9
T1.3.1.15	INFORM PILOT TO RESET ALTIMETER/ STOP MODE C SQUAWK	ATC 5- 37- Ø0	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- Ø7	c. If the altimeter setting and the altitude are correct and the discrepancy still exists, instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude reporting part of his transponder and include the reason.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 40- Ø0	AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING	5- 9
		ATC 5- 40- Ø1	Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn on/ off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder.	5- 9
T1.3.1.16	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF GROUND EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTION	FOA 13-1322- Ø0	DISPLAY DATA	13- 4
		FOA 13-1322- Ø1	a. When a malfunction causes repeated discrepancies of 300 feet or more between the automatic altitude readouts and pilot reported altitudes, request the CSS or AF personnel to inhibit the automatic altitude report (Mode C) display until the malfunction has been corrected.	13- 4
T1.3.1.17	INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	ATC 5- 37- Ø0	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- Ø8	d. Whenever possible, inhibit altitude readouts on all consoles when a malfunction of the ground equipment causes repeated invalid readouts.	5- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.1.17 (cont'd)	INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	FOA 13-1322- 00	DISPLAY DATA	13- 4
		FOA 13-1322- 01	a. When a malfunction causes repeated discrepancies of 300 feet or more between the automatic altitude readouts and pilot reported altitudes, request the DSS or AF personnel to inhibit the automatic altitude report (Mode C) display until the malfunction has been corrected.	13- 4
T1.3.1.18	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE DEVIATION SITUATION	ATC 4- 55- 00	HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION	4-19
		ATC 4- 55- 01	Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if traffic conditions permit.	4-19
		ATC 5- 9- 00	HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE	5- 3
		ATC 5- 9- 02	Attempt to detect any that stray outside the area. If you detect an aircraft straying outside the area, assist it to return to the assigned airspace.	5- 3
		ATC 5- 10- 00	DEVIATION ADVISORIES	5- 3
		ATC 5- 10- 02	If necessary, assist the aircraft to return to the assigned protected airspace.	5- 3
T1.3.1.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE DEVIATION	ATC 4- 55- 00	HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION	4-19
		ATC 4- 55- 01	Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if traffic conditions permit.	4-19
T1.3.1.61	QUERY PILOT/ OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING DEVIATION	ATC 5- 9- 00	HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE	5- 3
		ATC 5- 9- 02	Attempt to detect any that stray outside the area. If you detect an aircraft straying outside the area, assist it to return to the assigned airspace.	5- 3
		ATC 5-121- 00	FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION	5-27
		ATC 5-121- 03	b. If deviations from the final approach course are observed after initial course interception, apply the following inside the approach gate: Inform the pilot of the aircraft's position and ask intentions.	5-27
		ATC 7- 21- 00	ALTITUDE FOR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT	7- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.1.61 (cont'd)	QUERY PILOT/ OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING DEVIATION	ATC 7- 21- 01	Inform an aircraft maintaining "VFR-on-top" when a report indicates the pilot is not complying with FAR 91.109.	7- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 00	CONTROLLED AREA INTRUSIONS	5- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 01	Air Traffic managers shall provide guidance in facility directives for the tracking and the identification of aircraft that enter airport traffic areas, airport radar service areas, or terminal control areas without authorization. Include in these directives provisions for ... See (7210.3).	5- 3
		FOA 5- 507- 02	When these aircraft can be identified, comply with the provisions of paragraph 505.	5- 3
T1.3.1.64	RECEIVE NOTICE TO INHIBIT MODE C FOR ALL TARGETS	ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 08	d. Whenever possible, inhibit altitude readouts on all consoles when a malfunction of the ground equipment causes repeated invalid readouts.	5- 9
T1.3.2.5	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATC 2-111- 00	ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL	2-31
		ATC 2-111- 03	c. Issue the altimeter setting: (2) To all departures. Unless specifically requested by the pilot, the altimeter setting need not be issued to local aircraft operators who have requested this omission in writing or to scheduled air carriers.	2-31
		ATC 3- 32- 00	TIMELY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 32- 01	Issue airport conditions information necessary for an aircraft's safe operation in time for it to be useful to the pilot.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 60- 00	SELECTION	3-12
		ATC 3- 60- 02	b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 00	STOL RUNWAYS	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 01	a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 02	b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.	3-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.5 (cont'd)	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATC 3-100- 00	DEPARTURE INFORMATION	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 01	Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 02	Departure information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 04	Issue departure information by including the following: (See 7110.65).	3-19
		ATC 3-102- 00	DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS	3-19
		ATC 3-102- 01	Inform departing IFR and Stage III VFR aircraft of the following before takeoff: (See 7110.65).	3-19
		ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 02	h. USAF NOT APPLICABLE. The 2-minute minima need not be applied if the pilot of a departing IFR/ VFR aircraft has initiated a request to deviate from the 2-minute interval. In this case, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing takeoff.	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 00	INTERSECTION TAKEOFF	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 04	c. Issue the measured distance from the intersection to the runway end to any pilot who requests it and to all military aircraft unless use of the intersection is covered in appropriate directives.	3-21
		ATC 3-107- 08	f. When applying the provisions of paragraph 107e, issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.	3-22
		ATC 3-109- 00	TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	3-23
		ATC 3-109- 03	c. USA/USAF/USN: Issue surface wind and takeoff clearance to aircraft.	3-24
		ATC 3-123- 00	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 05	d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to: (See 7110.65).	3-28
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.5 (cont'd)	ISSUE APPROPRIATE DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATC 4- 23- 06	b. When issuing hold for release instructions, include departure delay information.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 07	c. Release times shall be issued to pilots when necessary to specify the earliest time an aircraft may depart.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 03	a. Inform the pilot of the proper frequency and, if appropriate, where or when to contact the facility responsible for issuing the clearance.	4- 9
		ATC 5-110- 00	PROCEDURES	5-23
		ATC 5-110- 01	Use standard departure routes and channelized altitudes whenever practical to reduce coordination.	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 00	INITIAL HEADING	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 01	Before departure, assign the initial heading to be flown if a departing aircraft is to be vectored immediately after takeoff.	5-23
		ATC 7- 96- 00	TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION	7-15
		ATC 7- 96- 01	a. At controlled airports within the TRSA, inform a departing aircraft proposing to operate within the TRSA when to contact departure control and the frequency to use.	7-15
T1.3.2.6	DISCUSS DEPARTURE SEQUENCING WITH GROUND CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 03	a. Ground control shall notify local control when departing aircraft has been taxied to a runway other than one previously designated as active.	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.6 (cont'd)	DISCUSS DEPARTURE SEQUENCING WITH GROUND CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	b. Ground control shall notify local control of any aircraft taxied to an intersection for takeoff, unless departure from that intersection is specifically designated via prior coordination or facility directive as the standard operating procedure for the runway to be used.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 05	b. When standard procedures require departures to use a specific intersection, ground control shall notify local control when aircraft are taxied to other portions of the runway for departure.	3- 1
T1.3.2.7	DETERMINE SEQUENCE FOR DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
		ATC 3- 90- 00	SEQUENCE/ SPACING APPLICATION	3-17
		ATC 3- 90- 01	Establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation as necessary to achieve proper spacing.	3-17
T1.3.2.11	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT TO HOLD SHORT/ TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD	ATC 3- 81- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 02	a. When authorizing a vehicle to proceed on the movement area or an aircraft to taxi to any point other than an assigned takeoff runway, absence of holding instructions authorizes an aircraft/ vehicle to cross all taxiways and runways that intersect the taxi route.	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 03	a. If it is the intent to hold the aircraft/ vehicle short of any given point along the taxi route, issue the route if necessary, then state the holding instructions.	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 05	c. When assigning a takeoff runway and hold short instructions are issued, specify the runway, issue taxi instructions if necessary, and then state the hold short instructions.	3-14
		ATC 3-103- 00	TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD	3-20
		ATC 3-103- 01	a. You may authorize an aircraft to taxi into takeoff position and hold when takeoff clearance cannot be issued because of traffic.	3-20

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.11 (cont'd)	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT TO HOLD SHORT/ TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD	ATC 3-103- 03	c. USAF/USN: Do not authorize aircraft to taxi into takeoff position to hold simultaneously on intersecting runways.	3-20
		ATC 3-103- 04	d. USAF/USN: When issuing additional instructions or information to an aircraft holding in takeoff position, include instructions to continue holding or taxi off the runway, unless it is cleared for takeoff.	3-20
T1.3.2.12	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 05	j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet departing or making a low/ missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet - 3 miles.	3-21
		ATC 3-106- 06	k. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3-minute interval.	3-21
		ATC 5-113- 00	SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES	5-23
		ATC 5-113- 01	Separate aircraft departing from the same airport/ heliport or adjacent airport/ heliports in accordance with the following minima provided radar identification with the aircraft will be established within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end/ helipad and courses will diverge by 15 degrees or more.	5-23
		ATC 5-113- 02	a. Between aircraft departing the same runway/ helipad or parallel runways/ helicopter takeoff courses separated by less than 2,500 feet - 1 mile of courses diverge immediately after departure.	5-23
		ATC 5-113- 03	b. Between aircraft departing from diverging runways: Nonintersecting runways - Authorize simultaneous takeoffs if runways diverge by 15 degrees or more. Intersecting runways and/ or helicopter takeoff courses which diverge by 15 degrees or more	5-24

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.12 (cont'd)	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE	ATC 5-113- 04	b. Between aircraft departing from diverging runways: Intersecting runways and/ or helicopter takeoff courses which diverge by 15 degrees or more - Authorize takeoff of a succeeding aircraft when the proceding aircraft has passed the point of runway and/ or takeoff course intersection.	5-24
		ATC 5-113- 05	c. Between aircraft departing in the same direction from parallel runways/ helicopter takeoff courses - Authorize simultaneous takeoffs if the centerlines/ takeoff courses are separated by at least 2,500 feet and courses diverge by 15 degrees or more immediately after departure.	5-24
		ATC 5-114- 00	DEPARTURE AND ARRIVAL	5-24
		ATC 5-114- 01	Except as provided in paragraph 5-115, separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft on final approach by a minimum of 2 miles if separation will increase to a minimum of 3 miles (5 miles when 40 miles or more from the antenna) within 1 minute after takeoff.	5-24
		ATC 5-115- 00	DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS	5-24
		ATC 5-115- 01	Authorize simultaneous operations between an aircraft departing on a runway and an aircraft on final approach to another parallel or nonintersecting diverging runway if the departure diverges immediately by at least 30 degrees from the missed approach course until separation is ... (See 7110.65).	5-24
		ATC 5-115- 02	a. When parallel runway thresholds are even, the runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet apart.	5-25
		ATC 5-115- 03	b. When parallel runway thresholds are staggered and the arriving aircraft is approaching the nearer runway - The centerlines are at least 1,000 feet apart and the landing thresholds are staggered at least 500 feet or each 100 feet less than 2,500 the centerlines are separated.	5-25
		ATC 5-115- 04	b. When parallel runway thresholds are staggered and the arriving aircraft is approaching the farther runway - The runway centerlines separation exceeds 2,500 feet by at least 100 feet for each 500 feet the landing thresholds are staggered.	5-25
		ATC 5-115- 05	c. When nonintersecting runways diverge by 15 degrees or more and runway edges do not touch.	5-25

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.12 (cont'd)	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE INTERVAL/ DISTANCE FOR DEPARTURE	ATC 5-115- 06	d. When the aircraft on takeoff is a helicopter, hold the helicopter until visual separation is possible or apply the separation criteria in paragraph 5-11a, b, or c.	5-26
		ATC 6- 10- 00	MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES	6- 2
		ATC 6- 10- 01	Separate aircraft that will fly courses diverging by 45 degrees or more after departing the same or adjacent airports by use of one of the following minima: (See 7110.65).	6- 2
		ATC 6- 11- 00	MINIMA ON SAME COURSE	6- 3
		ATC 6- 11- 01	Separate aircraft that will fly the same course when the following aircraft will climb through the altitude assigned to the leading aircraft by using a minimum of 3 minutes until the following aircraft passes through the assigned altitude of the leading aircraft; or 5 miles if ... (See 7110.65).	6- 3
		ATC 6- 20- 00	SEPARATION MINIMA	6- 4
		ATC 6- 20- 01	Separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft making an instrument approach to the same airport by using one of the following minima until vertical or lateral separation is achieved: (See 7110.65).	6- 4
		ATC 6- 30- 00	APPLICATION	6- 5
		ATC 6- 30- 01	Separate aircraft longitudinally by requiring them to do one of the following, as appropriate: a. Depart at a specified time, b. Arrive at a fix at a specified time, c. Hold at a fix until a specified time, d. Change altitude at a specified time or fix.	6- 5
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 04	Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/ or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation.	7- 2
T1.3.2.14	ISSUE DEPARTURE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3- 81- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 04	b. When authorizing an aircraft to taxi to an assigned takeoff runway and hold short instructions are not issued, specify the runway preceded by "taxi to" and issue taxi instructions if necessary.	3-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.14 (cont'd)	ISSUE DEPARTURE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-102- 00	DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS	3-19
		ATC 3-102- 01	Inform departing IFR and Stage III VFR aircraft of the following before takeoff: (See 7110.65).	3-19
		ATC 5-110- 00	PROCEDURES	5-23
		ATC 5-110- 01	Use standard departure routes and channelized altitudes whenever practical to reduce coordination.	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 00	INITIAL HEADING	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 01	Before departure, assign the initial heading to be flown if a departing aircraft is to be vectored immediately after takeoff.	5-23
		ATC 7- 96- 00	TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION	7-15
		ATC 7- 96- 01	a. At controlled airports within the TRSA, inform a departing aircraft proposing to operate within the TRSA when to contact departure control and the frequency to use.	7-15
T1.3.2.15	ISSUE SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION CONCERNING AIRPORT OPERATIONS	ATC 3- 31- 00	CLOSED/ UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 01	If an aircraft requests to takeoff, land, or touch-and-go on a closed or unsafe runway, inform the pilot the runway is closed or unsafe.	3- 5
T1.3.2.16	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-109- 00	TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	3-23
		ATC 3-109- 01	a. When only one runway is active, issue takeoff clearance.	3-24
		ATC 3-109- 02	b. When more than one runway is active, first state the runway number followed by the takeoff clearance.	3-24
		ATC 3-109- 03	c. USA/USAF/USN: Issue surface wind and takeoff clearance to aircraft.	3-24
		ATC 3-141- 00	HELICOPTER TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	3-32
		ATC 3-141- 01	a. Issue takeoff clearance from movement areas other than active runways, or in diverse directions from active runways, with additional instructions, as necessary.	3-32

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.16 (cont'd)	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-141- 02	a. Whenever possible, issue takeoff clearance in lieu of extended hover-taxi or air-taxi operations.	3-32
T1.3.2.17	ISSUE AMENDED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-102- 00	DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS	3-19
		ATC 3-102- 01	Inform departing IFR and Stage III VFR aircraft of the following before takeoff: (See 7110.65).	3-19
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 04	b. "Hold for release" instructions shall be used when necessary to inform a pilot or a controller that a departure clearance is not valid until additional instructions are received.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 05	b. "Hold for release" instructions shall be used when necessary to inform a pilot or a controller that a departure clearance is not valid until additional instructions are received.	4- 8
T1.3.2.29	SEARCH DEPARTURE AREA DIRECTLY TO INSURE CONDITIONS ARE SAFE FOR TAKEOFF	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
T1.3.2.30	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 02	a. Use ASDE-derived information to monitor compliance with control instructions by aircraft and vehicles on the taxiways.	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 09	b. Approved terminal radar systems may also be used for:	3-13

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.2.30 (cont'd)	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	FOA 3- 371- 11	(2) Ensuring that runways observable on ASDE are clear of traffic/ vehicles prior to issuing landing or departure clearances.	3-13
T1.3.2.61	REQUEST RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE	ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 01	Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.	4- 8
T1.3.2.62	RECEIVE INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD FOR RELEASE	ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 01	Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.	4- 8
T1.3.3.5	OBSERVE RADAR TARGET/ DATA BLOCK AND FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	ATC 3- 72- 00	IDENTIFICTION	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 01	To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following; pilot's report, controller's visual observation, or an identified target observed on the ASR bright display.	3-13
		ATC 3-127- 00	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	3-29
		ATC 3-127- 01	Landing clearance to a succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if you observe the positions of the aircraft and determine that precribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft cross the landing threshold.	3-29
T1.3.3.8	DETERMINE SAFENESS FOR LANDING	ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 01	a. Use ASDE-derived information to determine that the runway is clear of aircraft and vehicles prior to a landing or departure.	3-13
		ATC 3-127- 00	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	3-29

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.8 (cont'd)	DETERMINE SAFENESS FOR LANDING	ATC 3-127- 01	Landing clearance to a succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if you observe the positions of the aircraft and determine that prescribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft cross the landing threshold.	3-29
		ATC 6- 5- 00	ARRIVAL MINIMA	6- 1
		ATC 6- 5- 01	Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet by 2 minutes when arriving: a. The same runway (use 3 minutes for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet), b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet, c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross.	6- 1
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USL	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 09	b. Approved terminal radar systems may also be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 11	(2) Ensuring that runways observable on ASDE are clear of traffic/ vehicles prior to issuing landing or departure clearances.	3-13
T1.3.3.10	ISSUE CLEARANCE FOR AIRCRAFT TO LAND OR CLEARANCE FOR OPTION	ATC 3-126- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE	3-28
		ATC 3-126- 02	USA/USAF/USN. Issue surface wind and landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or is planning to use another runway.	3-29
		ATC 3-129- 00	WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE	3-29
		ATC 3-129- 01	Do not withhold a landing clearance indefinitely even though it appears a violation of FAR has been committed. The apparent violation might be the result of an emergency situation. In any event, assist the pilot to the extent possible.	3-29
		ATC 7- 30- 00	VISUAL APPROACH	7- 4
		ATC 7- 30- 01	ARTCC's, approach control facilities, and towers may clear aircraft for a visual approach if the following conditions exist: (See 7110.65).	7- 4
		ATC 7- 35- 00	CONTACT APPROACH	7- 6
		ATC 7- 35- 01	Clear an aircraft for a contact approach only if the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	7- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.10 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE FOR AIRCRAFT TO LAND OR CLEARANCE FOR OPTION	ATC 7- 44- 00	LOCAL OPERATIONS	7- 8
		ATC 7- 44- 01	a. Authorize local Special VFR operations for a specified period (series of landings and takeoffs, etc.) upon request if the aircraft can be recalled when traffic or weather conditions require.	7- 8
T1.3.3.11	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION	ATC 3- 91- 00	TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH	3-17
		ATC 3- 91- 01	Consider an aircraft cleared for touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach as an arriving aircraft until it touches down (for touch-and-go), or makes a complete stop (for stop-and-go), or crosses the landing threshold (for low approach), and thereafter as a departing aircraft.	3-17
T1.3.3.12	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 91- 00	TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH	3-17
		ATC 3- 91- 01	Consider an aircraft cleared for touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach as an arriving aircraft until it touches down (for touch-and-go), or makes a complete stop (for stop-and-go), or crosses the landing threshold (for low approach), and thereafter as a departing aircraft.	3-17
T1.3.3.18	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT EXECUTING LANDING/ OPTION	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T1.3.3.19	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 2-125- 00	APPLICATION	2-33
		ATC 2-125- 01	Where available, use ATIS to provide noncontrol airport and terminal area operational and meteorological information to aircraft.	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 00	OPERATING PROCEDURES	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 02	b. When a pilot acknowledges that he has received the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained in the broadcasts if they are current.	2-33

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.19 (cont'd)	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 2-125- 05	d. Controllers shall ensure pilots receive all pertinent information contained in the ATIS broadcast. If a pilot does not state receipt of the current ATIS, ask the pilot to confirm receipt of the appropriate ATIS information.	2-33
T1.3.3.20	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE FOR LANDING/ OPTION	ATC 3-132- 00	CLOSED TRAFFIC	3-29
		ATC 3-132- 01	Approve/disapprove pilot requests to remain in closed traffic for successive operations subject to local traffic conditions.	3-29
		ATC 3-133- 00	OVERHEAD APPROACH	3-29
		ATC 3-133- 01	Issue the following to arriving military aircraft that will conduct an overhead approach: (See 7110.65).	3-29
		ATC 3-145- 00	HELICOPTER LANDING CLEARANCE	3-33
		ATC 3-145- 01	a. Issue landing clearance for helicopters to movement areas other than active runways, or from diverse directions to points on active runways, with additional instructions, as necessary.	3-33
		ATC 3-145- 02	Whenever possible, issue landing clearance in lieu of extended hover-taxi or air-taxi operations.	3-33
		ATC 3-145- 05	d. Unless requested by the pilot, do not issue downwind landings if the tailwind exceeds 5 knots.	3-34
		ATC 7- 35- 00	CONTACT APPROACH	7- 6
		ATC 7- 35- 02	e. An alternative clearance is issued when weather conditions are such that a contact approach may be impracticable.	7- 6
		ATC 7- 44- 00	LOCAL OPERATIONS	7- 8
		ATC 7- 44- 01	a. Authorize local Special VFR operations for a specified period (series of landings and takeoffs, etc.) upon request if the aircraft can be recalled when traffic or weather conditions require.	7- 8
T1.3.3.21	RECEIVE LANDING SEQUENCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 4- 66- 00	ARRIVAL INFORMATION	4-21

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.21 (cont'd)	RECEIVE LANDING SEQUENCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 4- 66- 01	The en route controller forwards the following information to nonapproach control towers soon enough to permit adjustment of the traffic flow or to FSS's soon enough to provide airport advisory service where applicable: (See 7110.65).	4-21
		ATC 7- 70- 00	APPLICATION	7-12
		ATC 7- 70- 04	Coordination of these aircraft shall be accomplished with the approach control unless a facility directive/ letter of agreement prescribes otherwise.	7-12
		ATC 7- 70- 05	Nonparticipating aircraft shall, to the extent possible, be given the same landing sequence they would have received had they been sequenced by radar vectors.	7-12
		ATC 7- 72- 00	INITIAL CONTACT	7-12
		ATC 7- 72- 01	An aircraft sighted by the local controller at the time of first radio contact may be positioned in the landing sequence after coordination with approach control.	7-12
T1.3.3.22	EVALUATE LOCAL TRAFFIC SITUATION FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT	ATC 3- 9- 00	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- 04	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
		ATC 6- 5- 00	ARRIVAL MINIMA	6- 1
		ATC 6- 5- 01	Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet by 2 minutes when arriving: a. The same runway (use 3 minutes for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet), b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet, c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross.	6- 1
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 01	Aircraft may be separated by visual means, as provided in this paragraph, when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation.	7- 2
T1.3.3.23	EVALUATE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENT FOR EFFECT ON LANDING AIRCRAFT	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.23 (cont'd)	EVALUATE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENT FOR EFFECT ON LANDING AIRCRAFT	ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 4- 70- 00	AIRPORT CONDITIONS	4-22
		ATC 4- 70- 01	b. On first contact or as soon as possible thereafter, and subsequently as changes occur, inform aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing.	4-22
T1.3.3.24	DETERMINE LANDING SEQUENCE	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
		ATC 3- 90- 00	SEQUENCE/ SPACING APPLICATION	3-17
		ATC 3- 90- 01	Establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation as necessary to achieve proper spacing.	3-17
		ATC 4- 68- 00	BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT	4-22
		ATC 4- 68- 02	Adjust, as necessary, the position in the landing sequence of any other aircraft desiring to make approaches and issue approach clearances accordingly.	4-22
		ATC 7- 41- 00	PRIORITY	7- 7
		ATC 7- 41- 02	b. When clearance cannot be granted for a FW/SVFR flight because of IFR traffic, inform the aircraft of the anticipated delay. Do not issue EFC or expected departure time.	7- 7
		ATC 7- 70- 00	APPLICATION	7-12
		ATC 7- 70- 03	Aircraft which do not desire Stage II service may be fitted into the landing sequency by the tower.	7-12
T1.3.3.25	FORMULATE LANDING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-128- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION	3-29

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.25 (cont'd)	FORMULATE LANDING CLEARANCE/ INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-128- Ø1	When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.	3-29
		ATC 6- 5- ØØ	ARRIVAL MINIMA	6- 1
		ATC 6- 5- Ø1	Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet by 2 minutes when arriving: a. The same runway (use 3 minutes for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet). b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,5ØØ feet. c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross.	6- 1
		ATC 7- 4- ØØ	VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT	7- 1
		ATC 7- 4- Ø1	When it becomes necessary to hold VFR aircraft at visual holding fixes, take the following actions:	7- 1
		ATC 7- 4- Ø2	a. Clear aircraft to hold at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts.	7- 1
T1.3.3.26	RECEIVE INITIAL CONTACT FROM PILOT	ATC 7- 10- ØØ	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- Ø6	(1) You are in communication with at least one of the aircraft involved or have the capability to communicate instantaneously as prescribed in paragraph 3-102a(2).	7- 2
T1.3.3.27	EVALUATE AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION STATUS FOR LANDING SAFENESS	ATC 3- Ø- Ø9	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- ØØ	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- Ø1	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 3-122- ØØ	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-25
		ATC 3-122- Ø2	b. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving heavy jet on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,5ØØ feet.	3-26
		ATC 6- 5- ØØ	ARRIVAL MINIMA	6- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.27 (cont'd)	EVALUATE AIRFIELD CONDITIONS AND CONFIGURATION STATUS FOR LANDING SAFENESS	ATC 6- 5- 01	Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet by 2 minutes when arriving: a. The same runway (use 3 minutes for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet), b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet, c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross.	6- 1
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 11	(2) Ensuring that runways observable on ASDE are clear of traffic/ vehicles prior to issuing landing or departure clearances.	3-13
T1.3.3.28	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 2-111- 00	ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL	2-31
		ATC 2-111- 04	c. Issue the altimeter setting: (3) To arriving aircraft on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. The tower may omit the altimeter if the aircraft is sequenced or vectored to the airport by the approach control having jurisdiction at that facility.	2-31
		ATC 2-126- 00	OPERATING PROCEDURES	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 06	e. Controllers shall issue current ATIS information unless the pilot volunteers to obtain it.	2-33
		ATC 3- 32- 00	TIMELY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 32- 01	Issue airport conditions information necessary for an aircraft's safe operation in time for it to be useful to the pilot.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 33- 00	BRAKING ACTION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 33- 01	Furnish quality of braking action, as received from pilots or the airport management, to all aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	3- 5
		ATC 3- 33- 02	d. Furnish runway friction measurement reading/ values as received from airport management to aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	3- 6
		ATC 3- 33- 03	(2) Issue the runway surface condition and/ or the Runway Condition Reading (RCR), if provided, to all USAF and ANG aircraft. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- 00	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.28 (cont'd)	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 3- 34- 02	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect issue the latest braking report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft early enough to be of benefit to the pilot.	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- 03	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect advise the airport management that runway braking action reports of "poor" or "nil" have been received.	3- 6
		ATC 3- 60- 00	SELECTION	3-12
		ATC 3- 60- 02	b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 00	STOL RUNWAYS	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 01	a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 02	b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.	3-12
		ATC 3- 62- 00	TAILWIND COMPONENTS	3-12
		ATC 3- 62- 01	When authorizing use of runways and a tailwind component exists, always state both wind direction and velocity.	3-12
		ATC 3- 84- 00	PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA	3-15
		ATC 3- 84- 01	If an ILS/ MLS critical area is marked and identifiable, restrict aircraft and surface vehicle operations, and provide information as follows when the ILS/ MLS is being used for approach/ landing guidance: (See 7110.65).	3-15
		ATC 3-120- 00	LANDING INFORMATION	3-25
		ATC 3-120- 01	Provide current landing information, as appropriate, to arriving aircraft.	3-25
		ATC 3-120- 02	Landing information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.	3-25
		ATC 3-120- 03	Runway, wind, and altimeter may be omitted if a pilot uses the phrase "have numbers."	3-25

Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.28 (cont'd)	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 3-120- 04	Issue landing information by including the following: (See 7110.65).	3-25
		ATC 3-122- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-25
		ATC 3-122- 02	b. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving heavy jet on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 00	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-26
		ATC 3-123- 03	(4) If requested by either aircraft, issue the measured distance from the landing threshold to the intersection.	3-27
		ATC 3-125- 00	WIND INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN	3-28
		ATC 3-125- 01	Issue surface wind when clearing aircraft for touch-and-go, stop-and-go, low approach, or the option.	3-28
		ATC 3-126- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE	3-28
		ATC 3-126- 02	USA/USAF/USN Issue surface wind and landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or is planning to use another runway.	3-29
		ATC 3-131- 00	ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH	3-29
		ATC 3-131- 03	Advise the approaching aircraft of the location of applicable ground traffic, personnel, or equipment.	3-29
		ATC 4- 70- 00	AIRPORT CONDITIONS	4-22
		ATC 4- 70- 01	b. On first contact or as soon as possible thereafter, and subsequently as changes occur, inform an aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing.	4-22
		ATC 4- 70- 02	b. This information may be omitted if it is contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.	4-22

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.28 (cont'd)	ISSUE CURRENT ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATC 4- 70- 03	c. Where RCR's are provided, transmit this information to USAF and ANG aircraft in accordance with one of the following: (See 7110.65).	4-22
		ATC 4- 70- 04	c. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.	4-22
		ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 06	c. Whenever you observe an invalid readout confirm that the pilot is using the correct altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.	5- 9
T1.3.3.29	ISSUE ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-126- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE	3-28
		ATC 3-126- 01	Issue landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or planning to use another runway, or an instrument approach is being conducted to a closed runway.	3-28
		ATC 3-126- 02	USA/USAF/USN. Issue surface wind and landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or is planning to use another runway.	3-29
		ATC 3-128- 00	LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION	3-29
		ATC 3-128- 01	When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.	3-29
		ATC 3-130- 00	RUNWAY EXITING	3-29
		ATC 3-130- 01	When appropriate, instruct aircraft where to turnoff runway after landing.	3-29
		ATC 7- 4- 00	VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT	7- 1
		ATC 7- 4- 01	When it becomes necessary to hold VFR aircraft at visual holding fixes, take the following actions:	7- 1
		ATC 7- 4- 02	a. Clear aircraft to hold at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts.	7- 1
		ATC 7- 74- 00	HOLDING	7-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.3.29 (cont'd)	ISSUE ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 7- 74- 01	When holding is required to establish an approach sequence, you may hold VFR aircraft over the initial reporting fix or a fix near the airport.	7-12
		FOA 12-1242- 00	FUNCTIONAL USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	12- 9
		FOA 12-1242- 06	(4) To provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	12- 9
T1.3.3.30	EVALUATE WEATHER CONDITIONS AFFECTING AIRFIELD OPERATIONS	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 03	Weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists.	7- 2
T1.3.3.61	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	ATC 7- 78- 00	ABANDONED APPROACH	7-12
		ATC 7- 78- 01	When an aircraft, under tower control, abandons the approach and coordination with approach control reveals no immediate space in the approach sequence, instruct the aircraft to change to approach control for sequencing.	7-12
T1.3.3.62	RECORD NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN DATA	ATC 2- 30- 00	RECORDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 01	a. Record domestic flight plans on flight plan forms or flight progress strips.	2- 9
T1.3.4.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.4.3	OBSERVE ON BRITE/ ASDE DISPLAY AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 8- 70- 00	APPLICATION	8-15
		ATC 8- 70- 03	b. Radar flight follow balloons to the extent that equipment capabilities permit.	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 03	b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.	8-16
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 01	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 03	(5) Attempt to locate and flight follow the derelict.	6-10
T1.3.4.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 01	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 03	(5) Attempt to locate and flight follow the derelict.	6-10

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.4.7	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 2- 22- ØØ	BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION	2- 7
		ATC 2- 22- Ø1	a. Issue advisory information on pilot-reported, tower-observed, or radar-observed and pilot-verified bird activity.	2- 7
		ATC 3- 21- ØØ	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4
		ATC 3- 21- Ø3	c. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate when other hazardous conditions are present which call for intensified pilot or operator alertness.	3- 4
		FOA 3- 371- ØØ	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- Ø1	a. Approved radar systems may be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- Ø7	(6) Providing radar traffic, weather, chaff, and bird activity information.	3-13
		FOA 6- 652- ØØ	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- Ø1	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
T1.3.4.8	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 8- 71- ØØ	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- Ø4	c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.	8-15
T1.3.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AN INTRUSION INTO AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	FOA 6- 652- ØØ	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- Ø1	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
T1.3.4.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY A NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	ATC 8- 71- ØØ	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.4.61 (cont'd)	FORWARD NOTICE OF AN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY A NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	ATC 8- 71- 04	c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.	8-16
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 01	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
T1.3.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF IMPOSED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
T1.3.6.6	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T1.3.6.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 2- 14- 00	COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE	2- 4
		ATC 2- 14- 01	Do not allow an aircraft under your control to enter airspace delegated to another controller without first completing coordination.	2- 4
		ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 06	e. The local controller shall coordinate with the ground controller before using a runway not previously designated as active.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.6.60 (cont'd)	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T1.3.6.61	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T1.3.6.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T1.3.6.63	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T1.3.6.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T1.3.7.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 02	a. Ground control must obtain approval from local control before authorizing an aircraft or a vehicle to cross or use any portion of an active runway.	3- 1
T1.3.7.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.7.61 (cont'd)	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- Ø3	b. When local controller authorizes another controller to cross an active runway, the local controller shall verbally specify the runway to be crossed preceded by the word "cross".	3- 1
T1.3.7.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED	ATC 3- 3- ØØ	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- Ø4	c. The ground controller shall advise the local controller when the coordinated runway operation is complete. This may be accomplished verbally or through visual aids as specified by a facility directive.	3- 1
T1.3.8.1	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	ATC 3- 9- ØØ	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- Ø4	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the airport traffic area.	3- 3
T1.3.8.2	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	ATC 3- 4- ØØ	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- Ø3	a. Ground control shall notify local control when departing aircraft has been taxied to a runway other than one previously designated as active.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- Ø4	b. Ground control shall notify local control of any aircraft taxied to an intersection for takeoff, unless departure from that intersection is specifically designated via prior coordination or facility directive as the standard operating procedure for the runway to be used.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- Ø5	b. When standard procedures require departures to use a specific intersection, ground control shall notify local control when aircraft are taxied to other portions of the runway for departure.	3- 1
T1.3.8.3	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 70- ØØ	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- Ø1	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T1.3.9.1	OBSERVE TAKEOFF DIRECTLY	ATC 5- 55- ØØ	POSITION INFORMATION	5-12

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.9.1 (cont'd)	OBSERVE TAKEOFF DIRECTLY	ATC 5- 55- Ø2	Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-12
T1.3.9.2	OBSERVE TAKEOFF ON BRITE DISPLAY	ATC 3- 9- ØØ	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 9- Ø1	a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays to determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.	3- 2
		ATC 5- 55- ØØ	POSITION INFORMATION	5-12
		ATC 5- 55- Ø2	Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.	5-12
		FOA 13-1325- ØØ	AUTOMATIC ACQUISITION/ TERMINATION AREAS	13- 4
		FOA 13-1325- Ø1	(5) Prescribe in a facility directive the operating position responsibility for determining if automatic acquisition of a departure track has occurred.	13- 4
T1.3.9.4	RECEIVE NOTICE OF PILOT-INITIATED MISSED APPROACH/ TOUCH-AND-GO	ATC 7- 78- ØØ	ABANDONED APPROACH	7-12
		ATC 7- 78- Ø1	When an aircraft, under tower control, abandons the approach and coordination with approach control reveals no immediate space in the approach sequence, instruct the aircraft to change to approach control for sequencing.	7-12
T1.3.3.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF DEPARTURE	ATC 4- 26- ØØ	COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY	4- 9
		ATC 4- 26- Ø2	b. The actual departure time or a subsequent strip posting time shall be forwarded to the receiving facility unless assumed departure times are agreed upon and that time is within 3 minutes of the actual departure time.	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- ØØ	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- Ø5	b. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/ sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.	4- 9
		ATC 4- 28- ØØ	FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES	4- 9

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.3.9.61 (cont'd)	FORWARD NOTICE OF DEPARTURE	ATC 4- 28- 01	Unless alternate procedures are prescribed in a letter or agreement or automatic departure messages are being transmitted between automated facilities, forward departure times to the facility from which you received the clearance and also to the terminal departure controller (See 7110.65).	4- 9
T1.3.9.62	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T1.3.10.1	DETERMINE NEED TO CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	ATC 3-110- 00	CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	3-24
		ATC 3-110- 01	Cancel a previously issued clearance for takeoff and inform the pilot of the reason if circumstances require.	3-24
T1.3.10.2	ISSUE TAKEOFF CLEARANCE CANCELLATION	ATC 3-110- 00	CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	3-24
		ATC 3-110- 01	Cancel a previously issued clearance for takeoff and inform the pilot of the reason if circumstances require.	3-24
T1.3.10.4	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF ABORTED TAKEOFF	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 01	a. Use ASDE-derived information to determine that the runway is clear of aircraft and vehicles prior to a landing or departure.	3-13
T1.4.1.2	RECEIVE IFR CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM PILOT	ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 02	b. If the pilot states he is qualified for and capable of IFR flight, request him to file an IFR flight plan and then issue clearance to destination airport, as appropriate.	9- 5
T1.4.1.3	RECEIVE SPECIAL VFR REQUEST FROM PILOT	ATC 7- 40- 00	AUTHORIZATION	7- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.3 (cont'd)	RECEIVE SPECIAL VFR REQUEST FROM PILOT	ATC 7- 40- 01	a. Special VFR (SVFR) operations in weather conditions less than basic VFR minima are authorized: (See 7110. 65).	7- 7
		ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 02	b. If the pilot states he is qualified for and capable of IFR flight, request him to file an IFR flight plan and then issue clearance to destination airport, as appropriate.	9- 5
T1.4.1.5	REQUEST BEACON CODE	ATC 2- 36- 00	MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER-ASSIGNED BEACON CODES	2-10
		ATC 2- 36- 01	When a flight plan is manually entered into the computer and a computer-assigned beacon code has been forwarded with the flight plan data, insert the beacon code in the appropriate field as part of the input message.	2-10
		ATC 5- 20- 00	ASSIGNMENT CRITERIA	5- 5
		ATC 5- 20- 01	Make radar beacon code assignments to only Mode 3/ A transponder-equipped aircraft.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 20- 02	b. Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement, make code assignments to departing, en route, and arrival aircraft in accordance with the procedures specified in this section for the radar beacon code environment in which you are providing ATC service.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 20- 03	Give first preference to the use of discrete beacon codes.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 00	DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 06	The code reassignment shall be accomplished by inputting an appropriate message into the computer and issued to the pilot while operating in the first sector/ position in the receiving facility's airspace.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 22- 00	NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 22- 01	a. Assign appropriate nondiscrete beacon codes from the function codes specified in paragraph 5-25.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 23- 00	MIXED ENVIRONMENT	5- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.5 (cont'd)	REQUEST BEACON CODE	ATC 5- 23- 01	a. When discrete beacon code capability does not exist in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in paragraph 5-22.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 23- 02	b. When discrete beacon code capability exists in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in paragraph 5-21, and unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, assign aircraft that will enter the area of responsibility of a nondiscrete-equipped... (See 7110.65).	5- 5
		ATC 5- 24- 00	RADAR BEACON CODE CHANGES	5- 5
		ATC 5- 24- 01	Unless otherwise specified or coordinated at the time of handoff, do not request an aircraft to change from the code it was squawking in the transferring facility's area until the aircraft is within your area of responsibility.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 00	FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 01	Unless otherwise specified by a directive or a letter of agreement, make nondiscrete code assignments from the following categories:	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 02	a. Assign codes to departing IFR aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 03	b. Assign codes to en route IFR aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	5- 6
		ATC 5- 25- 04	c. Assign the following codes to arriving IFR aircraft, except military turbojet aircraft as specified in paragraph 4-63: (See 7110.65).	5- 6
T1.4.1.6	ASSIGN BEACON CODE	ATC 2- 36- 00	MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER-ASSIGNED BEACON CODES	2-10
		ATC 2- 36- 01	When a flight plan is manually entered into the computer and a computer-assigned beacon code has been forwarded with the flight plan data, insert the beacon code in the appropriate field as part of the input message.	2-10
		ATC 5- 20- 00	ASSIGNMENT CRITERIA	5- 5
		ATC 5- 20- 01	Make radar beacon code assignments to only Mode 3/ A transponder-equipped aircraft.	5- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.6 (cont'd)	ASSIGN BEACON CODE	ATC 5- 20- 02	b. Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement, make code assignments to departing, en route, and arrival aircraft in accordance with the procedures specified in this section for the radar beacon code environment in which you are providing ATC service.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 20- 03	Give first preference to the use of discrete beacon codes.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 00	DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 01	a. Issue discrete beacon codes assigned by the computer. Computer-assigned codes may be modified as required.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 02	Aircraft that will remain within the terminal facility's delegated airspace shall be assigned a code from the code subset allocated to the terminal facility.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 03	Aircraft that will enter an adjacent ARTS facility's delegated airspace shall be assigned a beacon code assigned by the ARTCC computer.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 06	The code reassignment shall be accomplished by inputting an appropriate message into the computer and issued to the pilot while operating in the first sector/ position in the receiving facility's airspace.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 22- 00	NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 22- 01	a. Assign appropriate nondiscrete beacon codes from the function codes specified in paragraph 5-25.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 23- 00	MIXED ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 23- 01	a. When discrete beacon code capability does not exist in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in paragraph 5-22.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 23- 02	b. When discrete beacon code capability exists in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in paragraph 5-21, and unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, assign aircraft that will enter the area of responsibility of a nondiscrete-equipped... (See 7110.65).	5- 5
		ATC 5- 24- 00	RADAR BEACON CODE CHANGES	5- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.6 (cont'd)	ASSIGN BEACON CODE	ATC 5- 24- 01	Unless otherwise specified or coordinated at the time of handoff, do not request an aircraft to change from the code it was squawking in the transferring facility's area until the aircraft is within your area of responsibility.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 00	FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 01	Unless otherwise specified by a directive or a letter of agreement, make nondiscrete code assignments from the following categories:	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 02	a. Assign codes to departing IFR aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	5- 5
		ATC 5- 25- 03	b. Assign codes to en route IFR aircraft as follows: (See 7110.65).	5- 6
		ATC 5- 25- 04	c. Assign the following codes to arriving IFR aircraft, except military turbojet aircraft as specified in paragraph 4-63: (See 7110.65).	5- 6
		ATC 5- 26- 00	REVERTING TO BROADBAND	5- 6
		ATC 5- 26- 01	When the narrowband system is no longer available/usable for ATC purposes, aircraft operating on computer-assigned codes shall be instructed to squawk the Function Code appropriate for your area of responsibility.	5- 6
T1.4.1.13	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR AIRCRAFT CLEARANCE	ATC 2- 18- 00	OPERATIONAL REQUESTS	2- 5
		ATC 2- 18- 01	Approve or disapprove a pilot's or vehicle operator's request as circumstances permit.	2- 6
		ATC 4- 1- 00	ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS	4- 1
		ATC 4- 1- 01	When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the Table (See 7110.65) on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace.	4- 1
		ATC 4- 3- 00	CROSSING ALTITUDE	4- 2
		ATC 4- 3- 01	Use an altitude consistent with the limitations of the aid when clearing an aircraft to cross or hold at a fix.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- 00	VFR-ON-TOP	4- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.13 (cont'd)	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR AIRCRAFT CLEARANCE	ATC 4- 4- 01	Use a route not meeting service volume limitations only if an aircraft requests to operate "VFR-on-top" on this route.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- 02	a. Define route of flight between TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's in the same manner as VOR-equipped aircraft.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- 03	b Except in positive control areas, submit requests for "VFR-on-top" flight where insufficient TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's exist to define the route.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 31- 00	ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS	4-10
		ATC 4- 31- 01	To effect transition within or between route structure, clear an aircraft by one or more of the following methods, based on VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS NAVAID's (unless use of other NAVAID's is essential to aircraft operation or ATC efficiency): (See 7110.65).	4-10
		ATC 4- 53- 00	HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS	4-18
		ATC 4- 53- 01	When necessary to issue holding instructions, specify: (See 7110.65).	4-18
		ATC 4- 68- 00	BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT	4-22
		ATC 4- 68- 01	If an arriving aircraft reports weather conditions are below his landing minima, issue appropriate instructions to the aircraft to hold or proceed to another airport.	4-22
T1.4.1.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL	ATC 5-143- 00	TOWER CLEARANCE	5-36
		ATC 5-143- 01	a. When an aircraft is on final approach to an airport served by a tower, obtain a clearance to land, touch-and-go, or make low approach.	5-36
T1.4.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 15- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- 04	d. If you need to change an aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft will pass prior to making the change.	2- 4
		ATC 4- 41- 00	EXCEPTIONS	4-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.62 (cont'd)	REQUEST CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 4- 41- 03	b. For meteorological conditions, take this action only if you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 04	c. For aircraft operational limitations, take this action only if the pilot informs you the available appropriate altitude exceeds the operational limitations of his aircraft and only after you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and,...(See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 05	d. For mission requirements, take this action only when the aircraft is operating on an MTR.	4-13
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 04	The receiving controller shall: If you need to change an aircraft's heading, speed, altitude, or beacon code within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft...(See 7110.65).	5-14
		ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 02	a. The transferring controller shall: Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information after the point out has been approved.	5-15
T1.4.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL/ CLEARANCE RESTRICTIONS FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 15- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- 04	d. If you need to change an aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft will pass prior to making the change.	2- 4
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 02	The transferring controller shall: Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance.	5-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.63 (cont'd)	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL/ CLEARANCE RESTRICTIONS FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 5- 64- 12	The transferring controller shall: Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 04	The receiving controller shall: If you need to change an aircraft's heading, speed, altitude, or beacon code within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft...(See 7110.65).	5-14
T1.4.1.64	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 04	The receiving controller shall: If you need to change an aircraft's heading, speed, altitude, or beacon code within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft...(See 7110.65).	5-14
T1.4.1.65	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 15- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- 04	d. If you need to change an aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft will pass prior to making the change.	2- 4
		ATC 4- 25- 00	FORWARD DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION	4- 9
		ATC 4- 25- 01	Inform approach control facilities and/ or towers of anticipated departure delays.	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 02	a. After obtaining, if necessary, approval from the facility/ sector responsible for issuing the IFR clearance, you may authorize an IFR flight planned aircraft to depart VFR.	4- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.1.65 (cont'd)	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 4- 27- 04	b. If the facility/ sector responsible or issuing the clearance is unable to issue a clearance, inform the pilot, and suggest that the delay be taken on the ground.	4- 9
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 12	The transferring controller shall: Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 04	The receiving controller shall: If you need to change an aircraft's heading, speed, altitude, or beacon code within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft...(See 7110.65).	5-14
T1.4.2.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 01	a. When a pilot reports an in-flight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 01	When you observe a Mode 3/ A Code 7500, do the following.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 02	a. Acknowledge and confirm receipt of Code 7500 by asking the pilot to verify it.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 28- 00	EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K-9 TEAMS	9- 7
		ATC 9- 28- 01	Take the following actions should you receive an aircraft request for the location of the nearest explosive detection K-9 team:	9- 7
T1.4.2.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AURALLY	ATC 3-129- 00	WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE	3-29
		ATC 3-129- 01	Do not withhold a landing clearance indefinitely even though it appears a violation of FAR has been committed. The apparent violation might be the result of an emergency situation. In any event, assist the pilot to the extent possible.	3-29

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.2 (cont'd)	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AURALLY	ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 04	d. In cases where communication is established with the aircraft but the aircraft identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan, notify the appropriate ARTCC and nearest U.S. Customs Service Office.	8- 3
T1.4.2.4	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	ATC 3- 10- 00	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	3- 3
		ATC 3- 10- 01	When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 21- 00	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4
		ATC 3- 21- 02	b. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when mechanical trouble exists of which the pilot might not be aware.	3- 4
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 03	a. When the threat is targeted against a specific aircraft and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions as appropriate: (See 7110.65).	9- 6
T1.4.2.5	CONDUCT VISUAL/ RADAR IDENTIFICATION OF NORDO/ OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	ATC 3- 22- 00	RECEIVER-ONLY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT	3- 4
		ATC 3- 22- 01	To obtain acknowledgement from an aircraft equipped with receiver only, request the aircraft to do the following: (See 7110.65).	3- 4
		ATC 9- 5- 00	COORDINATION	9- 2
		ATC 9- 5- 01	Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.	9- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.14	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED	ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 04	d. In cases where communication is established with the aircraft but the aircraft identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan, notify the appropriate ARTCC and nearest U.S. Customs Service Office.	8- 3
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 10- 00	INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS	9- 3
		ATC 9- 10- 02	Minimum required information for in-flight emergencies is aircraft identification and type, nature of the emergency, and pilot's desires.	9- 3
		ATC 9- 10- 03	b. After initiating action, obtain the following items or any other pertinent information from the pilot or aircraft operator, as necessary: (See 7110.65).	9- 3
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 06	d. When a pilot reports the discovery of a bomb or suspected bomb on an aircraft which is airborne or on the ground, determine the pilot's intentions and comply with his requests in so far as possible.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 07	d. Take all of the actions discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate under the existing circumstances.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 08	e. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 09	e. Apply hijacking procedures and offer assistance to the pilot according to the preceding paragraphs, if needed.	9- 7
T1.4.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	ATC 5- 27- 00	EMERGENCY CODE ASSIGNMENT	5- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
11.4.2.60 (cont'd)	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	ATC 5- 27- 01	Assign codes to emergency aircraft as follows: a. Code 7700 when the pilot declares an emergency and the aircraft is not radar identified.	5- 6
		ATC 5- 27- 02	Assign codes to emergency aircraft as follows: b. After radio and radar contact have been established, you may request other than single-piloted helicopters and single-piloted turbojet aircraft to change from Code 7700 to another code appropriate... (See 7110.65).	5- 6
		ATC 9- 1- 00	EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS	9- 1
		ATC 9- 1- 01	c. If the words "Mayday" or "Pan-Pan" are not used and you are in doubt that a situation constitutes an emergency or potential emergency, handle it as though it were an emergency.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 1- 02	d. Because of the infinite variety of possible emergency situations, specific procedures cannot be prescribed. However, when you believe an emergency exists or is imminent, select and pursue a course of action which appears to be most appropriate under the circumstances and which ... (See 7110.65).	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 6- 00	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- 01	When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled.	9- 2
		ATC 9- 10- 00	INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS	9- 3
		ATC 9- 10- 03	b. After initiating action, obtain the following items or any other pertinent information from the pilot or aircraft operator, as necessary: (See 7110.65).	9- 3
		ATC 9- 16- 00	INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC	9- 4

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.60 (cont'd)	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	ATC 9- 16- 01	When an aircraft is considered to be overdue or in emergency status, alert the ARTCC and forward the following information as available: (See 7110.65).	9- 4
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 06	d. When a pilot reports the discovery of a bomb or suspected bomb on an aircraft which is airborne or on the ground, determine the pilot's intentions and comply with his requests in so far as possible.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 07	d. Take all of the actions discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate under the existing circumstances.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 08	e. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 09	e. Apply hijacking procedures and offer assistance to the pilot according to the preceding paragraphs, if needed.	9- 7
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- 03	(3) Initiate the alert when, in the opinion of any of the following, a potential or actual emergency exists: the FAA specialists on duty, the pilot of the aircraft concerned, the operator of the aircraft or his representative, or a representative of the airport management.	2- 3
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 01	a. Approved radar systems may be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371 08	(7) Providing assistance to pilots of aircraft in distress.	3-13
T1.4.2.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED	ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.61 (cont'd)	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED	FOA 2- 207- 03	(3) Initiate the alert when, in the opinion of any of the following, a potential or actual emergency exists: the FAA specialists on duty, the pilot of the aircraft concerned, the operator of the aircraft or his representative, or a representative of the airport management.	2- 3
T1.4.2.62	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 02	b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.	2- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 04	d. In cases where communication is established with the aircraft but the aircraft identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan, notify the appropriate ARTCC and nearest U.S. Customs Service Office.	8- 3
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- 04	e. After alerting the emergency equipment, notify only the local aircraft operator or his representative and the airport management.	2- 3
T1.4.2.63	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 03	a. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 5- 33- 00	CODE MONITOR	5- 8
		ATC 5- 33- 06	c. If a normally assigned beacon code disappears, check for a response on the following codes in the order listed and take appropriate action: Code 7500 (hijack code) and Code 7600 (loss of radio communications code).	5- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.63 (cont'd)	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 29- 00	EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATION	9- 7
		ATC 9- 29- 01	Consider the following factors when recommending an emergency airport: remaining fuel in relation to airport distances, weather conditions, airport conditions, NAVAID status, aircraft type, pilot's qualifications, and vectoring or homing capability to the emergency airport.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 30- 00	GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT	9- 8
		ATC 9- 30- 01	When necessary, use any of the following for guidance to the airport radar, DF, following another aircraft, NAVAID's, pilotage by landmarks, and compass headings.	9- 8
		ATC 9- 31- 00	EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)	9- 8
		ATC 9- 31- 01	a. The EOVM is intended to facilitate advisory service to an aircraft in an emergency situation wherein an appropriate terrain/ obstacle clearance minimum altitude cannot be maintained. It shall only be used and the service provided under the following conditions: The pilot has ... (See 7110.65).	9- 8
T1.4.2.64	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 04	d. In cases where communication is stablished with the aircraft but the aircraft identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan, notify the appropriate ARTCC and nearest U.S. Customs Service Office.	8- 3
		ATC 9- 3- 00	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.64 (cont'd)	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 9- 3- 01	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 02	b. When you receive information about an aircraft in distress, forward detailed data to the center in whose area the emergency exists.	9- 2
		ATC 9- 15- 00	EMERGENCY SITUATIONS	9- 3
		ATC 9- 15- 01	Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC and alert the DF Net.	9- 3
		ATC 9- 16- 00	INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC	9- 4
		ATC 9- 16- 01	When an aircraft is considered to be overdue or in emergency status, alert the ARTCC and forward the following information as available: (See 7110.65).	9- 4
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 01	a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager.	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 05	c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 27- 08	e. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel.	9- 7
		ATC 9- 28- 00	EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K-9 TEAMS	9- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.2.64 (cont'd)	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 9- 28- 01	Take the following actions should you receive an aircraft request for the location of the nearest explosive detection K-9 team:	9- 7
		ATC 9- 28- 02	a. Obtain the aircraft identification and position and advise your supervisor of the pilot request.	9- 7
T1.4.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 5- 28- 00	RADIO FAILURE	5- 7
		ATC 5- 28- 01	When you observe a Code 7600 display, apply the procedures in paragraph 9-43.	5- 7
		ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 01	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4
T1.4.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 03	a. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 05	a. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 06	b. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 07	c. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check and SAFI aircraft.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 08	d. Expedite the movement of Presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 09	e. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NEACP is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 10	f. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 11	g. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 12	h. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 13	j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 14	k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2
		ATC 8- 1- 00	GENERAL	8- 1
		ATC 8- 1- 01	Provide aircraft engaged in the flight inspection of NAVAID's with maximum assistance. Unless otherwise agreed to, maintain direct contact with the pilot and exchange information regarding known traffic in the area and his intentions.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 2- 00	SPECIAL HANDLING	8- 1
		ATC 8- 2- 01	a. Clear the aircraft according to pilot request as soon as practicable. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from his planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 2- 03	c. Suggest flight path adjustments, as required, for any aircraft which will enter or penetrate an area in which a flight inspection function is being performed.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 2- 04	d. Provide special handling, as required, to FAA aircraft conducting flight inspections using the call sign "Flight Check." The call sign "Flight Check (Nr) recorded" indicates automated flight inspections are in progress in terminal areas.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 00	FLIGHT CHECK AND SAFI AIRCRAFT	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 01	a. Provide special handling, as required, to expedite flight inspection of NAVAID's by Flight Check and SAFI aircraft equipped with airborne computers.	8- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 8- 3- 02	b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 03	c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in excess of holding times specified in the flight plan except to preclude emergency situations.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 04	d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.	C- 1
		ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 01	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 05	e. Use special patterns and routings in areas where they have been developed for these flights. If special patterns and routings have not been developed, employ normal procedures.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 00	EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 01	a. When notified that an experimental aircraft requires special handling, clear the aircraft according to pilot requests as traffic permits and if not contrary to ATC procedures and, once approved, do not ask the pilot to deviate from a planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 24- 00	FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS	8- 5
		ATC 8- 24- 01	When coordinated in advance and traffic permits, approve requests for special flight procedures from aircraft participating in FAA research and development test activities. These special procedures shall be applied to participating aircraft/ vehicles.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 25- 00	FLYNET	8- 5
		ATC 8- 25- 01	Provide expeditious handling for civil or military aircraft using the code name "Flynet." Relay the code name as an element in the remarks position of the flight plan.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 27- 00	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPER .ON ACTIONS	ATC 8- 27- 01	Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAH 7610.4.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- 02	b. ATC services shall be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 35- 00	S/C MITO OPERATIONS	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 01	a. Control MITO operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between MITO aircraft until approved separation is established by the aircraft and acknowledged for by ATC.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 02	b. Provide aircraft with at least the requested takeoff interval between departures as specified in a letter of agreement covering the MITO operation.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 03	c. Issue takeoff clearance on the departure frequency established in accordance with one of the following in the order listed: (See 7110.65).	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 04	3. Clear aircraft which will use MITO procedures, then fly in formation er route, to the breakup fix as the clearance limit.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 00	SAMP	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 01	Provide special handling to USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions. Honor in-flight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation ... (See 7110.65).	8-10
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCR[illegible]	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 01	When you observe a Mode 3/ A Code 7500, do the following.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 02	a. Acknowledge and confirm receipt of Code 7500 by asking the pilot to verify it	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 05	a. If aircraft are dispatched to escort the hijacked aircraft, provide all possible assistance to the escort aircraft to aid in placing them in a position behind the hijacked aircraft.	9- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 22- 06	e. To the extent possible, afford the same control service to the aircraft operating VFR observed on the hijack code.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 43- 00	COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE	9- 9
		ATC 9- 43- 01	Take the following actions, as appropriate, if two-way radio communications is lost with an aircraft:	9- 9
		ATC 9- 43- 02	a. Broadcast clearances through any available means of communications including the voice feature of NAVAID's.	9- 9
		ATC 9- 50- 00	ACTIONS REQUIRED	9-10
		ATC 9- 50- 01	When providing DF services to an aircraft in emergency status: determine if aircraft is in VFR or IFR weather conditions, fuel remaining, altitude, and heading.	9-10
		ATC 9- 50- 03	When providing DF services to an aircraft in emergency status: determine if aircraft is on a flight plan. If the aircraft is not on an IFR flight plan and is in VFR weather conditions, advise the pilot to remain VFR.	9-10
		ATC 9- 50- 04	When providing DF services to an aircraft in emergency status, alert the DF Net whenever one of the following conditions exists: the pilot is lost, an emergency is declared, or an ELT is heard or reported.	9-10
		ATC 9- 51- 00	DF FIXING BY NET	9-10
		ATC 9- 51- 01	When a DF Net is in operation, determine aircraft position as follows: tell the aircraft to transmit for 10 seconds and plot the bearings obtained from two or more stations, and inform the aircraft of its position.	9-10
		ATC 9- 52- 00	DF FIXING BY ONE FACILITY	9-10
		ATC 9- 52- 01	One DF facility can determine an aircraft's position by: (See 7110.65).	9-10
		ATC 9- 53- 00	VFR DF SERVICE	9-10
		ATC 9- 53- 01	a. Provide DF service to VFR aircraft when either of the following conditions exist: the pilot requests the service, or you suggest the service and the pilot concurs.	9-10

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 53- 02	After determining an aircraft's bearing, provide DF service by specifying direction of turn and magnetic heading to be flown after completion of turn. Determine and issue the following information to the aircraft: (See 7110.65).	9-10
		ATC 9- 53- 03	f. Request the aircraft to transmit for specified periods, as required.	9-11
		ATC 9- 53- 04	g. Inform aircraft when DF service is terminated.	9-11
		ATC 9- 60- 00	NAVY FLEET SUPPORT MISSIONS	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 01	When you receive information concerning an emergency to a U.S. Navy "Special Flight Number" aircraft, do the following:	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 02	a. Handle Navy Fleet Support Mission aircraft as follows: Inform the nearest center of all the pertinent information.	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 03	b. Relay the words "Special Flight Number" followed by the number given as part of the routine IFR flight information.	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 04	c. Honor pilot requests for changes to route, altitude, and destination whenever possible.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 00	DUTCH AND ASPEN AIRCRAFT	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 01	If an aircraft (USAF YF-12A or SR-71) using the call sign "Dutch" or Aspen" reports inflight difficulty or declares an emergency (by direct communications or relay from another facility), in addition to normal emergency handling of the aircraft, take the following action:	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 02	a. Forward the report verbatim to the associated center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 03	e. Comply with all requests from the pilot or the center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 04	f. Contact the center area manager if there is any question regarding action to be taken.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 05	g. Do not discuss actions taken in regard to these aircraft with other than authorized personnel.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 00	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	9-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 62- 01	When you receive information that an emergency landing will be made with explosive cargo aboard, inform the pilot of the safest or least congested airport areas.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 02	Relay the explosive cargo information to: the emergency equipment crew, airport management, and appropriate military agencies when requested by the pilot.	9-13
		ATC 9- 70- 00	INFORMATION RELAY	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 01	When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued.	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 02	c. Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the center within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as an NOTAM.	9-14
		ATC 9- 71- 00	IFR AND SPECIAL VFR MINIMA	9-14
		ATC 9- 71- 01	Reroute IFR and Special VFR aircraft as necessary to avoid the emergency location by one of the following minima or by greater minima when suggested by the notifying official: (See 7110.65).	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- 00	VFR MINIMA	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- 01	Advise all known VFR aircraft which are, or will be operating in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency to avoid the emergency location by 1 mile laterally or 6,000 feet vertically, or by a greater distance or altitude when suggested by the notifying official.	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- 00	SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- 01	Advise all aircraft to avoid any observed smoke columns in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency.	9-14
		FOA 6- 600- 00	SPECIAL FLIGHT HANDLING (See 7210.3).	6- 1
		FOA 6- 640- 00	FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS (See 7210.3).	6- 7
		FOA 6- 650- 00	PARACHUTES AND BALLOONS	6-10
T1.4.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.60 (cont'd)	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 03	c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.	2- 3
		ATC 2- 8- 00	MINIMUM FUEL	2- 3
		ATC 2- 8- 01	If an aircraft declares a state of "minimum fuel" inform any facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred of the minimum fuel problem and be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft en route.	2- 3
		ATC 8- 27- 00	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- 03	c. Upon request, the ATC facility shall expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ADCF.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 80- 00	COORDINATION	8-17
		ATC 8- 80- 0	Coordinate any pertinent information prior to and at the end of each parachute jump or series of jumps which begins or ends in your area of jurisdiction with other affected ATC facilities/ sectors.	8-17
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 03	b. Notify supervisory personnel of the situation.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 23- 00	VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 23- 01	If a VFR aircraft requests assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, request the aircraft to contact the appropriate control facility. Inform that facility of the situation.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 61- 00	DUTCH AND ASPEN AIRCRAFT	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 02	d. Forward the report verbatim to the associated center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 00	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	9-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.3.60 (cont'd)	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 9- 62- 02	Relay the explosive cargo information to: the emergency equipment crew, airport management, and appropriate military agencies when requested by the pilot.	9-13
		ATC 9- 70- 01	When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued.	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 02	c. Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the center within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as an NOTAM.	9-14
T1.4.4.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED	ATC 9- 28- 00	EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K-9 TEAMS	9- 7
		ATC 9- 28- 04	c. If the aircraft wishes to divert to the airport location provided, obtain an estimated arrival time from the pilot and advise your supervisor.	9- 7
T1.4.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	ATC 4- 14- 00	ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 01	a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 02	b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.	4- 3
T1.4.4.6	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY	ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 06	The transferring controller shall: Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or flight progress strip unless covered in a letter of agreement or facility directive.	5-14
T1.4.5.1	RECEIVE HANDOFF REQUEST	ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.5.3	ACCEPT VERBAL HANDOFF/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK	ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 00	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 04	a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods: Use the "Modify" or "Quick Look" functions for data transfer between the TRACON and tower cab only if specific procedures are established in a facility directive.	5-13
T1.4.5.4	ACCEPT AUTOMATIC HANDOFF	ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13
T1.4.5.5	RECEIVE INITIAL COMMUNICATIONS FROM PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL	ATC 2- 17- 00	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 01	a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 06	(3) Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.	2- 5
T1.4.5.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT ALTITUDE WITH PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL	ATC 4- 47- 00	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION-NONRADAR	4-15

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.5.6 (cont'd)	VERIFY AIRCRAFT ALTITUDE WITH PILOT ON TRANSFER OF CONTROL	ATC 4- 47- 01	a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact and when position reports are received unless the pilot states the assigned altitude.	4-15
		ATC 4- 47- 02	a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact and when position reports are received unless you assign a new altitude to a climbing or descending aircraft.	4-15
		ATC 4- 47- 03	a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude or initial contact and when position reports are received unless the aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/ position within your facility.	4-15
		ATC 4- 47- 04	b. USAF/USA Reconfirm all pilot altitude readbacks.	4-16
		ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 01	Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/ suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 02	For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 04	a. Consider an altitude readout valid when it varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or you receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or you have correlated the altitude... (See 7110.65).	5- 9
		ATC 5- 37- 06	c. Whenever you observe an invalid readout confirm that the pilot is using the correct altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 38- 00	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION - MODE C	5- 9
		ATC 5- 38- 01	Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless: (See 7110.65).	5- 9
		ATC 5- 39- 00	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION - NONMODE C	5- 9
		ATC 5- 39- 01	a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless: (See 7110.65).	5- 9

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.5.7	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO HANDOFF REQUEST	ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 02	The receiving controller shall: Issue restrictions that are needed for the aircraft to enter your sector safely before accepting the handoff.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 09	The receiving controller shall: When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP.	5-15
		ATC 5- 65- 10	The receiving controller shall: When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "NAT," "NT," or "TU" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.	5-15
T1.4.5.60	DENY HANDOFF	ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 09	The receiving controller shall: When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP.	5-15
T1.4.6.2	ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT	ATC 2- 17- 00	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 01	a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 02	b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:	2- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.2 (cont'd)	ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT	ATC 2- 17- 03	(1) The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 04	Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility except as required in 5-137.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 05	(2) Frequency to use except the following may be omitted: FSS frequency, departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued, ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 06	(3) Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.	2- 5
		ATC 3-102- 00	DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS	3-19
		ATC 3-102- 02	Inform departing IFR and Stage III VFR aircraft of the following after takeoff: (See 7110.65).	3-19
		ATC 4- 69- 00	TRANSFER OF JURISDICTION	4-22
		ATC 4- 69- 01	Transfer radio communications and control responsibility early enough to allow the receiving facility to clear an aircraft beyond the clearance limit before the aircraft reaches it.	4-22
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 05	The transferring controller shall: Transfer communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area unless otherwise coordinated. To the extent possible, transfer communications when the handoff has been accepted.	5-14
		ATC 7- 78- 00	ABANDONED APPROACH	7-12
		ATC 7- 78- 01	When an aircraft, under tower control, abandons the approach and coordination with approach control reveals no immediate space in the approach sequence, instruct the aircraft to change to approach control for sequencing.	7-12
		A 7- 79- 00	VFR DEPARTURE INFORMATION	7-13
		ATC 7- 79- 01	Inform departing VFR aircraft who request radar traffic advisories when to contact departure control and the frequency to use.	7-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.2 (cont'd)	ISSUE CHANGE OF FREQUENCY TO PILOT	ATC 7- 96- 00	TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION	7-15
		ATC 7- 96- 01	a. At controlled airports within the TRSA, inform a departing aircraft proposing to operate within the TRSA when to contact departure control and the frequency to use.	7-15
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 04	c. Flight follow aircraft and use normal handoff procedures without requiring transmissions or responses by aircraft unless communications have been established by the aircraft.	9- 5
		ATC 9- 23- 00	VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 23- 01	If a VFR aircraft requests assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, request the aircraft to contact the appropriate control facility. Inform that facility of the situation.	9- 5
T1.4.6.3	INITIATE HANDOFF FUNCTION	ATC 2- 15- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- 01	a. Transfer control responsibility at a prescribed or coordinated location, time, fix, or altitude and only after eliminating any potential conflict with other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	2- 4
		ATC 5- 21- 00	DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 04	b. Make handoffs to other positions/ sectors on the computer-assigned code.	5- 5
		ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 00	METHODS	5-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.3 (cont'd)	INITIATE HANDOFF FUNCTION	ATC 5- 62- 03	a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods: Use automation capabilities.	5-13
		ATC 8- 70- 00	APPLICATION	8-15
		ATC 8- 70- 06	e. Transfer flight following responsibility between facilities or between controllers by forwarding the following information when available: (See 7110.65).	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 06	e. Transfer flight following responsibility as outlined in paragraph 8-70e.	8-16
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	9- 5
		ATC 9- 22- 04	c. Flight follow aircraft and use normal handoff procedures without requiring transmissions or responses by aircraft unless communications have been established by the aircraft.	9- 5
T1.4.6.8	RECEIVE HANDOFF ACCEPTANCE	ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 01	To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 02	Inter- and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible.	5-13
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 01	The transferring controller shall: Complete a radar handoff prior to an aircraft's entering the airspace delegated to the receiving controller.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 13	The transferring controller shall: Consider the target being transferred as identified on the receiving controller's display when the receiving controller acknowledges receipt verbally or has accepted an automated handoff.	5-14
		ATC 9- 22- 00	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	9- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.8 (cont'd)	RECEIVE HANDOFF ACCEPTANCE	ATC 9- 22- 04	c. Flight follow aircraft and use normal handoff procedures without requiring transmissions or responses by aircraft unless communications have been established by the aircraft.	9- 5
T1.4.6.9	DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 15- 00	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- 02	b. When you transfer control of an aircraft while it is within your area of jurisdiction, issue any instructions to the receiving controller that may be necessary to provide separation from other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	2- 4
		ATC 3-121- 00	FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES	3-25
		ATC 3-121- 01	a. Forward the following, as appropriate, to the control facility having IFR jurisdiction in your area: (See 7110.65).	3-25
		ATC 4- 69- 00	TRANSFER OF JURISDICTION	4-22
		ATC 4- 69- 01	Transfer radio communications and control responsibility early enough to allow the receiving facility to clear an aircraft beyond the clearance limit before the aircraft reaches it.	4-22
		ATC 5- 60- 00	APPLICATION	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 03	Where such constraints exist, they shall be: Covered in letters of agreement which clearly state that control will not be based upon a radar handoff.	5-13
		ATC 5- 60- 04	Where such contraints exist, they shall be: Coordinated by the transferring and receiving controllers for a specified period of time.	5-13
		ATC 5- 62 00	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 06	b. When making a handoff, point out, or issuing traffic restrictions, relay information to the receiving controller in the following order: (See 7110.65).	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 07	c. When receiving a handoff, point out, or traffic restrictions, respond to the transferring controller as follows: (See 7110.65).	5-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.9 (cont'd)	DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 5- 62- 08	d. If any doubt as to target identification exists after attempting confirmation in accordance with this section, apply the provisions of paragraph 5-54.	5-14
		ATC 5- 63- 00	TRAFFIC	5-14
		ATC 5- 63- 01	a. When using the term "traffic" for coordinating separation, the controller issuing traffic shall issue appropriate restrictions.	5-14
		ATC 5- 63- 02	b. The controller accepting the restrictions shall be responsible to ensure that approved separation is maintained between the involved aircraft.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 02	The transferring controller shall: Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 03	The transferring controller shall: Ensure that potential conflicts are resolved prior to transferring communications and that restrictions issued to the aircraft to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 04	The transferring controller shall: Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 06	The transferring controller shall: Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or flight progress strip unless covered in a letter of agreement or facility directive.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 07	Pertinent information includes: Assigned heading, air speed restrictions, altitude information issued, observed track or deviation from the last route clearance, the beacon code if different from that normally used or previously coordinated, any other pertinent information.	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 09	The transferring controller shall: Initiate verbal coordination to verify the position of primary or nondiscrete target when using the automated handoff functions except for intrafacility handoffs using single-sensor systems or multisensor systems operating in a mosaic RDP mode.	5-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.9 (cont'd)	DISCUSS TRANSFER OF CONTROL WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 5- 64- 12	The transferring controller shall: Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 02	The receiving controller shall: Issue restrictions that are needed for the aircraft to enter your sector safely before accepting the handoff.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 04	The receiving controller shall: If you need to change an aircraft's heading, speed, altitude, or beacon code within another controller's area of jurisdiction, coordinate such changes with that controller and, as required, any intervening controller through whose area the aircraft...(See 7110.65).	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 08	The receiving controller shall: Initiate verbal coordination prior to accepting control of a track when "CST," "NAT," "NT," "NONE," "NB," "OLD," "OL," "AMB," "AM," or "TU" is displayed in the data block.	5-15
		ATC 5- 65- 09	The receiving controller shall: When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP.	5-15
		ATC 5- 65- 10	The receiving controller shall: When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "NAT," "NT," or "TU" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.	5-15
T1.4.6.10	ISSUE CHANGE TO VFR BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT	ATC 5- 29- 00	VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS	5- 7
		ATC 5- 29- 02	b. Instruct IFR aircraft which cancel an IFR flight plan and are not requesting radar advisory service and VFR aircraft for which radar advisory service is being terminated to squawk the VFR code.	5- 7
		ATC 5-216- 00	INHIBITING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)	5-47
		ATC 5-216- 01	a. Assign a beacon code to VFR aircraft to inhibit MSAW processing unless the aircraft has specifically requested MSAW.	5-47

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.6.10 (cont'd)	ISSUE CHANGE TO VFR BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT	ATC 5-226- ØØ	INHIBITING LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM (LAAS)	5-48
		ATC 5-226- Ø1	Assign a beacon code to a VFR aircraft or to an aircraft that has canceled its IFR flight plan to inhibit LAAS processing unless the aircraft has specifically requested LAAS.	5-48
T1.4.6.11	INITIATE VERBAL HANDOFF	ATC 2- 15- ØØ	CONTROL TRANSFER	2- 4
		ATC 2- 15- Ø1	a. Transfer control responsibility at a prescribed or coordinated location, time, fix, or altitude and only after eliminating any potential conflict with other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	2- 4
		ATC 5- 62- ØØ	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- Ø1	a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods: Physically point to the target on the receiving controller's display.	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- Ø2	a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods: Use landline voice communications.	5-13
		ATC 5- 64- ØØ	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- Ø9	The transferring controller shall: Initiate verbal coordination to verify the position of primary or nondiscrete target when using the automated handoff functions except for intrafacility handoffs using single-sensor systems or mulitisensor systems operating in a mosaic RDP mode.	5-14
T1.4.6.60	RECEIVE HANDOFF REJECTION	ATC 5- 64- ØØ	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- Ø2	The transferring controller shall: Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance.	5-14
T1.4.7.7	DISCUSS POINTOUT WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 5- 66- Ø1	a. The transferring controller shall: Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace.	5-15
T1.4.7.61	RECEIVE REJECTION OF POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- ØØ	POINT OUT	5-15

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.7.61 (cont'd)	RECEIVE REJECTION OF POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- 01	a. The transferring controller shall: Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace.	5-15
T1.4 7.62	RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE OF POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 01	a. The transferring controller shall: Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace.	5-15
T1.4.8.6	DETERMINE RESPONSE TO POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 05	b. The receiving controller shall: Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 07	b. The receiving controller shall: Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/ her area of jurisdiction.	5-15
T1.4.8.60	RECEIVE POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 01	a. The transferring controller shall: Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace.	5-15
T1.4.8.61	DENY POINTOUT	ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 05	b. The receiving controller shall: Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.	5-15
T1.4.8.62	ACCEPT VERBAL POINTOUT/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK	ATC 5- 62- 00	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 04	a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods: Use the "Modify" or "Quick Look" functions for data transfer between the TRACON and tower cab only if specific procedures are established in a facility directive.	5-13
		ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.8.62 (cont'd)	ACCEPT VERBAL POINTOUT/ INITIATE MANUAL TRACK START/ QUICK LOOK	ATC 5- 66- 05	b. The receiving controller shall: Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 07	b. The receiving controller shall: Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/ her area of jurisdiction.	5-15
T1.4.9.2	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 05	j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet departing or making a low/ missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet - 3 miles.	3-21
		ATC 3-106- 06	k. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3-minute interval.	3-21
		ATC 4- 10- 00	CLEARANCE ITEMS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 10- 01	Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 17- 00	IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS	4- 4
		ATC 4- 17- 01	a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.	4- 4
		ATC 4- 21- 00	DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 5
		ATC 4- 21- 01	Include the following items in IFR departure clearance: (See 7110.65).	4- 5
		ATC 4- 22- 00	ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 01	a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 04	b. When the contraction "FRC" appears on a flight progress strip, the controller issuing the ATC clearance to the aircraft shall issue a full route clearance.	4- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.2 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 22- 05	c. Specify the destination airport in the clearance.	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 07	e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft shall either: issue a full route clearance; or ... (See 7110.65).	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 08	f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 02	a. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 31- 00	ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS	4-10
		ATC 4- 31- 01	To effect transition within or between route structure, clear an aircraft by one or more of the following methods, based on VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS NAVAID's (unless use of other NAVAID's is essential to aircraft operation or ATC efficiency): (See 7110.65).	4-10
		ATC 4- 33- 00	ALTERNATIVE ROUTES	4-11
		ATC 4- 33- 01	When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft via one of the following alternative routes: (See 7110.65).	4-11
		ATC 4- 40- 00	FLIGHT DIRECTION	4-13
		ATC 4- 40- 01	Clear aircraft at altitudes according to the Table (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 00	EXCEPTIONS	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 01	When traffic, meteorological conditions, or aircraft operational limitations prevent assignment of altitudes prescribed in paragraph 4-40, assign any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 290 or any odd cardinal flight level at or above FL 290 without regard to direction of flight as follows:	4-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.2 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 41- 02	a. For traffic conditions, take this action only if one of the following conditions exists: (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 42- 00	LOWEST USABLE FLIGHT LEVEL	4-13
		ATC 4- 42- 01	If a change in atmospheric pressure affects a usable flight level in your area of jurisdiction, use the Table (see 7110.65) to determine the lowest usable flight level to clear aircraft at or above 18,000 feet msl.	4-13
		ATC 4- 43- 00	ADJUSTED MINIMUM FLIGHT LEVEL	4-13
		ATC 4- 43- 01	When the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations is at or above 18,000 feet MLS and the atmospheric pressure is less than 29.92", add the appropriate adjustment factor from the Table (See 7110.65) to the flight level equivalent of the minimum altitude in feet to determine the (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 44- 00	MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES	4-14
		ATC 4- 44- 01	Except as provided in a and b below, assign altitudes at or above the MEA for the route segment being flown.	4-14
		ATC 4- 44- 02	When a lower MEA for subsequent segments of the route is applicable, issue the lower MEA only after the aircraft is over or past the Fix/ NAVAID beyond which the lower MEA applies unless a crossing restriction at or above the higher MEA is issued.	4-14
		ATC 4- 45- 00	ALTITUDE INFORMATION	4-14
		ATC 4- 45- 01	When issuing altitude information, include the following items, as appropriate: (See 7110.65).	4-14
		ATC 4- 53- 00	HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS	4-18
		ATC 4- 53- 01	When necessary to issue holding instructions, specify: (See 7110.65).	4-18
		ATC 4- 68- 00	BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT	4-22
		ATC 4- 68- 01	If an arriving aircraft reports weather conditions are below his landing minima, issue appropriate instructions to the aircraft to hold or proceed to another airport.	4-22
		ATC 5- 8- 00	MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES	5- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.2 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 5- 8- 03	c. If the pilot requests, vector his aircraft to avoid merging with the target of previously issued traffic.	5- 3
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 03	The transferring controller shall: Ensure that potential conflicts are resolved prior to transferring communications and that restrictions issued to the aircraft to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.	5-14
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1
		ATC 7- 10- 00	VISUAL SEPARATION	7- 2
		ATC 7- 10- 02	To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, routes of flight, and weather conditions.	7- 2
		ATC 7- 40- 00	AUTHORIZATION	7- 7
		ATC 7- 40- 01	a. Special VFR (SVFR) operations in weather conditions less than basic VFR minima are authorized: (See 7110. 65).	7- 7
		ATC 7- 43- 00	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT	7- 7
		ATC 7- 43- 01	Do not assign a fixed altitude when applying vertical separation, but clear the Special VFR aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 500 feet below any conflicting IFR traffic but not below the minimum safe altitude prescribed in FAR 91.79.	7- 7
		ATC 7- 94- 00	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS	7-14
		ATC 7- 94- 01	a. Altitude information contained in a clearance, instruction, or advisory to VFR aircraft shall meet MVA, minimum safe altitude, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.	7-14
		ATC 7- 94- 02	b. If required, issue altitude assignments consistent with the provisions of FAR 91.79.	7-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.2 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 7- 94- 03	c. When necessary to assign an altitude for separation purposes to VFR aircraft contrary to FAR 91.109, advise the aircraft to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when altitude assignment is no longer needed for separation or ... (See 7110.65).	7-14
T1.4.9.4	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 2- 13- 00	FORMATION FLIGHTS	2- 4
		ATC 2- 13- 03	When pilot reports indicate separation has been established, issue control instructions as required.	2- 4
		ATC 2- 21- 00	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	2- 6
		ATC 2- 21- 03	(6) When requested by the pilot, issue radar vectors to assist in avoiding the traffic, provided the aircraft to be vectored is within your area of jurisdiction or coordination has been effected with the sector/ facility in whose area the aircraft is operating.	2- 7
		ATC 2- 76- 00	RADIO MESSAGE FORMAT	2-20
		ATC 2- 76- 01	d. Preface a clearance or instruction intended for a specific aircraft with the identification of that aircraft.	2-20
		ATC 3- 7- 00	POSITION DETERMINATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 03	b. When a local controller delivers or amends an ATC clearance to an aircraft awaiting departure and that aircraft is holding short of a runway or is holding in position on a runway, an additional clearance shall be issued to prevent the possibility of the aircraft inadvertently ... (See 7110.65).	3- 2
		ATC 3- 11- 00	AIRPORT TRAFFIC AREA RESTRICTIONS	3- 3
		ATC 3- 11- 01	a. If traffic conditions permit, approve a pilot's request to cross an airport traffic area or exceed the airport traffic area speed limit.	3- 3
		ATC 3-106- 00	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	3-20
		ATC 3-106- 05	j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet departing or making a low/ missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet - 3 miles.	3-21

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.4 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 3-106- 06	k. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3-minute interval.	3-21
		ATC 4- 10- 00	CLEARANCE ITEMS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 10- 01	Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 00	ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 01	a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 02	b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.	4- 3
		ATC 4- 17- 00	IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS	4- 4
		ATC 4- 17- 01	a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.	4- 4
		ATC 4- 22- 00	ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 01	a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 07	e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft shall either: issue a full route clearance; or ... (See 7110.65).	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 08	f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 02	a. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 53- 00	HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS	4-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.4 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 4- 53- 01	When necessary to issue holding instructions, specify: (See 7110.65).	4-18
		ATC 4- 68- 00	BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT	4-22
		ATC 4- 68- 01	If an arriving aircraft reports weather conditions are below his landing minima, issue appropriate instructions to the aircraft to hold or proceed to another airport.	4-22
		ATC 5- 8- 00	MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES	5- 3
		ATC 5- 8- 03	c. If the pilot requests, vector his aircraft to avoid merging with the target of previously issued traffic.	5- 3
		ATC 5- 29- 00	VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS	5- 7
		ATC 5- 29- 01	a. Provided the aircraft is within your area of responsibility or prior coordination has been effected with the facility/ sector in whose area an aircraft is operating and an operational benefit will be gained, assign aircraft operating with a clearance specifying "VFR-on-top",...(See 7110.65).	5- 7
		ATC 5- 42- 00	BEACON TERMINATION	5-10
		ATC 5- 42- 01	Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn off its transponder.	5-10
		ATC 5- 64- 00	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 64- 03	The transferring controller shall: Ensure that potential conflicts are resolved prior to transferring communications and that restrictions issued to the aircraft to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 00	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	5-14
		ATC 5- 65- 03	The receiving controller shall: Comply with restrictions issued by the initiating controller unless otherwise coordinated.	5-14
		ATC 5- 66- 00	POINT OUT	5-15
		ATC 5- 66- 03	a. The transferring controller shall: Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.	5-15

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.4 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 5- 66- 07	b. The receiving controller shall: Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/ her area of jurisdiction.	5-15
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1
		ATC 7- 2- 02	b. When, in your judgement, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	7- 1
		ATC 7- 40- 00	AUTHORIZATION	7- 7
		ATC 7- 40- 01	a. Special VFR (SVFR) operations in weather conditions less than basic VFR minima are authorized: (See 7110. 65).	7- 7
		ATC 7- 46- 00	GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 04	c. Inform arriving aircraft, operating within the control zone, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile, and ask if the aircraft can depart the control zone with a flight visibility of at least 1 mile. If the reply is "yes," issue a clearance out of control zone. If the reply ...(See 7110.65).	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 06	e. Clear an aircraft to fly through the control zone if he reports flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.	7- 8
		ATC 9- 31- 00	EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)	9- 8
		ATC 9- 31- 02	b. When providing emergency vectoring service, the controller shall advise the pilot that any headings issued are emergency advisories intended only to direct the aircraft toward and over an area of lower terrain/ obstacle elevation.	9- 8
T1.4.9.7	QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE	ATC 7- 46- 00	GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	7- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.7 (cont'd)	QUERY PILOT REGARDING COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE	ATC 7- 46- 04	c. Inform arriving aircraft, operating within the control zone, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile, and ask if the aircraft can depart the control zone with a flight visibility of at least 1 mile. If the reply is "yes," issue a clearance out of control zone. If the reply ...(See 7110.65).	7- 8
T1.4.9.9	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT	ATC 2- 21- 00	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	2- 6
		ATC 2- 21- 03	(6) When requested by the pilot, issue radar vectors to assist in avoiding the traffic, provided the aircraft to be vectored is within your area of jurisdiction or coordination has been effected with the sector/ facility in whose area the aircraft is operating.	2- 7
		ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 04	(2) When a deviation cannot be approved as requested and the situation permits, suggest an alternative course of action.	2-29
		ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 04	b. If the facility/ sector responsible for issuing the clearance is unable to issue a clearance, inform the pilot, and suggest that the delay be taken on the ground.	4- 9
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 02	b. When, in your judgement, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	7- 1
		ATC 7- 35- 00	CONTACT APPROACH	7- 6
		ATC 7- 35- 02	e. An alternative clearance is issued when weather conditions are such that a contact approach may be impracticable.	7- 6
		ATC 7- 41- 00	PRIORITY	7- 7
		ATC 7- 41- 02	b. When clearance cannot be granted for a FW/SVFR flight because of IFR traffic, inform the aircraft of the anticipated delay. Do not issue EFC or expected departure time.	7- 7
		ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.9 (cont'd)	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT	ATC 8- 20- 02	b. If it becomes necessary to issue a clearance to amend the route/ altitude, advise the pilot of the proposed change, and the amount of delay to expect if it is necessary to maintain the present route/ altitude.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 03	c. When it becomes necessary for the pilot to refuse a clearance amending his route/ altitude, he will advise if the traffic delay is acceptable or if an alternate route/ altitude is desired. In such cases, offer all possible assistance.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 22- 00	DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE) SPECIAL FLIGHTS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 22- 01	a. Provide notification of possible route or altitude changes as far in advance as possible for "RAC" flights. The pilot will indicate if the proposed change is acceptable or if alternate routing or altitude will be requested.	8- 4
T1.4.9.61	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST	ATC 2- 21- 00	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	2- 6
		ATC 2- 21- 04	(7) If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.	2- 7
		ATC 3- 11- 00	AIRPORT TRAFFIC AREA RESTRICTIONS	3- 3
		ATC 3- 11- 02	b. Do not approve a pilot's request or ask a pilot to conduct unusual maneuvers within an airport traffic area if they are not essential to the performance of the flight.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 31- 00	CLOSED/ UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 02	a. If the pilot persists in his request, quote him the appropriate parts of the Notice to Airmen applying to the runway and inform him that a clearance cannot be issued.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 03	b. If the pilot insists and in your opinion the intended operation would not adversely affect other traffic, inform him that the operation will be at his own risk.	3- 5
		ATC 7- 46- 00	GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 01	When the ground visibility is officially reported at an airport as less than 1 mile, treat requests for Special VFR operations at that airport by other than helicopters as follows:	7- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.61 (cont'd)	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST	ATC 7- 46- 02	a. Inform departing aircraft that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that a clearance cannot be issued.	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 03	b. Inform arriving aircraft, operating outside of the control zone, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that, unless an emergency exists, a clearance cannot be issued.	7- 8
		ATC 7- 47- 00	FLIGHT VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	7- 8
		ATC 7- 47- 01	When weather conditions are not officially reported at an airport and the pilot advises the flight visibility is less than 1 statute mile, treat requests for Special VFR operations at that airport by other than helicopter as follows:	7- 8
		ATC 7- 47- 02	a. Inform departing aircraft that a clearance cannot be issued.	7- 8
		ATC 7- 47- 03	b. Inform arriving aircraft operating outside of the control zone that a clearance cannot be issued unless an emergency exists.	7- 8
		ATC 9- 40- 00	TRAFFIC RESTRICTIONS	9- 9
		ATC 9- 40- 01	Unless radar separation is used, when an aircraft is unreported or overdue, the facility responsible all restrict or suspend other IFR traffic for 30 minutes after whichever of the following times is applicable: (See 7110.65).	9- 9
T1.4.9.62	ISSUE CLEARANCE THROUGH FSS/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ OTHER PILOT FOR RELAY TO PILOT	ATC 4- 12- 00	DELIVERY INSTRUCTIONS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 12- 01	Issue specific clearance delivery instructions, if appropriate.	4- 3
		ATC 4- 13- 00	CLEARANCE RELAY	4- 3
		ATC 4- 13- 01	Relay clearances verbatim.	4- 3
		ATC 9- 23- 00	VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 23- 02	If the aircraft is unable to communicate with the control facility, relay information and clearances.	9- 5
T1.4.9.63	SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER	ATC 7- 55- 00	CONTACT APPROACH	7- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.4.9.63 (cont'd)	SUGGEST ALTERNATIVES TO CLEARANCE REQUEST FROM CONTROLLER	ATC 7- 35- 02	e. An alternative clearance is issued when weather conditions are such that a contact approach may be impracticable.	7- 6
T1.5.1.4	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 03	c. Obtain PIREP's directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.	2-28
T1.5.1.7	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY	ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 04	(1) Inform the pilot of airports where VFR conditions are reported, provide other available pertinent weather information, and ask if he will elect to conduct VFR flight to such an airport.	9- 5
T1.5.1.62	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 04	a. Assist the pilots of air ambulance/ evacuation aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 20- 00	WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES	2- 6
		ATC 2- 20- 01	a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to: VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets, IFR aircraft that accept a visual approach or visual separation, and VFR arriving ... (See 7110.65).	2- 6
		ATC 2- 20- 02	b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word heavy in the description.	2- 6
		ATC 2-101- 00	SIGMET OR CWA ALERT	2-28
		ATC 2-101- 03	b. Terminal facilities have the option to limit the SIGMET or CWA broadcast as follows: local control and approach control positions may opt to broadcast SIGMET or CWA alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction.	2-28

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.1.62 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2-101- 04	c. Include the following information in SIGMET and CWA broadcasts: (See 7110.65)	2-28
		ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 01	a. Issue pertinent information on observed/reported weather or chaff areas.	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 02	Provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas when requested by the pilot.	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 03	(1) Issue weather and chaff information by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.	2-29
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		ATC 2-120- 00	FURNISH RVR/RVV VALUES	2-32
		ATC 2-120- 01	Where RVR or RVV equipment is operational, irrespective of subsequent operation or non-operation of navigational or visual aids for the application RVR/RVV as a takeoff or landing minima, furnish the values for the runway in use in accordance paragraph 2-122.	2-32
		ATC 2-121- 00	ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE RUNWAY VISIBILITY	2-32
		ATC 2-121- 01	a. Issue current touchdown RVR/RVV for the runway/s in use when: (See 7110.65).	2-32
		ATC 2-121- 02	b. Issue mid/rollout RVR when the value of either is less than 2,000 feet and less than the touchdown value.	2-32
		ATC 3- 8- 00	LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 02	At facilities without ATIS, ensure that wind shear information is broadcast to all arriving and departing aircraft for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear.	3- 2

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.1.62 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 8- 03	a. At locations equipped with LLWAS, the local controller shall provide wind information as follows:	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 04	(1) If an alert is received, issue the centerfield wind and the displayed field boundary wind.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 05	(2) If multiple alerts are received, issue an advisory that there are wind shear alerts in two/ several/ all quadrants.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 06	After issuing the advisory, issue the centerfield wind in accordance with 3-100b followed by the field boundary wind most appropriate to the aircraft operation.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 07	(3) If requested by the pilot, issue specific field boundary wind information even though the LLWAS may not be in alert status.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 08	b. "Improved" LLWAS systems are designed to detect wind shear in the vicinity of the centerfield sensor as well as around the periphery.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 09	b. Locations equipped with "improved" LLWAS systems will issue centerfield wind variance when an alert is received from the centerfield area.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 30- 00	LANDING AREA CONDITION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 30- 05	e. Issue to aircraft only factual information, as reported by the airport management concerning the condition of the runway surface, describing the accumulation of precipitation.	3- 5
		ATC 3-121- 00	FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES	3-25
		ATC 3-121- 02	b. When the weather is (see 7110.65), issue current weather to aircraft executing an instrument approach if it changes from that on the ATIS or that previously forwarded to the center/approach control.	3-25
		ATC 7- 20- 00	VFR-ON-TOP	7- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.1.62 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 7- 20- 02	b. You may clear an aircraft to climb through clouds, smoke, haze or other meteorological formations and then to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the following conditions are met: the pilot requests the clearance, you inform the pilot of the reported height of the tops of the ... (See 7110.65).	7- 3
		ATC 9- 24- 00	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	9- 5
		ATC 9- 24- 04	(1) Inform the pilot of airports where VFR conditions are reported, provide other available pertinent weather information, and ask if he will elect to conduct VFR flight to such an airport.	9- 5
		FOA 2- 285- 00	BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 01	Terminal and FSS facilities at airports with field elevations of 2,000 feet MSL or higher shall broadcast a density altitude advisory to departing GA aircraft whenever the temperature reaches a certain level.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 02	These broadcasts shall be made on GC, CD, airport advisory, TWEB, or ATIS as appropriate.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 03	Use the following table to determine broadcast applicability: (See 7210.3).	2-19
T1.5.1.64	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 04	d. (1) Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 05	e. Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the appropriate intrafacility positions, the FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained, other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non-FAA facilities.	2-28
T1.5.1.65	OBSERVE WEATHER LINE/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		FOA 2- 280- 00	WIND INSTRUMENT SENSORS	2-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.1.65 (cont'd)	OBSERVE WEATHER LINE/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS	FOA 2- 280- 02	a. Towers equipped with LLWAS shall use direct dial wind information for weather observations. LLWAS-derived wind information shall be used for all other purposes.	2-18
T1.5.1.66	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED METEOROLOGICAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.1.67	OBSERVE METEOROLOGICAL INDICATOR CHANGE	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION	ATC 2-105- 00	REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS	2-29
		ATC 2-105- 01	USA/USAF NOT APPLICABLE. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, tower personnel shall take prevailing visibility observations and apply the observations as follows: (See 7110.65).	2-29
		ATC 2-110- 00	CURRENT SETTINGS	2-31
		ATC 2-110- 01	a. Current altimeter settings shall be obtained from direct-reading instruments or directly from weather reporting stations.	2-31
		FOA 2- 270- 00	WEATHER/ VISIBILITY OBSERVATIONS	2-16
		FOA 2- 270- 01	a. At facilities where AT personnel take weather/ visibility observations, use the Federal Meteorological Handbook, Abridged, FMH-1, Surface Observations, as the basic source of instructions for taking and recording surface weather/ visibility observations. At LAWRS facilities, ... (See 7210.3).	2-16
T1.5.2.5	REQUEST PIREP	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 01	a. Solicit PIREP's when requested or when one of the following conditions exist or are forecast for your area of jurisdiction: (See 7110.65).	2-28

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.2.6 (cont'd)	REQUEST PIREP	ATC 3- 34- 00	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- 04	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect, solicit PIREP's of runway braking action.	3- 6
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 02	(4) Instruct controllers to request pilots to report any balloon sightings.	6-10
T1.5.2.9	DETERMINE WHETHER CONTROL ZONE IS IFR/ VFR	ATC 7- 46- 00	GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 04	c. Inform arriving aircraft, operating within the control zone, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile, and ask if the aircraft can depart the control zone with a flight visibility of at least 1 mile. If the reply is "yes," issue a clearance out of control zone. If the reply ...(See 7110.65).	7- 8
		ATC 7- 46- 06	e. Clear an aircraft to fly through the control zone if he reports flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.	7- 8
T1.5.2.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 01	a. Solicit PIREP's when requested or when one of the following conditions exist or are forecast for your area of jurisdiction: (See 7110.65).	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 03	c. Obtain PIREP's directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.	2-28
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 02	(4) Instruct controllers to request pilots to report any balloon sightings.	6-10
T1.5.2.62	RECEIVE RUNWAY/TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	ATC 3- 34- 00	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- 03	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect advise the airport management that runway braking action reports of "poor" or "nil" have been received.	3- 6
T1.5.2.63	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	ATC 3- 34- 00	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.2.63 (cont'd)	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	ATC 3- 34- 03	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect advise the airport management that runway braking action reports of "poor" or "nil" have been received.	3- 6
T1.5.2.64	RECORD PIREP NOTE	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 02	b. Record with the PIREP's: time, aircraft position, type aircraft, and altitude.	2-28
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.2.65	FORWARD PIREP TO OTHERS	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 04	d. (1) Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 05	e. Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the appropriate intrafacility positions, the FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained, other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non-FAA facilities.	2-28
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.2.66	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.2.67	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.2.67 (cont'd)	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE	ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T1.5.2.69	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- 01	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 03	(1) Upon determining that at least one display is operating properly, accomplish internal coordination to disseminate the current correct reading to all operating positions needing the information.	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 04	(2) Notify the local weather observing facility immediately when malfunctioning of all tower and TRACON displays for the runway of concern is indicated or suspected.	2-16
T1.5.2.70	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 03	(1) Upon determining that at least one display is operating properly, accomplish internal coordination to disseminate the current correct reading to all operating positions needing the information.	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 05	(2) During such conditions, weather observing personnel will relay RVV or RVR information to tower personnel as long as equipment at the weather observing facility is known to be operating correctly and, in the case of RVR, when the HIRL are on setting 3 or higher.	2-16
		FOA 2- 281- 00	WIND INDICATOR CROSS CHECK	2-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.5.2.70 (cont'd)	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	FOA 2- 201- 03	b. If the indicators show an error of over 10 degrees or 10 knots, the equipment shall be considered inoperative. In this case, obtain further wind information from other properly functioning wind instruments in the tower, local FSS, the NWS, or military weather office.	2-18
T1.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T1.6.1.2	BROADCAST NOTICE OF FACILITY STATUS	FOA 2- 233- 00	STATUS OF SERVICE	2- 9
		FOA 2- 233- 01	a. Broadcast an announcement upon resuming/ terminating service on appropriate frequencies. This broadcast shall include, as a minimum, the service being resumed or terminated.	2- 9
		FOA 12-1230- 00	AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS)	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 06	f. Part-time towers that have ATIS capabilities should record for continuous broadcast the following information during hours of nonoperation: (See 7210.3).	12- 6
T1.6.1.4	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.1.4 (cont'd)	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 9
T1.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8
		FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T1.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T1.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	ATC 3- 36- 00	FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	3- 7
		ATC 3- 36- 02	b. (1) Operation of the FFM remote sensing unit will be based on the prevailing weather. The FFM remote sensing unit shall be operational when the weather is below CAT I ILS minimums.	3- 7
		ATC 3- 36- 03	b. (2) When the weather is less than that required for CAT I operations, the GRN-27 FFM remote status sensing unit shall be set at (See 7110.65).	3- 7
		ATC 5- 1- 00	PRESENTATION AND EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE	5- 1
		ATC 5- 1- 01	Provide radar service only if you are personally satisfied that the radar presentation and equipment performance is adequate for the service being provided.	5- 1
		ATC 5- 2- 00	ALIGNMENT CHECK	5- 1
		ATC 5- 2- 01	As soon as possible after assuming responsibility for a control position, check the operating equipment for alignment, accuracy and display acceptability. Recheck periodically throughout the watch.	5- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.2.3 (cont'd)	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	ATC 5- 2- 02	Check the alignment of the radar video display by assuring that the video map or overlay is properly aligned with a permanent target of known range and azimuth on the radar display. Where possible, check one permanent target per quadrant.	5- 1
		ATC 5- 3- 00	RADAR USE	5- 1
		ATC 5- 3- 01	Use radar information derived from primary and Mode 3/ A secondary radar systems.	5- 1
		ATC 5- 3- 02	a. Display and monitor both primary and secondary radar when available (see paragraphs 5-3b and 5-4), except that secondary radar may be used as the sole display source as follows: (See 7110.65).	5- 1
		ATC 5- 4- 00	BEACON RANGE ACCURACY	5- 2
		ATC 5- 4- 01	a. You may use beacon targets for separation purposes if beacon range accuracy is verified by one of the following methods: (See 7110.65).	5- 2
		ATC 5- 33- 00	CODE MONITOR	5- 8
		ATC 5- 33- 01	Continuously monitor the Mode 3/ A radar beacon codes assigned for use by aircraft operating within your area of responsibility.	5- 3
		ATC 5- 33- 02	a. This includes the appropriate IFR code actually assigned and, additionally, Code 1200 and Code 1277 unless your area of responsibility includes only positive control airspace.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 33- 03	a. During periods when ring-around or excessive VFR target presentations derogate the separation of IFR traffic, the monitoring of VFR code 1200 and Code 1277 may be temporarily discontinued.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 33- 04	b. Positions of operation which contain a restricted or warning area or VR route within or immediately adjacent to their area of jurisdiction shall monitor Code 4000 and any other code used in lieu of 4000 within the warning/ restricted area or VR route.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 33- 05	b. If by local coordination with the restricted/ warning area or VR route user a code other than 4000 is to be exclusively used, then this code shall be monitored.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 37- 00	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	5- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.2.3 (cont'd)	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	ATC 5- 37- 00	d. Whenever possible, inhibit altitude readouts on all consoles when a malfunction of the ground equipment causes repeated invalid readouts.	5- 9
		ATC 5- 62- 00	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- 05	The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS data on the BRITE.	5-13
		ATC 5-214- 00	INFORMATION DISPLAYED	5-46
		ATC 5-214- 02	c. Information displayed in the ATIS, General Information, and Scratch Pad areas shall be in accordance with local directives.	5-46
		ATC 5-224- 00	INFORMATION DISPLAYED	5-48
		ATC 5-224- 01	a. Inhibiting portions of the tag shall be in accordance with facility directives, which shall ensure maximum required use of the equipment.	5-48
		ATC 5-224- 02	b. Mode C altitude information shall not be inhibited unless a ground malfunction causes repeated discrepancies of 300 feet or more between the automatic altitude readouts and pilot reported altitudes.	5-48
		ATC 5-225- 00	ALTITUDE FILTERS	5-48
		ATC 5-225- 01	Set the altitude filters to display Mode C within each controller's area of responsibility by setting the altitude limits to encompass all altitudes under the controller's jurisdiction.	5-48
		ATC 5-225- 02	Set the upper limits no lower than 1,000 feet above the highest altitude for which the controller is responsible.	5-48
		ATC 5-225- 03	Normally, the lower limits should encompass the field elevation so that provisions of paragraphs 2-6 and 5-37b(3) may be applied.	5-48
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 02	(1) Verify accuracy with other displays in the facility when any meter and/ or readout malfunction is suspected.	2-16
		FOA 3- 372- 00	ATC RADAR BEACON SYSTEM DECODER CONTROL BOX CHECKS	3-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.2.3 (cont'd)	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	FOA 3-372-01	b. Each controller is responsible for determining on a day-to-day basis if the operation of his decoder control box is satisfactory for air traffic control purposes.	3-13
		FOA 12-1243-00	ASR PERFORMANCE CHECKS	12-10
		FOA 12-1243-01	(1) Each radar controller is responsible for determining on a day-to-day basis if the quality of his radar display is satisfactory for ATC purposes.	12-10
		FOA 12-1243-02	(2) The daily radar performance check shall be a part of the routine checks of equipment. (See paragraph 465.)	12-10
		FOA 12-1247-00	ASDE PERFORMANCE CHECKS	12-11
		FOA 12-1247-01	One hour prior to the anticipated need to use the ASDE, turn the equipment on and evaluate its performance.	12-11
		FOA 13-1320-00	OPERATIONAL USE	13-4
		FOA 13-1320-01	b. Verify the operational status of all ARTS components daily prior to operational use.	13-4
		FOA 13-1322-00	DISPLAY DATA	13-4
		FOA 13-1322-02	b. Operate the field inhibit/ select switches in the select position for the leader line, ACID, altitude, and handoff fields.	13-4
T1.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE	ATC 5-214-00	INFORMATION DISPLAYED	5-46
		ATC 5-214-01	b. Use of the inhibit select switches to remove displayed information no longer required shall be in accordance with local directives, which should ensure maximum required use of the equipment.	5-46
		ATC 5-225-00	ALTITUDE FILTERS	5-48
		ATC 5-225-01	Set the altitude filters to display Mode C within each controller's area of responsibility by setting the altitude limits to encompass all altitudes under the controller's jurisdiction.	5-48
		ATC 5-225-02	Set the upper limits no lower than 1,000 feet above the highest altitude for which the controller is responsible.	5-48

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.2.6 (cont'd)	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE	ATC 5-225- 03	Normally, the lower limits should encompass the field elevation so that provisions of paragraphs 2-6 and 5-37b(3) may be applied.	5-48
		FOA 13-1320- 00	OPERATIONAL USE	13- 4
		FOA 13-1320- 01	b. Verify the operational status of all ARTS components daily prior to operational use.	13- 4
		FOA 13-1322- 00	DISPLAY DATA	13- 4
		FOA 13-1322- 03	Display Mode C on untracked (ARTS IIIA unassociated) targets within each controller's area of responsibility by setting the altitude filter limits to encompass all altitudes under his jurisdiction.	13- 4
T1.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T1.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	ATC 2-100- 00	FAMILIARIZATION	2-28
		ATC 2-100- 01	Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform air traffic control duties.	2-28
		FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T1.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8
		FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T1.6.5.2	DETERMINE NEED TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	ATC 3- 43- 00	APPROACH LIGHTS	3- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.5.2 (cont'd)	DETERMINE NEED TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	ATC 3- 43- 01	Operate approach lights between sunset and sunrise when (See 7110.65), as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 8
		ATC 3- 44- 00	ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 44- 01	When operating ALS as prescribed in paragraph 3-43, operate intensity controls in accordance with the values in the Table (See 7110.65) except when facility directives specify other settings, as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 45- 00	SEQUENCED FLASHING LIGHTS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 45- 01	Operate Sequenced Flashing Lights when the visibility is less than 3 miles and instrument approaches are being made to the runway served by the associated ALS, as requested by the pilot, and as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- 00	MALSR/ODALS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- 01	Operate MALSR/ ODALS that have separate on-off and intensity setting controls in accordance with (See 7110.65) except: when facility directives specify other settings, as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9
		ATC 9- 41- 00	LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS	9- 9
		ATC 9- 41- 01	b. Operate runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after its fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.	9- 9
T1.6.5.5	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	ATC 3- 40- 00	EMERGENCY LIGHTING	3- 8
		ATC 3- 40- 01	Whenever you become aware that an emergency has or will occur, take action to provide for the operation of all appropriate airport lighting aids as required.	3- 8
		ATC 3- 41- 00	RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS	3- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.5.5 (cont'd)	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	ATC 3- 41- Ø1	When separate on-off controls are provided, operate runway end identifier lights when (See 7110.65).	3- 8
		ATC 3- 41- Ø2	a. When the associated runway lights are lighted, turn the REIL off after (See 7110.65).	3- 8
		ATC 3- 41- Ø3	d. Operate intensity setting in accordance with the values in the Table (See 7110.65) except as prescribed in paragraphs 3-41b and c.	3- 8
		ATC 3- 42- ØØ	VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATORS (VASI)	3- 8
		ATC 3- 42- Ø1	VASI systems with remote on-off switching shall be operated when they serve the runway in use and where intensities are controlled in accordance with the tables (See 7110.65), except as required by facility directives to meet local conditions or as required by the pilot.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- ØØ	MALSR/ODALS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- Ø2	At locations providing part-time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the associated FSS, the MALSR/ODALS shall be set to low intensity during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- Ø3	At locations providing part-time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the FSS on the airport, the air-to-ground radio link shall be activated during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- Ø4	If there is no radio air-to-ground control, the MALSR/ODALS shall be set on intensity setting 2 during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned. (See Order 7210.3-1253.)	3- 9
		ATC 3- 47- ØØ	ALSF-2/ SSALR	3- 9
		ATC 3- 47- Ø1	a. When the prevailing visibility is (See 7110.65), operate the ALSF-2 system as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary if not contrary to pilot request.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 47- Ø2	b. Operate the SSALR system when the conditions in paragraph 3-47a are not a factor.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 48- ØØ	RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS	3- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.5.5 (cont'd)	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	ATC 3- 48- 01	Operate the runway edge light system/s serving the runway/s in use: between sunset and sunrise, turn the lights on when (See 7110.65); as required by facility directives; you consider it necessary; or requested by a pilot and no other known aircraft will be adversely affected.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 49- 00	HIGH INTENSITY RUNWAY, RUNWAY CENTERLINE, AND TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTS	3-10
		ATC 3- 49- 01	Operate high intensity runway and associated runway centerline and touchdown zone lights in accordance with the Table (See 7110.65) except where a facility directive specifies other settings, as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot request.	3-10
		ATC 3- 50- 00	HIRL ASSOCIATE WITH MALSR	3-10
		ATC 3- 50- 01	Operate HIRL which control the associate MALSR in accordance with the accompanying intensity setting Table (See 7110.65) except as requested by the pilot or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.	3-10
		ATC 3- 51- 00	HIRL CHANGES AFFECTING RVR	3-10
		ATC 3- 51- 01	Keep the appropriate approach controller or PAR controller informed, in advance if possible, of HIRL changes that affect RVR.	3-10
		ATC 3- 52- 00	MEDIUM INTENSITY RUNWAY LIGHTS	3-10
		ATC 3- 52- 01	Operate MIRL or MIRL which control the associate MALSR in accordance with the Table (See 7110.65) except as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.	3-11
		ATC 3- 53- 00	SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT OPERATION	3-11
		ATC 3- 53- 01	Turn on the runway edge lights for the runway in use whenever the associated approach lights are on.	3-11
		ATC 3- 53- 02	If multiple runway light selection is not possible, you may leave the approach lights on and switch the runway lights to another runway to accommodate another aircraft.	3-11
		ATC 3- 54- 00	HIGH SPEED TURNOFF LIGHTS	3-11

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.5.5 (cont'd)	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	ATC 3- 54- 01	Operate high speed turnoff lights: (a) Whenever the associated runway lights are used for arriving aircraft. Leave them on until the aircraft has either entered a taxiway or passed the last light.	3-11
		ATC 3- 54- 02	Operate high speed turnoff lights: (b) as required by facility directives to meet local conditions, or (c) as requested by the pilot.	3-11
		ATC 3- 56- 00	OBSTRUCTION LIGHTS	3-11
		ATC 3- 56- 01	If controls are provided, turn the lights on between sunset and sunrise.	3-11
		ATC 9- 41- 00	LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS	9- 9
		ATC 9- 41- 01	b. Operate runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after its fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.	9- 9
		FOA 2- 233- 00	STATUS OF SERVICE	2- 9
		FOA 2- 233- 02	b. At locations where neither a tower nor an FSS continues service or the FSS does not have lighting controls/ approach aid monitoring capability, do the following as appropriate: (See 7210.3).	2- 9
		FOA 12-1251- 00	OPERATION OF LIGHTS WHEN TOWER IS CLOSED	12-12
		FOA 12-1251- 01	b. If no FSS is located on the airport and the lighting controls are provided in the tower cab, tower personnel before closing the tower shall insure that the airport rotating beacon, obstruction lights, and boundary lights are turned on.	12-12
		FOA 12-1251- 02	b. All other lighting systems, including runway lights, shall be set in accordance with a letter of agreement with the airport manager/ operator .	12-12
		FOA 12-1253- 00	APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEMS	12-12
		FOA 12-1253- 03	(4) At locations which do not have duplicate lighting controls in the FSS on the airport, operation of the ALS during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned shall be as follows: (See 7210.3).	12-13
		FOA 12-1254- 00	VASI SYSTEMS	12-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.6.5.5 (cont'd)	SWITCH AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	FOA 12-1254- Ø1	(1) The basic VASI as described in paragraph 1254b except at locations where the system was installed with an on-off remote switch in the control tower. If an on-off switch is provided, it is intended that the VASI be operated on a continuous basis when the runway it serves is in use.	12-13
		FOA 12-1254- Ø2	(2) Systems that are operated remotely from the control tower may be either two-step or three-step. It is intended that these systems be operated on a continuous basis when the runway they serve is in use.	12-14
		FOA 12-1254- Ø3	(3) Systems with steep descent profiles intended for STOL operations may be operated on an individual aircraft basis or as determined by the facility Air Traffic Manager dependent upon the frequency of use.	12-14
T1.6.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	ATC 3- 43- ØØ	APPROACH LIGHTS	3- 8
		ATC 3- 43- Ø1	Operate approach lights between sunset and sunrise when (See 7110.65), as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 8
		ATC 3- 44- ØØ	ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 44- Ø1	When operating ALS as prescribed in paragraph 3-43, operate intensity controls in accordance with the values in the Table (See 7110.65) except when facility directives specify other settings, as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 45- ØØ	SEQUENCED FLASHING LIGHTS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 45- Ø1	Operate Sequenced Flashing Lights when the visibility is less than 3 miles and instrument approaches are being made to the runway served by the associated ALS, as requested by the pilot, and as you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- ØØ	MALSR/ODALS	3- 9
		ATC 3- 46- Ø1	Operate MALSR/ ODALS that have separate on-off and intensity setting controls in accordance with (See 7110.65) except: when facility directives specify other settings, as requested by the pilot, or as you deem necessary if not contrary to pilot's request.	3- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.7.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION	ATC 2- 40- ØØ	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- Ø1	a. Forward any amending data concerning previously forwarded flight plans except that revisions to ETA information in 2-35a(3) need only be forwarded when the time differs by more than 3 minutes from the estimate given.	2-11
T1.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY EQUIPMENT STATUS	ATC 2- 9- ØØ	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- Ø1	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
		FOA 13-1320- ØØ	OPERATIONAL USE	13- 4
		FOA 13-1320- Ø2	c. Advise effected facilities when ARTS equipment will not be operational at normal startup time, when it fails, is shut down, resumes operation, or when interfacility mode is lost/ regained.	13- 4
T1.7.3.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS FAILURE	FOA 13-1320- ØØ	OPERATIONAL USE	13- 4
		FOA 13-1320- Ø2	c. Advise effected facilities when ARTS equipment will not be operational at normal startup time, when it fails, is shut down, resumes operation, or when interfacility mode is lost/ regained.	13- 4
T1.7.3.62	REVERT TO ARTS BACKUP PROCEDURES	ATC 5-213- ØØ	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	5-46
		ATC 5-213- Ø1	a Inform all appropriate positions before terminating or reinstating use of the ARTS at a control position.	5-46
		ATC 5-213- Ø2	a. When terminating the use of ARTS, all pertinent flight data of that position shall be transferred or terminated.	5-46
		FOA 13-1320- ØØ	OPERATIONAL USE	13- 4
		FOA 13-1320- Ø2	c. Advise effected facilities when ARTS equipment will not be operational at normal startup time, when it fails, is shut down, resumes operation, or when interfacility mode is lost/ regained.	13- 4

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.7.3.63	VERIFY COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES	ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 01	a. Forward any amending data concerning previously forwarded flight plans except that revisions to ETA information in 2-35a(3) need only be forwarded when the time differs by more than 3 minutes from the estimate given.	2-11
T1.7.4.2	INFORM PILOT OF NAVAID STATUS	ATC 3- 36- 00	FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	3- 7
		ATC 3- 36- 05	(3) When the remote status unit indicates that the localizer FFM is in alarm (aural warning following the preset delay) and the aircraft is between the MM and the inner marker (IM), immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.	3- 7
T1.7.4.3	REQUEST ADDITIONAL PILOT REPORT ON NAVAID STATUS	ATC 2- 10- 00	NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 10- 01	When an aircraft reports a NAVAID malfunction, take the following actions:	2- 3
		ATC 2- 10- 02	a. Request a report from a second aircraft.	2- 3
T1.7.5.2	REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES	ATC 3- 20- 00	LIGHT SIGNALS	3- 4
		ATC 3- 20- 01	Use air traffic control light signals from the Table (See 7110.65) to control aircraft and the movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel on the movement area when radio communications cannot be employed.	3- 4
T1.7.5.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- 01	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
T1.7.6.1	DETECT SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURE	ATC 5- 34- 00	FAILURE TO DISPLAY ASSIGNED BEACON CODE OR INOPERATIVE/ MALFUNCTIONING TRANSPONDER	5- 8
		ATC 5- 34- 01	a. Inform an aircraft with an operable transponder that the assigned beacon code is not being displayed.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 34- 02	b. Inform an aircraft when its transponder appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.	5- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T1.7.6.1 (cont'd)	DETECT SENSOR/ TRACKING FAILURE	ATC 5- 35- ØØ	INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR	5- 8
		ATC 5- 35- Ø1	Inform aircraft concerned when the ground interrogator appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 62- ØØ	METHODS	5-13
		ATC 5- 62- Ø5	The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS data on the BRITE.	5-13
T1.7.6.2	REVERT TO NON-RADAR PROCEDURES	ATC 5- 4- ØØ	BEACON RANGE ACCURACY	5- 2
		ATC 5- 4- Ø2	b. If beacon range accuracy cannot be verified, you may use beacon targets only for traffic information.	5- 2
		ATC 5- 35- ØØ	INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR	5- 8
		ATC 5- 35- Ø1	Inform aircraft concerned when the ground interrogator appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.	5- 8
		ATC 5- 54- ØØ	QUESTIONABLE IDENTIFICATION	5-12
		ATC 5- 54- Ø2	b. If identification is questionable for any reason, take immediate action to reidentify the aircraft or terminate radar service.	5-12
		ATC 5- 56- ØØ	IDENTIFICATION STATUS	5-12
		ATC 5- 56- Ø3	b. Inform an aircraft when radar contact is lost.	5-12
T1.7.8.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	FOA 2- 277- ØØ	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- Ø1	AT personnel shall report all actual or suspect RVV/RVR malfunctions to AF personnel.	2-16

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.1.1.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE AT REPORTED POSITION	ATC 3- 7- 00	POSITION DETERMINATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 01	a. Determine the position of an aircraft before issuing taxi instructions or takeoff clearance.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 7- 02	The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.	3- 2
T2.1.1.4	VERIFY AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION	ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 03	a. Use ASDE-derived information to confirm pilot reported positions.	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 00	IDENTIFICTION	3-13
		ATC 3- 72- 01	To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following; pilot's report, controller's visual observation, or an identified target observed on the ASR bright display.	3-13
T2.1.1.5	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
T2.1.1.7	PROJECT AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PLANNED TIME/ POSITION PROFILE MENTALLY	ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 04	a. Use ASDE-derived information to provide directional taxi information on pilot request.	3-13
T2.1.1.8	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.1.1.8 (cont'd)	SEARCH ASDE FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE LOCATION	ATC 3- 71- 02	a. Use ASDE-derived information to monitor compliance with control instructions by aircraft and vehicles on the taxiways.	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 00	RADAR USE	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 09	b. Approved terminal radar systems may also be used for:	3-13
		FOA 3- 371- 11	(2) Ensuring that runways observable on ASDE are clear of traffic/ vehicles prior to issuing landing or departure clearances.	3-13
T2.1.1.9	OBSERVE ASDE FOR AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 5- 00	VEHICLES/ EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	3- 2
		ATC 3- 5- 01	Ensure that the runway to be used is clear of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 02	a. Use ASDE-derived information to monitor compliance with control instructions by aircraft and vehicles on the taxiways.	3-13
T2.1.1.60	FORWARD AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT TO OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 06	c. When the runways in use for landing/ departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.	3- 1
T2.1.1.61	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.1.1.61 (cont'd)	RECEIVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE POSITION REPORT RELAYED FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	c. When the runways in use for landing/ departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.	3- 1
T2.1.3.10	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 36- 00	FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	3- 7
		ATC 3- 36- 04	(3) When the remote status unit indicates that the localizer FFM is in alarm (aural warning following the preset delay) and the aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM), check for encroachment those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower.	3- 7
T2.1.3.61	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 05	(2) During such conditions, weather observing personnel will relay RVV or RVR information to tower personnel as long as equipment at the weather observing facility is known to be operating correctly and, in the case of RVR, when the HIRL are on setting 3 or higher.	2-16
T2.1.3.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- 01	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 03	(1) Upon determining that at least one display is operating properly, accomplish internal coordination to disseminate the current correct reading to all operating positions needing the information.	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 04	(2) Notify the local weather observing facility immediately when malfunctioning of all tower and TRACON displays for the runway of concern is indicated or suspected.	2-16
		FOA 2- 281- 00	WIND INDICATOR CROSS CHECK	2-18
		FOA 2- 281- 04	b. Notify AF personnel of all outages.	2-18

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.1.4.61	RECORD STRIP MARKING ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD	ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 04	c. Forward any amending control information and record the action on the appropriate flight progress strip.	2-11
		ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 01	Use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services.	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 03	a. Enter on the appropriate strip without delay the estimated times, clearance information, position reports, and any other IFR flight data received over any communications channel.	2-13
		ATC 2- 57- 00	AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX	2-17
		ATC 2- 57- 01	a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or RNAV capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant as follows: (See 7110.65).	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 00	CLEARANCE STATUS	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 01	Use the appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (-) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft.	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 00	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 01	Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions.	2-17
T2.1.4.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T2.1.4.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.1.2	CHOOSE DESIRED SEQUENCE	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
T2.2.1.3	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO EFFECT DESIRED SEQUENCE	ATC 3- 80- 00	GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT	3-14
		ATC 3- 80- 01	Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area.	3-14
T2.2.1.4	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND HOLD	ATC 3- 81- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 03	a. If it is the intent to hold the aircraft/ vehicle short of any given point along the taxi route, issue the route if necessary, then state the holding instructions.	3-14
		ATC 3-101- 00	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN NOT APPLICABLE	3-19
		ATC 3-101- 02	c. If the pilot requests to hold in a delay absorbing area, the request shall be approved if space and traffic conditions permit.	3-19
T2.2.1.5	DISCUSS GROUND DELAY TECHNIQUE WITH PILOT	ATC 3-101- 00	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN NOT APPLICABLE	3-19
		ATC 3-101- 02	c. If the pilot requests to hold in a delay absorbing area, the request shall be approved if space and traffic conditions permit.	3-19
T2.2.2.7	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN RESPONSE TO GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	ATC 2- 6- 00	SAFETY ALERT	2- 2
		ATC 2- 6- 01	Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in your judgement, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft.	2- 2
T2.2.2.8	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.2.8 (cont'd)	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION ON ASDE DISPLAY	ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T2.2.2.11	OBSERVE ASDE DISPLAY OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE	ATC 3- 70- 00	EQUIPMENT USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 70- 01	Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/ or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways when visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or when, in your judgement, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.	3-13
T2.2.3.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAXI INSTRUCTIONS	FOA 4- 0- 00	CORRESPONDENCE, CONFERENCES, RECORDS, AND REPORTS	4- 1
		FOA 4- 430- 00	LETTERS OF AGREEMENT	4- 3
		FOA 4- 430- 01	(1) Airport management or other appropriate authority shall require, all ground vehicles and equipment operators and personnel to obtain tower approval prior to entry onto the airport movement area and comply with control instructions issued to them while on that area.	4- 3
T2.2.3.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK INSTRUCTIONS	FOA 4- 430- 00	LETTERS OF AGREEMENT	4- 3
		FOA 4- 430- 02	(1) This includes those vehicles used to conduct pushback operations and shall require approval prior to moving aircraft/ vehicles out of the loading ramps or parking areas onto the movement area.	4- 3
		FOA 4- 430- 03	(2) Airport management or other appropriate authority may also require those aircraft, which will not infringe upon the movement area but will impede ingress and egress to the parking area to contact the tower for advisories prior to conducting pushback operations.	4- 3
T2.2.3.5	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.3.5 (cont'd)	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED DEPARTURE	ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
T2.2.3.6	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	ATC 3- 90- 00	SEQUENCE/ SPACING APPLICATION	3-17
		ATC 3- 90- 01	Establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation as necessary to achieve proper spacing.	3-17
T2.2.3.8	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)	ATC 3- 60- 00	SELECTION	3-12
		ATC 3- 60- 02	b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 00	STOL RUNWAYS	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 01	a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 02	b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.	3-12
		ATC 3-100- 00	DEPARTURE INFORMATION	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 01	Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.	3-19
T2.2.3.10	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS	ATC 2-126- 00	OPERATING PROCEDURES	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 05	d. Controllers shall ensure pilots receive all pertinent information contained in the ATIS broadcast. If a pilot does not state receipt of the current ATIS, ask the pilot to confirm receipt of the appropriate ATIS information.	2-33
T2.2.3.12	DISCUSS SEQUENCING WITH LOCAL CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
T2.2.3.16	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREA FOR GROUND TRAFFIC CONFLICTS	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.3.16 (cont'd)	OBSERVE MOVEMENT AREA FOR GROUND TRAFFIC CONFLICTS	ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
T2.2.3.18	FORMULATE GROUND MOVEMENT INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 3- 82- 00	GROUND OPERATIONS-WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 82- 01	Avoid clearances which require heavy jet aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.	3-15
		ATC 3- 82- 02	Avoid clearances which require small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.	3-15
T2.2.3.19	ISSUE AIRPORT CONDITION INFORMATION	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 30- 00	LANDING AREA CONDITION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 30- 05	e. Issue to aircraft only factual information, as reported by the airport management concerning the condition of the runway surface, describing the accumulation of precipitation.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 00	CLOSED/ UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 01	If an aircraft requests to takeoff, land, or touch-and-go on a closed or unsafe runway, inform the pilot the runway is closed or unsafe.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 32- 00	TIMELY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 32- 01	Issue airport conditions information necessary for an aircraft's safe operation in time for it to be useful to the pilot.	3- 5
		ATC 3-100- 00	DEPARTURE INFORMATION	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 01	Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.	3-19

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.3.20	ISSUE INFORMATION ON CONFLICTING TRAFFIC	ATC 3- 6- 00	TRAFFIC INFORMATION	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 01	a. Describe vehicles, equipment, or personnel on or near the movement area in a manner which will assist pilots in recognizing them.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 02	b. Describe the relative position of traffic in an easy to understand manner.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 6- 03	c. When using a certified tower radar display, you may issue traffic advisories using the standard radar phraseology prescribed in paragraph 2-21.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 83- 00	RUNWAY PROXIMITY	3-15
		ATC 3- 83- 03	c. Issue traffic information as necessary.	3-15
T2.2.3.61	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP DAY TO OPTIMIZE SEQUENCE	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
T2.2.4.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA CLOSURE/ REOPENING	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
T2.2.5.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR REQUEST FOR MOVEMENT IN/ THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA	FOA 12-1205- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	12- 2
		FOA 12-1205- 01	To the maximum extent posible, vehicles shall be required to maintain two way radio communications with the appropriate control position when operating on or crossing any portions of an active runway.	12- 2
T2.2.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTION TO HOLD SHORT OF ACTIVE RUNWAY	ATC 3- 81- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 01	When ground movement information is required, issue the route for the aircraft/ vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms.	3-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.5.3 (cont'd)	ISSUE INSTRUCTION TO HOLD SHORT OF ACTIVE RUNWAY	ATC 3- 81- 02	a. When authorizing a vehicle to proceed on the movement area or an aircraft to taxi to any point other than an assigned takeoff runway. absence of holding instructions authorizes an aircraft/ vehicle to cross all taxiways and runways that intersect the taxi route.	3-14
		ATC 3- 83- 00	RUNWAY PROXIMITY	3-15
		ATC 3- 83- 01	Hold taxiing aircraft clear of a runway at established holding points marked by taxiway hold lines/ signs.	3-15
		ATC 3- 83- 02	b. If no hold lines/ signs are established, instruct aircraft to hold short of a specific runway.	3-15
		ATC 3- 83- 03	c. Issue traffic information as necessary.	3-15
T2.2.5.5	DISCUSS RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA WITH OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T2.2.5.9	ISSUE APPROVAL/ INSTRUCTIONS FOR GROUND MOVEMENT	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 05	d. Aircraft may be authorized to taxi along an active runway by local control, via direct communications on the control frequency, or by ground control after coordination with local control is completed.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 80- 00	GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT	3-14
		ATC 3- 80- 01	Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area.	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 00	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	3-14
		ATC 3- 81- 01	When ground movement information is required, issue the route for the aircraft/ vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms.	3-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.5.14	REMOVE REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T2.2.5.60	REQUEST TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 02	a. Ground control must obtain approval from local control before authorizing an aircraft or a vehicle to cross or use any portion of an active runway.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T2.2.5.63	RECEIVE APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 03	b. When local controller authorizes another controller to cross an active runway, the local controller shall verbally specify the runway to be crossed preceded by the word "cross".	3- 1
T2.2.5.64	RECORD/ SELECT REMINDER OF TEMPORARY MOVEMENT AREA RELEASE	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 02	This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays.	3- 1
T2.2.5.65	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.5.65 (cont'd)	FORWARD NOTICE OF RETURN OF RELEASED MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 04	c. The ground controller shall advise the local controller when the coordinated runway operation is complete. This may be accomplished verbally or through visual aids as specified by a facility directive.	3- 1
T2.2.6.2	OBSERVE CURRENT TRAFFIC IN MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 0- 09	DEPARTURE PROCEDURE AND SEPARATION	3-19
		ATC 3- 1- 00	PROVIDE SERVICE	3- 1
		ATC 3- 1- 01	Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 12- 00	VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS	3- 3
		ATC 3- 12- 02	b. Ground control shall assist local control in visually scanning runways, especially when runways are in close proximity to other movement areas.	3- 3
T2.2.6.60	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 3- 00	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 3- 06	e. The local controller shall coordinate with the ground controller before using a runway not previously designated as active.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T2.2.6.61	FORWARD APPROVAL FOR TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T2.2.6.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T2.2.6.63	RECEIVE RETURN OF MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.6.63 (cont'd)	RECEIVE RETURN OF MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY RELEASED	ATC 3- 4- 01	Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas.	3- 1
T2.2.7.4	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	ATC 3- 4- 00	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 03	a. Ground control shall notify local control when departing aircraft has been taxied to a runway other than one previously designated as active.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 04	b. Ground control shall notify local control of any aircraft taxied to an intersection for takeoff, unless departure from that intersection is specifically designated via prior coordination or facility directive as the standard operating procedure for the runway to be used.	3- 1
		ATC 3- 4- 05	b. When standard procedures require departures to use a specific intersection, ground control shall notify local control when aircraft are taxied to other portions of the runway for departure.	3- 1
T2.2.7.62	REVIEW BRITE/ ASDE TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 01	Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:	2- 1
T2.2.8.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ TRAFFIC OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	ATC 3- 21- 00	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4
		ATC 3- 21- 03	c. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate when other hazardous conditions are present which call for intensified pilot or operator alertness.	3- 4
		ATC 8- 71- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	8-15
		ATC 8- 71- 04	c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.	8-16
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.2.8.61 (cont'd)	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ TRAFFIC OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	FOA 6- 652- 01	c. If the balloon's flight cannot be terminated: (2) Provide controllers with all known information pertaining to the derelict balloon, and instruct them to issue traffic advisories.	6-10
T2.3.1.4	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 2- 18- 00	OPERATIONAL REQUESTS	2- 5
		ATC 2- 18- 01	Approve or disapprove a pilot's or vehicle operator's request as circumstances permit.	2- 6
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1
T2.3.1.5	DENY CLEARANCE REQUEST	ATC 3- 31- 00	CLOSED/ UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 02	a. If the pilot persists in his request, quote him the appropriate parts of the Notice to Airmen applying to the runway and inform him that a clearance cannot be issued.	3- 5
		ATC 3- 31- 03	b. If the pilot insists and in your opinion the intended operation would not adversely affect other traffic, inform him that the operation will be at his own risk.	3- 5
T2.3.1.6	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 2- 18- 00	OPERATIONAL REQUESTS	2- 5
		ATC 2- 18- 01	Approve or disapprove a pilot's or vehicle operator's request as circumstances permit.	2- 6
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.1.6 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 7- 2- 00	b. When, in your judgement, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	7- 1
T2.3.1.7	SUGGEST CLEARANCE ALTERNATIVES TO PILOT	ATC 2- 18- 00	OPERATIONAL REQUESTS	2- 5
		ATC 2- 18- 01	Approve or disapprove a pilot's or vehicle operator's request as circumstances permit.	2- 6
		ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 04	(2) When a deviation cannot be approved as requested and the situation permits, suggest an alternative course of action.	2-29
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 02	b. When, in your judgement, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.	7- 1
T2.3.2.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 10- 00	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	3- 3
		ATC 3- 10- 01	When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.	3- 3
T2.3.2.7	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO HOLD/ REROUTE GROUND TRAFFIC CLEAR OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 9- 6- 00	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- 01	When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled.	9- 2
T2.3.2.8	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	ATC 3- 10- 00	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	3- 3
		ATC 3- 10- 01	When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.	3- 3
		ATC 3- 21- 00	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.2.8 (cont'd)	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	ATC 3- 21- 02	b. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when mechanical trouble exists of which the pilot might not be aware.	3- 4
T2.3.2.9	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AIRCRAFT	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 3- 80- 00	GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT	3-14
		ATC 3- 80- 01	Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area.	3-14
		ATC 9- 3- 00	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1
		ATC 9- 3- 01	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 6- 00	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- 01	When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled.	9- 2
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 04	b. When a bomb threat involves an aircraft on the ground and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions in addition to those discussed in the preceding paragraph which may be appropriate: (See 7110.65).	9- 7
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.2.9 (cont'd)	ISSUE TAXI INSTRUCTIONS TO SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY AIRCRAFT	FOA 2- 207- 02	When required, the tower must indicate the route to be taken by the emergency equipment.	2- 3
T2.3.2.10	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	ATC 9- 5- 00	COORDINATION	9- 2
		ATC 9- 5- 01	Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.	9- 2
T2.3.2.60	DECLARE EMERGENCY AND INVOKE CONTINGENCY PLAN	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 01	a. When a pilot reports an in-flight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 6- 00	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- 01	When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled.	9- 2
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- 03	(3) Initiate the alert when, in the opinion of any of the following, a potential or actual emergency exists: the FAA specialists on duty, the pilot of the aircraft concerned, the operator of the aircraft or his representative, or a representative of the airport management.	2- 3
T2.3.2.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF EMERGENCY DECLARED AND CONTINGENCY PLAN INVOKED	ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
T2.3.2.63	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REQUIRED DEPLOYMENT OF EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 02	b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.2.63 (cont'd)	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REQUIRED DEPLOYMENT OF EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT	ATC 9- 4- Ø1	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 6- ØØ	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- Ø1	When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled.	9- 2
		ATC 9- 6- Ø2	This also applies when routes within the airport proper are required for movement of local emergency equipment going to or from an emergency which occurs outside the airport proper.	9- 2
		FOA 2- 207- ØØ	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- Ø1	c. Procedures for alerting airport emergency equipment, including additional equipment which may be located off the airport, shall consist only of: (See 7210.3)	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- Ø4	e. After alerting the emergency equipment, notify only the local aircraft operator or his representative and the airport management.	2- 3
T2.3.2.64	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- ØØ	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- Ø2	b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 3- ØØ	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1
		ATC 9- 3- Ø1	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- ØØ	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.2.64 (cont'd)	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- 01	c. Procedures for alerting airport emergency equipment, including additional equipment which may be located off the airport, shall consist only of: (See 7210.3)	2- 3
		FOA 2- 207- 04	e. After alerting the emergency equipment, notify only the local aircraft operator or his representative and the airport management.	2- 3
T2.3.2.65	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 03	a. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
T2.3.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 01	a. When a pilot reports an in-flight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
T2.3.2.70	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.2.70 (cont'd)	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 9- 3- 00	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1
		ATC 9- 3- 01	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 15- 00	EMERGENCY SITUATIONS	9- 3
		ATC 9- 15- 01	Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC and alert the DF Net.	9- 3
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 01	a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager.	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 05	c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.	9- 7
T2.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 01	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4
T2.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 03	a. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 05	a. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 06	b. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 07	c. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check and SAFI aircraft.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 08	d. Expedite the movement of Presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 09	e. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NEACP is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 10	f. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 11	g. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 12	h. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 13	j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 14	k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2
		ATC 8- 3- 00	FLIGHT CHECK AND SAFI AIRCRAFT	8- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 8- 3- 02	b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 03	c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in excess of holding times specified in the flight plan except to preclude emergency situations.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 04	d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 03	c. Advise the pilot that passengers must remain aboard the aircraft after landing until cleared by the U.S. Customs Service Office.	8- 3
		ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 01	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 00	EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 01	a. When notified that an experimental aircraft requires special handling, clear the aircraft according to pilot requests as traffic permits and if not contrary to ATC procedures and, once approved, do not ask the pilot to deviate from a planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 24- 00	FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS	8- 5
		ATC - 24- 01	When coordinated in advance and traffic permits, approve requests for special flight procedures from aircraft participating in FAA research and development test activities. These special procedures shall be applied to participating aircraft/ vehicles.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 25- 00	FLYNET	8- 5
		ATC 8- 25- 01	Provide expeditious handling for civil or military aircraft using the code name "Flynet." Relay the code name as an element in the remarks position of the flight plan.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 27- 00	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 8- 27- 01	Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAH 7610.4.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- 02	b. ATC services shall be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 35- 00	SAC MITO OPERATIONS	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 01	a. Control MITO operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between MITO aircraft until approved separation is established by the aircraft and acknowledged for by ATC.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 02	b. Provide aircraft with at least the requested takeoff interval between departures as specified in a letter of agreement covering the MITO operation.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 03	c. Issue takeoff clearance on the departure frequency established in accordance with one of the following in the order listed: (See 7110.65).	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 04	d. Clear aircraft which will use MITO procedures, then fly in formation en route, to the breakup fix as the clearance limit.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 00	SAMP	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 01	Provide special handling to USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions. Honor inflight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation ... (See 7110.65).	8-10
		ATC 9- 60- 00	NAVY FLEET SUPPORT MISSIONS	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 01	When you receive information concerning an emergency to a U.S. Navy "Special Flight Number" aircraft, do the following:	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 02	a. Handle Navy Fleet Support Mission aircraft as follows: Inform the nearest center of all the pertinent information.	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 03	b. Relay the words "Special Flight Number" followed by the number given as part of the routine IFR flight information.	9-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 60- 04	c. Honor pilot requests for changes to route, altitude, and destination whenever possible.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 00	DUTCH AND ASPEN AIRCRAFT	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 01	If an aircraft (USAF YF-12A or SR-71) using the call sign "Dutch" or Aspen" reports inflight difficulty or declares an emergency (by direct communications or relay from another facility), in addition to normal emergency handling of the aircraft, take the following action:	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 02	d. Forward the report verbatim to the associated center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 03	e. Comply with all requests from the pilot or the center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 04	f. Contact the center area manager if there is any question regarding action to be taken.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 05	g. Do not discuss actions taken in regard to these aircraft with other than authorized personnel.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 00	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 01	When you receive information that an emergency landing will be made with explosive cargo aboard, inform the pilot of the safest or least congested airport areas.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 02	Relay the explosive cargo information to: the emergency equipment crew, airport management, and appropriate military agencies when requested by the pilot.	9-13
		ATC 9- 70- 00	INFORMATION RELAY	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 01	When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued.	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 02	c. Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the center within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as an NOTAM.	9-14
		ATC 9- 71- 00	IFR AND SPECIAL VFR MINIMA	9-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 71- Ø1	Reroute IFR and Special VFR aircraft as necessary to avoid the emergency location by one of the following minima or by greater minima when suggested by the notifying official: (See 7110.65).	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- ØØ	VFR MINIMA	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- Ø1	Advise all known VFR aircraft which are, or will be operating in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency to avoid the emergency location by 1 mile laterally or 6,ØØØ feet vertically, or by a greater distance or altitude when suggested by the notifying official.	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- JØ	SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- Ø1	Advise all aircraft to avoid any observed smoke columns in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency.	9-14
		FOA 6- 6ØØ- ØØ	SPECIAL FLIGHT HANDLING (See 7210.3).	6- 1
		FOA 6- 64Ø- ØØ	FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS (See 7210.3).	6- 7
		FOA 6- 65Ø- ØØ	PARACHUTES AND BALLOONS	6-10
T2.3.3.60	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 2- 7- ØØ	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- Ø3	c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.	2- 3
		ATC 8- 27- ØØ	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- Ø3	c. Upon request, the ATC facility shall expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ADCF.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 8Ø- ØØ	COORDINATION	8-17
		ATC 8- 8Ø- Ø1	Coordinate any pertinent information prior to and at the end of each parachute jump or series of jumps which begins or ends in your area of jurisdiction with other affected ATC facilities/ sectors.	8-17
T2.3.4.2	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR LOCAL CONTROLLER ON FREQUENCY	ATC 2- 17- ØØ	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER	2- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.4.2 (cont'd)	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR LOCAL CONTROLLER ON FREQUENCY	ATC 2- 17- 01	a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 02	b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 03	(1) The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 04	Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility except as required in 5-137.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 05	(2) Frequency to use except the following may be omitted: FSS frequency, departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued, ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- 06	(3) Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.	2- 5
T2.3.5.60	OBSERVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT ON ASDE	ATC 3- 71- 00	INFORMATION USAGE	3-13
		ATC 3- 71- 03	a. Use ASDE-derived information to confirm pilot reported positions.	3-13
T2.3.6.1	RECORD/ ENTER FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP INFORMATION	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 01	Use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services.	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 03	a. Enter on the appropriate strip without delay the estimated times, clearance information, position reports, and any other IFR flight data received over any communications channel.	2-13
		ATC 2- 58- 00	CLEARANCE STATUS	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 01	Use the apporopriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (-) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft.	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 00	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	2-17

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.3.6.1 (cont'd)	RECORD/ ENTER FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP INFORMATION	ATC 2- 59- 01	Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions.	2-17
T2.3.6.61	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REQUIRED INFORMATION	ATC 2- 35- 00	IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- 03	Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date.	2- 9
T2.3.6.62	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP CHANGES	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 01	Use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services.	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 05	a. Enter on the appropriate strip without delay the estimated times, clearance information, position reports, and any other IFR flight data received over any communications channel.	2-13
		ATC 2- 58- 00	CLEARANCE STATUS	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 01	Use the appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (-) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft.	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 00	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 01	Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions.	2-17
T2.4.1.3	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 03	c. Obtain PIREP's directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.	2-28
T2.4.1.61	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 04	a. Assist the pilots of air ambulance/ evacuation aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 20- 00	WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES	2- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.4.1.61 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 20- 01	a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jets to: VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets, IFR aircraft that accept a visual approach or visual separation, and VFR arriving ... (See 7110.65).	2- 6
		ATC 2- 20- 02	b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word heavy in the description.	2- 6
		ATC 2-101- 00	SIGMET OR CWA ALERT	2-28
		ATC 2-101- 04	c. Include the following information in SIGMET and CWA broadcasts: (See 7110.65)	2-28
		ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 01	a. Issue pertinent information on observed/reported weather or chaff areas.	2-29
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		ATC 3- 8- 00	LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- 02	At facilities without ATIS, ensure that wind shear information is broadcast to all arriving and departing aircraft for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 30- 00	LANDING AREA CONDITION	3- 5
		ATC 3- 30- 05	e. Issue to aircraft only factual information, as reported by the airport management concerning the condition of the runway surface, describing the accumulation of precipitation.	3- 5
		FOA 2- 285- 00	BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 01	Terminal and FSS facilities at airports with field elevations of 2,000 feet MSL or higher shall broadcast a density altitude advisory to departing GA aircraft whenever the temperature reaches a certain level.	2-19

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.4.1.61 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER/ ADVISORY/ UPDATE TO PILOT/ LOCAL CONTROLLER	FOA 2- 285- 02	These broadcasts shall be made on GC, CD, airport advisory, TWEB, or ATIS as appropriate.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 03	Use the following table to determine broadcast applicability: (See 7210.3).	2-19
T2.4.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE	ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 02	Provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas when requested by the pilot.	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 03	(1) Issue weather and chaff information by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.	2-29
T2.4.1.64	OBSERVE WEATHER AREA/ INTENSITY/ MOVEMENT/ VISIBILITY/ WINDS	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		FOA 2- 280- 00	WIND INSTRUMENT SENSORS	2-18
		FOA 2- 280- 02	a. Towers equipped with LLWAS shall use direct dial wind information for weather observations. LLWAS-derived wind information shall be used for all other purposes.	2-18
T2.4.2.4	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION	ATC 2-110- 00	CURRENT SETTINGS	2-31
		ATC 2-110- 01	a. Current altimeter settings shall be obtained from direct-reading instruments or [illegible] from weather reporting stations.	2-31
		FOA 2- 270- 00	WEATHER/ VISIBILITY OBSERVATIONS	2-16
		FOA 2- 270- 01	a. At facilities where AT personnel take weather/ visibility observations, use the Federal Meteorological Handbook, Abridged, FMH-1, Surface Observations, as the basic source of instructions for taking and recording surface weather/ visibility observations. At LAWRS facilities, ... (See 7210.3).	2-16

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.4.2.8	FORWARD URGENT PIREP TO OTHERS	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 04	d. (1) Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 05	e. Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the appropriate intrafacility positions, the FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained, other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non-FAA facilities.	2-28
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.4.2.9	RECEIVE PIREP ON WEATHER	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 03	c. Obtain PIREP's directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.	2-28
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.4.2.60	FORWARD RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.4.2.61	RECEIVE REQUEST TO OBTAIN PIREP	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 01	a. Solicit PIREP's when requested or when one of the following conditions exist or are forecast for your area of jurisdiction: (See 7110.65).	2-28
T2.4.2.62	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.4.2.62 (cont'd)	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE	ATC 2-102- 01	a. Solicit PIREP's when requested or when one of the following conditions exist or are forecast for your area of jurisdiction: (See 7110.65).	2-28
T2.4.2.64	REQUEST PIREP	ATC 3- 34- 00	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- 04	b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect, solicit PIREP's of runway braking action.	3- 6
		FOA 6- 652- 00	DERELICT BALLOONS	6-10
		FOA 6- 652- 02	(4) Instruct controllers to request pilots to report any balloon sightings.	6-10
T2.4.2.65	RECORD PIREP NOTE	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 02	b. Record with the PIREP's: time, aircraft position, type aircraft, and altitude.	2-28
T2.4.2.66	OBSERVE AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INDICATOR CHANGE	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.4.2.67	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.4.2.69	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS	FOA 2- 281- 00	WIND INDICATOR CROSS CHECK	2-18
		FOA 2- 281- 03	b. If the indicators show an error of over 10 degrees or 10 knots, the equipment shall be considered inoperative. In this case, obtain further wind information from other properly functioning wind instruments in the tower, local FSS, the NWS, or military weather office.	2-18
T2.4.2.70	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.4.2.70 (cont'd)	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T2.5.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T2.5.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T2.5.1.00	SIGN OFF ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8
		FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T2.5.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.5.2.2 (cont'd)	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T2.5.2.3	CHECK DISPLAYS FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 02	(1) Verify accuracy with other displays in the facility when any meter and/ or readout malfunction is suspected.	2-16
		FOA 12-1247- 00	ASDE PERFORMANCE CHECKS	12-11
		FOA 12-1247- 01	One hour prior to the anticipated need to use the ASDE, turn the equipment on and evaluate its performance.	12-11
T2.5.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T2.5.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	ATC 2-100- 00	FAMILIARIZATION	2-28
		ATC 2-100- 01	Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform air traffic control duties.	2-28
		FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T2.5.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.5.2.60 (cont'd)	SIGN ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be .. (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T2.5.5.2	PERCEIVE NEED TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM	FOA 12-1256- 00	RUNWAY FLOODLIGHTS	12-14
		FOA 12-1256- 01	Where runway floodlights are installed, local procedures shall be established for their operation. They shall provide that they be turned off when an aircraft is required to taxi toward the lights and they may be blinding to the pilot.	12-14
T2.5.5.3	SWITCH TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM MANUALLY	ATC 3- 40- 00	EMERGENCY LIGHTING	3- 8
		ATC 3- 40- 01	Whenever you become aware that an emergency has or will occur, take action to provide for the operation of all appropriate airport lighting aids as required	3- 8
		ATC 3- 55- 00	TAXIWAY LIGHTS	3-11
		ATC 3- 55- 01	Operate taxiway lights serving the taxiways, or portions thereof, in use between sunset and sunrise (See 7110.65) or at other times when you consider it necessary and as required by local instructions.	3-11
		FOA 12-1251- 00	OPERATION OF LIGHTS WHEN TOWER IS CLOSED	12-12
		FOA 12-1251- 02	b. All other lighting systems, including runway lights, shall be set in accordance with a letter of agreement with the airport manager/ operator .	12-12
		FOA 12-1256- 00	RUNWAY FLOODLIGHTS	12-14
		FOA 12-1256- 01	Where runway floodlights are installed, local procedures shall be established for their operation. They shall provide that they be turned off when an aircraft is required to taxi toward the lights and they may be blinding to the pilot.	12-14
T2.5.5.60	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM	FOA 12-1256- 00	RUNWAY FLOODLIGHTS	12-14

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T2.5.5.60 (cont'd)	RECEIVE REQUEST TO MANIPULATE TAXIWAY LIGHTING SYSTEM	FOA 12-1256- Ø1	Where runway floodlights are installed, local procedures shall be established for their operation. They shall provide that they be turned off when an aircraft is required to taxi toward the lights and they may be blinding to the pilot.	12-14
		FOA 12-1256- Ø2	Also, that they shall be operated as requested by a pilot for his operation.	12-14
T2.6.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF EQUIPMENT STATUS	ATC 2- 9- ØØ	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- Ø1	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
T2.6.4.2	REVERT TO LIGHTGUN COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES	ATC 3- 20- ØØ	LIGHT SIGNALS	3- 4
		ATC 3- 20- Ø1	Use air traffic control light signals from the Table (See 7110.65) to control aircraft and the movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel on the movement area when radio communications cannot be employed.	3- 4
T2.6.4.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	ATC 2- 9- ØØ	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- Ø1	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.1.1.62	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 05	(2) During such conditions, weather observing personnel will relay RVV or RVR information to tower personnel as long as equipment at the weather observing facility is known to be operating correctly and, in the case of RVR, when the HIRL are on setting 3 or higher.	2-16
T3.1.1.64	INFORM OTHERS OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3
		ATC 2- 9- 01	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3
		FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 01	AT personnel shall report all actual or suspect RVV/RVR malfunctions to AF personnel.	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 03	(1) Upon determining that at least one display is operating properly, accomplish internal coordination to disseminate the current correct reading to all operating positions needing the information.	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 04	(2) Notify the local weather observing facility immediately when malfunctioning of all tower and TRACON displays for the runway of concern is indicated or suspected.	2-16
		FOA 2- 281- 00	WIND INDICATOR CROSS CHECK	2-18
		FOA 2- 281- 04	b. Notify AF personnel of all outages.	2-18
T3.1.1.61	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING	ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 04	c. Forward any amending control information and record the action on the appropriate flight progress strip.	2-11
		ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 01	Use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services.	2-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.1.2.61 (cont'd)	RECORD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MARKING	ATC 2- 50- 03	a. Enter on the appropriate strip without delay the estimated times, clearance information, position reports, and any other IFR flight data received over any communications channel.	2-13
		ATC 2- 57- 00	AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX	2-17
		ATC 2- 57- 01	a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or RNAV capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant as follows: (See 7110.65).	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 00	CLEARANCE STATUS	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 01	Use the appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (-) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft.	2-17
		ATC 2- 58- 02	To indicate delay status use: (See 7110.65).	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 00	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	2-17
		ATC 2- 59- 01	Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions.	2-17
T3.1.2.62	REMOVE DEADWOOD PAPER RECORDS OR RECORDED DATA	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T3.1.2.64	DELETE CONTROLLER NOTE	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13
T3.2.1.2	REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS	ATC 2- 30- 00	RECORDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 03	a. When accepting flight plans for random RNAV routes, ensure that the route is defined by waypoints in terms of degree-distance fixes.	2- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.2.1.2 (cont'd)	REVIEW FLIGHT PLAN FOR COMPLETENESS	ATC 2- 30- 04	b. When accepting flight plans for random routes that are defined by latitude/ longitude coordinates, ensure that the route is identified by waypoints in terms of latitude/ longitude fixes and departure/ arrival fix identifiers.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 05	b. Latitude/ longitude coordinates shall be recorded in degrees and minutes.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- 00	IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- 03	Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date.	2- 9
T3.2.1.3	QUERY PILOT ABOUT FLIGHT PLAN	ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 05	b. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/ sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.	4- 9
T3.2.1.11	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN DATA TO ANOTHER FACILITY	ATC 2- 31- 00	FORWARDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 31- 01	a. Except during Stage A operation, forward the flight plan information to the appropriate ATC facility, FSS, or BASOPS and record the time of filing and delivery on the form.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 32- 00	FORWARDING VFR DATA	2- 9
		ATC 2- 32- 01	Forward aircraft departure times to FSS's or military operations offices when they have requested them. Forward other VFR flight plan data only if requested by the pilot.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 33- 00	MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES	2- 9
		ATC 2- 33- 01	Forward departure times on all military DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.	2- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9
		ATC 4- 27- 05	b. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/ sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.	4- 9
		FOA 2- 233 00	STATUS OF SERVICE	2- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.2.1.11 (cont'd)	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN DATA TO ANOTHER FACILITY	FOA 2- 233- 03	d. If a collocated FSS operates when the tower is closed, pertinent flight data shall be exchanged before the tower opens/ closes.	- 9
T3.2.1.60	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN IN FDIO	ATC 2- 30- 00	RECORDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 02	a. Enter information required by the type of flight plan, existing circumstances, and future communications since all items are not necessary in each instance and not all entered will be transmitted when the flight plan is processed.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 31- 00	FORWARDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 31- 01	a. Except during Stage A operation, forward the flight plan information to the appropriate ATC facility, FSS or BASOPS and record the time of filing and delivery on the form.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 53- 00	TERMINAL DATA ENTRIES	2-15
		ATC 2- 53- 01	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. a. Arrivals (See 7110.65).	2-15
		ATC 2- 53- 02	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. b. Departures (See 7110.65).	2 15
		ATC 2- 53- 03	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. c. Overflights (See 7110.65).	2-15
		ATC 5- 21- 00	DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	5- 5
		ATC 5- 21- 03	Aircraft that will enter an adjacent ARTS facility's delegated airspace shall be assigned a beacon code assigned by the ARTCC computer.	5- 5
T3.2.1.61	RECORD NEW FLIGHT PLAN ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS	ATC 2- 30- 00	RECORDING INFORMATION	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 01	a. Record domestic flight plans on flight plan forms or flight progress strips.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 30- 02	a. Enter information required by the type of flight plan, existing circumstances, and future communications since all items are not necessary in each instance and not all entered will be transmitted when the flight plan is processed.	2- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.2.1.61 (cont'd)	RECORD NEW FLIGHT PLAN ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS	ATC 2- 53- ØØ	TERMINAL DATA ENTRIES	2-15
		ATC 2- 53- Ø1	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. a. Arrivals (See 7110.65).	2-15
		ATC 2- 53- Ø2	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. b. Departures (See 7110.65).	2-15
		ATC 2- 53- Ø3	Enter the information specified below in the correspondingly numbered spaces of the flight progress strips. c. Overflights (See 7110.65).	2-15
T3.2.2.5	ENTER FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	ATC 2- 35- ØØ	IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- Ø1	Forward control information from controller to controller within a facility, then to the receiving facility as the aircraft progresses along its route.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 35- Ø2	Where appropriate, use computer equipment in lieu of manual coordination procedures.	2- 9
		ATC 2- 40- ØØ	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- Ø2	b. Computer acceptance of an appropriate input message fulfills the requirement for sending amended data.	2-11
T3.2.2.67	RECEIVE AMENDED FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM FDIO	ATC 2- 40- ØØ	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- Ø3	The amendment data are considered acknowledged upon receipt of a CRD update message or a computer-generated flight progress strip containing the amendment data.	2-11
3.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE	ATC 7- 20- ØØ	VFR-ON-TOP	7- 3
		ATC 7- 20- Ø1	a. You may clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests the clearance.	7- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.1 (cont'd)	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE	ATC 7- 20- Ø2	b. You may clear an aircraft to climb through clouds, smoke, haze or other meteorological formations and then to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the following conditions are met: the pilot requests the clearance, you inform the pilot of the reported height of the tops of the ... (See 7110.65).	7- 3
		FOA 12-1231- ØØ	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1231- Ø1	a. If a need exists, facilities should develop pretaxi clearance procedures for departing IFR aircraft.	12- 6
T3.3.1.6	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 1- ØØ	ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS	4- 1
		ATC 4- 1- Ø1	When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the Table (See 7110.65) on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace.	4- 1
		ATC 4- 3- ØØ	CROSSING ALTITUDE	4- 2
		ATC 4- 3- Ø1	Use an altitude consistent with the limitations of the aid when clearing an aircraft to cross or hold at a fix.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- ØØ	VFR-ON-TOP	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- Ø1	Use a route not meeting service volume limitations only if an aircraft requests to operate "VFR-on-top" on this route.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- Ø2	a. Define route of flight between TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's in the same manner as VOR-equipped aircraft.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 4- Ø3	b. Except in positive control areas, submit requests for "VFR-on-top" flight where insufficient TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's exist to define the route.	4- 2
		ATC 4- 10- ØØ	CLEARANCE ITEMS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 10- Ø1	Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- ØØ	ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- Ø1	a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following: (See 7110.65).	4- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.6 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 14- 02	b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.	4- 3
		ATC 4- 17- 00	IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS	4- 4
		ATC 4- 17- 01	a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.	4- 4
		ATC 4- 21- 00	DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 5
		ATC 4- 21- 01	Include the following items in IFR departure clearance: (See 7110.65).	4- 5
		ATC 4- 22- 00	ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 01	a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 04	b. When the contraction "FRC" appears on a flight progress strip, the controller issuing the ATC clearance to the aircraft shall issue a full route clearance.	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 05	c. Specify the destination airport in the clearance.	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 07	e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft shall either: issue a full route clearance; or ... (See 7110.65).	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 08	f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 9
		ATC 4- 23- 02	a. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 31- 00	ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS	4-10

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.6 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 31- 01	To effect transition within or between route structure, clear an aircraft by one or more of the following methods, based on VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS NAVAID's (unless use of other NAVAID's is essential to aircraft operation or ATC efficiency): (See 7110.65).	4-10
		ATC 4- 33- 00	ALTERNATIVE ROUTES	4-11
		ATC 4- 33- 01	When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft via one of the following alternative routes: (See 7110.65).	4-11
		ATC 4- 40- 00	FLIGHT DIRECTION	4-13
		ATC 4- 40- 01	Clear aircraft at altitudes according to the Table (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 00	EXCEPTIONS	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 01	When traffic, meteorological conditions, or aircraft operational limitations prevent assignment of altitudes prescribed in paragraph 4-40, assign any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 290 or any odd cardinal flight level at or above FL 290 without regard to direction of flight as follows:	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 02	a. For traffic conditions, take this action only if one of the following conditions exists: (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 42- 00	LOWEST USABLE FLIGHT LEVEL	4-13
		ATC 4- 42- 01	If a change in atmospheric pressure affects a usable flight level in your area of jurisdiction, use the Table (see 7110.65) to determine the lowest usable flight level to clear aircraft at or above 18,000 feet msl.	4-13
		ATC 4- 43- 00	ADJUSTED MINIMUM FLIGHT LEVEL	4-13
		ATC 4- 43- 01	When the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations is at or above 18,000 feet MLS and the atmospheric pressure is less than 29.92", add the appropriate adjustment factor from the Table (See 7110.65) to the flight level equivalent of the minimum altitude in feet to determine the (See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 44- 00	MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES	4-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.6 (cont'd)	FORMULATE A CLEARANCE WITH APPROPRIATE INSTRUCTIONS	ATC 4- 44- 01	Except as provided in a and b below, assign altitudes at or above the MEA for the route segment being flown.	4-14
		ATC 4- 44- 02	When a lower MEA for subsequent segments of the route is applicable, issue the lower MEA only after the aircraft is over or past the Fix/ NAVAID beyond which the lower MEA applies unless a crossing restriction at or above the higher MEA is issued.	4-14
		ATC 4- 45- 00	ALTITUDE INFORMATION	4-14
		ATC 4- 45- 01	When issuing altitude information, include the following items, as appropriate: (See 7110.65).	4-14
		ATC 4- 50- 00	CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX	4-17
		ATC 4- 50- 01	When it is necessary to clear an aircraft to a fix other than the destination airport, issue the following: clearance limit, holding instructions, and EFC (See 7110.65).	4-17
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1
		FOA 12-1231- 00	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1231- 01	a. If a need exists, facilities should develop pretaxi clearance procedures for departing IFR aircraft.	12- 6
T3.3.1.7	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 4- 10- 00	CLEARANCE ITEMS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 10- 01	Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below: (See 7110.65).	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 00	ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	4- 3
		ATC 4- 14- 01	a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following: (See 7110.65).	4- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 4- 14- 02	b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.	4- 3
		ATC 4- 17- 00	IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS	4- 4
		ATC 4- 17- 01	a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.	4- 4
		ATC 4- 22- 00	ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 01	a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met: (See 7110.65).	4- 6
		ATC 4- 22- 04	b. When the contraction "FRC" appears on a flight progress strip, the controller issuing the ATC clearance to the aircraft shall issue a full route clearance.	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 05	c. Specify the destination airport in the clearance.	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 07	e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft shall either: issue a full route clearance; or ... (See 7110.65).	4- 7
		ATC 4- 22- 08	f. In a nonradar environme t specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 02	a. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 50- 00	CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX	4-17
		ATC 4- 50- 01	When it is necessary to clear an aircraft to a fix other than the destination airport, issue the following: clearance limit, holding instructions, and EFC (See 7110.65).	4-17
		ATC 5- 29- 00	VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS	5- 7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	ATC 5- 29- 01	a. Provided the aircraft is within your area of responsibility or prior coordination has been affected with the facility/ sector in whose area an aircraft is operating and an operational benefit will be gained, assign aircraft operating with a clearance specifying "VFR-on-top",...(See 7110.65).	5- 7
		ATC 5-110- 00	PROCEDURES	5-23
		ATC 5-110- 01	Use standard departure routes and channelized altitudes whenever practical to reduce coordination.	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 00	INITIAL HEADING	5-23
		ATC 5-111- 01	Before departure, assign the initial heading to be flown if a departing aircraft is to be vectored immediately after takeoff.	5-23
		ATC 7- 2- 00	VFR CONDITIONS	7-1
		ATC 7- 2- 01	a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists: the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/ descent, or the clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not...(See 7110.65).	7- 1
		ATC 7- 20- 00	VFR-ON-TOP	7- 3
		ATC 7- 20- 01	a. You may clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests the clearance.	7- 3
		ATC 7- 20- 02	b. You may clear an aircraft to climb through clouds, smoke, haze or other meteorological formations and then to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the following conditions are met: the pilot requests the clearance, you inform the pilot of the reported height of the tops of the ... (See 7110.65).	7- 3
		ATC 7- 96- 00	TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION	7-15
		ATC 7- 96- 02	a. If the aircraft is properly equipped, ground control or clearance delivery shall issue the appropriate beacon code.	7-15
		FOA 12-1251- 00	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1251- 01	a. If a need exists, facilities should develop pretaxi clearance procedures for departing IFR aircraft.	12- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.1.7 (cont'd)	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS TO PILOT	FOA 12-1231- 03	(3) The IFR clearance or the delay information should be issued at the time of initial callup.	12- 6
T3.3.1.8	VERIFY PILOT HAS CURRENT ATIS	ATC 2-126- 00	OPERATING PROCEDURES	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 02	b. When a pilot acknowledges that he has received the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained in the broadcasts if they are current.	2-33
		ATC 2-126- 05	d. Controllers shall ensure pilots receive all pertinent information contained in the ATIS broadcast. If a pilot does not state receipt of the current ATIS, ask the pilot to confirm receipt of the appropriate ATIS information.	2-33
T3.3.1.9	INFORM PILOT OF CURRENT ATIS (WIND/ ALTIMETER/ RUNWAY IN USE, ETC.)	ATC 3- 60- 00	SELECTION	3-12
		ATC 3- 60- 02	b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 00	STOL RUNWAYS	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 01	a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.	3-12
		ATC 3- 61- 02	b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.	3-12
		ATC 3-100- 00	DEPARTURE INFORMATION	3-19
		ATC 3-100- 01	Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.	3-19
T3.3.1.62	REQUEST CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER / FACILITY	ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 01	Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 27- 00	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	4- 9

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No
T3.3.1.62 (cont'd)	REQUEST CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY	ATC 4- 27- 02	a. After obtaining, if necessary, approval from the facility/ sector responsible for issuing the IFR clearance, you may authorize an IFR flight planned aircraft to depart VFR.	4- 9
		ATC 4- 41- 00	EXCEPTIONS	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 03	b. For meteorological conditions, take this action only if you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 04	c. For aircraft operational limitations take this action only if the pilot informs you the available appropriate altitude exceeds the operational limitations of his aircraft and only after you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and,...(See 7110.65).	4-13
		ATC 4- 41- 05	d. For mission requirements, take this action only when the aircraft is operating on an MTR.	4-13
T3.3.1.63	RECEIVE CLEARANCE FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ FACILITY	ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8
		ATC 4- 23- 01	Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.	4- 8
		ATC 4- 50- 00	CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX	4-17
		ATC 4- 50- 01	When it is necessary to clear an aircraft to a fix other than the destination airport, issue the following: clearance limit, holding instructions, and EFC (See 7110.65).	4-17
T3.3.2.4	DETERMINE AIRCRAFT IS READY FOR DEPARTURE FROM GATE	FOA 12-1231- 00	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1231- 04	(4) When the IFR clearance is issued on CD frequency, the aircraft is changed to GC for taxi clearance.	12- 6
T3.3.2.60	ISSUE NOTICE TO PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR GROUND CONTROL OR TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 17- 00	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER	2- 5

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.2.60 (cont'd)	ISSUE NOTICE TO PILOT TO CONTACT/ MONITOR GROUND CONTROL OR TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER	ATC 2- 17- Ø1	a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- Ø2	b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- Ø3	(1) The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- Ø4	Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility except as required in 5-157.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- Ø5	(2) Frequency to use except the following may be omitted: FSS frequency, departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued, ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.	2- 5
		ATC 2- 17- Ø6	(3) Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.	2- 5
		FOA 12-1231- ØC	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1231- Ø4	(4) When the IFR clearance is issued on CD frequency, the aircraft is changed to GC for taxi clearance.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- ØN	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- Ø4	(4) GC/ CD frequency is to be monitored by the pilot and issued a new proposed engine start time if the delay changes.	12- 7
T3.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 8- 27- Ø1	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- Ø3	c. Upon request, the ATC facility shall expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ARTCF.	8- 6
T3.3.3.2	PERCEIVE PRESENCE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 8- 20- Ø0	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- Ø1	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.3	INFORM OTHERS OF SPECIAL OPERATION	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1
		ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 03	c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.	2- 3
		ATC 8- 80- 00	COORDINATION	8-17
		ATC 8- 80- 01	Coordinate any pertinent information prior to and at the end of each parachute jump or series of jumps which begins or ends in your area of jurisdiction with other effected ATC facilities/ sectors.	8-17
		ATC 9- 61- 00	DUTCH AND ASPEN AIRCRAFT	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 02	d. Forward the report verbatim to the associated center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 00	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 02	Relay the explosive cargo information to. the emergency equipment crew, airport management, and appropriate military agencies when requested by the pilot.	9-13
		ATC 9- 70- 00	INFORMATION RELAY	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 01	When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued.	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 02	c. Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the center within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as an NOTAM.	9-14
T3.3.3.4	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 02	a. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (LIFEGUARD).	2- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 2- 4- 03	o. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 05	a. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 06	b. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 07	c. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check and SAFI aircraft.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 08	d. Expedite the movement of Presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 09	e. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NEACP is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 10	f. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 11	g. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 12	h. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP".	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 13	j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.	2- 2
		ATC 2- 4- 14	k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ ground communications.	2- 2
		ATC 8- 3- 00	FLIGHT CHECK AND SAFI AIRCRAFT	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 02	b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.	8- 1

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 8- 3- 03	c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in excess of holding times specified in the flight plan except to preclude emergency situations.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 3- 04	d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.	8- 1
		ATC 8- 12- 00	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 01	a. If an aircraft of a communist-controlled country makes an emergency or unscheduled landing in the United States, immediately alert the ARTCC/ controller-in-charge of the shift and notify the nearest U.S. Customs Service Office and the appropriate ARTCC.	8- 3
		ATC 8- 12- 02	b. Provide the following information to the organizations specified in paragraph 8-12a(1), (2), (3), and (4) if available: (1) Type of aircraft, (2) Country of aircraft registry, (3) Destination airport, (4) Nature of emergency or reason for landing, as appropriate.	8- 3
		ATC 8- 20- 00	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 20- 01	a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when: (See 7110.65).	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 00	EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS	8- 4
		ATC 8- 23- 01	a. When notified that an experimental aircraft requires special handling, clear the aircraft according to pilot requests as traffic permits and if not contrary to ATC procedures and, once approved, do not ask the pilot to deviate from a planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.	8- 4
		ATC 8- 24- 00	FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS	8- 5
		ATC 8- 24- 01	When coordinated in advance and traffic permits, approve requests for special flight procedures from aircraft participating in FAA research and development test activities. These special procedures shall be applied to participating aircraft/ vehicles.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 25- 00	FLYNET	8- 5

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 8- 25- 01	Provide expeditious handling for civil or military aircraft using the code name "Flynet." Relay the code name as an element in the remarks position of the flight plan.	8- 5
		ATC 8- 27- 00	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- 01	Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAH 7610.4.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 27- 02	b. ATC services shall be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.	8- 6
		ATC 8- 35- 00	SAC MITO OPERATIONS	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 01	a. Control MITO operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between MITO aircraft until approved separation is established by the aircraft and acknowledged for by ATC.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 02	b. Provide aircraft with at least the requested takeoff interval between departures as specified in a letter of agreement covering the MITO operation.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 03	c. Issue takeoff clearance on the departure frequency established in accordance with one of the following in the order listed: (See 7110.65).	8- 9
		ATC 8- 35- 04	d. Clear aircraft which will use MITO procedures, then fly in formation en route, to the breakup fix as the clearance limit.	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 00	SAMP	8- 9
		ATC 8- 36- 01	Provide special handling to USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions. Honor inflight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation ... (See 7110.65)	8-10
		ATC 9- 60- 00	NAVY FLEET SUPPORT MISSIONS	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 01	When you receive information concerning an emergency to a U.S. Navy "Special Flight Number" aircraft, do the following:	9-13

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 60- 02	a. Handle Navy Fleet Support Mission aircraft as follows: Inform the nearest center of all the pertinent information.	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 03	b. Relay the words "Special Flight Number" followed by the number given as part of the routine IFR flight information.	9-13
		ATC 9- 60- 04	c. Honor pilot requests for changes to route, altitude, and destination whenever possible.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 00	DUTCH AND ASPEN AIRCRAFT	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 01	If an aircraft (USAF YF-12A or SR-71) using the call sign "Dutch" or Aspen" reports inflight difficulty or declares an emergency (by direct communications or relay from another facility), in addition to normal emergency handling of the aircraft, take the following action:	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 02	d. Forward the report verbatim to the associated center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 03	e. Comply with all requests from the pilot or the center.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 04	f. Contact the center area manager if there is any question regarding action to be taken.	9-13
		ATC 9- 61- 05	g. Do not discuss actions taken in regard to these aircraft with other than authorized personnel.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 00	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 01	When you receive information that an emergency landing will be made with explosive cargo aboard, inform the pilot of the safest or least congested airport areas.	9-13
		ATC 9- 62- 02	Relay the explosive cargo information to: the emergency equipment crew, airport management, and appropriate military agencies when requested by the pilot.	9-13
		ATC 9- 70- 00	INFORMATION RELAY	9-14
		ATC 9- 70- 01	When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued.	9-14

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.3.4 (cont'd)	CONDUCT SPECIAL OPERATION ACTIONS	ATC 9- 70- 02	c. Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the center within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as an NOTAM.	9-14
		ATC 9- 71- 00	IFR AND SPECIAL VFR MINIMA	9-14
		ATC 9- 71- 01	Reroute IFR and Special VFR aircraft as necessary to avoid the emergency location by one of the following minima or by greater minima when suggested by the notifying official: (See 7110.65).	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- 00	VFR MINIMA	9-14
		ATC 9- 72- 01	Advise all known VFR aircraft which are, or will be operating in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency to avoid the emergency location by 1 mile laterally or 6,000 feet vertically, or by a greater distance or altitude when suggested by the notifying official.	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- 00	SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE	9-14
		ATC 9- 73- 01	Advise all aircraft to avoid any observed smoke columns in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency.	9-14
		FOA 6- 600- 00	SPECIAL FLIGHT HANDLING (See 7210.3).	6- 1
		FOA 6- 640- 00	FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS (See 7210.3).	6- 7
		FOA 6- 650- 00	PARACHUTES AND BALLOONS	6-10
T3.3.4.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 01	a. When a pilot reports an in-flight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
		FOA 6- 600- 00	SPECIAL FLIGHT HANDLING (See 7210.3).	6- 1
T3.3.4.2	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 10- 00	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	3- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.4.2 (cont'd)	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	ATC 3- 10- 01	When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.	3- 3
T3.3.4.4	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 9- 3- 00	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1
		ATC 9- 3- 01	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 02	b. When you receive information about an aircraft in distress, forward detailed data to the center in whose area the emergency exists.	9- 2
		ATC 9- 15- 00	EMERGENCY SITUATIONS	9- 3
		ATC 9- 15- 01	Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC and alert the DF Net.	9- 3
		ATC 9- 16- 00	INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC	9- 4
		ATC 9- 16- 01	When an aircraft is considered to be overdue or in emergency status, alert the ARTCC and forward the following information as available: (See 7110.65).	9- 4
		ATC 9- 27- 00	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	9- 6
		ATC 9- 27- 01	a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager.	9- 6

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.4.4 (cont'd)	FORWARD SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR/ ANOTHER CONTROLLER	ATC 9- 27- 05	c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.	9- 7
T3.3.4.5	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR OF ABNORMAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	ATC 3- 10- 00	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	3- 3
		ATC 3- 10- 01	When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.	3 3
		ATC 3- 21- 00	WARNING SIGNAL	3- 4
		ATC 3- 21- 02	b. Direct a general warning signal to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when mechanical trouble exists of which the pilot might not be aware.	3- 4
T3.3.4.7	CONDUCT RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	ATC 9- 5- 00	COORDINATION	9- 2
		ATC 9- 5- 01	Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.	9- 2
T3.3.4.11	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	ATC 2- 7- 00	IN-FLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	2- 3
		ATC 2- 7- 02	b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.	2- 3
		ATC 9- 3- 00	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	9- 1
		ATC 9- 3- 01	Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the FCC, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 00	RESPONSIBILITY	9- 1
		ATC 9- 4- 01	a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.	9- 1
		FOA 2- 207- 00	AIRPORT EMERGENCY PLANS	2- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.3.4.11 (cont'd)	INFORM DESIGNATED PERSONNEL OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	FOA 2- 207- 04	e. After alerting the emergency equipment, notify only the local aircraft operator or his representative and the airport management.	2- 3
T3.3.4.60	REVIEW CONTINGENCY CHECKLIST ON STATIC RECORD	ATC 2- 4- 00	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	2- 1
		ATC 2- 4- 03	a. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/ air taxi flight.	2- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 00	OBTAINING INFORMATION	9- 1
		ATC 9- 2- 01	Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by FAR 91 to determine a course of action.	9- 1
T3.3.5.3	ENTER DEPARTURE MESSAGE	ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 02	b. Computer acceptance of an appropriate input message fulfills the requirement for sending amended data.	2-11
		ATC 4- 26- 00	COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY	4- 9
		ATC 4- 26- 02	b. The actual departure time or a subsequent strip posting time shall be forwarded to the receiving facility unless assumed departure times are agreed upon and that time is within 3 minutes of the actual departure time.	4- 9
		ATC 4- 28- 00	FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES	4- 9
		ATC 4- 28- 01	Unless alternate procedures are prescribed in a letter or agreement or automatic departure messages are being transmitted between automated facilities, forward departure times to the facility from which you received the clearance and also to the terminal departure controller (See 7110.65).	4- 9
T3.3.5.4	REMOVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTED AIRCRAFT	ATC 2- 50- 00	GENERAL	2-13
		ATC 2- 50- 04	b. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes.	2-13

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.4.1.3	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION (E.G., EDCT, GATE HOLD)	FOA 12-1232- 00	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- 03	(3) The operator has the final authority to decide whether to absorb the delay at the gate, have the aircraft towed to another area, or taxi to a delay absorbing area.	12- 7
T3.4.1.5	DISCUSS TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION PROCEDURES WITH CONTROLLER/ PILOT	ATC 3-101- 00	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN NOT APPLICABLE	3-19
		ATC 3-101- 01	When gate-hold procedures are in effect, issue the following departure delay information as appropriate: the time at which the pilot can expect to receive engine startup advisory, and when to start engines.	3-19
		FOA 12-1231- 00	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1231- 03	(3) The IFR clearance or the delay information should be issued at the time of initial callup.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- 00	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- 01	Gate hold procedures and departure delay information are made available to all pilots prior to engine startup.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- 02	(1) Pilots shall contact GC/ CD prior to starting engines to receive start time.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1232- 03	(3) The operator has the final authority to decide whether to absorb the delay at the gate, have the aircraft towed to another area, or taxi to a delay absorbing area.	12- 7
T3.4.1.6	INFORM PILOT OF ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME	ATC 3-101- 00	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN NOT APPLICABLE	3-19
		ATC 3-101- 01	When gate-hold procedures are in effect, issue the following departure delay information as appropriate: the time at which the pilot can expect to receive engine startup advisory, and when to start engines.	3-19
		ATC 4- 23- 00	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	4- 8

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.4.1.6 (cont'd)	INFORM PILOT OF ESTIMATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME	ATC 4-23-09	d. When controlled departure time (CDT) procedures are in effect, the departure terminal shall, to the extent possible, plan the ground movement of aircraft destined to the delay airport/ airports so that the flight can depart as near as possible to its expected departure clearance time (EDCT).	4-8
		FOA 12-1231-00	PRETAXI CLEARANCE PROCEDURES	12-6
		FOA 12-1231-03	(3) The IFR clearance or the delay information should be issued at the time of initial callup.	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-00	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-01	Gate hold procedures and departure delay information are made available to all pilots prior to engine startup.	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-02	(1) Pilots shall contact GC/ CD prior to starting engines to receive start time.	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-03	(3) The operator has the final authority to decide whether to absorb the delay at the gate, have the aircraft towed to another area, or taxi to a delay absorbing area.	12-7
T3.4.1.8	ENTER TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION ON ATIS MESSAGE	FOA 12-1230-00	AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS)	12-6
		FOA 12-1230-01	a. ATIS provides advance noncontrol airport and terminal area operational and meteorological information for use by aircraft arriving and departing an airport and operating within the terminal area.	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-00	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-01	Gate hold procedures and departure delay information are made available to all pilots prior to engine startup.	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-02	(1) Pilots shall contact GC/ CD prior to starting engines to receive start time.	12-6
T3.4.1.60	FORWARD TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION TO SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER/ PILOT	FOA 12-1232-00	GATE HOLD PROCEDURES	12-6
		FOA 12-1232-03	(3) The operator has the final authority to decide whether to absorb the delay at the gate, have the aircraft towed to another area, or taxi to a delay absorbing area.	12-7

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.4.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION CANCELLATION	ATC 3-101- 00	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION - USA/ USAF/ USN NOT APPLICABLE	3-19
		ATC 3-101- 03	d. Advise all aircraft on GC/FD frequency upon termination of gate hold procedures.	3-19
T3.5.1.1	REVIEW ATIS RECORDING	ATC 2-125- 00	APPLICATION	2-33
		ATC 2-125- 03	b. Before being transmitted, the tape shall be reviewed for completeness, accuracy, speech rate, and proper enunciation.	2-33
		FOA 2- 285- 00	BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 01	Terminal and FSS facilities at airports with field elevations of 2,000 feet MSL or higher shall broadcast a density altitude advisory to departing GA aircraft whenever the temperature reaches a certain level.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 02	These broadcasts shall be made on GC, CD, airport advisory, TWEB, or ATIS as appropriate.	2-19
		FOA 12-1230- 00	AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS)	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 02	a. It is accomplished by a controller-prepared tape recording which is repetitively broadcast on a voice outlet.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 03	b. Assign ATIS responsibilities to specific positions of operation. These shall include updating the tape Broadcasts and disseminating current messages to pertinent positions of operation.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 04	c. Before being transmitted, the tape shall be reviewed to ensure that the content is complete and accurate, the speech rate does not exceed 100 words a minute, the enunciation is of the highest quality, and each part of the message is easily understood.	12- 6
T3.5.1.2	UPDATE ATIS RECORDING	ATC 2-125- 00	APPLICATION	2-33
		ATC 2-125- 02	a. Identify each message by a phonetic letter code word at both the beginning and the end of the message except where omissions are required because of special programs or equipment.	2-33

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.5.1.2 (cont'd)	UPDATE ATIS RECORDING	ATC 2-125- Ø4	c. When arrival and departure messages are broadcast separately, each message need only contain information appropriate for that operation.	2-33
		ATC 2-126- Ø0	OPERATING PROCEDURES	2-33
		ATC 2-126- Ø1	a. Make a new recording when any of the following occur: (See 7110.65).	2-33
		ATC 2-126- Ø3	b. Rapidly changing conditions will be issued by ATC, and the ATIS will contain the following: "latest ceiling/ visibility/ altimeter/ wind/ (other conditions) will be issued by approach control/ tower."	2-33
		ATC 2-127- Ø0	CONTENT	2-33
		ATC 2-127- Ø1	Include the following in ATIS broadcast as appropriate: (See 7110.65).	2-33
		ATC 3- 8- Ø0	LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES	3- 2
		ATC 3- 8- Ø1	When low level wind shear is reported by pilots or detected on a LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (LLWAS), a statement shall be included on the ATIS for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear.	3- 2
		ATC 3- 34- Ø0	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	3- 6
		ATC 3- 34- Ø1	a. When runway braking action reports are received from pilots or the airport management which include the terms "poor" or "nil" or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway conditions, include on the ATIS broadcast the statement "Braking ...(See 7110.65).	3- 6
		FOA 2- 285- Ø0	BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- Ø1	Terminal and FSS facilities at airports with field elevations of 2,000 feet MSL or higher shall broadcast a density altitude advisory to departing GA aircraft whenever the temperature reaches a certain level.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- Ø2	These broadcasts shall be made on GC, CD, airport advisory, TWEB, or ATIS as appropriate.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- Ø3	Use the following table to determine broadcast applicability: (See 7210.3).	2-19

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.5.1.2 (cont'd)	UPDATE ATIS RECORDING	FOA 12-1222- 00	LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (LLWAS)	12- 3
		FOA 12-1222- 02	(b) Use wind information derived from the centerfield source for ATIS broadcasts when issuing weather surface wind to departing aircraft.	12- 3
		FOA 12-1230- 00	AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS)	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 02	a. It is accomplished by a controller-prepared tape recording which is repetitively broadcast on a voice outlet.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 03	b. Assign ATIS responsibilities to specific positions of operation. These shall include updating the tape Broadcasts and disseminating current messages to pertinent positions of operation.	12- 6
		FOA 12-1230- 06	f. Part-time towers that have ATIS capabilities should record for continuous broadcast the following information during hours of nonoperation: (See 7210.3).	12- 6
T3.5.1.4	OBSERVE WEATHER CONDITIONS	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T3.5.1.5	RECORD WEATHER OBSERVATION OR NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	FOA 2- 270- 00	WEATHER/ VISIBILITY OBSERVATIONS	2-16
		FOA 2- 270- 01	a. At facilities where AT personnel take weather/ visibility observations, use the Federal Meteorological Handbook, Abridged, FMH-1, Surface Observations, as the basic source of instructions for taking and recording surface weather/ visibility observations. At LAWRS facilities, ... (See 7210.3).	2-16
T3.5.1.6a	DISSEMINATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-26
		ATC 2-102- 05	e. Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the appropriate intrafacility positions, the FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained, other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non-FAA facilities.	2-28

Task to Procedure Traceability Matrix

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.5.1.60 (cont'd)	DISSEMINATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	ATC 2-105- 00	REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS	2-29
		ATC 2-105- 02	(2) Forward tower visibility observations to the weather observer.	2-29
		ATC 2-105- 03	(3) Notify the weather observer when the tower observes the prevailing visibility to decrease to less than 4 miles or increase to 4 miles or more.	2-29
		ATC 2-105- 04	b. Forward current weather changes to the appropriate control facility as follows: (See 7110.65).	2-30
		ATC 2-105- 05	c. Towers at airports where military turbo-jet en route descents are routinely conducted shall also report the conditions to the ARTCC even if it is not the controlling facility.	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T3.5.1.61	FORMULATE WEATHER/ AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION FOR DISTRIBUTION	ATC 2-102- 00	PIREP INFORMATION	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 04	d. (1) Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.	2-28
		ATC 2-102- 05	e. Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the appropriate intrafacility positions, the FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained, other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non-FAA facilities.	2-28
T3.5.1.62	RECEIVE WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-29
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
T3.5.1.64	ISSUE WEATHER ADVISORY TO PILOT	ATC 2-101- 00	SIGMET OR CWA ALERT	2-28

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.5.1.64 (cont'd)	ISSUE WEATHER ADVISORY TO PILOT	ATC 2-101- 04	c. Include the following information in SIGMET and CWA broadcasts: (See 7110 65;	2-28
		ATC 2-103- 00	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 02	Provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas when requested by the pilot.	2-29
		ATC 2-103- 03	(1) Issue weather and chaff information by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.	2-29
		ATC 2-106- 00	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	2-30
		ATC 2-106- 01	a. General weather information which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.	2-30
		FOA 2- 285- 00	BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 01	Terminal and FSS facilities at airports with field elevations of 2,000 feet MSL or higher shall broadcast a density altitude advisory to departing GA aircraft whenever the temperature reaches a certain level.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 02	These broadcasts shall be made on GC, CD, airport advisory, TWEB, or ATIS as appropriate.	2-19
		FOA 2- 285- 03	Use the following table to determine broadcast applicability: (See 7210.3).	2-19
T3.6.1.1	BRIEF RELIEVING CONTROLLER	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.6.1.3	VERIFY COMPLETENESS OF RELIEF BRIEFING RECEIPT	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 01	c. Specialists manning the positions identified under paragraph 222b, requiring the maintenance of operational continuity, shall conduct a position relief briefing in accordance with the ATC Handbook 7110.65, Appendix C, Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
		FOA 2- 222- 02	(1) The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/ she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either: (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T3.6.1.60	SIGN OFF ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8
		FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T3.6.2.2	RECEIVE CONTROLLER RELIEF BRIEFING	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T3.6.2.3	CHECK DISPLAY FOR PROPER CONFIGURATION, USABILITY, AND SATISFACTORY STATUS	FOA 2- 277- 00	RVV AND RVR EQUIPMENT	2-16
		FOA 2- 277- 02	(1) Verify accuracy with other displays in the facility when any meter and/ or readout malfunction is suspected.	2-16
T3.6.2.7	REVIEW SYSTEM STATUS TO DETERMINE CURRENCY/ UPDATE SELF	FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T3.6.2.8	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	ATC 2-100- 00	FAMILIARIZATION	2-28

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
T3.6.2.8 (cont'd)	REVIEW CURRENT AND PROJECTED TRAFFIC STATUS/ WEATHER	ATC 2-100- 01	Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform air traffic control duties.	2-29
		FOA 2- 222- 00	DUTY FAMILIARIZATION AND THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	2- 7
		FOA 2- 222- 03	(2) The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and the accuracy of the position relief briefing.	2- 8
T3.6.2.60	SIGN ON LOG	FOA 2- 224- 00	SIGN OFF/ ON PROCEDURES	2- 8
		FOA 2- 224- 01	b. The relieving specialist shall complete FAA Form 7230-10, "Position Log," to indicate responsibility for a specific position. FAA Form 7230-4, "Daily Record of Facility Operation/ Personnel Log," may be used in lieu of the Position Log when position responsibility can be ... (See 7210.3).	2- 8
T3.7.1.60	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	ATC 2- 40- 00	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	2-11
		ATC 2- 40- 01	a. Forward any amending data concerning previously forwarded flight plans except that revisions to ETA information in 2-35a(3) need only be forwarded when the time differs by more than 3 minutes from the estimate given.	2-11
		ATC 2- 57- 00	AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX	2-17
		ATC 2- 57- 02	b. When forwarding this information, state the aircraft type followed by the word "slant" and the appropriate phonetic letter equivalent of the suffix.	2-17
		FOA 2- 233- 00	STATUS OF SERVICE	2- 9
		FOA 2- 233- 03	d. If a collocated FSS operates when the tower is closed, pertinent flight data shall be exchanged before the tower opens/ closes.	2- 9
T3.7.1.61	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	FOA 2- 233- 00	STATUS OF SERVICE	2- 9
		FOA 2- 233- 03	d. If a collocated FSS operates when the tower is closed, pertinent flight data shall be exchanged before the tower opens/ closes.	2- 9
T3.7.4.6	FORWARD NOTICE OF COMMUNICATION STATUS	ATC 2- 9- 00	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	2- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Procedure Number	Procedure	Page No.
73.7.4.6 (cont'd)	FORWARD NOTICE of COMMUNICATION STATUS	ATC 2- 9- 8*	Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.	2- 3

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T1	LOCAL CONTROLLER	
T1.1.2.12	CONTACT OTHER CONTROLLER TO DETERMINE PILOT INTENTIONS	VC
T1.1.3.12	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R/A
T1.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R
T1.1.3.62	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGES	E
T1.1.3.64	OBSERVE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATORS FOR CHANGES	R
T1.1.3.67	FORWARD AIRPORT/ EQUIPMENT STATUS RECORD	E
T1.1.4.1	OFFSET A DATA BLOCK	E
T1.1.4.60	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER TO DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM	E
T1.1.4.63	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY	E
T1.1.4.65	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E
T1.2.1.3	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT SITUATION DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.2.1.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT TO SUPERVISOR	VC
T1.2.2.2	DETECT MSAW INDICATION OR ALARM	R
T1.2.2.3	DETERMINE POTENTIAL LOW ALTITUDE SITUATION	R/A
T1.2.2.4	DETERMINE VALIDITY OF LOW ALTITUDE NOTICE OR MSAW INDICATION	A
T1.2.2.10	OBSERVE FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.2.2.11	OBSERVE BRITE DISPLAY FOR FIXED OBSTRUCTIONS/ TERRAIN THAT MAY INTERFERE WITH AIRCRAFT FLIGHT	R/A
T1.2.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF VALID MSAW OR FLIGHT ASSIST TO SUPERVISOR	VC
T1.2.3.1	OBSERVE POTENTIAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.2.3.2	DETERMINE APPROPRIATE ACTION TO RESOLVE AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	A
T1.2.3.6	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T1.2.3.7	RECEIVE CONTROLLER NOTICE OF POTENTIAL AIRSPACE CONFLICT	VC
T1.2.3.9	ISSUE CONTROL INSTRUCTION FOR GROUND MOVEMENT	VC
T1.2.3.60	INFORM CONTROLLER OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION	VC
T1.2.3.61	FORWARD NOTICE OF POTENTIAL/ ACTUAL AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA VIOLATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC
T1.2.4.1	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.2.4.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT/ CLEARANCE/ CONTROL INSTRUCTION	A
T1.2.4.3	FORMULATE ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT CONTENT	A
T1.2.4.4	ISSUE ADVISORY IN REGARD TO UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC
T1.2.4.5	OBSERVE MANEUVER DIRECTLY IN RESPONSE TO ADVISORY/ SAFETY ALERT	R/A
T1.2.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF SITUATION RETURNED TO NORMAL	VC
T1.2.4.7	RECEIVE REPORT OF AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE ABNORMALITY	VC
T1.2.4.8	ADVISE APPROPRIATE CONTROLLER OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC
T1.2.4.9	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF UNSAFE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONDITION	VC

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T1.2.5.62	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RESTORE ALERT FUNCTION	VC
T1.2.5.63	RESTORE SPECIFIC ALERT FUNCTION TO NORMAL	E
T1.3.1.4	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.3.1.7	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.3.1.62	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T1.3.1.63	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF AIRBORNE DEVIATION	VC
T1.3.2.2	OBSERVE DIRECTLY AN AIRCRAFT AWAITING TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	R/A
T1.3.2.3	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR TAKEOFF	VC
T1.3.2.13	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE	VC/A
T1.3.2.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R
T1.3.2.63	RECEIVE RELEASE FOR DEPARTURE AND AMENDED CLEARANCE AS NECESSARY	VC
T1.3.2.64	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R
T1.3.3.2	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR LANDING INSTRUCTIONS	VC
T1.3.3.16	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT GROUND CONTROL	VC
T1.3.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R
T1.3.4.6	INFORM PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC
T1.3.5.2	DETERMINE IMPACT OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA RESTRICTION ON AIRCRAFT MOVEMENT	A
T1.3.5.3	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS RESTRICTING AIRCRAFT ACTIVITY IN AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA AFFECTED BY RESTRICTION	VC
T1.3.7.2	DISCUSS RELEASE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA WITH SUPERVISOR/ OTHER CONTROLLER	A/VC
T1.3.7.6	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY	R/A
T1.3.7.62	FORWARD DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF AIRSPACE/ MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T1.3.8.4	CHOOSE DESIRED DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	A
T1.3.8.5	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	A
T1.3.8.7	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	A
T1.3.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	VC
T1.3.8.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	R
T1.3.8.62	REVIEW RECORD OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTIONS FOR EFFECT ON SEQUENCE	R/A
T1.3.8.63	REVIEW FLIGHT STRIP BAY TO OPTIMIZE DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A
T1.3.9.3	ISSUE GO AROUND	VC
T1.3.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TAKEOFF	VC
T1.3.9.63	INFORM CONTROLLER OF MISSED APPROACH/ GO AROUND/ TOUCH-AND-GO/ STOP-AND-GO	VC
T1.3.10.3	OBSERVE ABORTED TAKEOFF DIRECTLY	R/A
T1.3.10.5	RECEIVE PILOT NOTICE OF ABORTED TAKEOFF	VC
T1.3.10.60	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER CONTROLLER	E
T1.4.1.4	RECEIVE TCA/ TRSA/ ARSA REQUEST FROM PILOT	VC

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T1.4.1.11	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE	R/A
T1.4.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE REQUEST TO ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC
T1.4.2.11	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC
T1.4.2.13	OBSERVE TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	R/A
T1.4.2.65	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC
T1.4.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC
T1.4.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC
T1.4.4.60	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR REMINDER ACTION	E
T1.4.4.61	RECEIVE CONTROLLER ADVICE OF UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC
T1.4.4.62	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E
T1.4.4.63	INFORM CONTROLLER UNABLE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC
T1.4.4.64	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT	E
T1.4.6.6	RETRACT HANDOFF	E/A/VC
T1.4.7.60	INITIATE POINTOUT	A/VC
T1.4.9.6	VERIFY AIRCRAFT COMPLIANCE WITH CLEARANCE	R/A
T1.4.9.60	APPROVE CLEARANCE REQUEST	VC
T1.5.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION	VC
T1.5.1.61	RECEIVE WEATHER ADVISORY FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR/ NWS/ OTHER SOURCE	VC/R
T1.5.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC
T1.5.2.1	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC
T1.5.2.8	DETERMINE WHETHER RUNWAY CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED	A
T1.5.2.61	RECEIVE WEATHER REPORT/ UPDATE	R/VC/E
T1.5.2.66	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES	E
T1.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A
T1.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC
T1.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC
T1.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC
T1.6.3.63	REQUEST CHANGE OF AIRPORT ACCEPTANCE RATE	VC
T1.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC
T1.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS	VC
T1.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E
T1.6.5.61	DENY REQUEST TO MANIPULATE AIRPORT LIGHTING SYSTEM	VC
T1.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA	R/A
T1.7.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION	R
T1.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC/R

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T1.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A
T1.7.3.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS FAILURE	VC/R
T1.7.3.64	RECEIVE CONFIRMATION OF COMPUTER ACTION DURING TRANSITION STAGES	VC
T1.7.4.1	DETECT NAVAID FAILURE	R/A
T1.7.5.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	VC/A
T1.7 5.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E
T1.7.5.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E
T1.7.5.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC
T1.7.5.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC
T1.7.5.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	VC
T1.7.5.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	VC
T1.7.7.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/A
T1.7.7.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T1.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC
T1.7.7.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T1.7.9.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	R/VC
T1.7.9.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC
T1.7.9.62	REVERT TO ARTS STAND-ALONE MODE AND MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A
T1.7.9.63	DETECT HOST FAILURE	R/A

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T2	GROUND CONTROLLER	
T2.1.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC
T2.1.1.6	REQUEST PILOT/ OPERATOR POSITION REPORT	VC
T2.1.2.1	DETERMINE IF POTENTIAL AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE CONFLICT EXISTS	A
T2.1.3.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R
T2.1.3.62	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMANT STATUS INDICATOR CHANGE	R
T2.1.3.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	E
T2.1.3.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS CHANGE	E
T2.1.4.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	E
T2.1.4.63	UPDATE/REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E
T2.2.1.60	OBSERVE EDCT IN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R
T2.2.2.1	OBSERVE GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION DIRECTLY	R/A
T2.2.2.5	DETERMINE NEW POSITION FOR AIRCRAFT IN GROUND TRAFFIC SEQUENCE	A
T2.2.2.6	DETERMINE MANEUVER TO ESTABLISH/ RESTORE SEQUENCE	A
T2.2.2.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO RECOVER FROM GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T2.2.2.10	OBSERVE AIRCRAFT/ VEHICLE RESUMING CONFORMANCE DIRECTLY	R/A
T2.2.2.12	INFORM OTHER GROUND TRAFFIC OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T2.2.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T2.2.2.61	INFORM OTHER CONTROLLER/ SUPERVISOR OF GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T2.2.2.62	QUERY PILOT/ VEHICLE OPERATOR/ CONTROLLER REGARDING GROUND TRAFFIC DEVIATION	VC
T2.2.3.9	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS FOR PUSHBACK/ POWERBACK	VC
T2.2.3.17	PROJECT GROUND TRAFFIC FOR POTENTIAL CONFLICT WITH DEPARTING AIRCRAFT	A
T2.2.3.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT	R/A
T2.2.3.62	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP/ RECORD MANUALLY	E
T2.2.3.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO LOCAL CONTROLLER	E
T2.2.3.64	RECORD TAXI START TIME	E
T2.2.4.5	ISSUE INSTRUCTIONS TO DIVERT TRAFFIC AROUND CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.4.61	RECORD MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE	E
T2.2.4.62	REQUEST RELEASE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.4.63	RECEIVE RELEASE/ USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.4.64	RECEIVE DENIAL OF USE OF CLOSED MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.4.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF MOVEMENT AREA STATUS CHANGE	R
T2.2.5.2	DETERMINE NEED FOR TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA UNDER OTHER CONTROL	A
T2.2.5.10	DENY GROUND MOVEMENT REQUEST	VC
T2.2.5.12	DETERMINE GROUND MOVEMENT COMPLETED	A

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T2.2.5.61	RECEIVE DELAY OF TEMPORARY RELEASE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.5.62	RECEIVE DENIAL OF TEMPORARY USE OF MOVEMENT AREA	VC
T2.2.6.3	EVALUATE FEASIBILITY OF RELEASING MOVEMENT AREA TEMPORARILY	A
T2.2.7.5	EVALUATE MEANS OF ACCOMMODATING RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	A
T2.2.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	VC
T2.2.7.61	OBSERVE RECORD OF RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY USAGE CHANGE	R/A
T2.2.8.1	OBSERVE DIRECTLY A MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	R/A
T2.2.8.4	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT PROGRESS THROUGH MOVEMENT AREA DIRECTLY	R/A
T2.2.8.5	OBSERVE NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT ON ASDE DISPLAY	R/A
T2.2.8.6	RECEIVE REPORT UPDATE OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT MOVEMENT	VC
T2.2.8.7	REQUEST RESPONSE FROM PILOT/ OPERATOR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC
T2.2.8.8	INFORM PILOT/ OPERATOR WHEN CLEAR OF NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC
T2.2.8.10	REQUEST ASSISTANCE FROM OTHER SOURCES TO ESTABLISH CONTACT WITH NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC
T2.2.8.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF MOVEMENT AREA INTRUSION BY NON-CONTROLLED OBJECT	VC
T2.3.1.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE	VC
T2.3.1.2	REVIEW POTENTIAL IMPEDIMENTS FOR IMPACT ON PROPOSED CLEARANCE	R/A
T2.3.1.10	INFORM PILOT TO REFILE FLIGHT PLAN	VC
T2.3.1.11	REQUEST CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC
T2.3.1.12	RECEIVE CLEARANCE APPROVAL FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC
T2.3.1.13	RECEIVE CLEARANCE DISAPPROVAL/ DENIAL FROM LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC
T2.3.1.14	RECEIVE ALTERNATE SUGGESTION FOR CLEARANCE/ APPROVAL REQUESTED OF LOCAL CONTROLLER	VC
T2.3.1.60	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	R
T2.3.1.61	DIRECT PILOT TO CONTACT CLEARANCE DELIVERY	VC
T2.3.1.62	ISSUE AMENDED CLEARANCE	VC
T2.3.1.63	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA FOR AMENDMENT	E
T2.3.2.62	REQUEST RAMP SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	VC
T2.3.2.66	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC
T2.3.2.67	OBSERVE POSITION OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R/A
T2.3.2.68	RECORD NECESSARY EMERGENCY/ SPECIAL INFORMATION	E
T2.3.2.71	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC
T2.3.2.72	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R/A
T2.3.3.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC
T2.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	R/VC
T2.3.4.1	OBSERVE DEPARTURE AIRCRAFT IN PROPER POSITION IN DEPARTURE SEQUENCE	R/A
T2.3.5.2	OBSERVE AIRBORNE AIRCRAFT DIRECTLY	R

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T2.3.5.61	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP OF ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT	R
T2.3.5.62	RECEIVE ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT DATA AS LAST AIRCRAFT TO LAND	R
T2.3.6.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R
T2.3.6.63	INFORM AFFECTED POSITION OF FLIGHT DATA CHANGE	VC
T2.3.6.64	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER CONTROLLER	VC
T2.4.1.6	OBSERVE SIGNIFICANT AERONAUTICAL AND METEOROLOGICAL DATA	R
T2.4.1.8	DETERMINE WHETHER ANOTHER CONTROLLER OR PILOT NEEDS WEATHER ADVISORY	A
T2.4.1.60	REQUEST WEATHER INFORMATION	VC
T2.4.1.63	FORWARD WEATHER INFORMATION TO SUPERVISOR	VC
T2.4.2.7	DISCUSS ACTIONS TO RESPOND TO RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CHANGE	VC
T2.4.2.63	RECEIVE RUNWAY/ TAXIWAY CONDITION DATA	R/VC
T2.4.2.68	RECORD AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES	E
T2.5.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL PREFERENCE	E
T2.5.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A
T2.5.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC
T2.5.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC
T2.5.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC
T2.5.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC
T2.5.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSITIONS	VC
T2.5.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E
T2.6.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF INPUT DATA	R/A
T2.6.1.60	RECEIVE DATA MANUALLY FORWARDED FROM OTHER POSITION	R
T2.6.1.61	FORWARD DATA MANUALLY TO OTHER POSITION	E
T2.6.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC
T2.6.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A
T2.6.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	VC/A
T2.6.4.3	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E
T2.6.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E
T2.6.4.60	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC
T2.6.4.61	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC
T2.6.4.63	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	VC
T2.6.4.64	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	VC
T2.6.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/R
T2.6.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T2.6.5.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T2.6.5.61	REQUEST COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T2.6.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	R/A
T2.6.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	R/VC
T2.6.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC
T2.6.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T5	CLEARANCE DELIVERY/ FLIGHT DATA	
T3.1.1.11	OBSERVE AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DIRECTLY	R/A
T3.1.1.60	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R
T3.1.1.61	OBSERVE AIRPORT LIGHTING AND EQUIPMENT STATUS INDICATOR FOR CHANGE	VC
T3.1.1.63	RECEIVE NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA	R/VC
T3.1.1.65	RECORD AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE	E
T3.1.1.66	ENTER AIRPORT/ SYSTEM EQUIPMENT STATUS DATA CHANGE MESSAGE	E
T3.1.2.60	RECORD CONTROLLER NOTE	E
T3.1.2.63	UPDATE/ REVISE CONTROLLER NOTE	E
T3.1.2.65	DROP FLIGHT PLAN AND TRACK FROM ATC SYSTEM	E
T3.2.1.1	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN FROM PILOT	VC
T3.2.1.5	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY FORWARDED	VC
T3.2.1.8	FORWARD FLIGHT PLAN VERBALLY	VC
T3.2.2.1	RECEIVE PILOT REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC
T3.2.2.3	DETERMINE NEED FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	A
T3.2.2.60	RECEIVE CONTROLLER REQUEST FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC
T3.2.2.61	QUERY PILOT/ CONTROLLER ON FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	VC
T3.2.2.62	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER CONTROLLER FOR FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT	R
T3.2.2.63	FLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP POSTING FOR REMINDER ACTION	E
T3.2.2.64	UNFLAG FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E
T3.2.2.65	RECEIVE FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT VERBALLY FORWARDED	VC
T3.2.2.66	RECORD FLIGHT PLAN AMENDMENT ON FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	E
T3.2.3.2	REQUEST FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT	E
T3.2.3.3	OBSERVE FULL FLIGHT PLAN READOUT	R
T3.2.3.6	QUERY THE RELAYER OF A FLIGHT PLAN	VC
T3.2.3.60	REVIEW FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FOR ERRORS	R/A
T3.2.3.61	RESEQUENCE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP MANUALLY	E
T3.2.3.62	OBSERVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP ON PRINTER	R/A
T3.2.3.63	OBTAIN FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM PRINTER	R
T3.3.1.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR CLEARANCE FROM OTHER FACILITY/ CONTROLLER	VC
T3.3.1.12	REQUEST NECESSARY FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION FROM PILOT	VC
T3.3.1.13	INFORM PILOT TO FILE/ REFILE FLIGHT PLAN	VC
T3.3.1.60	SEARCH FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP BAY FOR FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP	R/A
T3.3.1.61	FORWARD CLEARANCE TO ANOTHER FACILITY	VC
T3.3.1.64	ISSUE CLEARANCE AND INSTRUCTIONS THROUGH FLIGHT SERVICE STATION	VC

Task to Procedure Trace Task Statement Orphans

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T3.3.1.65	REQUEST FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM ANOTHER POSITION/ FACILITY	E
T3.3.1.66	REQUEST FLIGHT PLAN DATA VERBALLY	VC
T3.3.2.61	FORWARD FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP TO OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER	E
T3.3.3.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	VC
T3.3.3.6	ENTER TERMINATION OF SPECIAL OPERATION	E
T3.3.4.8	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	VC
T3.3.4.9	FORWARD NOTICE OF TERMINATION OF SPECIAL CONDITION/ EMERGENCY	E/VC
T3.3.4.10	RECEIVE REQUEST FOR OVERDUE AIRCRAFT SEARCH	VC
T3.3.4.61	CONDUCT RECORDS SEARCH FOR INFORMATION ON OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	R/A
T3.3.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF AIRCRAFT DEPARTURE FROM OTHER CONTROLLER	VC
T3.3.5.2	RECEIVE FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP FROM OTHER TOWER CONTROLLER	R
T3.4.1.1	RECEIVE CANCELLATION OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION	R/VC
T3.4.1.61	RECORD NOTE OF TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT RESTRICTION	E
T3.5.1.63	ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT OF WEATHER INFORMATION OR NOTICE OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	VC
T3.5.1.65	OBSERVE RECORD OF NEW/ CHANGED AIRPORT ENVIRONMENTAL DATA	R
T3.6.2.6	ADJUST PARAMETERS AND DISPLAY TO PERSONAL REFERENCE	E
T3.6.3.1	DETERMINE IMPENDING CONTROLLER OVERLOAD	A
T3.6.3.60	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF POTENTIAL OVERLOAD CONDITION	VC
T3.6.3.61	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO COMBINE/ DECOMBINE POSITIONS	VC
T3.6.3.62	REQUEST ASSISTANCE OR RELIEF	VC
T3.6.4.1	CONDUCT POSITION COMBINATION/ DECOMBINATION PROCEDURES	R/VC
T3.6.4.3	RECEIVE SUPERVISOR NOTICE TO RECONFIGURE TOWER POSTIONS	VC
T3.6.4.60	CONDUCT TOWER POSITION RECONFIGURATION	E
T3.7.1.1	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF FDIO INPUT DATA	R/A
T3.7.1.62	DETECT NON-ACCEPTANCE OF ARTS INPUT DATA	R/A
T3.7.2.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	VC
T3.7.2.61	DETECT OCCURRENCE OF ARTS/ FDIO DISPLAY FAILURE	R/A
T3.7.2.62	FORWARD NOTICE OF DISPLAY FAILURE	E/VC
T3.7.4.1	DETECT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/VC
T3.7.4.2	SWITCH TO BACKUP RADIO/ FREQUENCY	E
T3.7.4.3	RECEIVE NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	R/VC
T3.7.4.4	ADJUST COMMUNICATION PATH TO ACCOMMODATE FAILURE/ OVERLOAD	E
T3.7.4.5	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	R/VC
T3.7.4.7	FORWARD NEW FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT	E/VC
T3.7.4.8	FORWARD ALTERNATE COMMUNICATION PATH	E/VC

Task Number	Task Statement	Task Type
T3.7.5.1	RECEIVE NOTICE OF TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	R/VC
T3.7.5.2	DETECT TRANSIENT COMMUNICATION FAILURE	A/VC
T3.7.5.3	REQUEST COMMUNICATION CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T3.7.5.4	RECEIVE COMMUNICATIONS CHECK FROM OTHER POSITION/ AIRCRAFT/ AGENCY	VC
T3.7.6.1	OBSERVE FAILURE OF AIRPORT EQUIPMENT	R/A
T3.7.7.60	RECEIVE NOTICE OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC
T3.7.7.61	INFORM SUPERVISOR OF ARTS/ FDIO STAND-ALONE MODE	VC
T3.7.7.62	REVERT TO MANUAL FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP PROCEDURES	A

Appendix G

Site Visit Information

APPENDIX G

SITE VISIT INFORMATION

Seventeen Airport Traffic Control Towers (ATCTs), representing three FAA Regions, were visited specifically to collect data for these operations concepts and task analyses. A variety of Tower levels and types (VFR, Radar, Limited Radar) were included to ensure relevancy of the task information. Activity during visits included observations, interviews, accomplishment of worksheets / questionaires, and collection of local training / operations documents. The following Towers were visited in the preparation of this volume:

CYS	Cheyenne, Wyoming
BJC	Jefferson County Denver (Broomfield), Colorado
ADS	Addison, Texas
ORL	Orlando (Executive), Florida
PUB	Pueblo, Colorado
SRQ	Sarasota - Bradenton, Florida
PWA	Oklahoma City (Wiley Post), Oklahoma
APA	Denver (Centennial), Colorado
COS	Colorado Springs, Colorado
DAB	Daytona Beach, Florida
DAL	Dallas (Love), Texas
FTW	Ft. Worth (Meecham), Texas
DFW	Dallas - Ft. Worth, Texas
DEN	Denver, Colorado
OKC	Oklahoma City (Will Rogers), Oklahoma
MCO	Orlando (International), Florida
TPA	Tampa, Florida

In addition to those sites visited above, 14 sites were previously visited during development of the tower position analyses for earlier operations concepts [13,14, and Volume V) developed for the Advanced Automation system (AAS). Four of the Colorado Towers listed above were among those previously visited. Data collected during this effort formed a baseline and was dilligently compared with the new data to ensure comprehensive coverage.

Appendix H

Expanded Operational Scenarios

APPENDIX H

EXPANDED OPERATIONAL SCENARIOS

This appendix would normally contain expanded baseline scenarios for the Tower local position, Tower ground position, and Tower clearance delivery/flight data position. The baseline scenarios are discussed in Section 3 of Volume I and described in Appendix B of Volume I. The three baseline scenarios for the tower are:

Scenario IV - Tower Local Position

Scenario VI - Tower Ground Position

Scenario VII - Tower Clearance Delivery/Flight Data Position

No additional expansions of the baseline scenarios are necessary for these operations concepts. The TCCC expanded scenarios already available in Volume V contain sufficient similarity to those that could be prepared for current Tower operations as to preclude the value of additional expansion here.